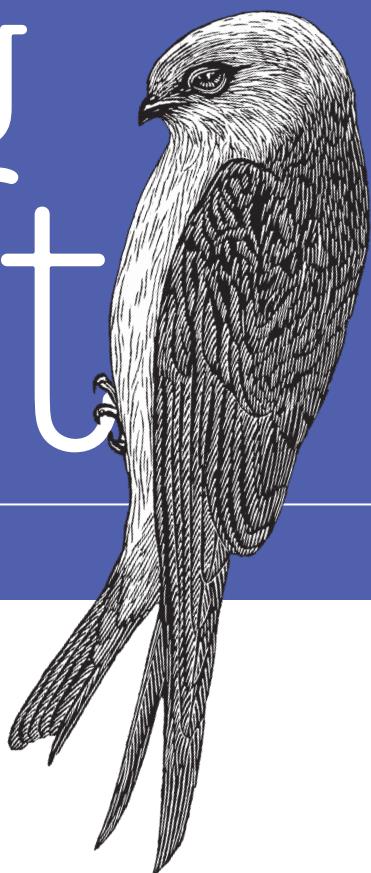


Learning Swift

BUILDING APPS FOR OS X AND IOS



Jonathon Manning,
Paris Buttfield-Addison & Tim Nugent

Learning Swift

Get hands-on experience with Apple's Swift programming language by building real working apps. With this practical guide, skilled programmers with little or no knowledge of Apple development will learn how to code with Swift 2 by developing three complete, tightly linked versions of the Notes application for the OS X, iOS, and watchOS platforms.

In the process, you'll learn Swift's fundamentals, including its syntax and features, along with the basics of the Cocoa, CocoaTouch, and WatchKit frameworks. This book teaches you how to use common design patterns for Swift, how to structure an application for Apple's platforms, and how to submit working apps to the App Store.

Divided into four distinct parts, this book includes:

- **Swift 2 basics:** Learn Swift's features for object-oriented development, as well as various developer tools
- **OS X app development:** Set up your app, work with its documents, and build out its features
- **iOS app development:** Use multimedia, contacts, location, notifications, and iCloud files to build a fully featured iOS Notes app
- **Advanced app extensions:** Support Apple Watch and learn how to debug, monitor, and test all three of your Swift apps

“Swift is the future of developing on Apple systems. Jon, Paris, and Tim prepare you for that future by taking you on a wonderfully rich tour of those platforms and the new language that will be propelling them.”

—Dafydd Williams

Software Engineer at
SavageInteractive,
makers of Procreate

Jon Manning, a co-founder of Secret Lab, is a mobile software engineer, game designer, and computing researcher. Follow him on Twitter at @desplesda.

Paris Buttfield-Addison, co-founder of Secret Lab, is a mobile software engineer, game designer, and computing researcher. Follow him on Twitter at @parisba.

Tim Nugent is a mobile app developer, game designer, PhD student, and author. Follow him on Twitter at @The_McJones.

MOBILE DEVELOPMENT / IOS

US \$39.99 CAN \$45.99

ISBN: 978-1-491-94074-7



9 781491 940747



Twitter: @oreillymedia
facebook.com/oreilly

Learning Swift

Jon Manning, Paris Buttfield-Addison, and Tim Nugent

Beijing • Boston • Farnham • Sebastopol • Tokyo

O'REILLY®

Learning Swift

by Jon Manning, Paris Buttfield-Addison, and Tim Nugent

Copyright © 2016 Secret Lab. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America.

Published by O'Reilly Media, Inc., 1005 Gravenstein Highway North, Sebastopol, CA 95472.

O'Reilly books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. Online editions are also available for most titles (<http://safaribooksonline.com>). For more information, contact our corporate/institutional sales department: 800-998-9938 or corporate@oreilly.com.

Editors: Brian MacDonald and Rachel Roumeliotis

Indexer: Ellen Troutman-Zaig

Production Editor: Melanie Yarbrough

Interior Designer: David Futato

Copyeditor: Rachel Monaghan

Cover Designer: Karen Montgomery

Proofreader: Amanda Kersey

Illustrator: Rebecca Demarest

May 2016: First Edition

Revision History for the First Edition

2016-04-29: First Release

See <http://oreilly.com/catalog/errata.csp?isbn=9781491940747> for release details.

The O'Reilly logo is a registered trademark of O'Reilly Media, Inc. *Learning Swift*, the cover image, and related trade dress are trademarks of O'Reilly Media, Inc.

While the publisher and the authors have used good faith efforts to ensure that the information and instructions contained in this work are accurate, the publisher and the authors disclaim all responsibility for errors or omissions, including without limitation responsibility for damages resulting from the use of or reliance on this work. Use of the information and instructions contained in this work is at your own risk. If any code samples or other technology this work contains or describes is subject to open source licenses or the intellectual property rights of others, it is your responsibility to ensure that your use thereof complies with such licenses and/or rights.

978-1-491-94074-7

[LSI]

Table of Contents

Preface.....	ix
--------------	----

Part I. Swift Basics

1. Getting Started.....	3
The Apple Developer Program	5
Registering for the Apple Developer Program	6
Downloading Xcode	7
Creating Your First Project with Xcode	8
The Xcode Interface	12
Developing a Simple Swift Application	20
Designing the Interface	21
Connecting the Code	22
Using the iOS Simulator	24
Conclusion	26
2. The Basics of Swift.....	27
The Swift Programming Language	28
Swift 1 Versus Swift 2	30
Playgrounds	30
Comments	32
Control Flow	33
Loops	33
Switches	34
Variables and Constants	37
Operators	38
Types	39

Working with Strings	39
Comparing Strings	40
Searching Strings	41
Optional Types	41
Type Casting	43
Tuples	44
Arrays	45
Dictionaries	47
Enumerations	47
Sets	49
Functions and Closures	50
Using Functions as Variables	53
Closures	55
The defer Keyword	57
The guard Keyword	57
Conclusion	58
3. Swift for Object-Oriented App Development.....	59
Classes and Objects	59
Initialization and Deinitialization	61
Properties	62
Inheritance	62
Protocols	66
Extensions	67
Access Control	68
Operator Overloading	70
Generics	71
Subscripts	72
Structures	73
Modules	74
The Swift Standard Library, Foundation, Cocoa, and Cocoa Touch	74
Data	75
Loading Data from Files and URLs	75
Serialization and Deserialization	76
Error Handling	77
Memory Management	80
Design Patterns in Cocoa and Cocoa Touch	81
Model-View-Controller	81
Delegation	83
Structuring an App	85
The Application Delegate	85
Window Controllers and View Controllers	85

Nibs and Storyboards	86
Conclusion	86

Part II. An OS X App

4. Setting Up the OS X Notes App.....	89
Designing the OS X Notes App	90
Creating the OS X Project	93
Defining a Document Type	98
Adding the Icon	102
Conclusion	104
5. Working with Documents on OS X.....	105
The NSDocument Class	105
Storing Data in the Document	106
Storing Text	107
Package File Formats	108
The guard Keyword, and Why It's Great	112
Saving Files	113
Loading Files	116
A Basic UI	117
Conclusion	126
6. User Interfaces and iCloud.....	127
Updating the UI	127
Document-Filetype-Extension UI	131
Getting an Icon for the Collection View Cells	136
Adding Attachments	137
Storing and Managing Attachments	145
Displaying Data in the Collection View	149
Enhancing Attachments	152
Opening Attachments	152
JSON Attachments	155
Adding Attachments via Drag-and-Drop	158
Adding QuickLook	161
iCloud	166
The Basics of iCloud	167
Conclusion	170

Part III. An iOS App

7. Setting Up the iOS Notes App.....	173
Designing the iOS Notes App	174
Creating the iOS Project	181
Enabling the iOS App for iCloud	185
Defining a Document Type	189
Conclusion	191
8. Working with Files in iCloud.....	193
The App Sandbox	193
iCloud Availability	195
Creating the Document List View Controller	196
View Controllers and Storyboards	198
The Navigation Controller	198
Collection Views	202
Using Constraints to Control Size and Position	204
Creating the Document Class	208
Listing Documents	214
Creating Documents	224
Downloading from iCloud	227
Deleting Documents	231
Renaming Documents	238
Conclusion	242
9. Working with Documents on iOS.....	243
Adding a View to Display Notes	243
Editing and Saving Documents	252
Conclusion	253
10. Working with Files and File Types.....	255
Setting Up the Interface for Attachments	255
Listing Attachments	259
Determining Types of Attachments	261
Displaying Attachment Cells	264
Dealing with Conflicts	270
Creating the Quick Look Thumbnail	276
Conclusion	279
11. Images and Deletion.....	281
Adding Attachments	281
Adding Image Attachments	283

Viewing Attachments	289
Deleting Attachments	300
Conclusion	307
12. Supporting the iOS Ecosystem.....	309
Sharing with UIActivityController	309
Handoffs	312
Searchability	317
Conclusion	319
13. Extending iOS Apps.....	321
Searching with a Spotlight Indexing Extension	322
Today Widgets	332
Conclusion	340
14. Multimedia, Contacts, Location, and Notifications.....	343
Location Attachments	343
Audio Attachments	358
Video Attachments	371
Contact Attachments	379
Notifications	383
Conclusion	395
15. Polishing the iOS App.....	397
Speaking Text	397
Opening Links in SFSafariViewController	399
3D Touch	403
Home Screen Quick Actions	404
Peek and Pop	404
Settings	405
Undo Support	407
Images with Filters	410
Worldwide Apps	414
Internationalization	415
Localization	418
Accessibility	423
Splitscreen Multitasking	428
Conclusion	429

Part IV. Extending Your Apps

16. Building a watchOS App.....	433
Designing for the Watch	434
Designing Our watchOS App	436
Creating the watchOS Extension	438
Communicating with the iPhone	442
User Interfaces for the Apple Watch	454
Showing Note Contents	460
Creating New Notes	466
Adding Handoff Between the Watch and the iPhone	468
Glances	471
Conclusion	475
17. Code Quality and Distribution.....	477
Debugging	477
Instruments	480
Testing	485
Unit Testing	486
UI Testing	487
Using Objective-C and Swift in the Same Project	489
Using Swift Objects in Objective-C	489
Using Objective-C Objects in Swift	490
The App Store	491
App Thinning	492
Testing iOS Apps with TestFlight	493
Conclusion	494
Index.....	495

Preface

Welcome to *Learning Swift!* This book will help you put the Swift programming language into practice by walking you through the development of a note-taking application for the Apple iOS, OS X, and watchOS platforms.

Swift is a pretty amazing modern language, taking the best from other newer languages without reinventing the wheel. Swift is easy to write, easy to read, and really hard to make mistakes in.

Our philosophy is that the best way to learn Swift is to build apps using it! To build apps, though, you need a great framework, and Apple has several: Cocoa, Cocoa Touch, and WatchKit, to name only a few. This book could quite easily be titled *Learning Cocoa and Cocoa Touch with Swift*, or something similar, because the frameworks are just as important as the language itself. At the time of writing, Swift is currently at version 2.2, and has a bright future ahead of it.

Resources Used in This Book

We recommend following the book by writing code yourself as you progress through each chapter. If you get stuck, or just want to archive a copy of the code, you can find what you need via our [website](#).

As this book teaches you how to build a real-world app, we primarily focus on showing you the coding side of things. We're not going to ask you to paint your own icons, so we've provided them for you. You can also download them from our website.

Audience and Approach

This book is solely focused on Swift 2 and does not cover the use of Objective-C. We might mention it occasionally, but we don't expect you to know how to use it. We first cover the basics of the Swift 2 language, and then move on to teach as much of the language as we can, as well as the use of the Cocoa, Cocoa Touch, and watchOS

frameworks, through the construction of a complete app for both OS X and iOS. As a reminder, Swift is the programming language, Cocoa is the framework for OS X apps, Cocoa Touch is the framework for iOS apps, and somewhat predictably, watchOS is the framework for the Apple Watch.

This book's approach differs from that of other programming books that you may have encountered. As we've mentioned, we believe that the best way to learn Swift is to build apps using it. We assume that you're a reasonably capable programmer, but we don't assume you've ever developed for iOS or OS X, or used Swift or Objective-C before. We also assume that you're fairly comfortable navigating OS X and iOS as a user.

Organization of This Book

In this book, we'll be talking about Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, the frameworks used on OS X and iOS, respectively. Along the way, we'll also be covering Swift, including its syntax and features.

In [Part I, Swift Basics](#), we begin with a look at the tools used for programming with Swift, as well as the Apple Developer Program. Then we move on to the basics of the Swift programming language and structuring a program for Apple's platforms, as well as common design patterns.

[Chapter 1](#) covers the basics of Apple's developer program, and guides you through a simple Swift app.

[Chapter 2](#) explores all the basics of Swift, and prepares you for using it to build more complex applications.

[Chapter 3](#) discusses Swift's object-oriented features, as well as the structure of a good app.

In [Part II, An OS X App](#), we build a simple note-taking application for Macs, targeting OS X. Along the way, we discuss the design of the app, how it's structured, how it uses documents, and how to build all the features.

[Chapter 4](#) starts off our OS X notes app, and sets up the document model, and icon.

[Chapter 5](#) goes into detail on working with documents in OS X apps.

[Chapter 6](#) connects the app to iCloud, and finishes up the OS X app.

In [Part III, An iOS App](#), we build a fully featured iOS note-taking application as a companion for the OS X app from [Part II](#).

[Chapter 7](#) starts off our iOS app, and sets up the same document model for iOS.

[Chapter 8](#) connects the iOS app to iCloud.

[Chapter 9](#) creates an interface on iOS for displaying our notes.

[Chapter 10](#) sets up the iOS app to handle attachments.

[Chapter 11](#) adds image support to the iOS app.

[Chapter 12](#) adds sharing and searching support to the iOS app.

[Chapter 13](#) adds a today widget to the iOS app.

[Chapter 14](#) adds location, audio, video, and contact attachments to the iOS app, as well as notifications.

[Chapter 15](#) finishes the iOS app with a whole lot of polish!

In [Part IV, Extending Your Apps](#), we add a watchOS app, and explore bug hunting and performance tuning.

[Chapter 16](#) adds a watchOS app to the iOS app, allowing for Apple Watch support.

[Chapter 17](#) explores debugging and performance tuning.

Conventions Used in This Book

The following typographical conventions are used in this book:

Italic

Indicates new terms, URLs, email addresses, filenames, and file extensions.

Constant width

Used for program listings, as well as within paragraphs to refer to program elements such as variable or function names, databases, data types, environment variables, statements, and keywords.

Constant width bold

Shows commands or other text that should be typed literally by the user.

Constant width italic

Shows text that should be replaced with user-supplied values or by values determined by context.



This element signifies a tip or suggestion.



This element signifies a general note.



This element indicates a warning or caution.

Using Code Examples

Supplemental material (code examples, exercises, errata, etc.) is available for download at [our website](#).

This book is here to help you get your job done. In general, if example code is offered with this book, you may use it in your programs and documentation. You do not need to contact us for permission unless you're reproducing a significant portion of the code. For example, writing a program that uses several chunks of code from this book does not require permission. Selling or distributing a CD-ROM of examples from O'Reilly books does require permission. Answering a question by citing this book and quoting example code does not require permission. Incorporating a significant amount of example code from this book into your product's documentation does require permission.

We appreciate, but do not require, attribution. An attribution usually includes the title, author, publisher, and ISBN. For example: “*Learning Swift* by Jonathon Manning, Paris Buttfield-Addison, and Tim Nugent (O'Reilly). Copyright 2016 Secret Lab, 978-1-491-94074-7.”

If you feel your use of code examples falls outside fair use or the permission given above, feel free to contact us at permissions@oreilly.com.

Safari® Books Online



Safari Books Online is an on-demand digital library that delivers expert [content](#) in both book and video form from the world's leading authors in technology and business.

Technology professionals, software developers, web designers, and business and creative professionals use Safari Books Online as their primary resource for research, problem solving, learning, and certification training.

Safari Books Online offers a range of [plans and pricing](#) for enterprise, government, education, and individuals.

Members have access to thousands of books, training videos, and prepublication manuscripts in one fully searchable database from publishers like O'Reilly Media, Prentice Hall Professional, Addison-Wesley Professional, Microsoft Press, Sams, Que, Peachpit Press, Focal Press, Cisco Press, John Wiley & Sons, Syngress, Morgan Kaufmann, IBM Redbooks, Packt, Adobe Press, FT Press, Apress, Manning, New Riders, McGraw-Hill, Jones & Bartlett, Course Technology, and hundreds [more](#). For more information about Safari Books Online, please visit us [online](#).

How to Contact Us

Please address comments and questions concerning this book to the publisher:

O'Reilly Media, Inc.
1005 Gravenstein Highway North
Sebastopol, CA 95472
800-998-9938 (in the United States or Canada)
707-829-0515 (international or local)
707-829-0104 (fax)

We have a web page for this book, where we list errata, examples, and any additional information. You can access this page at <http://bit.ly/learning-swift>.

To comment or ask technical questions about this book, send email to bookquestions@oreilly.com.

For more information about our books, courses, conferences, and news, see our website at <http://www.oreilly.com>.

Find us on Facebook: <http://facebook.com/oreilly>

Follow us on Twitter: <http://twitter.com/oreillymedia>

Watch us on YouTube: <http://www.youtube.com/oreillymedia>

Acknowledgments

Jon thanks his mother, father, and the rest of his crazily extended family for their tremendous support.

Paris thanks his mother, without whom he wouldn't be doing anything nearly as interesting, let alone writing books.

Tim thanks his parents and family for putting up with his rather lackluster approach to life.

We'd all like to thank our editors, Rachel Roumeliotis and Brian MacDonald—their skill and advice were invaluable to completing the book. Likewise, all the O'Reilly Media staff we've interacted with over the course of writing the book have been the absolute gurus of their fields.

A huge thank you to Tony Gray and the [Apple University Consortium \(AUC\)](#) for the monumental boost they gave us and others listed on this page. We wouldn't be writing this book if it weren't for them. And now you're writing books, too, Tony—sorry about that!

Thanks also to Neal Goldstein, who deserves full credit and/or blame for getting us into the whole book-writing racket.

We're thankful for the support of the goons at MacLab (who know who they are and continue to stand watch for Admiral Dolphin's inevitable apotheosis), as well as professor Christopher Lueg, Dr. Leonie Ellis, and the rest of the staff at the University of Tasmania for putting up with us. "Apologies" to Mark Pesce. He knows why.

Additional thanks to Rex S., Nic W., Andrew B., Jess L., and Ash J., for a wide variety of reasons. And very special thanks to Steve Jobs, without whom this book (and many others like it) would not have reason to exist.

Thanks also to our tech reviewers, with special thanks to Chris Devers and Tony Gray for their thoroughness and professionalism.

Finally, thank *you* very much for buying our book—we appreciate it! And if you have any feedback, please let us know. You can email us at lab@secretlab.com.au and find us on Twitter [@thesecretlab](#).

PART I

Swift Basics

CHAPTER 1

Getting Started

This book teaches the Swift programming language by exploring the development of three applications for Apple platforms: OS X, iOS, and watchOS. This book's approach might differ from what you're used to, because our philosophy is that the best way to learn Swift is to build apps using it! The vast majority of the code in this book will be part of the apps we're building—a full note-taking app for OS X, iOS, and watchOS—rather than individual pieces of sample code. You can see the final product in [Figure 1-1](#).

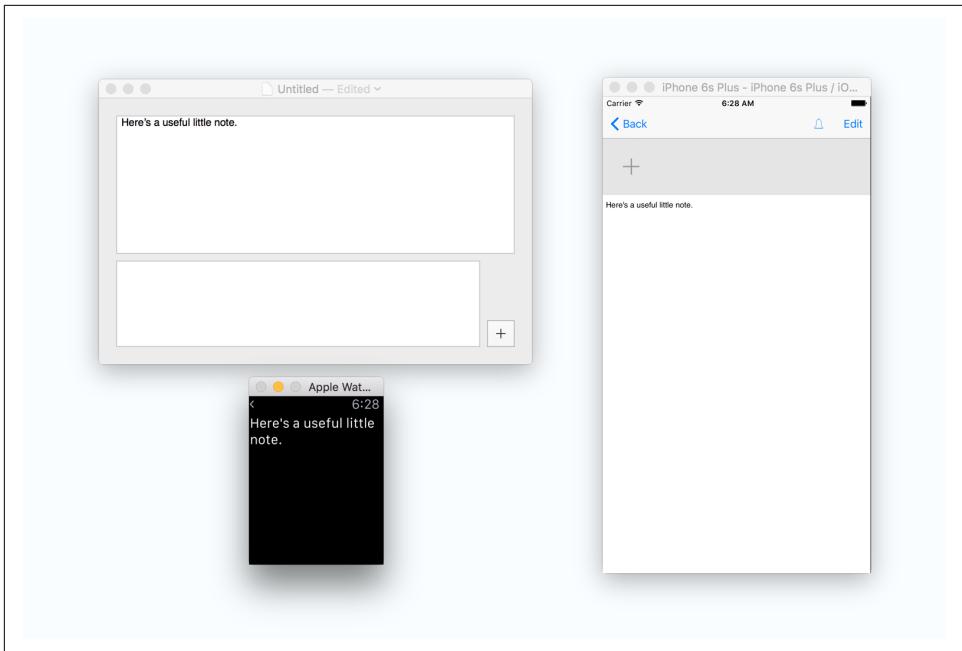


Figure 1-1. Our finished app, for OS X, iOS, and watchOS

Our app is fully functional, but we do make some deliberate design and feature decisions along the way to constrain the scope a little (the book is more than 500 pages!). As we mentioned in the preface, we assume that you're a reasonably capable programmer, but we don't assume you've ever developed for iOS or OS X, or used Swift or Objective-C before. We also assume that you're fairly comfortable navigating OS X and iOS as a user.



We recommend that you work through this book front to back, building the OS X app, then the iOS app, then the watchOS app, even if you're only interested in one of the platforms. By approaching the book this way, you'll get the best understanding of what building a real app with Swift requires.

Programming with Swift, and using the Cocoa and Cocoa Touch frameworks to develop OS X and iOS apps, respectively, involves using a set of tools developed by Apple. In this chapter, you'll learn about these tools, where to get them, how to use them, how they work together, and what they can do. At the end of this chapter, you'll make a very simple Swift application for iOS, before we dive into the details of the Swift language and Apple's frameworks in the following two chapters.



The Apple development tools have a long and storied history. Originally a set of standalone application tools for the NeXTSTEP OS, they were eventually adopted by Apple for use as the official OS X tools. Later, Apple largely consolidated them into one application, known as Xcode, though some of the applications (such as Instruments and the iOS simulator) remain somewhat separate, owing to their relatively peripheral role in the development process. You'll notice the prefix NS on many of the classes you use for Cocoa and Cocoa Touch development with Swift. This prefix comes from the NeXTSTEP heritage of many of Apple's frameworks.

In addition to the development tools, Apple offers developers a paid membership in its [Developer Program](#), which provides resources and support. The program allows access to online developer forums and specialized technical support for those interested in talking to the framework engineers. If you are just interested in learning Swift and exploring the development tools, you can do so for free. You will need a paid membership, however, if you wish to use developer services like iCloud in your apps, or to distribute anything you build through either the iOS or OS X App Store.



Swift is open source, but this doesn't really mean much when it comes to using it to develop apps for OS X, iOS, and watchOS. There's an excellent community of people working on the language that you can find at the [Swift website](#).

With the introduction of Apple's curated App Stores for OS X, iOS, and watchOS, as well as emerging Apple platforms like tvOS, the Developer Program has become the official way for developers to provide their credentials when submitting applications to Apple—in essence, it is your ticket to selling apps through Apple. In this chapter, you'll learn how to sign up for the Apple Developer Program, as well as how to use Xcode, the development tool used to build apps in Swift.

The Apple Developer Program

The paid [Apple Developer Program](#) provides access to beta development tools, beta operating system releases, and distribution ability through Apple's App Stores. It also allows you to use some of the cloud-dependent features of the platforms, such as iCloud, CloudKit, In-App Purchase, Maps, and App Groups.



We will be using a lot of cloud-dependent features, including Maps and iCloud, in the apps we build throughout this book. You will not be able to run these apps if you do not have a paid membership.

It isn't necessary to be a member of the Apple Developer Program if you don't intend to submit apps to the App Stores, or don't need the cloud-dependent features. We strongly recommend joining, though, if you intend to build apps for any of Apple's platforms, as the other benefits are substantial:

- Access to the [Apple Developer Forums](#), which are frequented by Apple engineers and designed to allow you to ask questions of your fellow developers and the people who wrote the OS.
- Access to beta versions of the OS before they are released to the public, which enables you to test your applications on the next version of the OS X, iOS, watchOS, and tvOS platforms, and make necessary changes ahead of time. You also receive beta versions of the development tools.
- A digital signing certificate (one for each platform) used to identify you to the App Stores. Without this, you cannot submit apps to the App Store, making a membership mandatory for anyone who wants to release software either for free or for sale via an App Store.

That said, registering for the Developer Program isn't necessary to view the documentation or to download the current version of the developer tools, so you can play around with writing apps without opening your wallet.

Registering for the Apple Developer Program

To register for the Developer Program, you'll first need an Apple ID. It's quite likely that you already have one, as the majority of Apple's online services require one to identify you. If you've ever used iCloud, the iTunes store (for music or apps), or Apple's support and repair service, you already have an ID. You might even have more than one (one of this book's authors has four). If you don't yet have an ID, you'll create one as part of the registration process. When you register for the Developer Program, the membership gets added to your Apple ID.



If you don't want to register for the paid developer program, you can skip to ["Downloading Xcode" on page 7](#) for instructions on installing Xcode, the developer tools.

Once again, keep in mind that you won't be able to build the apps that we teach in this book if you don't have a paid membership, as we use cloud-dependent features such as iCloud and Maps.

There are alternatives to many of Apple's tools—such as the Google Maps SDK for iOS, or cloud-storage services from Amazon and Microsoft. However, you'll still need a paid membership through Apple to put apps in the iTunes App Store.

Once you're on the [Apple Developer Program](#) website, simply click Enroll, and follow the steps to enroll.

You can choose to register as an individual or as a company. If you register as an individual, your apps will be sold under your name. If you register as a company, your apps will be sold under your company's legal name. Choose carefully, as it's very difficult to convince Apple to change your program's type.

If you're registering as an individual, you'll just need your credit card. If you're registering as a company, you'll need your credit card as well as documentation that proves you have authority to bind your company to Apple's terms and conditions.



For information on code signing and using Xcode to test and run your apps on your own physical devices, see Apple's [App Distribution Guide](#). We don't cover this in the book, as it's a process that changes often.

Apple usually takes about 24 hours to activate an account for individuals, and longer for companies. Once you've received confirmation from Apple, you'll be emailed a link to activate your account; when that's done, you're a full-fledged developer!

Downloading Xcode

To develop apps for either platform, you'll use Xcode, Apple's integrated development environment. Xcode combines a source code editor, debugger, compiler, profiler, iOS simulator, Apple Watch simulator, and more into one package. It's where you'll spend the majority of your time when developing applications.



At the time of writing, Xcode is only available for Mac, but who knows what the future holds for the iPad Pro?

You can get Xcode from the Mac App Store. Simply open the App Store application and search for "Xcode," and it'll pop up. It's a free download, though it's rather large (several gigabytes at the time of writing).

Once you've downloaded Xcode, it's straightforward enough to install it. The Mac App Store gives you an application that on first launch sets up everything you need to use Xcode. Just launch the downloaded app, and follow the prompts, and you'll be up and running in no time.



This book covers Swift 2, which is available only if you’re using Xcode 7 or later. Make sure you’re using the latest version of Xcode from the Mac App Store. It’s good practice to use the latest Xcode at all times.

Creating Your First Project with Xcode

Xcode is designed around a single window. Each of your projects will have one window, which adapts to show what you’re working on.

To start exploring Xcode, you’ll first need to create a project by following these steps:

1. Launch Xcode. You can find it by opening Spotlight (by pressing ⌘-space bar) and typing **Xcode**. You can also find it by opening the Finder, going to your hard drive, and opening the *Applications* directory. If you had any projects open previously, Xcode will open them for you. Otherwise, the Welcome to Xcode screen appears (see [Figure 1-2](#)).

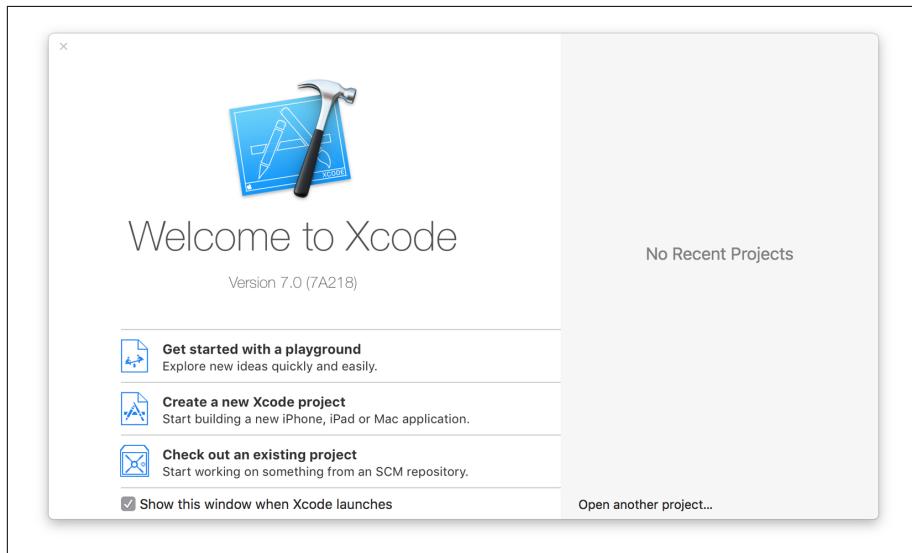


Figure 1-2. The Welcome to Xcode screen

2. Create a new project by clicking “Create a new Xcode project” or go to File→New→Project.

You’ll be asked what kind of application to create. The template selector is divided into two areas. On the lefthand side, you’ll find a collection of application categories. You can choose to create an iOS, watchOS, or OS X application from the project templates, which will set up a project directory to get you started.

Because we're just poking around Xcode at the moment, it doesn't really matter what we select, so choose Application under the iOS header and select Single View Application. This creates an empty iOS application and displays the project settings window shown in [Figure 1-3](#).

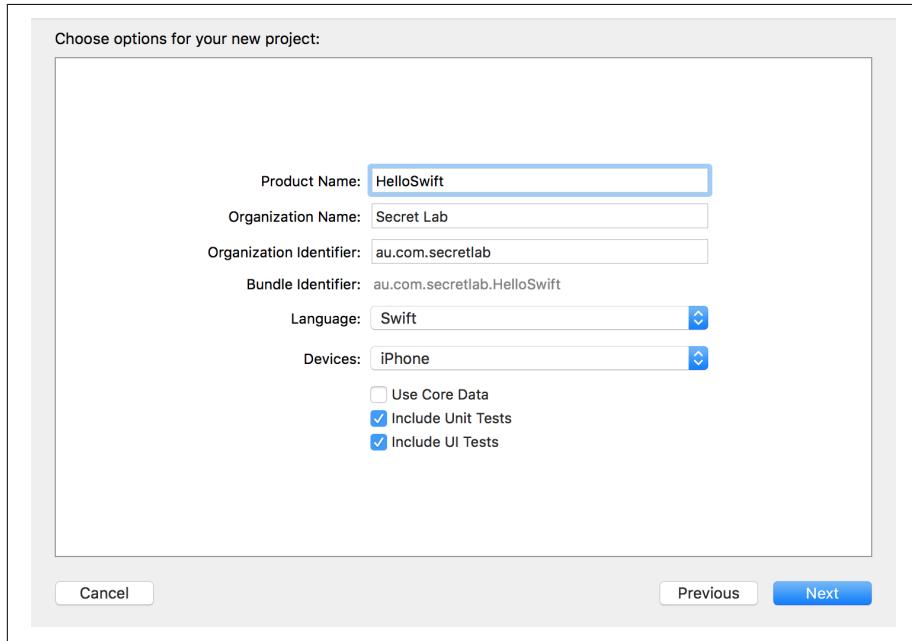


Figure 1-3. The project settings window

3. Name the application. Enter **HelloSwift** in the Product Name section.
4. Enter information about the project. Depending on the kind of project template you select, you'll be asked to provide different information about how the new project should be configured.

At a minimum, you'll be asked for the following information, no matter which platform and template you choose:

The product's name

This is the name of the project and is visible to the user. You can change this later.

Your organization's name

This is the name of your company or group. It's not directly used by Xcode, but new source code files that you create will mention it.

Your organization identifier

This is used to generate a *bundle ID*, a string that looks like a reverse domain name (e.g., if O'Reilly made an application named MyUsefulApplication, the bundle ID would be *com.oreilly.MyUsefulApplication*).



Bundle IDs are the unique identifier for an application, and are used to identify that app to the system and to the App Store. Because each bundle ID must be unique, the same ID can't be used for more than one application in either of the iOS or Mac App Stores. That's why the format is based on domain names—if you own the site *usefulsoftware.com*, all of your bundle IDs would begin with *com.usefulsoftware*, and you won't accidentally use a bundle ID that someone else is using or wants to use because nobody else owns the same domain name.

If you don't have a domain name, enter anything you like, as long as it looks like a backward domain name (e.g., *com.mycompany* will work).



If you plan on releasing your app, either to the App Store or elsewhere, it's very important to use a company identifier that matches a domain name you own. The App Store requires it, and the fact that the operating system uses the bundle ID that it generates from the company identifier means that using a domain name that you own eliminates the possibility of accidentally creating a bundle ID that conflicts with someone else's.

If you're writing an application for the Mac App Store, you'll also be prompted for the App Store category (whether it's a game, an educational app, a social networking app, or something else).

Depending on the template, you may also be asked for other information (e.g., the file extension for your documents if you are creating a document-aware application, such as a Mac app). You'll also be asked which language you want to use; because this book is about Swift, you should probably choose Swift! The additional information needed for this project is covered in the following steps.

5. Make the application run on the iPhone by choosing iPhone from the Devices drop-down list.



iOS applications can run on the iPad, iPhone, or both. Applications that run on both are called “universal” applications and run the same binary but have different user interfaces. For this exercise, just choose iPhone. You should be building universal iOS apps, in general, and we’ll be doing that when we properly start on iOS, in [Part III](#).

6. Leave the rest of the settings as shown in [Figure 1-4](#). Click Next to create the project.

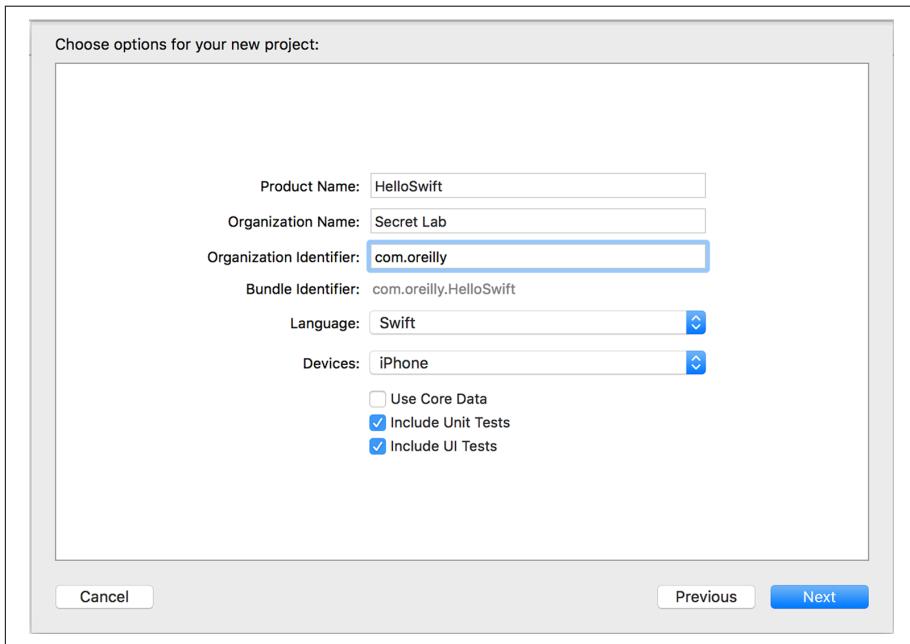


Figure 1-4. The project settings

7. Choose where to save the project. Select a location that suits you. We recommend putting all your work related to this book (and other Swift programming learning you might do) in one folder. You might notice a little checkbox for Source Control; this creates a source code control repository for your code, giving you a place where you can save and manage different versions of your code as you create them. While in general this is a good idea to use, for this example project, make sure this is *unchecked*.

Once you’ve done this, Xcode will open the project, and you can now start using the entire Xcode interface, as shown in [Figure 1-5](#).

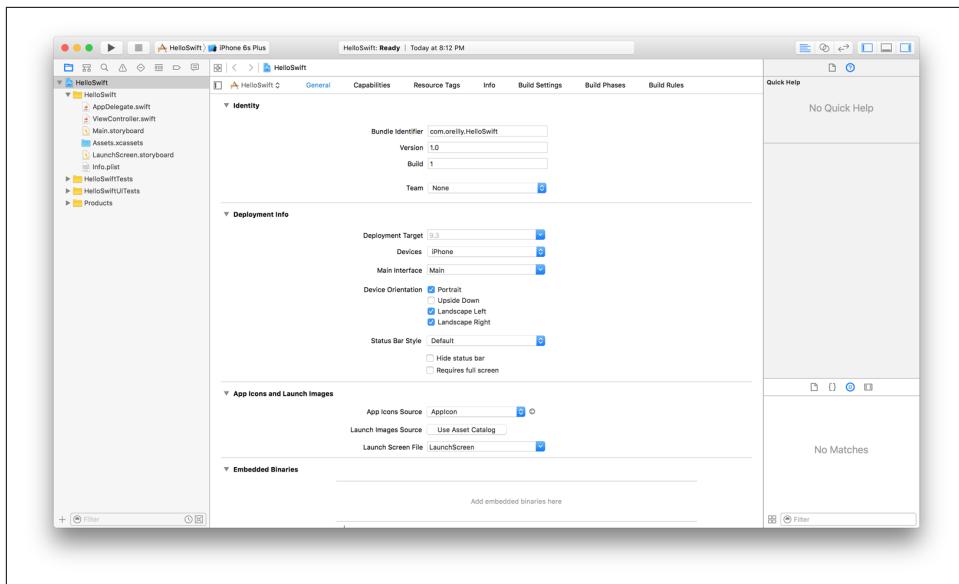


Figure 1-5. The entire Xcode interface

The Xcode Interface

As mentioned, Xcode shows your entire project in a single window, which is divided into a number of sections. You can open and close each section at will, depending on what you want to see.

Let's take a look at each of these sections and examine what they do.

The editor

The Xcode editor ([Figure 1-6](#)) is where you'll be spending most of your time. All source code editing, interface design, and project configuration take place in this section of the application, which changes depending on which file you have open.

If you're editing source code, the editor is a text editor, with code completion, syntax highlighting, and all the usual features that developers have come to expect from an integrated development environment. If you're modifying a user interface, the editor becomes a visual editor, allowing you to drag around the components of your interface. Other kinds of files have their own specialized editors as well.

When you first create a project, the editor will start by showing the project settings, as seen in [Figure 1-6](#).

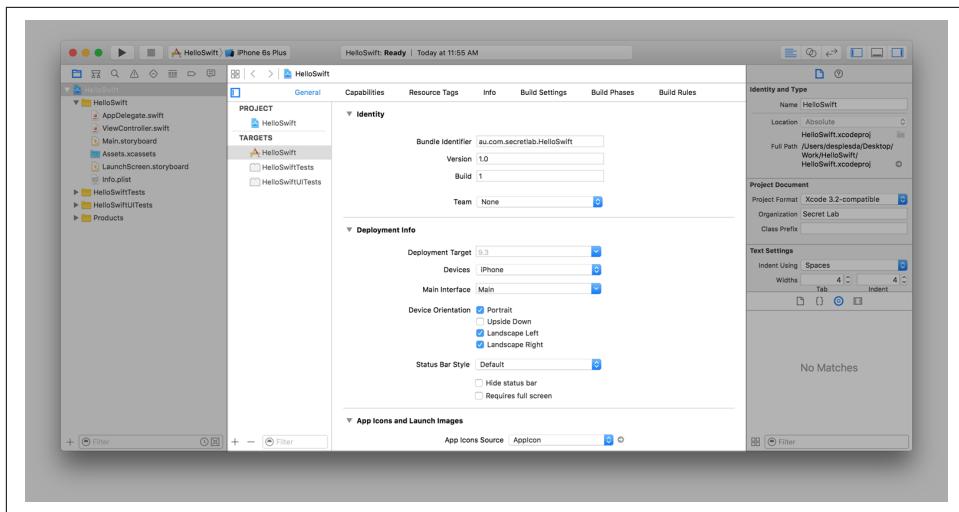


Figure 1-6. Xcode’s editor, showing the project settings

The editor can also be split into a *main editor* and an *assistant editor* through the *editor selector*. The assistant shows files that are related to the file open in the main editor. It will continue to show files that have a relationship to whatever is open, even if you open different files.

For example, if you open an interface file and then open the assistant, the assistant will, by default, show related code for the interface you’re editing. If you open another interface file, the assistant will show the code for the newly opened files.

At the top of the editor, you’ll find the *jump bar*. The jump bar lets you quickly jump from the content that you’re editing to another piece of related content, such as a file in the same folder. The jump bar is a fast way to navigate your project.

The toolbar

The Xcode toolbar (Figure 1-7) acts as mission control for the entire interface. It’s the only part of Xcode that doesn’t significantly change as you develop your applications, and it serves as the place where you can control what your code is doing.



Figure 1-7. Xcode’s toolbar

From left to right, after the OS X window controls, the toolbar features the following items:

Run button (Figure 1-8)

Clicking this button instructs Xcode to compile and run the application.

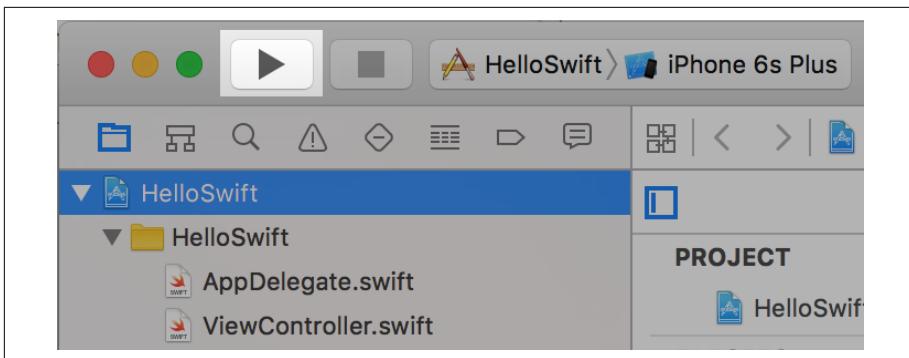


Figure 1-8. The Run button

Depending on the kind of application you’re running and your currently selected settings, this button will have different effects:

- If you’re creating a Mac application, the new app will appear in the Dock and will run on your machine.
- If you’re creating an iOS application, the new app will launch in either the iOS simulator or on a connected iOS device, such as an iPhone or iPad.

Additionally, if you click and hold this button, you can change it from Run to another action, such as Test, Profile, or Analyze. The Test action runs any unit tests that you have set up; the Profile action runs the application Instruments (we cover this much later, in [Chapter 17](#)); and the Analyze action checks your code and points out potential problems and bugs.

Stop button (Figure 1-9)

Clicking this button stops any task that Xcode is currently doing—if it’s building your application, it stops; and if your application is running in the debugger, it quits it.

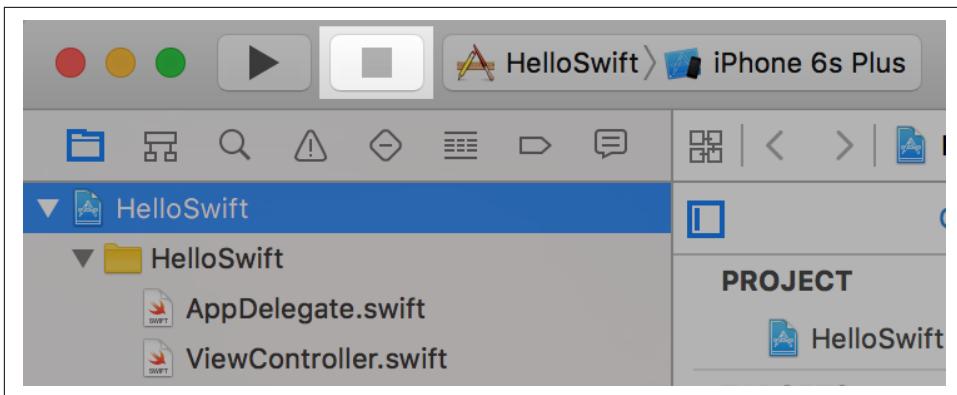


Figure 1-9. The stop button

Scheme selector ([Figure 1-10](#))

Schemes are what Xcode calls build configurations—that is, what's being built, how, and where it will run (i.e., on your computer or on a connected device).

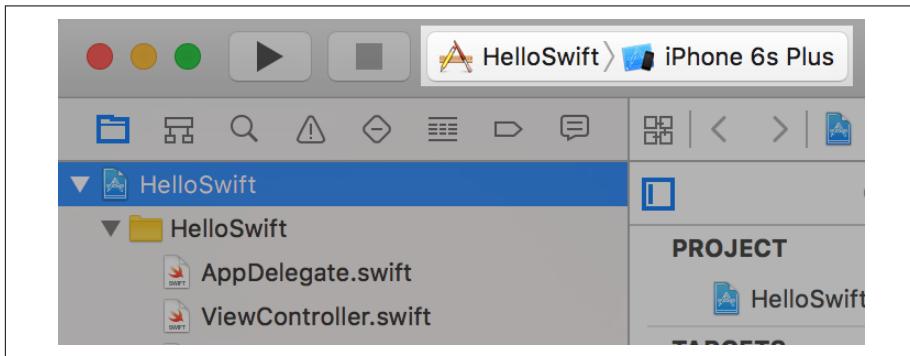


Figure 1-10. The scheme selector

Projects can have multiple apps inside them. When you use the scheme selector, you choose which app, or *target*, to build.

To select a target, click on the left hand side of the scheme selector.

You can also choose where the application will run. If you are building a Mac application, you will almost always want to run the application on your Mac. If you're building an iOS application, however, you have the option of running the application on an iPhone simulator or an iPad simulator. (These are in fact the same application; it simply changes shape depending on the scheme that you've selected.) You can also choose to run the application on a connected iOS device if it has been set up for development.

Status display (Figure 1-11)

The status display shows what Xcode is doing—building your application, downloading documentation, installing an application on an iOS device, and so on.



Figure 1-11. The status display

If there is more than one task in progress, a small button will appear on the left hand side, which cycles through the current tasks when clicked.

Editor selector (Figure 1-12)

The editor selector determines how the editor is laid out. You can choose to display either a single editor, the editor with the assistant, or the versions editor, which allows you to compare different versions of a file if you’re using a revision control system like Git or Subversion.

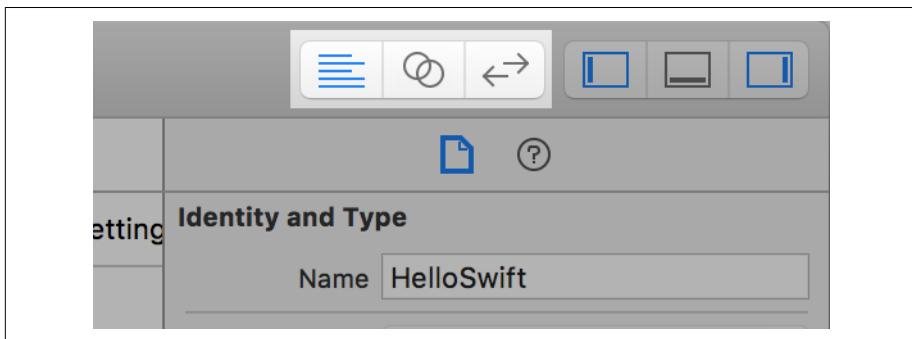


Figure 1-12. The editor selector



We don’t have anywhere near the space needed to talk about using version control in your projects in this book, but it’s an important topic. We recommend Jon Loeliger and Matthew McCullough’s *Version Control with Git, 2nd Edition* (O’Reilly).

View selector (Figure 1-13)

The view selector controls whether the navigator, debug, and utility panes appear on screen. If you’re pressed for screen space or simply want less clutter, you can quickly summon and dismiss these parts of the screen by clicking each of the elements.

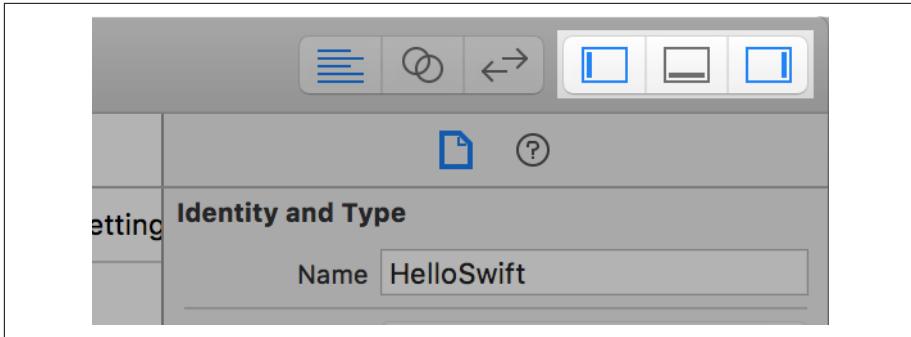


Figure 1-13. The view selector

The navigator

The lefthand side of the Xcode window is the *navigator*, which presents information about your project (Figure 1-14).

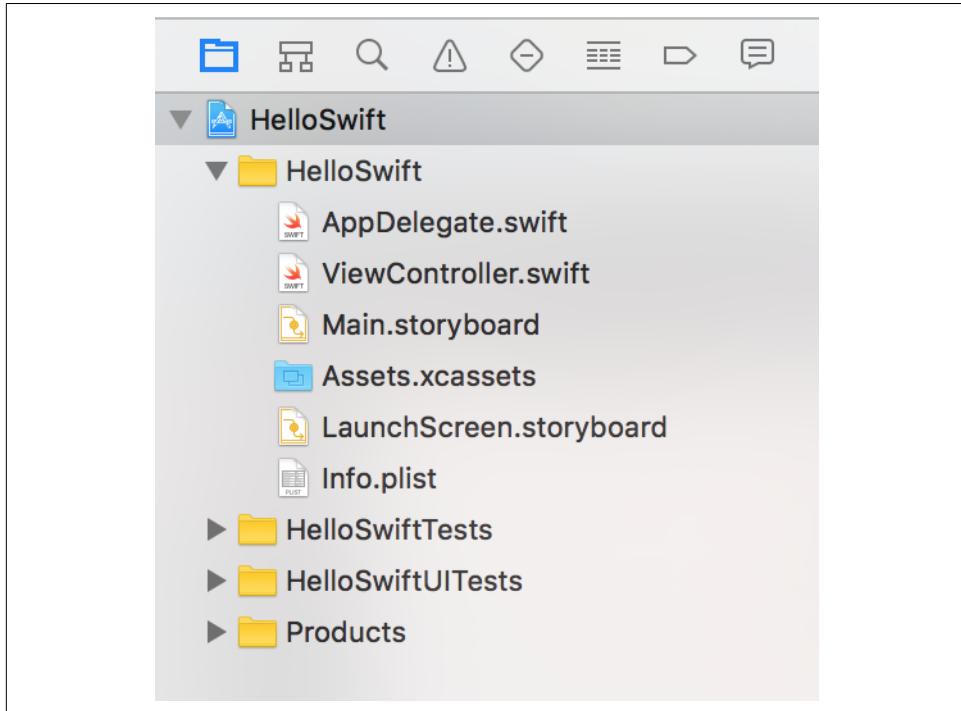


Figure 1-14. The navigator pane has eight tabs at the top

The navigator is divided into eight tabs, from left to right:

Project navigator

Lists all the files that make up your project. This is the most commonly used navigator, as it determines what is shown in the editor. Whatever is selected in the project navigator is opened in the editor.

Symbol navigator

Lists all the classes and functions that exist in your project. If you’re looking for a quick summary of a class or want to jump directly to a method in that class, the symbol navigator is a handy tool.

Search navigator

Allows you to perform searches across your project if you’re looking for specific text. (The shortcut is ⌘-Shift-F. Press ⌘-F to search the current open document.)

Issue navigator

Lists all the problems that Xcode has noticed in your code. This includes warnings, compilation errors, and issues that the built-in code analyzer has spotted.

Test navigator

Shows all the unit tests associated with your project. Unit tests used to be an optional component of Xcode but are now built into Xcode directly. Unit tests are discussed much later, in “[Unit Testing](#)” on page 486.

Debug navigator

Activated when you’re debugging a program, and it allows you to examine the state of the various threads that make up your program.

Breakpoint navigator

Lists all of the breakpoints that you’ve set for use while debugging.

Report navigator

Lists all the activity that Xcode has done with your project (such as building, debugging, and analyzing). You can go back and view previous build reports from earlier in your Xcode session, too.

Utilities

The utilities pane ([Figure 1-15](#)) shows additional information related to what you’re doing in the editor. If you’re editing a Swift source file, for example, the utilities pane allows you to view and modify settings for that file.

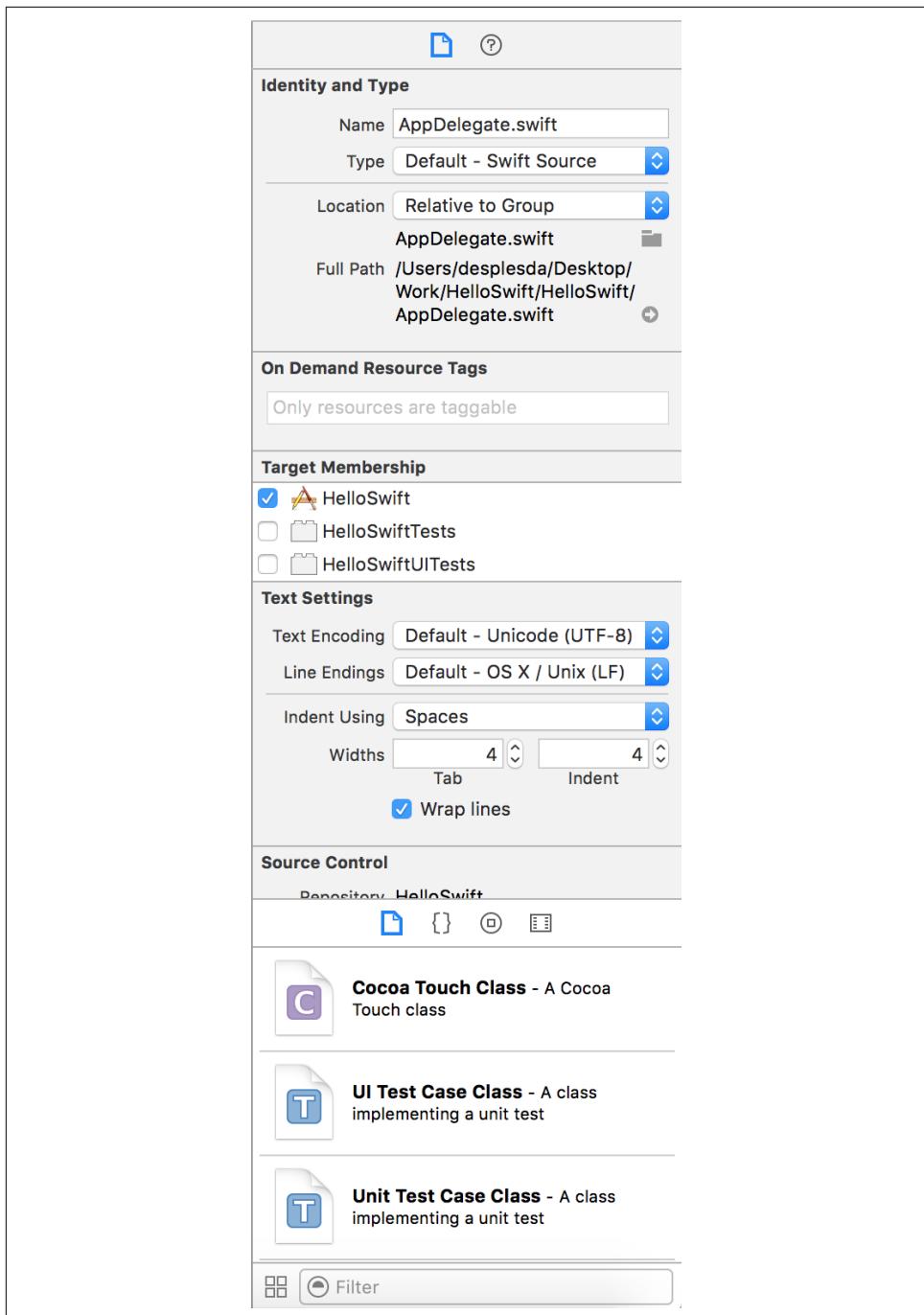


Figure 1-15. The utilities pane, showing information for a source file

The utilities pane is split into two sections: the *inspector*, which shows extra details and settings for the selected item; and the *library*, which is a collection of items that you can add to your project. The inspector and the library are most heavily used when you're building user interfaces; however, the library also contains a number of useful items, such as file templates and code snippets, which you can drag and drop into place.

The debug area

The debug area (Figure 1-16) shows information reported by the debugger when the program is running. Whenever you want to see what the application is reporting while running, you can view it in the debug area. By default the debug area is not shown unless there is a program running. You can bring up the debug area by using the Xcode Toolbar View selector middle button.



Figure 1-16. The debug area

The area is split into two sections: the left hand side shows the values of local variables when the application is paused; the right hand side shows the ongoing log from the debugger, which includes any logging that comes from the debugged application.

You can show or hide the debug area by clicking on the view selector, at the top right of the window (see Figure 1-17).

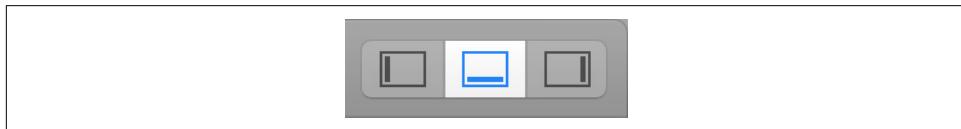


Figure 1-17. The central button in the view selector, which hides and shows the debug area

Developing a Simple Swift Application

Through the bulk of this book, we'll be developing a complex, full-fledged Swift application, spanning three of Apple's platforms: OS X, iOS, and watchOS. But for now, before we even explore how and why Swift itself works, we're going to get a brief taste by building a very, very simple application for iOS.



If you're more interested in Mac development, don't worry! Exactly the same techniques apply, and we'll be exploring Mac apps in detail later on, in [Part II](#).

This simple application is extremely cutting-edge: it will display a single button that, when tapped, will pop up an alert and change the button's label to "Test!" We're going to build on the project we created earlier in "[Creating Your First Project with Xcode](#)" on page 8, so make sure you have that project open.

It's generally good practice to create the interface first and then add code. This means that your code is written with an understanding of how it maps to what the user sees.

To that end, we'll start by designing the interface for the application.

Designing the Interface

When building an application's interface using Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, you have two options. You can either design your application's screens in a *storyboard*, which shows how all the screens link together, or you can design each screen in isolation. As a general rule, storyboards are a better way to create your interfaces even if you only have a single view, as in the case of this first application we are building. The reason is that if you later want to give your application more than one view, it will be easier to do that in a storyboard.

Start by opening the interface file and adding a button. These are the steps you'll need to follow:

1. First, we'll need to open the main storyboard. Because newly created projects use storyboards by default, your app's interface is stored in the *Main.storyboard* file.

Open it by selecting *Main.storyboard* in the project navigator. The editor will change to show the application's single, blank frame. You may need to pan or zoom the view around in order to fit it on your monitor.

2. Next, we need to drag in a button. We're going to add a single button to the frame. All user interface controls are kept in the *Object library*, which is at the bottom of the utilities pane on the right hand side of the screen.

To find the button, you can either scroll through the list until you find Button, or type **button** in the search field at the bottom of the library.

Once you've located it, drag it into the frame.

3. At this point, we need to configure the button. Every item that you add to an interface can be configured. For now, we'll change only the text on the button.

Select the new button by clicking it, and select the Attributes Inspector, which is the third tab from the right at the top of the utilities pane. You can also reach it by pressing **⌘-Option-4**.

There are many attributes on the button; look for the one labeled Title. The Title attribute has two different components inside of it, a drop-down box and a text field containing the text “Button.” In the text field, change the button’s Title to “Hello!”



You can also change the button’s title by double-clicking it in the interface.

Our simple interface is now complete ([Figure 1-18](#)). The only thing left to do is to connect it to code.

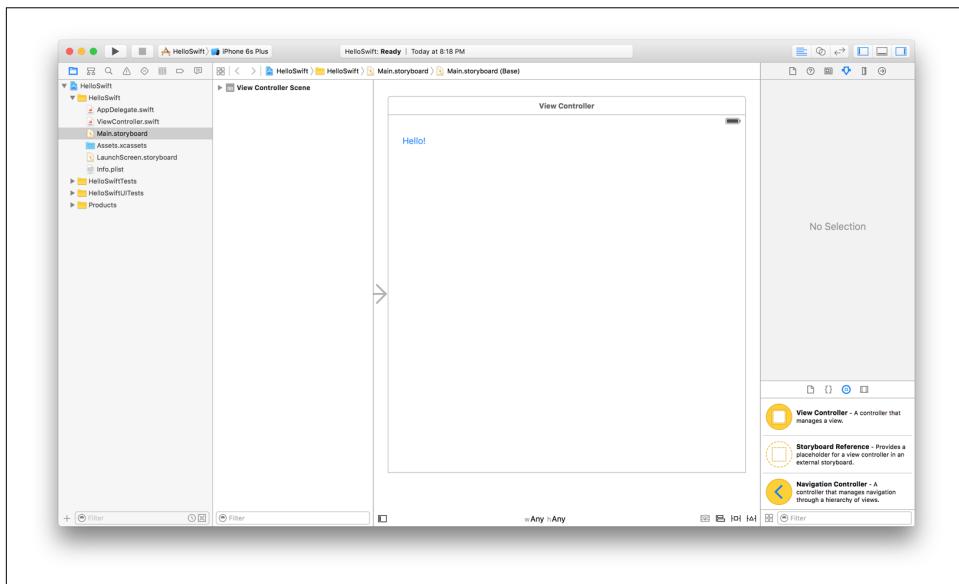


Figure 1-18. Our completed simple interface

Connecting the Code

Applications aren’t just interfaces—as a developer, you also need to write code. To work with the interface you’ve designed, you need to create connections between your code and your interface.

There are two kinds of connections that you can make:

- *Outlets* are variables that refer to objects in the interface. Using outlets, you can instruct a button to change color or size, or to hide itself. There are also *outlet collections*, which allow you to create an array of outlets and choose which objects it contains in the interface builder.
- *Actions* are methods in your code that are run in response to the user interacting with an object. These interactions include the user touching a finger to an object, dragging a finger, and so on.

To make the application behave as we've just described—tapping the button displays a label and changes the button's text—we'll need to use both an outlet and an action. The action will run when the button is tapped, and will use the outlet connection to the button to modify its label.

To create actions and outlets, you need to have both the interface builder and its corresponding code open. Then hold down the Control key and drag from an object in the interface builder to your code (or to another object in the interface builder, if you want to make a connection between two objects in your interface).

We'll now create the necessary connections:

1. First, open the assistant by selecting the second button in the editor selector in the toolbar. The symbol is two interlocking circles.

The assistant should open and show the corresponding code for the interface `ViewController.swift`. If it doesn't, click the intertwining circles icon (which represents the assistant) inside the jump bar and navigate to `Automatic→ViewController.swift`. Make sure you don't select the assistant symbol in the toolbar, as that will close the assistant editor.

2. Create the button's outlet. Hold down the Control key and drag from the button into the space below the first `{` in the code.

A pop-up window will appear. Leave everything as the default, but change the Name to `helloButton`. Click Connect.

A new line of code will appear: Xcode has created the connection for you, which appears in your code as a property in your class:

```
@IBOutlet weak var helloButton : UIButton
```

3. Create the button's action. Hold down the Control key, and again drag from the button into the space below the line of code we just created. A pop-up window will again appear.

This time, change the Connection from Outlet to Action, set the Name to `showAlert`, and click Connect.

More code will appear. Xcode has created the connection, which is a method inside the `ViewController` class:

```
@IBAction func showAlert(sender: AnyObject) {  
}
```

4. In the `showAlert` method you just created, add in the new code:

```
var alert = UIAlertController(title: "Hello!", message: "Hello, world!",  
    preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert) ❶  
alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Close",  
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: nil)) ❷  
self.presentViewController(alert, animated: true, completion: nil) ❸  
self.helloButton.setTitle("Test!", forState: UIControlState.Normal) ❹
```

This code does the following things:

- ❶ It creates a `UIAlertController`, which displays a message to the user in a pop-up window. It prepares it by setting its title to “Hello!” and the text inside the window to “Hello, world!”
- ❷ Finally, an action that dismisses the alert is added, with the text “Close”.
- ❸ The alert is then shown to the user.
- ❹ Finally, it sets the title of the button to “Test!”

The application is now ready to run. Click the Run button in the upper-left corner. The application will launch in the iPhone simulator. Don’t worry if the app takes a while to launch the first time; the simulator can take a fair amount of time on first launch.



If you happen to have an iPhone or iPad connected to your computer, Xcode will try to launch the application on the device rather than in the simulator. To make Xcode use the simulator, go to the Scheme menu in the upper-left corner of the window and change the selected scheme to the simulator.

When the app finishes launching in the simulator, tap the button. An alert will appear; when you close it, you’ll notice that the button’s text has changed.

Using the iOS Simulator

The iOS simulator ([Figure 1-19](#)) allows you to test out iOS applications without having to use actual devices. It’s a useful tool, but keep in mind that the simulator behaves very differently compared to a real device.

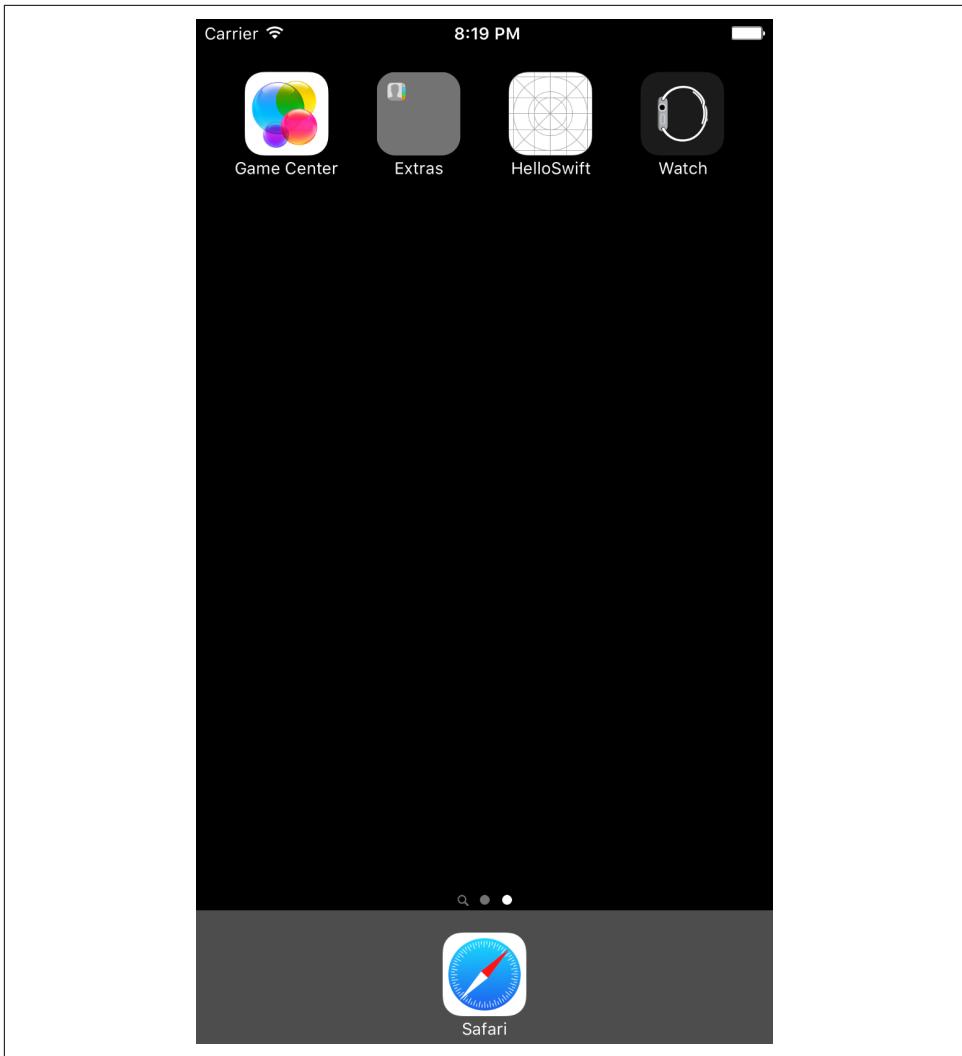


Figure 1-19. The iOS simulator

For one thing, the simulator is a lot faster than a real device and has a lot more memory. That's because the simulator makes use of your computer's resources—if your Mac has 8 GB of RAM, so will the simulator and if you're building a processor-intensive application, it will run much more smoothly on the simulator than on a real device.

The iOS simulator can simulate many different kinds of devices: everything from the iPad 2 to the latest iPad Pro, and from the Retina display 3.5- and 4-inch iPhone-

sized devices to the latest 4.7-inch and 5.5-inch iPhones. It can also test on variable size devices.

To change the device, open the Hardware menu, choose Device, and select the device you want to simulate. You can also change which simulator to use via the scheme selector in Xcode. Each simulator device is unique, and they do not share information. So if you want to test your application on different simulators, you will need to build it again through Xcode.



If you change hardware in the simulator while running an app, it will crash and Xcode will alert you. Be wary of changing the hardware in the simulator while testing applications unless you really like crashes.

You can also simulate hardware events, such as the home button being pressed or the iPhone being locked. To simulate pressing the home button, you can either choose Hardware→Home, or press ⌘-Shift-H. To lock the device, press ⌘-L or choose Hardware→Lock.

There are a number of additional features in the simulator, which we'll examine more closely as they become relevant to the various parts of iOS we'll be discussing.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we've looked at the basics of the Apple Developer Program, as well as the tools used for building apps. We've also made a really quick and simple iOS app, just to give you a taste of the process. In the next two chapters, we'll look at the Swift programming language, using a feature of Xcode and Swift called Playgrounds to work with Swift code outside of the application context.

CHAPTER 2

The Basics of Swift

The Swift programming language was first introduced in June 2014 at Apple’s Worldwide Developers Conference (WWDC). Swift was a surprise to everyone: Apple had managed to develop an entire language (as well as all of the supporting libraries, developer tools, and documentation) *and* make it work seamlessly with the existing Objective-C language. And on top of that, it was a really good “1.0” language.

In June 2015, Apple announced Swift 2.0, improving the performance of the language, adding a collection of new features, and making the Cocoa and Cocoa Touch platform APIs more Swift-like in style. Swift was open sourced on December 3, 2015. We can expect Swift to evolve over time, in line with the developments in the [Swift Open Source project](#).



Xcode supports having multiple versions of the Swift language installed. You might have a different version of the language if, for example, you’ve downloaded a copy of Swift from the open source project. For information on how to get a copy and use it in Xcode, go to the [Swift project’s Download page](#).

This book covers version 2.2 of Swift.



If you have older Swift code that you need to update to the latest stable Swift syntax, Xcode provides a converter. Open the Edit menu and choose Convert→To Latest Swift Syntax... to get started.

Swift draws upon an extensive history of language design and has a number of very cool design features that make developing software easier, simpler, and safer. We’ll

begin this chapter with a high-level overview of what Swift aims to do, and how it sets about doing it, before we dive into the details of the language.



As Swift develops, it's likely that some of the syntax that we use in this book will become out of date, or change (as is true for any programming book). We'll keep the book's page on [our site](#) up to date with a changelog for the latest Swift for as long as we're able.

In this chapter, you'll learn the basics of coding in Swift 2. At the time of writing, the stable version of Swift is version 2.2, which was released on March 21, 2016.

The Swift Programming Language

The Swift programming language has the following goals:

Safety

Swift is designed to be a safe language. Many of the pitfalls of C, such as accidentally working with null pointers, are much harder to encounter. Swift is very strongly typed, and objects aren't allowed to be null except under very specific circumstances.

Modernity

Swift contains a large number of modern language features designed to make it easy to express the logic of your code. These include pattern-matching `switch` statements (see “[Switches](#)” on page 34), closures (“[Closures](#)” on page 55), and the concept of all values being objects that you can attach properties and functions to (“[Extensions](#)” on page 67).

Power

Swift has access to the entire Objective-C runtime, and is seamlessly bridged to Objective-C's classes. This means that you can use Swift right away to write full iOS and OS X apps—you don't need to wait for anyone to port any features from Objective-C to Swift. And if you've never used Objective-C, then you don't need to worry about Objective-C! You can do everything you need to develop for Apple platforms using Swift.

So, what does Swift look like? Here's an example:

```
func sumNumbers(numbers: Int...) -> Int { ❶
    var total = 0 ❷
    for number in numbers { ❸
        total += number ❹
    }
    return total ❺
}
```

```
let sum = sumNumbers(2,3,4,5) ⑥
print(sum) ⑦
```

This code snippet does the following things:

- ➊ First, a function called `sumNumbers` is defined. This function takes one or more `Int` values, which are integers (whole numbers), and returns a single `Int`. The `Int...` denotes that the function takes a variable number of `Int` values; you can access these values through the `numbers` variable, which is an array.
- ➋ Inside the function, the variable `total` is declared. Note that the type isn't given—the compiler knows that it stores an `Int`, because it's being set to the integer value of 0.
- ➌ Next, a `for-in` loop starts up, which loops over every number that was sent to the method. Notice again that the type of the `number` variable isn't defined—the compiler infers that, given that `numbers` is an array of `Int` values, `number` should itself be an `Int`.
- ➍ The value of `number` is added to `total`.
- ➎ When the loop is complete, `total` is returned.
- ➏ The function `sumNumbers` is called with a collection of integers, and the result is stored in the new variable `sum`. This variable is *constant*: by defining it with the `let` keyword, we tell the compiler that its value never changes. Attempting to change the value of a constant is an error.
- ➐ Finally, we display the value using the `print` function, which prints values out to the console.

There are a few interesting things to note here:

- You usually don't need to define the type of variables. The compiler will do that for you, based on what values you're using.
- Even though the `sumNumbers` function takes a variable number of parameters, there's no weird syntax to deal with it (if you're a C or C++ programmer, you might remember struggling with `va_start` and friends).
- Variables that are declared with the `let` keyword are constants. The language is designed so that any variables that can be a constant should be one, in order to prevent accidental changes later. Importantly, constants in Swift don't have to be

known at compile time. Instead, you can think of them as variables that are set only once.

Swift 1 Versus Swift 2

If you already know Swift 1 and want to quickly get up to speed with what's new in the Swift 2 universe, here's a quick rundown of the main features:

- The `println` function has been renamed to `print` and supports a wider range of possibilities, including custom-separated and terminated strings.
- Strings in Swift 1.0 behaved, essentially, like arrays in C and were an array of characters. Now they're not, but you can still access the characters that make up a string via the `.characters` property.
- Error handling has changed; errors are now thrown in a similar way to exceptions, through `do-catch`. We'll be covering this in more detail in “[Error Handling](#)” on page 77.
- Because the `do` keyword is now used for the `do-catch` error handling construct, the `do-while` syntax has been replaced with `repeat-while`.
- The `defer` syntax allows you to write code that is run when the current scope exits; for example, you can allocate a resource, and in the next line, use `defer` to signal that the resource should be released when flow exits the current function.
- The `guard` syntax allows you to ensure that a condition is true, or else code flow will immediately exit. We'll be covering `guard` more in “[The guard Keyword](#)” on page 57.

Playgrounds

The easiest way to learn Swift is to use a *playground*. Playgrounds are environments that let you write Swift code and see its results instantly. You don't need to build and run your code to see the results, and the code doesn't need to be a part of a larger app. This means that if you want to play around with the language, a function, or even with a piece of a larger app, you don't need to make it part of an entire app.

The remainder of this chapter (but not the remainder of the book!) is written assuming that the code is being run in a playground. You should get used to working in one if you want to follow along! Playgrounds are really useful, and we strongly recommend you use them when experimenting with and learning Swift.



It's really useful to have quick access to a playground when you're learning and ultimately working with Swift. We recommend dragging a playground file (from wherever you saved it in the Finder) to your OS X Dock. That way, you can use it to test Swift code quickly and easily.

To start using a playground, you can create one from the "Welcome to Xcode" screen that appears when Xcode starts up (see [Figure 2-1](#)).

You can also choose File→New→New Playground and create a new playground from there. We'll be working with iOS playgrounds in this part.



The difference between iOS and OS X playgrounds is simply the libraries they have access to. For the purposes of these next few chapters, there's not a huge distinction between the two, but if you were making a playground that specifically tested some iOS code, you'd need to create an iOS playground.

When you create a playground, you'll see something that looks like [Figure 2-2](#). On the left hand side of the window, you can type Swift code. On the right hand side of the window, you'll see the result of each line of code that you write.

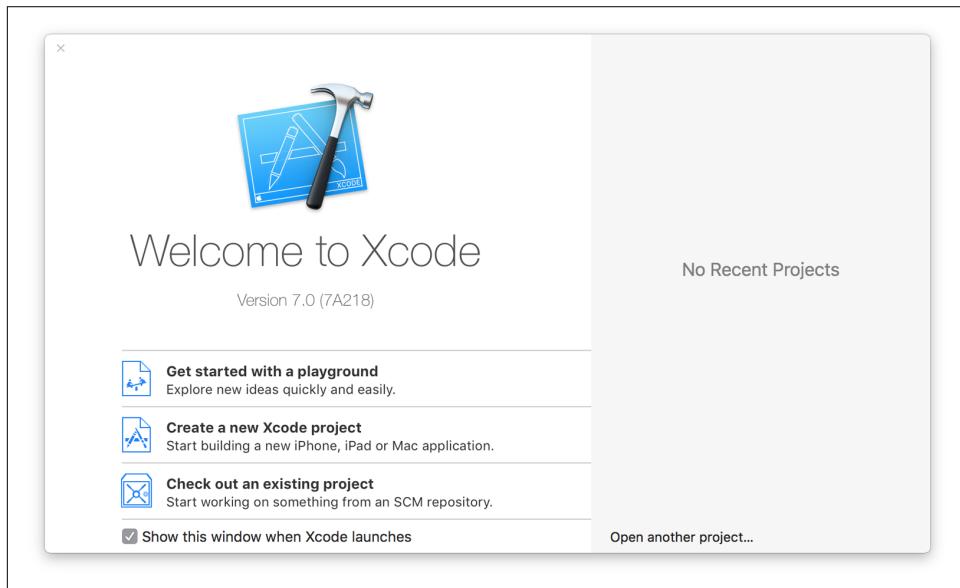
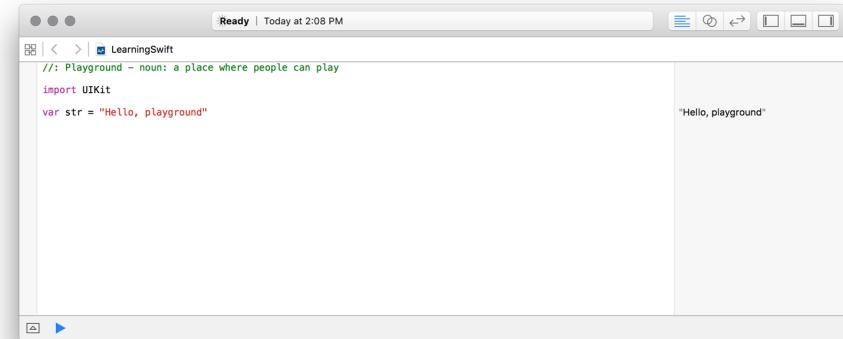


Figure 2-1. The Welcome to Xcode screen (click "Get started with a playground" to create a new playground)



The screenshot shows a Mac OS X window titled "Ready | Today at 2:08 PM" with the title bar "LearningSwift". The main area contains Swift code:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import UIKit
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

To the right of the code, the output is displayed as a single line: "Hello, playground".

Figure 2-2. An empty playground

Comments

Comments in Swift are nonexecutable text. You can use comments as a note or reminder to yourself. We use comments often in sample code in this book; they are ignored by the compiler.

You can begin a single-line comment with two forward slashes (//) or open a multi-line comment using a forward slash and an asterisk /*) and close it using an asterisk followed by a forward slash (*/). Multiline comments can be nested:

```
// This is a single-line comment.

/* This is a multiple-line
comment. */

/*
This is a comment.

/* This is also a comment, inside the first! */

Still a comment!
*/
```



Playgrounds (and only playgrounds) support a rich-text markup within comments that allows you to define headings, lists, and quotes, as well as include images and links. You can learn more about this in [Apple's Markup Formatting Reference](#).

Control Flow

In every program you write, you'll want control over what code gets executed and when. For this, we'll make use of `if` statements, loops, and so on. The syntax for control flow in Swift is very straightforward, and includes some handy additional features as well.

`if` statements in Swift are pretty much the same as in any other language, though in Swift there's no need to wrap the expression you're checking in parentheses:

```
if 1+1 == 2 {  
    print("The math checks out")  
}  
// Prints "The math checks out", which is a relief.
```

In Swift, the body of all `if` statements—as well as all loops—must be put between two braces (`{` and `}`). In C, C++, Java, and Objective-C, you can omit these braces if you just want to have a single statement in your loop or `if` statement, like this:

```
if (something)  
    doSomething(); // NOT allowed in Swift!
```

However, this has led to all kinds of bugs and security problems caused by programmers forgetting to include braces. So, in Swift, they're mandatory.

Loops

When you have a collection of items, such as an array, you can use a `for-in` loop to iterate over every item:

```
let loopingArray = [1,2,3,4,5]  
var loopSum = 0  
for number in loopingArray {  
    loopSum += number  
}  
loopSum // = 15
```

The `number` variable used in the `for-in` loop is implicitly created. You don't need to define a variable called `number` to make it work.

You can also use a `for-in` loop to iterate over a range of values. For example:

```
var firstCounter = 0  
for index in 1 ..< 10 {  
    firstCounter += 1  
}  
// Loops 9 times
```

Note the `..<<` operator on the second line. This is a *range* operator, which Swift uses to describe a range of numbers from one value to another. There are actually two range operators: two dots and a left-angle bracket (`..<<`) and *three* dots and no angle bracket (`...<`).

(...). Called the *half-range operator*, `<..` means a range that starts at the first value and goes up to but does not include the last value. For example, the range `5..<9` contains the numbers 5, 6, 7, and 8. If you want to create a range that *does* include the last number, you instead use the *closed-range operator* (...). The range `5...9` contains the numbers 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. You can use an inclusive range operator in `for-in` loops like so:

```
var secondCounter = 0
for index in 1 ... 10 { // Note the three dots, not two.
    secondCounter += 1
}
// Loops 10 times.
```

A `while` loop lets you repeatedly run code while a certain condition remains true. For example:

```
var countDown = 5
while countDown > 0 {
    countDown -= 1
}
countDown // = 0
```

`while` loops check to see if the condition at the start of the loop evaluates to `true`, and if it does, they run the code (and then return to the start). In addition to `while` loops, the `repeat-while` loop runs the code at least once and *then* checks the condition:

```
var countUp = 0
repeat {
    countUp += 1
} while countUp < 5
countUp // = 5
```



You can include the values of variables in strings by using the following syntax:

```
let myNumber = 3
let myString = "My number is \(myNumber)"
// = "My number is 3"
```

You can also include the results of expressions:

```
let OtherString = "My number plus one is \(myNumber + 1)"
// = "My number plus one is 4"
```

Switches

A *switch* is a powerful way to run code depending on the value of a variable. Switches exist in other languages, but Swift kicks them into high gear.

To run different code based on the value of an integer, you can use a `switch` statement like this:

```
let integerSwitch = 3

switch integerSwitch {
case 0:
    print("It's 0")
case 1:
    print("It's 1")
case 2:
    print("It's 2")
default: // Note: default is mandatory if not all
    // cases are covered (or can be covered).
    print("It's something else")
}
// Prints "It's something else".
```

In Swift, you can use the `switch` statement to handle more than just integers. You can switch on many things, including `String` values:

```
let stringSwitch = "Hello"

switch stringSwitch {
case "Hello":
    print("A greeting")
case "Goodbye":
    print("A farewell")
default:
    print("Something else")
}
// Prints "A greeting"
```

You can also switch on *tuples*, variables that are bundles of similar data; they're covered more in “[Tuples](#)” on page 44. This functionality is especially powerful, as you can write cases that run when only one of the components matches your condition:

```
let tupleSwitch = ("Yes", 123)

switch tupleSwitch {
case ("Yes", 123):
    print("Tuple contains 'Yes' and '123'")
case ("Yes", _):
    print("Tuple contains 'Yes' and something else")
case (let string, _):
    print("Tuple contains the string '\(string)' and something else")
default:
    break
}
// Prints "Tuple contains 'Yes' and '123'"
```

Finally, you can also use ranges in switches to create code that runs when the value you’re testing falls between certain ranges:

```
var someNumber = 15

switch someNumber {
    case 0...10:
        print("Number is between 0 and 10")
    case 11...20:
        print("Number is between 11 and 20")
    case 21:
        print("Number is 21!")
    default:
        print("Number is something else")
}
// Prints "Number is between 11 and 20"
```

Switches in Swift work a little differently than switches in C and Objective-C. In Swift, the execution of a section in a `switch` statement doesn't automatically “fall through” into the next section, which means you don't need to include a `break` keyword at the end of your section.



If you *do* want execution to fall through from one case into the next, you use the `fallthrough` keyword, like so:

```
let fallthroughSwitch = 10

switch fallthroughSwitch {
    case 0..<20:
        print("Number is between 0 and 20")
        fallthrough
    case 0..<30:
        print("Number is between 0 and 30")
    default:
        print("Number is something else")
}
// Prints "Number is between 0 and 20" and then
// "Number is between 0 and 30"
```

Additionally, `switch` statements are required to be *exhaustive*. This means that the `switch` statement must cover all possible values. If you're switching using a `Bool` type, which can either be `true` or `false`, you *must* provide handlers for both values. If you don't, it's a compiler error.

However, it's sometimes not possible to cover all cases. In the case of integers, for example, it's impossible to write a case for all possible numbers. In these cases, you provide a `default` case, which is shorthand for “every other possible value.” So, to recap: in Swift, you either provide a case for all possible values, or you provide a `default` case.



If multiple cases in a `switch` statement overlap—for example, `case 0...10` and `case 5...15`—then the first matching case will be used.

Variables and Constants

You define a variable in Swift using either the `let` or `var` keyword:

```
var myVariable = 123
let myConstantVariable = 123
```

When you define a variable using `var`, you’re allowed to change its value. If you define one using `let`, it’s never allowed to change. Swift encourages you to use constants as much as possible, because they’re safer—if you know that a value can never change, it won’t cause a bug by changing without you knowing about it:

```
myVariable += 5

myConstantVariable += 2
// (ERROR: can't change a constant variable)
```

In addition to letting the compiler infer the type of your variables, you can also explicitly tell the compiler what value the variable should have:

```
// Explicit type of integer
let anExplicitInteger : Int = 2
```

Variables and constants are allowed to initially have no value, but you need to assign a value to them before you try to access them. In other words, if you create a variable and don’t give it a value, the only thing you can do with it is to give it a value. After that, you can use it as normal:

```
var someVariable : Int
someVariable += 2
// ERROR: someVariable doesn't have a value, so can't add 2 to it
someVariable = 2
someVariable += 2
// WORKS, because someVariable has a value to add to
```



Unlike many popular languages, Swift doesn't require that you end your lines of code with a semicolon. However, if you want to, that's totally OK.

You can also break your lines of code over multiple lines without problems, like this:

```
var someVariable =  
    "Yes"
```

The single exception to the rule of not needing to use semicolons is when you want to put multiple statements on a single line. In those cases, you separate the statements with a semicolon:

```
someVariable = "No"; print(someVariable)
```

Operators

To work with the contents of variables, you use *operators*. There's a wide variety of operators built into Swift, the most common of which are the arithmetic operators (+, -, /, *, etc.):

```
1 + 7 // 8  
6 - 5 // 1  
4 / 2 // 2  
4 * 0 // 0
```



In almost all cases, operators can only be used with two values of the same type (see “[Types](#) on page 39”). If you try to divide a number by a string, you'll get a compile error.

In addition to these basic operators, you'll also frequently work with *equality* and *inequality* operators. These check to see whether two values are the same:

```
2 == 2 // true  
2 != 2 // false  
"yes" == "no" // false  
"yes" != "no" // true
```

Finally, the third most frequent operator you'll encounter is the `.` operator, which lets you access methods and properties:

```
true.description // "true"  
4.advancedBy(3) // 7
```



We'll be covering methods and properties in more detail in “[Classes and Objects](#)” on page 59.

Types

Swift out of the box includes a variety of types to cover many basic situations:

Int

Represents whole numbers (e.g., 1)

Double

Represents decimal numbers (e.g., 1.2)

String

Represents a list of characters (e.g., "hello world")

Bool

Represents Boolean state (i.e., true or false)

These aren't the only basic types that come with Swift, but they're the ones you'll run into the most.

You don't need to define what type the variable is. Swift will infer its type from its initial value. This means that when you define a variable and set it to the value 2, that variable will be an Int:

```
// Implicit type of integer
var anInteger = 2
```

Most types can't be combined, because the compiler doesn't know what the result would be. For example, you can't add a String to an Int value, because the result is meaningless:

```
// ERROR: can't add a string to an integer
anInteger += "Yes"
```

Working with Strings

In Swift, strings are sequences of Unicode characters. This means that they're able to store pretty much any character that has ever been a part of a human language, which is great news for making your app translatable to other languages.

Creating a string in Swift is easy. You can create an empty string by creating a string literal with nothing in it:

```
let emptyString = ""
```

You can also create an empty string by using the `String` type's initializer:

```
let anotherEmptyString = String()
```

To check to see if a string is empty, you use the `isEmpty` property:

```
emptyString.isEmpty // = true
```

You can also combine strings by using the `+` and `+=` operators:

```
var composingAString = "Hello"  
composingAString += ", World!" // = "Hello, World!"
```

Internally a string is a sequence of `Character` objects, each representing a Unicode character. To loop over every character in a string, you can use a `for-in` loop:

```
var reversedString = ""  
for character in "Hello".characters {  
    reversedString = String(character) + reversedString  
}  
reversedString // = "olleH"
```

To work out how many characters are in a string, you use the `count` function:

```
"Hello".characters.count // = 5
```



The `count` function actually works on any collection, including arrays and dictionaries.

Note that the number of characters in a string is *not* the same as the number of bytes. Unicode characters can range in size from 1 byte to 4 bytes, depending on their type (emoji, for example, are 4 bytes).

To change the case of a string, you use the `uppercaseString` and `lowercaseString` properties, which return modified versions of the original string:

```
string1.uppercaseString // = "HELLO"  
string2.lowercaseString // = "hello"
```

Comparing Strings

To compare two different strings, you just use the `==` operator. This operator checks the contents of two strings to see if they contain the same characters:

```
let string1 : String = "Hello"  
let string2 : String = "Hel" + "lo"  
  
if string1 == string2 {  
    print("The strings are equal")  
}
```



In other languages like C and Objective-C, the `==` operator checks to see if two values are equal, or if two variables refer to the same location in memory. If you really do want to see if two string variables refer to the same object, you use the `===` operator (note that it's three equals signs, instead of two):

```
if string1 as AnyObject === string2 as AnyObject {  
    print("The strings are the same object")  
}
```

`AnyObject` in Swift means “any object, of any type.”

Searching Strings

You can check to see if a string has a given suffix or prefix by using the `hasPrefix` and `hasSuffix` methods:

```
if string1.hasPrefix("H") {  
    print("String begins with an H")  
}  
if string1.hasSuffix("llo") {  
    print("String ends in 'llo'")  
}
```

Optional Types

It's often very useful to have variables that can sometimes have no value. For example, you might have a variable that stores a number to display to the user, but you don't know what that number is yet. As we've seen already, Swift variables need to have a value. One solution might be to use the number zero to represent “no value”; indeed, many languages, including C, C++, Java, and Objective-C, do just this. However, this creates a problem: there is no way to distinguish between the value zero and no value at all. What if the value you want to show is actually zero?

To deal with this issue, Swift makes a very clear distinction between “no value” and all other values. “No value” is referred to as `nil` and is a different type from all others.



If you're coming from Objective-C, you might remember that `nil` is actually defined as a `void` pointer to zero. This makes it technically a number, which means, in Objective-C, you can do things like this:

```
int i = (int)(nil)+2;  
// Equals 2 (because 0 + 2 = 2)
```

This isn't allowed in Swift, because `nil` and `Int` are different types.

However, recall that all variables in Swift are required to have values. If you want a variable to be allowed to *sometimes* be `nil`, you make it an *optional* variable. This is

useful in situations where you don't know if something will occur; for example, when downloading an image from the Internet, you do not know if you will get back a valid image file or gibberish. You define optional variables by using a question mark (?) as part of their type:

```
// Optional integer, allowed to be nil
var anOptionalInteger : Int? = nil
anOptionalInteger = 42
```

Only optional variables are allowed to be set to `nil`. If a variable isn't defined as optional, it's not allowed to be set to the `nil` value:

```
// Nonoptional (regular), NOT allowed to be nil
var aNonOptionalInteger = 42

aNonOptionalInteger = nil
// ERROR: only optional values can be nil
```



If you create an optional variable and don't assign it a value, it will default to `nil`.

You can check to see if an optional variable has a value by using an `if` statement:

```
if anOptionalInteger != nil {
    print("It has a value!")
} else {
    print("It has no value!")
}
```

When you have an optional variable, you can *unwrap* it to get at its value. You do this using the `!` character.

Note that if you unwrap an optional variable, and it has no value, your program will throw a runtime error, and the program will crash:

```
// Optional types must be unwrapped using !
anOptionalInteger = 2
1 + anOptionalInteger! // = 3

anOptionalInteger = nil
1 + anOptionalInteger!
// CRASH: anOptionalInteger = nil, can't use nil data.
```

If you don't want to unwrap your optional variables every time you want to use them, you can declare a variable as an *implicitly unwrapped optional*, like this:

```
var implicitlyUnwrappedOptionalInteger : Int!
implicitlyUnwrappedOptionalInteger = 1
1 + implicitlyUnwrappedOptionalInteger // = 2
```

Implicitly unwrapped optionals are regular optionals: they can either contain `nil`, or not. However, whenever you access their value, the compiler unwraps it.

This lets you use their values directly but can be unsafe, because when an optional is unwrapped and has no value, your program crashes.



Implicitly unwrapped optionals let you get away with not explicitly unwrapping them when you use them, which can make you forget that they can sometimes be `nil`. Use this with caution.

You can use an `if-let` statement to check to see if an optional variable has a value, and if it does, assign that value to a constant (*nonoptional*) variable, and then run some code. This can save you quite a few lines of code, while preserving the safety of first checking to see if an optional variable actually has a value to work with.

An `if-let` statement looks like this:

```
var conditionalString : String? = "a string"

if let theString = conditionalString {
    print("The string is '\(theString)'")
} else {
    print("The string is nil")
}
// Prints "The string is 'a string'"
```

Type Casting

Swift is strongly typed. This means that it relies upon objects being of the type it expects when passing arguments to functions. Sometimes you need to check the type of an instance, or treat it as a different type, and that's where *type casting* comes in.

Using the `is`, `as!`, and `as?` operators, you can test for types, as well as downcast—that is, treat an instance as one of its subclasses. (We'll discuss subclasses in “[Inheritance](#)” on page 62.)

You can also use these operators to check whether a type conforms to a protocol. We'll touch more on protocols later, in “[Protocols](#)” on page 66.

You can use the `is` operator to check if an instance is a certain subclass, for example:

```
if thing is String {
    print("Thing is a string!")
}
```

The `as?` operator checks the type of a variable and returns an optional value of the specified type:

```
var maybeString = thing as? String  
  
// maybeString is a String?-an optional string.  
// If the check didn't work, maybeString will be nil.
```

Use the `as!` operator works in the same way as the `as?` operator, except that it returns a *nonoptional* value of the specified type. If the value can't be converted to the desired type, your program crashes.



The `as!` operator is for when you're absolutely sure that the value you're converting is the right type, and you don't want to work with optionals.

```
var definitelyString = thing as! String  
  
// definitelyString is a String, and is guaranteed to have a value.
```

You can convert between certain types in Swift. For example, to convert an `Int` to a `String`, you do this:

```
let aString = String(2)  
// = "2"
```

Note that not all types can be converted to other types. It depends on the specific types you're trying to convert between, and the precise value of the thing you're trying to convert. For example, the `String` "2" can be converted to an `Int`, but the `String` "Hello" can't.

You also can't convert types by directly assigning variables—you must explicitly cast. Attempting to assign a value of one type to a variable with another produces an error:

```
// ERROR: can't directly convert between types  
let aString = anInteger
```

Tuples

A *tuple* is a simple collection of data. Tuples let you bundle any number of values of any type together into a single value:

```
let aTuple = (1, "Yes")
```

Once you have a tuple, you can get values out of it by index:

```
let theNumber = aTuple.0 // = 1
```

In addition to using indices to get the values out of a tuple, you can also apply labels to values inside tuples:

```
let anotherTuple = (aNumber: 1, aString: "Yes")
let theOtherNumber = anotherTuple.aNumber // = 1
```

Arrays

Arrays are ordered lists of values and are very easy to create in Swift. To create an array, you use square brackets ([]):

```
// Array of integers
let arrayOfIntegers : [Int] = [1,2,3]
```

Swift can also infer the type of the array:

```
// Type of array is implied
let implicitArrayOfIntegers = [1,2,3]
```



Arrays can contain a mix of different types of values. However, if you do this, Swift will be forced to assume that it's an array of objects of an unknown type, instead of an array of a single type.

You can create an empty array as well, though you need to manually specify its type if you do this:

```
// You can also create an empty array, but you must provide the type.
let anotherArray = [Int]()
```



While most of the time your arrays will all be single-value types, you can mix and match types in a single array.

Once you have an array, you can work with its contents. For example, you can append objects to the end of the array using the `append` function:

```
var myArray = [1,2,3]
myArray.append(4)
// = [1,2,3,4]
```

In addition to appending to the end of the array, you can also insert objects at any point in the array. Swift arrays start at index 0, making this code identical to using `append`:

```
myArray.insert(5, atIndex: 0)
// = [5,1,2,3,4]
```



You can't insert items into an array beyond its bounds. For example, if you tried to insert an item at element 99, it wouldn't work and would throw a runtime error (i.e., your program would crash). Typically, the two most common cases in which you add things to an array are when you add them to the end (using `append`) and at the start (using `insert` at index 0).

You can also remove items from an array. Doing so automatically reindexes the array so you don't end up with empty elements inside your arrays. To remove an item, you indicate its index in the array. So to remove the fifth element from the array, you'd do this:

```
myArray.removeAtIndex(4)  
// = [5, 1, 2, 3]
```

You can also quickly reverse the contents of an array using the `reverse` function:

```
myArray.reverse()  
// = [3, 2, 1, 5]
```



It is worth noting that in this example, the `reverse` function doesn't reverse `myArray` but instead returns a new array that is the reverse of `myArray`.

Finally, it's often useful to know how many items are in an array. You can work this out using the array's `count` property:

```
myArray.count  
// = 4
```



Arrays are frequently in `for-in` loops; see “[Enumerations](#)” on page [47](#).

If you define an array with the `let` keyword, its contents become *immutable* (i.e., it's not allowed to change its contents):

```
let immutableArray = [42, 24]
```



When you create an array by using the shorthand of a list of comma-separated values, surrounded by square brackets, you are initializing it as an *array literal*. This is just shorthand for the full initializer; `[42, 24]` actually gets compiled to `Array(arrayLiteral: 42, 24)`.

Dictionaries

A *dictionary* is a type that maps *keys* to *values*. Dictionaries are useful for when you want to represent a collection of related information.

In a dictionary, you associate a key with a related value. For example, to store information about the crew of a space station, you could use a dictionary like this:

```
var crew = [
    "Captain": "Benjamin Sisko",
    "First Officer": "Kira Nerys",
    "Constable": "Odo"
];
```

When you have a dictionary, you can access its contents through *subscripting*—that is, using square brackets ([and]) after a variable's name to describe what you want to get from that variable. For example, to get the "Captain" value from the `crew` variable, you do this:

```
crew["Captain"]
// = "Benjamin Sisko"
```

You can also set values in a dictionary using subscripting. For example, to register the fact that Julian Bashir is the station's doctor:

```
crew["Doctor"] = "Julian Bashir"
```

In the previous example, we're talking about a dictionary that uses `String` values for both its keys and its values. However, it doesn't have to be set up this way—dictionaries can actually contain almost any value. For example, you can make a dictionary use `Int` values for both keys and values:

```
// This dictionary uses integers for both keys and values.
var aNumberDictionary = [1: 2]
aNumberDictionary[21] = 23
```

You can mix and match different types in your arrays and dictionaries; for example, you can make a dictionary that contains both strings and integers as values:

```
var aMixedDictionary = ["one": 1, "two": "twoooo"]
// The type of this dictionary is [String: NSObject],
// allowing it to have basically any type of value.
```

Enumerations

Creating an enumeration is an easy way to group a collection of related or like values and work with them in a safe, clean way. An enumeration is a first-class type that is restricted to a defined list of possible values.

Defining an enumeration is easy. Use the `enum` keyword, name the type, and place each possible case between the braces, using the keyword `case` to differentiate each one:

```
// Enumeration of top-secret future iPads that definitely
// will never exist
enum FutureiPad {
    case iPadSuperPro

    case iPadTotallyPro

    case iPadLudicrous
}
```

Once you've got your enumeration, you can use it like any other variable in Swift:

```
var nextiPad = FutureiPad.iPadTotallyPro
```

You can also change it to a different value of the type:

```
nextiPad = .iPadSuperPro
```

Or use a `switch` statement to match enumeration values:

```
switch nextiPad {
    case .iPadSuperPro:
        print("Too big!")

    case .iPadTotallyPro:
        print("Too small!")

    case .iPadLudicrous:
        print("Just right!")
}
```

You might be familiar with enums, or enumerations in other programming languages. They're much the same in Swift, with the exception that they don't automatically have a corresponding integer value. The members of an enumeration are values themselves, and are of the type of that enumeration. They can, of course, have a corresponding integer number. Because Swift does it this way, enumerations are safe and explicit.

Associated values

Enumerations in Swift allow you to store associated values. The associated values can be any type, and each member of the enumeration can have a different set of values.

For example, if you wanted to represent two types of weapon that a spaceship in a video game could have, you might do this:

```
enum Weapon {
    case Laser
```

```
    case Missiles  
}
```

Using associated values, you could also allow a laser power level, or the range of missiles, to be specified:

```
enum Weapon {  
    case Laser(powerLevel: Int)  
    case Missiles(range: Int)  
}
```

To work with these associated values, you provide them when assigning to the variable:

```
let spaceLaser = Weapon.Laser(powerLevel: 5)
```



Enumerations with associated values aren't so much *containers* for those values as they are a *specialization* of the enumeration's value. Don't think of `Laser(powerLevel: 5)` as "laser, with the number 5 inside it"; instead, think of it as "a laser of value 5."

You can use the `switch` statement with associated values, which allows you to pattern-match on more specific values in your enumeration:

```
switch spaceLaser {  
    case .Laser(powerLevel: 0...10):  
        print("It's a laser with power from 0 to 10!")  
    case .Laser:  
        print("It's a laser!")  
    case .Missiles(let range):  
        print("It's a missile with range \(range)!")  
}  
// Prints "It's a laser with power from 0 to 10!"
```

Sets

A *set* lets you store a collection of unique values of the same type. Sets are unordered and can store anything from integers and strings to classes or structs.

You can create an empty set by using the `Set` type's initializer. When you do, you specify the type of values that will be stored in the set:

```
var setOfStrings = Set<String>()
```

Alternatively, you can create a set with an array literal. If you do this, Swift will figure out what type to use, based on the type of values in the array:

```
var fruitSet: Set = ["apple", "orange", "orange", "banana"]
```



To be stored in a set, a type must be *hashable*. All the provided types are hashable, but you can also make your own types hashable by making them conform to the Hashable protocol. We talk more about Protocols in “Protocols” on page 66.

Objects in a set are unique. If you add the same object twice to a set, it’s only included in the set once. For example, in the preceding code, we included the string "orange" twice in the array, bringing it to a total of four items; however, if we ask the set how many objects it contains, it will report only three:

```
fruitSet.count  
// = 3
```

You can access or modify a set in all the usual ways, including checking its `count` property, checking if it’s empty, and adding and removing items:

```
if fruitSet.isEmpty {  
    print("My set is empty!")  
}  
  
// Add a new item to the set  
fruitSet.insert("pear")  
  
// Remove an item from the set  
fruitSet.remove("apple")  
// fruitSet now contains {"banana", "pear", "orange"}
```

You can, of course, also iterate over a set, just like you would with an array or dictionary:

```
for fruit in fruitSet {  
    let fruitPlural = fruit + "s"  
    print("You know what's tasty? \(fruitPlural.uppercaseString).")  
}
```



You can also perform unions, intersections, exclusions, and subtractions, as well as check if sets are supersets or subsets of each other. For more information, check out [Apple’s Collection Types documentation](#).

Functions and Closures

In Swift, you define *functions* to perform tasks with data. Functions let you organize your code into small, repeatable chunks, like so:

```
func sayHello() {  
    print("Hello")  
}
```

```
sayHello()
```

Functions can return a value to the code that calls them. When you define a function that returns a type, you must indicate the type of the data that it returns by using the arrow (->) symbol:

```
func usefulNumber() -> Int {  
    return 123  
}  
  
usefulNumber()
```

When the `usefulNumber` function is called, the code between the two braces ({ and }) is run.

You can pass *parameters* to a function inside the parentheses, which it's able to use to do work. When you define parameters for a function, you must also define the type of those parameters:

```
func addNumbers(firstValue: Int, secondValue: Int) -> Int {  
    return firstValue + secondValue  
}  
  
addNumbers(1, secondValue: 2)
```

A function can return a single value, as we've already seen, but it can also return *multiple* values, in the form of a tuple. In addition, you can attach names to the values in the tuple, making it easier to work with the returned value:

```
func processNumbers(firstValue: Int, secondValue: Int)  
    -> (doubled: Int, quadrupled: Int) {  
        return (firstValue * 2, secondValue * 4)  
    }  
processNumbers(2, secondValue: 4)
```

When you call a function that returns a tuple, you can access its value by index or by name (if it has them):

```
// Accessing by number:  
processNumbers(2, secondValue: 4).1 // = 16  
// Same thing but with names:  
processNumbers(2, secondValue: 4).quadrupled // = 16
```

By default, all parameters after the first one must have a *label* associated with them, and the label is necessary in calling the function. You can see this in action in the preceding code sample: the second parameter has `secondValue:` before it. Swift includes this in order to make it easier to read the code; when parameters have labels, it's a lot easier to remember what each parameter is for.

However, sometimes you don't need a label before parameter names, especially when it's very obvious what the parameters are for. In these cases, you can tell Swift to not require a label before the parameters by placing an underscore before the name:

```
func subtractNumbers(num1 : Int, _ num2 : Int) -> Int {  
    return num1 - num2  
}  
  
subtractNumbers(5, 3) // = 2
```



The underscore is used throughout Swift to represent the concept "I don't care what this is." It's an idea that appears in several other languages, such as Prolog.

By default, the label for the parameter is the same as the parameter's name. However, if you prefer to, you can provide a custom label for a parameter. To override the default label for a parameter, you put the label before the parameter's name, like so:

```
func addNumber(firstNumber num1 : Int, toSecondNumber num2: Int) -> Int {  
    return num1 + num2  
}  
  
addNumber(firstNumber: 2, toSecondNumber: 3) // = 5
```

You can also create functions whose parameters have *default* values. This means that you can call these functions and omit certain parameters; if you do, those parameters will use the value used in the function's definition:

```
func multiplyNumbers2 (firstNumber: Int, multiplier: Int = 2) -> Int {  
    return firstNumber * multiplier;  
}  
// Parameters with default values can be omitted  
multiplyNumbers2(2) // = 4
```

Sometimes, you'll want to use functions with a *variable* number of parameters. A parameter with a variable number of values is called a *variadic* parameter. In these cases, you want a function to handle any number of parameters, ranging from 0 to an unlimited number. To do this, use three dots (...) to indicate that a parameter has a variable number of values. Inside the body of the function, the variadic parameter becomes an array, which you can use like any other:

```
func sumNumbers(numbers: Int...) -> Int {  
    // in this function, 'numbers' is an array of Ints  
    var total = 0  
    for number in numbers {  
        total += number  
    }  
    return total
```

```
}
```

```
sumNumbers(2,3,4,5) // = 14
```



When using variable parameters, you can have as many nonvariadic parameters as you like. However, note that you can only have a single variadic parameter, and any parameter listed after a variadic parameter must have an external parameter name.

Normally, function parameters and return values are passed by value; you are given a copy of the parameters and return values. However, if you define a parameter with the `inout` keyword, you can pass the parameter by reference and directly change the value that's stored in the variable. You can use this to swap two variables using a function, like so:

```
func swapValues(inout firstValue: Int, inout _ secondValue: Int) {
    (firstValue, secondValue) = (secondValue, firstValue)
}

var swap1 = 2
var swap2 = 3
swapValues(&swap1, &swap2)
swap1 // = 3
swap2 // = 2
```

When you pass in a variable as an `inout` parameter, you preface it with an ampersand (&). This reminds you that its value is going to change when you call the function.

Using Functions as Variables

You can store functions in variables. To do this, you first declare a variable as capable of storing a function that takes certain parameters and returns a value. Once that's done, you can store *any* function that takes those types of parameters and returns the same type of value in the variable:

```
var numbersFunc: (Int, Int) -> Int;
// numbersFunc can now store any function that takes two Ints & returns an Int

// Using the 'addNumbers' function from before, which takes two numbers
// and adds them
numbersFunc = addNumbers
numbersFunc(2, 3) // = 5
```

Functions can also receive and use other functions as parameters. This means that you can combine functions:

```
func timesThree(number: Int) -> Int {
    return number * 3
}
```

```

func doSomethingToNumber(aNumber: Int, thingToDo: (Int)->Int) -> Int {
    // we've received some function as a parameter, which we refer to as
    // 'thingToDo' inside this function.

    // call the function 'thingToDo' using 'aNumber', and return the result
    return thingToDo(aNumber);
}

// Give the 'timesThree' function to use as 'thingToDo'
doSomethingToNumber(4, thingToDo: timesThree) // = 12

```

Functions can also return *other functions*. This means that you can use a function that creates a new function, which you can use in your code:

```

// This function takes an Int as a parameter. It returns a new function that
// takes an Int parameter and returns an Int.
func createAdder(numberToAdd: Int) -> (Int) -> Int {
    func adder(number: Int) -> Int {
        return number + numberToAdd
    }
    return adder
}
var addTwo = createAdder(2)

// 'addTwo' is now a function that can be called
addTwo(2) // = 4

```

A function can also “capture” a value and use it multiple times. This is a tricky concept, so we’ll go into it in a bit of detail. Consider the following example code:

```

func createIncrementor(incrementAmount: Int) -> () -> Int { ❶
    var amount = 0 ❷
    func incrementor() -> Int { ❸
        amount += incrementAmount ❹
        return amount
    }
    return incrementor ❺
}

var incrementByTen = createIncrementor(10) ❻
incrementByTen() // = 10 ❼
incrementByTen() // = 20

var incrementByFifteen = createIncrementor(15) ❽
incrementByFifteen() // = 15 ❾

```

This example does the following things:

- ❶ The `createIncrementor` function takes an `Int` parameter, and returns a function that takes no parameters and returns an `Int`.
- ❷ Inside the function, a variable called `amount` is created and set to `0`.

- ③ A new function is created inside the `createIncrementor` function, which takes no parameters and returns an `Int`.
- ④ Inside this new function, the `amount` variable has the `incrementAmount` parameter added to it, and then returned. Notice that the `amount` variable is outside of this function.
- ⑤ The `incrementor` function is then returned.
- ⑥ The `createIncrementor` function can then be used to create a new incrementor function. In the first example, one is created with the `incrementAmount` parameter set to `10`.
- ⑦ Each time this function is called, it will return a value that's 10 higher than the last time it was called. The reason it's doing this is because the function that `createIncrementor` returned *captured* the variable `amount`; every time it's called, that variable goes up by `incrementAmount`.
- ⑧ The `amount` variable is not shared between individual functions, however. When a new incrementor is created, it has its own separate `amount` variable.
- ⑨ The second function goes up by 15.

This feature of Swift allows you to create functions that act as *generators*—functions that return different values each time they're called.

Closures

Another feature of Swift is that of *closures*—small, anonymous chunks of code that you can use like functions. Closures are great for passing to other functions in order to tell them how they should carry out a certain task.

To give you an example of how closures work, consider the built-in `sort` function. This function takes an array and a closure, and uses that closure to determine how two individual elements of that array should be ordered (i.e., which one should go first in the array):

```
var sortingInline = [2, 5, 98, 2, 13]
sortingInline.sort() // = [2, 2, 5, 13, 98]
```

To sort an array so that small numbers go before large numbers, you can provide a closure that describes *how* to do the sort, like this:

```
var numbers = [2, 1, 56, 32, 120, 13]
// Sort so that small numbers go before large numbers
```

```
var numbersSorted = numbers.sort({  
    (n1: Int, n2: Int) -> Bool in return n2 > n1  
})  
// = [1, 2, 13, 32, 56, 120]
```

Closures have a special keyword, `in`. The `in` keyword lets Swift know where to break up the closure from its definition and its implementation. So in our previous example, the definition was `(n1: Int, n2: Int)->Bool`, and the implementation of that closure came after the `in` keyword: `return n2 > n1`.



If you come from Objective-C land, the `in` keyword works in a fashion similar to the `^` syntax in blocks.

A closure, like a function, takes parameters. In the preceding example, the closure specifies the name and type of the parameters that it works with. However, you don't need to be quite so verbose—the compiler can infer the type of the parameters for you, much like it can with variables. Notice the lack of types in the parameters for the following closure:

```
var numbersSortedReverse = numbers.sort({n1, n2 in return n1 > n2})  
// = [120, 56, 32, 13, 2, 1]
```

You can make it even more terse, if you don't especially care what names the parameters should have. If you omit the parameter names, you can just refer to each parameter by number (the first parameter is called `$0`, the second is called `$1`, etc.).

Additionally, if your closure only contains a single line of code, you can omit the `return` keyword:

```
var numbersSortedAgain = numbers.sort{  
    $1 > $0  
} // = [1, 2, 13, 32, 56, 120]
```

Finally, if a closure is the last parameter in a function call, you can put it outside the parentheses. This is purely something that improves readability and doesn't change how the closure works:

```
var numbersSortedReversedAgain = numbers.sort {  
    $0 > $1  
} // = [120, 56, 32, 13, 2, 1]
```

The line breaks in this code are optional, too. You could also do this:

```
var numbersSortedReversedOneMoreTime = numbers.sort { $0 > $1 }  
// = [120, 56, 32, 13, 2, 1]
```

Just like functions, closures can be stored in variables. In that case, you can call them just like a function:

```
var comparator = {(a: Int, b:Int) in a < b}
comparator(1,2) // = true
```

The defer Keyword

Sometimes, you'll want to run some code, but at a later date. For example, if you're writing code that opens a file and makes some changes, you'll also need to ensure that the file is closed when you're done. This is important, and it's easy to forget when you start writing your method.

The `defer` keyword lets you write code that will run at a later time. Specifically, code you put in a `defer` block will run when the current flow of execution leaves the current scope—that is, the current function, loop body, and so on:

```
func doSomeWork() {
    print("Getting started!")
    defer {
        print("All done!")
    }
    print("Getting to work!")
}

doSomeWork()
// Prints "Getting started!", "Getting to work!", and "All done!", in that order
```



`defer` is a resource management technique, not a means of implementing asynchronous code!

The guard Keyword

There are often cases where your code needs to check to see if a certain condition holds. For example, if you're writing a method to withdraw money from a bank account, you can't go ahead with the operation if the bank account's balance is too low.

The `guard` keyword lets you define a test that needs to pass; alternatively, if it doesn't pass, a block of code is run. This might sound very similar to the `if` statement, but it has a twist: the block of code that runs if the test doesn't pass is *required* to exit the current flow of execution. That is, if it's inside a function, it has to return from that function; it's a compiler error if it doesn't. This guarantees that if the condition doesn't hold, the code following the `guard` statement will not be executed:

```
guard 2+2 == 4 else {
    print("The universe makes no sense")
    return // this is mandatory!
```

```
}
```

```
print("We can continue with our daily lives")
```

Conclusion

In this chapter, we've looked at the basics of programming with Swift. In the next chapter, we'll dive into some of the more advanced components of Swift, such as strings, memory management, working with data, and error handling. After that, we'll continue our exploration of Swift through the construction of three apps.

Swift for Object-Oriented App Development

The previous chapter looked at the basic building blocks of programming in Swift. In this chapter, we're going to look at some of the more advanced features of Swift, such as memory management, working with files and external data, and error handling. We'll also touch on interoperating with Apple's older programming language, Objective-C.

Swift's features allow it to be used as an *object-oriented* programming language. This means that you do the majority of your work by creating and manipulating *objects*—chunks of data and code that represent a thing that can perform some useful work or store some useful data.

Classes and Objects

In Swift, as with Objective-C, Java, and C++ (and many other languages), you define templates for your objects using *classes*. Classes in Swift look like this:

```
class Vehicle {  
}
```

Classes contain both *properties* and *methods*. Properties are variables that are part of a class, and methods are functions that are part of a class.

The `Vehicle` class in the following example contains two properties: an optional `String` called `color`, and an `Int` called `maxSpeed`. Property declarations look the same as variable declarations do in other code:

```
class Vehicle {
```

```
    var color: String?  
    var maxSpeed = 80  
  
}
```

Methods in a class look the same as functions anywhere else. Code that's in a method can access the properties of a class by using the `self` keyword, which refers to the object that's currently running the code:

```
class Vehicle {  
  
    var color: String?  
    var maxSpeed = 80  
  
    func description() -> String {  
        return "A \(self.color) vehicle"  
    }  
  
    func travel() {  
        print("Traveling at \(maxSpeed) kph")  
    }  
}
```



If you are wondering what the `\()` inside the string is, this is *string interpolation*, which lets you make strings from myriad types. We talk more about strings in “[Working with Strings](#)” on page 39.

You can omit the `self` keyword if it's obvious that the property is part of the current object. In the previous example, `description` uses the `self` keyword, while `travel` doesn't.

When you've defined a class, you can create instances of the class (called an object) to work with. Instances have their own copies of the class's properties and functions.

For example, to define an instance of the `Vehicle` class, you define a variable and call the class's initializer. Once that's done, you can work with the class's functions and properties:

```
var redVehicle = Vehicle()  
redVehicle.color = "Red"  
redVehicle.maxSpeed = 90  
redVehicle.travel() // prints "Traveling at 90 kph"  
redVehicle.description() // = "A Red vehicle"
```

Initialization and Deinitialization

When you create an object in Swift, a special method known as its *initializer* is called. The initializer is the method that you use to set up the initial state of an object and is always named `init`.

Swift has two types of initializers, *convenience initializers* and *designated initializers*. A designated initializer sets up everything you need to use that object, often using default settings where necessary. A convenience initializer, as its name implies, makes setting up the instance more convenient by allowing for more information to be included in the initialization. A convenience initializer must call the designated initializer as part of its setup.

In addition to initializers, you can run code when removing an object, in a method called a *deinitializer*, named `deinit`. This runs when the retain count of an object drops to zero (see “[Memory Management](#)” on page 80) and is called right before the object is removed from memory. This is your object’s final opportunity to do any necessary cleanup before it goes away forever:

```
class InitAndDeinitExample {
    // Designated (i.e., main) initializer
    init() {
        print("I've been created!")
    }
    // Convenience initializer, required to call the
    // designated initializer (above)
    convenience init (text: String) {
        self.init() // this is mandatory
        print("I was called with the convenience initializer!")
    }
    // Deinitializer
    deinit {
        print("I'm going away!")
    }
}

var example : InitAndDeinitExample?

// using the designated initializer
example = InitAndDeinitExample() // prints "I've been created!"
example = nil // prints "I'm going away"

// using the convenience initializer
example = InitAndDeinitExample(text: "Hello")
// prints "I've been created!" and then
// "I was called with the convenience initializer"
```

An initializer can also return `nil`. This can be useful when your initializer isn’t able to usefully construct an object. For example, the `NSURL` class has an initializer that takes

a string and converts it into a URL; if the string isn't a valid URL, the initializer returns `nil`.

To create an initializer that can return `nil`—also known as a *failable initializer*—put a question mark after the `init` keyword, and `return nil` if the initializer decides that it can't successfully construct the object:

```
// This is a convenience initializer that can sometimes fail, returning nil
// Note the ? after the word 'init'
convenience init? (value: Int) {
    self.init()

    if value > 5 {
        // We can't initialize this object; return nil to indicate failure
        return nil
    }

}
```

When you use a failable initializer, it will always return an optional:

```
var failableExample = InitAndDeinitExample(value: 6)
// = nil
```

Properties

Classes store their data in *properties*. Properties, as previously mentioned, are variables or constants that are attached to instances of classes. Properties that you've added to a class are usually accessed like this:

```
class Counter {
    var number: Int = 0
}
let myCounter = Counter()
myCounter.number = 2
```

However, as objects get more complex, it can cause a problem for you as a programmer. If you wanted to represent vehicles with engines, you'd need to add a property to the `Vehicle` class; however, this would mean that *all* `Vehicle` instances would have this property, even if they didn't need one. To keep things better organized, it's better to move properties that are specific to a subset of your objects to a new class that *inherits* properties from another.

Inheritance

When you define a class, you can create one that *inherits* from another. When a class inherits from another (called the *parent* class), it incorporates all of its parent's functions and properties. In Swift, classes are allowed to have only a single parent class.

This is the same as Objective-C, but differs from C++, which allows classes to have multiple parents (known as *multiple inheritance*).

To create a class that inherits from another, you put the name of the class you're inheriting from after the name of the class you're creating, like so:

```
class Car: Vehicle {  
  
    var engineType : String = "V8"  
  
}
```

Classes that inherit from other classes can *override* functions in their parent class. This means that you can create subclasses that inherit most of their functionality, but can specialize in certain areas. For example, the `Car` class contains an `engineType` property; only `Car` instances will have this property.

To override a function, you redeclare it in your subclass and add the `override` keyword to let the compiler know that you aren't accidentally creating a method with the same name as one in the parent class.

In an overridden function, it's often very useful to call back to the parent class's version of that function. You can do this through the `super` keyword, which lets you get access to the superclass's functions:

```
class Car: Vehicle {  
  
    var engineType : String = "V8"  
  
    // Inherited classes can override functions  
    override func description() -> String {  
        let description = super.description()  
        return description + ", which is a car"  
    }  
  
}
```

Computed properties

In the previous example, the property is a simple value stored in the object. This is known in Swift as a *stored property*. However, you can do more with properties, including creating properties that use code to figure out their value. These are known as *computed properties*, and you can use them to provide a simpler interface to information stored in your classes.

For example, consider a class that represents a rectangle, which has both a `width` and a `height` property. It'd be useful to have an additional property that contains the area, but you don't want that to be a third stored property. Instead, you can use a computed

property, which looks like a regular property from the outside, but on the inside is really a function that figures out the value when needed.

To define a computed property, you declare a variable in the same way as you do for a stored property, but add braces ({ and }) after it. Inside these braces, you provide a `get` section, and optionally a `set` section:

```
class Rectangle {
    var width: Double = 0.0
    var height: Double = 0.0
    var area : Double {
        // computed getter
        get {
            return width * height
        }

        // computed setter
        set {
            // Assume equal dimensions (i.e., a square)
            width = sqrt(newValue)
            height = sqrt(newValue)
        }
    }
}
```

When creating setters for your computed properties, you are given the new value passed into the setter passed in as a constant called `newValue`.

In the previous example, we computed the area by multiplying the width and height. The property is also settable—if you set the area of the rectangle, the code assumes that you want to create a square and updates the width and height to the square root of the area.

Working with computed properties looks identical to working with stored properties:

```
var rect = Rectangle()
rect.width = 3.0
rect.height = 4.5
rect.area // = 13.5
rect.area = 9 // width & height now both 3.0
```

Observers

When working with properties, you often may want to run some code whenever a property changes. To support this, Swift lets you add *observers* to your properties. These are small chunks of code that can run just before or after a property's value changes. To create a property observer, add braces after your property (much like you do with computed properties), and include `willSet` and `didSet` blocks. These blocks each get passed a parameter—`willSet`, which is called before the property's value changes, is given the value that is about to be set, and `didSet` is given the old value:

```

class PropertyObserverExample {
    var number : Int = 0 {
        willSet(newNumber) {
            print("About to change to \(newNumber)")
        }
        didSet(oldNumber) {
            print("Just changed from \(oldNumber) to \(self.number)!")
        }
    }
}

```

Property observers don't change anything about how you actually work with the property—they just add further behavior before and after the property changes:

```

var observer = PropertyObserverExample()
observer.number = 4
// prints "About to change to 4", then "Just changed from 0 to 4!"

```

Lazy properties

You can also make a property *lazy*. A lazy property is one that doesn't get set up until the first time it's accessed. This lets you defer some of the more time-consuming work of setting up a class to later on, when it's actually needed. To define a property as lazy, you put the `lazy` keyword in front of it. *Lazy loading* is very useful to save on memory for properties that may not be used—there is no point in initializing something that won't be used!

You can see lazy properties in action in the following example. In this code, there are two properties, both of the same type, but one of them is lazy:

```

class SomeExpensiveClass {
    init(id : Int) {
        print("Expensive class \(id) created!")
    }
}

class LazyPropertyExample {
    var expensiveClass1 = SomeExpensiveClass(id: 1)
    // note that we're actually constructing a class,
    // but it's labeled as lazy
    lazy var expensiveClass2 = SomeExpensiveClass(id: 2)

    init() {
        print("First class created!")
    }
}

var lazyExample = LazyPropertyExample()
// prints "Expensive class 1 created", then "First class created!"

lazyExample.expensiveClass1 // prints nothing; it's already created
lazyExample.expensiveClass2 // prints "Expensive class 2 created!"

```

In this example, when the `lazyExample` variable is created, it immediately creates the first instance of `SomeExpensiveClass`. However, the second instance isn't created until it's actually used by the code.

Protocols

A *protocol* can be thought of as a list of requirements for a class. When you define a protocol, you're creating a list of properties and methods that classes can declare that they have.

A protocol looks very much like a class, with the exception that you don't provide any actual code—you just define what kinds of properties and functions exist and how they can be accessed.

For example, if you wanted to create a protocol that describes any object that can blink on and off, you could use this:

```
protocol Blinking {  
  
    // This property must be (at least) gettable  
    var isBlinking : Bool { get }  
  
    // This property must be gettable and settable  
    var blinkSpeed: Double { get set }  
  
    // This function must exist, but what it does is up to the implementor  
    func startBlinking(blinkSpeed: Double) -> Void  
}
```

Once you have a protocol, you can create classes that *conform* to a protocol. When a class conforms to a protocol, it's effectively promising to the compiler that it implements all of the properties and methods listed in that protocol. It's allowed to have more stuff besides that, and it's also allowed to conform to multiple protocols.

To continue this example, you could create a specific class called `Light` that implements the `Blinking` protocol. Remember, all a protocol does is specify *what* a class can do—the class itself is responsible for determining *how* it does it:

```
class TrafficLight : Blinking {  
    var isBlinking: Bool = false  
  
    var blinkSpeed : Double = 0.0  
  
    func startBlinking(blinkSpeed : Double) {  
        print("I am a traffic light, and I am now blinking")  
        isBlinking = true  
  
        // We say "self.blinkSpeed" here, as opposed to "blinkSpeed",  
        // to help the compiler tell the difference between the  
        // parameter 'blinkSpeed' and the property
```

```

        self.blinkSpeed = blinkSpeed
    }
}

class Lighthouse : Blinking {
    var isBlinking: Bool = false

    var blinkSpeed : Double = 0.0

    func startBlinking(blinkSpeed : Double) {
        print("I am a lighthouse, and I am now blinking")
        isBlinking = true

        self.blinkSpeed = blinkSpeed
    }
}

```

The advantage of using protocols is that you can use Swift's type system to refer to any object that conforms to a given protocol. This is useful because you get to specify that you only care about whether an object conforms to the protocol—the specific type of the class doesn't matter since we are using the protocol as a type:

```

var aBlinkingThing : Blinking
// can be ANY object that has the Blinking protocol

aBlinkingThing = TrafficLight()

aBlinkingThing.startBlinking(4.0) // prints "I am now blinking"
aBlinkingThing.blinkSpeed // = 4.0

aBlinkingThing = Lighthouse()

```

Extensions

In Swift, you can *extend* existing types and add further methods and computed properties. This is very useful in two situations:

- You're working with a type that someone else wrote, and you want to add functionality to it but either don't have access to its source code or don't want to mess around with it.
- You're working with a type that you wrote, and you want to divide up its functionality into different sections for readability.

Extensions let you do both with ease. In Swift, you can extend *any* type—that is, you can extend both classes that you write, as well as built-in types like `Int` and `String`.

To create an extension, you use the `extension` keyword, followed by the name of the type you want to extend. For example, to add methods and properties to the built-in `Int` type, you can do this:

```
extension Int {
    var doubled : Int {
        return self * 2
    }
    func multiplyWith(anotherNumber: Int) -> Int {
        return self * anotherNumber
    }
}
```

Once you extend a type, the methods and properties you defined in the extension are available to *every* instance of that type:

```
2.doubled // = 4
4.multiplyWith(32) // = 128
```



You can only add computed properties in an extension. You can't add your own stored properties.

You can also use extensions to make a type conform to a protocol. For example, you can make the `Int` type conform to the `Blinking` protocol described earlier:

```
extension Int : Blinking {
    var isBlinking : Bool {
        return false;
    }

    var blinkSpeed : Double {
        get {
            return 0.0;
        }
        set {
            // Do nothing
        }
    }

    func startBlinking(blinkSpeed : Double) {
        print("I am the integer \(self). I do not blink.")
    }
}
2.isBlinking // = false
2.startBlinking(2.0) // prints "I am the integer 2. I do not blink."
```

Access Control

Swift defines three levels of access control, which determines what information is accessible to which parts of the application:

Public

Public classes, methods, and properties are accessible by any part of the app. For example, all of the classes in UIKit that you use to build iOS apps are public.

Internal

Internal entities (data and methods) are only accessible to the *module* in which they're defined. A module is an application, library, or framework. This is why you can't access the inner workings of UIKit—it's defined as internal to the UIKit framework. Internal is the default level of access control: if you don't specify the access control level, it's assumed to be internal.

Private

Private entities are only accessible to the file in which it's declared. This means that you can create classes that hide their inner workings from other classes in the same module, which helps to keep the amount of surface area that those classes expose to each other to a minimum.

The kind of access control that a method or property can have depends on the access level of the class that it's contained in. You can't make a method more accessible than the class in which it's contained. For example, you can't define a private class that has a public method:

```
public class AccessControl {  
}
```

By default, all properties and methods are `internal`. You can explicitly define a member as `internal` if you want, but it isn't necessary:

```
// Accessible to this module only  
// 'internal' here is the default and can be omitted  
internal var internalProperty = 123
```

The exception is for classes defined as `private`—if you don't declare an access control level for a member, it's set as `private`, not `internal`. It is *impossible* to specify an access level for a member of an entity that is more open than the entity itself.

When you declare a method or property as `public`, it becomes visible to everyone in your app:

```
// Accessible to everyone  
public var publicProperty = 123
```

If you declare a method or property as `private`, it's only accessible from within the source file in which it's declared:

```
// Only accessible in this source file  
private var privateProperty = 123
```

Finally, you can render a property as read-only by declaring that its setter is private. This means that you can freely read and write the property's value within the source file that it's declared in, but other files can only read its value:

```
// The setter is private, so other files can't modify it
private(set) var privateSetterProperty = 123
```

Operator Overloading

An operator is actually a function that takes one or two values and returns a value. Operators, just like other functions, can be overloaded. For example, you could represent the + function like this:

```
func + (left: Int, right: Int) -> Int {
    return left + right
}
```



The preceding example actually calls itself in an infinitely recursive way, which hangs your app. Don't actually write this code.

Swift lets you define new operators and overload existing ones for your new types, which means that if you have a new type of data, you can operate on that data using both existing operators, as well as new ones you invent yourself.

For example, imagine you have an object called `Vector2D`, which stores two floating-point numbers:

```
class Vector2D {
    var x : Float = 0.0
    var y : Float = 0.0

    init (x : Float, y: Float) {
        self.x = x
        self.y = y
    }
}
```

If you want to allow adding instances of this type of object together using the + operator, all you need to do is provide an implementation of the + function:

```
func +(left : Vector2D, right: Vector2D) -> Vector2D {
    let result = Vector2D(x: left.x + right.x, y: left.y + right.y)

    return result
}
```

You can then use it as you'd expect:

```
let first = Vector2D(x: 2, y: 2)
let second = Vector2D(x: 4, y: 1)

let result = first + second
// = (x:6, y:3)
```



For information on how to create your own custom operators, see the “Advanced Operators” section of *The Swift Programming Language*.

Generics

Swift is a statically typed language. This means that the Swift compiler needs to definitively know what type of information your code is dealing with. This means that you can’t pass a string to code that expects to deal with a date (which is something that can happen in Objective-C!).

However, this rigidity means that you lose some flexibility. It’s annoying to have to write a chunk of code that does some work with strings, and another that works with dates.

This is where *generics* come in. Generics allow you to write code that doesn’t need to know precisely *what* information it’s dealing with. An example of this kind of use is in arrays: they don’t actually do any work with the data they store, but instead just store it in an ordered collection. Arrays are, in fact, generics.

To create a generic type, you name your object as usual, and then specify any generic types between angle brackets. T is traditionally the term used, but you can put anything you like. For example, to create a generic Tree object, which contains a value and any number of child Tree objects, you’d do the following:

```
class Tree <T> {

    // 'T' can now be used as a type inside this class

    // 'value' is of type T
    var value : T

    // 'children' is an array of Tree objects that have
    // the same type as this one
    private (set) var children : [Tree <T>] = []

    // We can initialize this object with a value of type T
    init(value : T) {
        self.value = value
    }
}
```

```
// And we can add a child node to our list of children
func addChild(value : T) -> Tree <T> {
    let newChild = Tree<T>(value: value)
    children.append(newChild)
    return newChild
}
```

Once a generic type is defined, you can create a specific, nongeneric type from it. For example, the `Tree` generic type just defined can be used to create a version that works with `Ints` and one that works with `Strings`:

```
// Tree of integers
let integerTree = Tree<Int>(value: 5)

// Can add children that contain Ints
integerTree.addChild(10)
integerTree.addChild(5)

// Tree of strings
let stringTree = Tree<String>(value: "Hello")

stringTree.addChild("Yes")
stringTree.addChild("Internets")
```

Subscripts

When you work with arrays and dictionaries, you use square brackets, [and], to indicate to Swift what part of the array or dictionary you want to work with. The term for this is *subscripting*, and it's something that your own classes and types can adopt.

You do this using the `subscript` keyword, and define what it means to get and set values via a subscript. For example, let's say you want to access the individual bits inside an 8-bit integer. You can do this with subscripting, like so:

```
// Extend the unsigned 8-bit integer type
extension UInt8 {

    // Allow subscripting this type using UInt8s;
    subscript(bit: UInt8) -> UInt8 {

        // This is run when you do things like "value[x]"
        get {
            return (self >> bit & 0x07) & 1
        }

        // This is run when you do things like "value[x] = y"
        set {
            let cleanBit = bit & 0x07
            let mask = 0xFF ^ (1 << cleanBit)
            let shiftedBit = (newValue & 1) << cleanBit
        }
    }
}
```

```
        self = self & mask | shiftedBit
    }
}
}
```

With this in place, you can access the individual bits inside the number by reading and writing them.

```
var byte : UInt8 = 212

byte[0] // 0
byte[2] // 1
byte[5] // 0
byte[6] // 1

// Change the last bit
byte[7] = 0

// The number is now changed!
byte // = 84
```

Structures

For the most part, structures are very similar to classes: you can put properties and methods in them, they have initializers, and they generally behave in an object-like way, just like a class does. However, there are two main things that differentiate them from classes:

- Structures do not have inheritance—that is, you cannot make a structure inherit its methods and properties from another.
- When you pass a structure around in your code, the structure is always *copied*.

Structures are declared as follows:

```
struct Point {
    var x: Int
    var y: Int
}
```



In Swift, structures are *value types*, which are always copied when passed around. Some value types in Swift include `Int`, `String`, `Array`, and `Dictionary`, all of which are implemented as structures.

Additionally, structures in Swift get a compiler-provided initializer, called the *memberwise initializer*, if you don't provide one yourself:

```
let p = Point(x: 2, y: 3)
```

Modules

In Swift, just like in Objective-C, code is grouped into *modules*. When you define a framework or application, all of the code that's added to it is placed within that target's module. To get access to the code, you use the `import` keyword:

```
import AVFoundation
```

Depending on your programming background, you are probably used to including code to make sure you don't accidentally include something multiple times. In Swift you don't have to worry about this. Modules are clever enough to handle potential import conflicts, letting you focus on making great apps!

The Swift Standard Library, Foundation, Cocoa, and Cocoa Touch

The different features you work with in Swift come from different places, or *libraries*, depending on how platform-specific they are. These are the four main libraries you'll access:

The Swift Standard Library

Contains all of the lowest-level types and functions that you'll be working with, including `Int`, `String`, and so on, as well as math functions, arrays and dictionaries, and more.

You don't need to do anything special to access the standard library; all Swift programs have access to it.

Foundation

A slightly higher-level library that provides more tools and types, such as `NSNotificationCenter`, which is used to broadcast application-wide notifications, and `NSJSONSerialization`, which allows you to read and write JSON data.

You import the Foundation library with the `import Foundation` statement, at the top of your file.

Cocoa

Specific to OS X and includes features like buttons, windows, image views, and menus.

You import Cocoa with the `import Cocoa` statement.

Cocoa Touch

On iOS, provides equivalent tools and functionality from Cocoa: views, touch input, sensor capabilities, and so on.

You import Cocoa Touch with the `import UIKit` statement.

If you import Cocoa or Cocoa Touch, you'll also import Foundation. You don't need to import both.



There are also equivalent libraries for tvOS and watchOS. There are also some third-party tools and libraries for Swift, but these are well beyond the scope of this book.

Data

In Cocoa, you'll frequently find yourself working with chunks of arbitrary data that you need to save to or load from disk, or that you've downloaded from the network. Cocoa represents these as `NSData` objects.

You can get an `NSData` object in a variety of ways. For example, if you have a string that you want to convert to an `NSData`, you can use the string's `dataUsingEncoding` method, like so:

```
let stringToConvert = "Hello, Swift"
let data = stringToConvert.dataUsingEncoding(NSUTF8StringEncoding)
```

Loading Data from Files and URLs

You can also load data from a URL or from a file location on disk. If the file is one of the resources built into your project, you first need to work out where on disk it's being stored; once you have that, you can load its contents into memory.

To get the location of a built-in file, you first use the `NSBundle` class to determine where a given file is being stored on disk using the `pathForResource` method. Once you've done that, you construct an `NSData` object by providing it either a URL or a filepath:

```
// Loading from URL
if let URL = NSURL(string: "https://oreilly.com") {
    let loadedDataFromURL = NSData(contentsOfURL:URL)
}

// Loading from a file
if let filePath = NSBundle.mainBundle()
    .pathForResource("SomeFile", ofType: "txt") {
    let loadedDataFromPath = NSData(contentsOfFile:filePath)
}
```



Using `NSData(contentsOfURL:)` this way to get data over the network will cause pauses and slowdowns, because the code will wait for the data to be loaded. If you're making an app that loads data over the network, consider using a dedicated library that specializes in doing it, like [AlamoFire](#).

A bundle, represented by the `NSBundle` class, is an object that bundles up all the resources that your apps can use. You can use `NSBundle` to load and unload code, images, audio, or almost anything imaginable without having to deal directly with the filesystem.

Serialization and Deserialization

You can also convert an object to data to make it easier to save, load, or send the object. To do this, you first make an object conform to the `NSObject` and `NSCoding` protocols, and then add two methods—`encodeWithCoder`, and an initializer that takes an `NSCoder`:

```
class SerializableObject : NSObject, NSCoding {  
  
    var name : String?  
  
    func encodeWithCoder(aCoder: NSCoder) {  
        aCoder.encodeObject(name!, forKey:"name")  
    }  
    override init() {  
        self.name = "My Object"  
    }  
    required init(coder aDecoder: NSCoder) {  
        self.name = aDecoder.decodeObjectForKey("name") as? String  
    }  
}
```

An object that conforms to `NSCoding` can be converted to an `NSData` object, and also be loaded from one, via the `NSKeyedArchiver` and `NSKeyedUnarchiver` classes. The trick to it is in the `encodeWithCoder` method, and in the special initializer: in the `encodeWithCoder` method, you take the `NSCoder` that's passed in as a parameter and store any values that you want to keep in it. Later, in the initializer, you pull those values out.

Converting these objects to and from data is very straightforward and looks like this:

```
let anObject = SerializableObject()  
  
anObject.name = "My Thing That I'm Saving"  
  
// Converting it to data  
let objectConvertedToData =  
    NSKeyedArchiver.archivedDataWithRootObject(anObject)
```

```

// Converting it back
// Note that the conversion might fail, so 'unarchiveObjectWithData' returns
// an optional value. So, use 'as?' to check to see if it worked.
let loadedObject =
    NSKeyedUnarchiver.unarchiveObjectWithData(objectConvertedToData)
        as? SerializableObject

loadedObject?.name
// = "My Thing That I'm Saving"

```

Error Handling

It's normal for computer programs to generate errors. When that happens, you need to be ready to handle them, and Swift makes this particularly easy and robust.

If you programmed using Objective-C or Swift 1.0, you might be familiar with a different error-handling system. Previously, an `NSError` object would be passed as a pointer; when something could fail, you'd pass in an `NSError` object as a parameter, and if there was an error you could fill the object with information.

This was powerful, as it allowed the return value of a method to be separated from any potential error information. It was, however, easy to forget to look inside the `NSError` object. Swift 2.0 replaces this system, and while it expects a little more from programmers now, it is much clearer to read, gives you greater safety by making sure all errors are caught, and requires less messing around with pointers.

In Swift, objects are represented by `ErrorType`. `ErrorType` is a protocol, which means that any class, enum, or structure can be an error. When your code encounters an error, you *throw* an error.



For compatibility in Swift, `NSError` is an `ErrorType`, which means it can be thrown like every other `ErrorType`.

For example, let's define an enumeration for problems that can relate to a bank account. By making the enumeration an `ErrorType`, we can throw it as an error:

```

enum BankError : ErrorType {
    // Not enough money in the account
    case NotEnoughFunds

    // Can't create an account with negative money
    case CannotBeginWithNegativeFunds

    // Can't make a negative deposit or withdrawal
}

```

```

        case CannotMakeNegativeTransaction(amount:Float)
    }

Functions that can throw errors must be marked with the throws keyword, which goes after the function's return type:

// A simple bank account class
class BankAccount {

    // The amount of money in the account
    private (set) var balance : Float = 0.0

    // Initializes the account with an amount of money
    // Throws an error if you try to create the account
    // with negative funds.
    init(amount:Float) throws {

        // Ensure that we have a non-negative amount of money
        guard amount > 0 else {
            throw BankError.CannotBeginWithNegativeFunds
        }
        balance = amount
    }

    // Adds some money to the account
    func deposit(amount: Float) throws {

        // Ensure that we're trying to withdraw a non-negative amount
        guard amount > 0 else {
            throw BankError.CannotMakeNegativeTransaction(amount: amount)
        }
        balance += amount
    }

    // Withdraws money from the bank account
    func withdraw(amount : Float) throws {

        // Ensure that we're trying to deposit a non-negative amount
        guard amount > 0 else {
            throw BankError.CannotMakeNegativeTransaction(amount: amount)
        }

        // Ensure that we have enough to withdraw this amount
        guard balance >= amount else {
            throw BankError.NotEnoughFunds
        }

        balance -= amount
    }
}

```

When you call any function, method, or initializer that `throws`, you are required to wrap it in a `do-catch` block. In the `do` block, you call the methods that may potentially throw errors; each time you do, you preface the potentially throwing call with `try`. If the method call throws an error, the `do` block stops executing and the `catch` clause runs:

```
do {
    let vacationFund = try BankAccount(amount: 5)

    try vacationFund.deposit(5)

    try vacationFund.withdraw(11)

} catch let error as BankError {

    // Catch any BankError that was thrown
    switch (error) {
        case .NotEnoughFunds:
            print("Not enough funds in account!")
        case .CannotBeginWithNegativeFunds:
            print("Tried to start an account with negative money!")
        case .CannotMakeNegativeTransaction(let amount):
            print("Tried to do a transaction with a negative amount of \(amount)!")
    }

} catch let error {
    // (Optional:) catch other types of errors
}
```

However, it can sometimes be cumbersome to wrap calls to methods that can throw errors in a `do-catch` block. Sometimes, you may not care about the specifics of the error; you just care if there was an error or not. This is where the `try?` statement comes in. If you preface a call to something that can throw an error with `try?`, and it *does* throw an error, the result will be `nil`:



This means that the return type of any call that you `try?` will be an optional.

```
let secretBankAccountOrNot = try? BankAccount(amount: -50) // = nil
```

Finally, there are sometimes cases where your program *needs* the method call to succeed and guarantee a returned value. If you call a method with `try!`, and it throws an error, your program will simply crash. (This has the same effect as using `try?` to receive an optional and then using the force-unwrap operator (!) on that optional.)

```
let secretBankAccountOrNot = try! BankAccount(amount: -50) // crash!
```

The `try?` and `try!` statements do *not* need to be in a `do-catch` block. If you do put them in one, any errors won't be caught by the `catch` block; they'll still just either evaluate to `nil` or crash.

Memory Management

Objects in Swift are *memory managed*. When an object is being used, Swift keeps it in memory; when it's no longer being used, it's removed from memory.

The technique that Swift uses to keep track of which objects are being used and which are not is called *reference counting*. When an object is assigned to a variable, a counter called the *retain count* goes up by 1. When the object is no longer assigned to that variable, the retain count goes down. If the retain count ever reaches 0, that means that no variables are referring to that object, and the object is then removed from memory.

The nice thing about Swift is that this all happens at the compiler level. As the compiler reads your code, it keeps track of when objects get assigned to variables and adds code that increments and decrements the retain count.

However, this automatic memory management has one potential snag that you need to keep an eye out for: *retain cycles*.

A retain cycle is where you have two objects that refer to each other, but are otherwise not referred to by any other part of the application. Because those objects refer to each other, their retain count is not zero, which means they stay in memory; however, because no variable in the rest of the application refers to them, they're inaccessible (and consequently useless).

Swift solves this using the concept of *weak* references. A weak reference is a variable that refers to an object, but doesn't change the retain count of that object. You use weak references when you don't particularly care whether an object stays in memory or not (i.e., your code isn't the *owner* of that object).

To declare a weak reference in Swift, you use the `weak` keyword, like so:

```
class Class1 {
    init() {
        print("Class 1 being created!")
    }

    deinit {
        print("Class 1 going away!")
    }
}

class Class2 {
    // Weak vars are implicitly optional
```

```
weak var weakRef : Class1?  
}
```



The topic of memory management can get complex if you're doing more advanced things. If you'd like to learn more about it, see the section [“Automatic Reference Counting” in *The Swift Programming Language*](#).

Design Patterns in Cocoa and Cocoa Touch

Cocoa is built around a number of design patterns whose purpose is to make your life as a developer more consistent and (one hopes) more productive. Three key patterns are the *model-view-controller* (MVC) pattern, upon which most of Cocoa and Cocoa Touch is built; the *delegation* pattern, which allows both your code and Cocoa to be highly flexible in determining what code gets run by whom; and *notifications*, which allow your code to watch for important events that happen within your app. We'll be working with notifications in a very hands-on sense later in the book (in Chapters 14 and 15); at the moment, let's dive in to model-view-controller and delegation!

Model-View-Controller

The model-view-controller design pattern is one of the fundamental design patterns in Cocoa. Let's take a look at what each of these parts means:

Models

Objects that contain data or otherwise coordinate the storing, management, and delivery of data to other objects. Models can be as simple as a string or as complicated as an entire database—their purpose is to store data and provide it to other objects. They don't care what happens to the data once they give it to someone else; their only concern is managing how the data is stored.

Views

Objects that work directly with the user, providing information to them and receiving input back. Views do not manage the data that they display—they only show it to the user. Views are also responsible for informing other objects when the user interacts with them. Like data and models, views do not care what happens next—their responsibility ends with informing the rest of the application.

Controllers

Objects that mediate between models and views and contain the bulk of what some call the “business logic” of an application—the actual logic that defines what the application is and how it responds to user input. At a minimum, the controller is responsible for retrieving information from the model and provid-

ing it to the view; it is also responsible for providing information to the model when it is informed by the view that the user has interacted with it.

For an illustration of the model-view-controller design pattern in action, imagine a simple text editor. In this example, the application loads a text file from disk and presents its contents to the user in a text field. The user makes changes in the text field and saves those changes back to disk.

We can break this application down into model, view, and controller objects:

- The model is an object that is responsible for loading the text file from disk and writing it back out to disk. It is also responsible for providing the text as a string to any object that asks for it.
- The view is the text field, which asks another object for a string to display and then displays the text. It also accepts keyboard input from the user; whenever the user types, it informs another object that the text has changed. It is also able to tell another object when the user has told it to save changes.
- The controller is the object responsible for instructing the model object to load a file from disk, and it passes the text to the view. It receives updates from the view object when the text has changed and passes those changes to the model. Finally, it can be told by the view that the user has asked to save the changes; when that happens, it instructs the model to do the work of actually writing the file out to disk.

Breaking the application into these areas of responsibility enables us to more easily make changes to it.

For example, if the developer decides that the next version of the application should add the ability to upload the text file to the Internet whenever the file is saved, the only thing that must be changed is the model class—the controller can stay the same, and the view never changes.

Likewise, clearly defining which objects are responsible for which features makes it easier to make changes to an application while maintaining a clear structure in the project. If the developer decides to add a spell checking feature to the application, that code should clearly be added to the controller, as it has nothing to do with how the text is presented to the user or stored on disk. (You could, of course, add some features to the view that would allow it to indicate which words are misspelled, but the bulk of the code would need to be added in the controller.)

The majority of the classes described in this chapter, such as `NSData`, arrays, and dictionaries, are model classes; all they do is store and present information to other classes. `NSKeyedArchiver` is a controller class; it takes information and performs logical operations on it. `NSButton` and `UITextField` are examples of view objects; they present information to the user and do not care about how the data is managed.

The model-view-controller paradigm becomes very important when you start looking at the more advanced Cocoa features, like the document architecture and bindings, both of which are covered throughout this book.

Delegation

Delegation is Cocoa's term for passing off some responsibilities of an object to another. An example of this is the `UIApplication` object, which represents an application on iOS. This object needs to know what should happen when the application moves to the background. Many other languages handle this problem by subclassing—for example, in C++, the `UIApplication` class would define an empty placeholder method for `applicationDidEnterBackground`, and then you as a developer would subclass `UIApplication` and override the `applicationDidEnterBackground` method.

However, this is a particularly heavy-handed solution and causes additional problems—it increases the complexity of your code, and also means that if you want to override the behavior of two classes, you need separate subclasses for each one.¹ Swift's answer to this problem is built around the fact that an object can determine, at runtime, whether another object is capable of responding to a method.

Let's say an object, Object A, that wants to let another object, Object B, know that something is going to happen or has happened, stores a reference to Object B as an instance variable. This reference to Object B is known as the delegate. When the event happens, Object A checks to see if the delegate object (Object B) implements a method that suits the event—for delegates of the `UIApplication` class, for example, the application delegate is asked if it implements the `applicationDidEnterBackground` method. If it does, that method is called.

Because of this loose coupling, it's possible for an object to be the delegate for multiple objects. For example, an object could become the delegate of both an audio playback object and an image picker, and be notified both when audio playback completes and when an image has been captured by the camera.

Because the model-view-controller pattern is built around a very loose coupling of objects, it helps to have a more rigidly defined interface between objects so that your application can know with more certainty how one object expects others to behave.

The specific messages used by delegates are often listed in protocols. For example, if your object wants to be the delegate of an `AVAudioPlayer` object, it should conform to the `AVAudioPlayerDelegate` protocol.

¹ C++'s answer to this problem is multiple inheritance, which has its own problems.

Working with delegates in Swift is easy. Imagine you have two classes, and you want one of them to act as the delegate for another:

```
// Define a protocol that has a function called 'handleIntruder'
protocol HouseSecurityDelegate {

    // We don't define the function here, but rather
    // indicate that any class that is a 'HouseSecurityDelegate'
    // is required to have a 'handleIntruder' function
    func handleIntruder()

}

class House {
    // The delegate can be any object that conforms to the
    // HouseSecurityDelegate protocol
    var delegate : HouseSecurityDelegate?

    func burglarDetected() {
        // Check to see if the delegate is there, then call it
        delegate?.handleIntruder()
    }
}

class GuardDog : HouseSecurityDelegate {
    func handleIntruder() {
        print("Releasing the hounds!")
    }
}

let myHouse = House()
myHouse.burglarDetected() // does nothing

let theHounds = GuardDog()
myHouse.delegate = theHounds
myHouse.burglarDetected() // prints "Releasing the hounds!"
```

The `burglarDetected` method needs to check that a security delegate exists for the house before calling its `handleIntruder` method. It does this using a Swift feature called *optional chaining*, which lets you access something that depends on an optional having a value, without specifically testing the optional first. If the optional has a value, in this case a `HouseSecurityDelegate`, its `handleIntruder` method is called. If the optional is `nil`, nothing happens. You can use optional chaining to access the properties, method, or subscripts of your classes, structures, and enumerations in this way.

Structuring an App

Before we wrap up this part and begin our long, slow dive into building real-world apps, it's worth looking at the big picture of how apps are built, both on OS X and iOS.

iOS and OS X are built on the idea of *event-driven programming*. Anything that your app does is in response to an event of some kind. On OS X, events include the mouse moving or clicking, keyboard input, and the window resizing; on iOS, they include touch input, sensor input. On both iOS and OS X, events can also include timers firing or the screen refreshing.

At their core, apps are about the *run loop*, an infinite loop that waits for an *event* to fire, and then takes appropriate actions. Most of those actions are handled by the built-in parts of your app; for example, swiping your finger on a list will cause the list to adjust its position. However, there are several events that your code handles. For example, when a button is clicked, as part of handling this event, the code calls a method that you write.

The Application Delegate

The delegation pattern is used a lot for event handling. Every time the operating system needs to let your app know that an interesting event has happened, the application delegate object—which you write—has a method called on it. The application delegate object—usually shortened to *app delegate*—is just an instance of a class that conforms to the `NSApplicationDelegate` (on OS X) or `UIApplicationDelegate` (on iOS) protocol. When you create a project, Xcode adds a file that contains a class that implements the correct protocol for your platform.

The app delegate contains methods like `application(_, didFinishLaunchingWithOptions:)`; these methods are called when events happen (like when the application finishes launching). You provide code in these methods to run when the events occur.

Window Controllers and View Controllers

Window controllers are objects that manage a window's contents on OS X, and view controllers manage a view's contents on both iOS and OS X. On iOS a view controller is usually fullscreen, but on OS X that may not be the case (although the view that controller manages is usually the full size of the window containing it).



When working with documents, you'll be provided with a window controller that allows you to keep your logic in the document class. We'll look at this in more detail in [Chapter 4](#).

View controllers can manage other view controllers; for example, navigation controllers are a view controller that manages multiple *child* view controllers. View controllers exist on iOS and OS X, while window controllers exist only on OS X (because the concept of windows really only exists on OS X).



Windows in Swift are the individual windows of the application, so the entire box that the application shows on the screen. A view, on the other hand, is contained inside a window and represents and is responsible for the elements within. In iOS you will have a single window per application, and multiple views will be shown inside that window. In OS X your application might have multiple windows, each with its own views.

Nibs and Storyboards

When an application starts, it loads its interface. The interface is stored inside a file, and there are two types of files: *nib files* and *storyboard files*. Both are used in the interface builder to design and lay out an interface.

Nib files contain a collection of objects, and are generally used to represent a single window or view; they also contain nonvisible objects, such as controller objects, when needed.

Storyboards take this idea and extend it by storing multiple interfaces—that is, views and windows—and letting you describe how you get from one interface to another, using connections called *segues*.

Conclusion

In this chapter, you've learned about how to work with object-oriented programming in Swift and how to get some more real-world tasks done using the functionality provided by Cocoa and Cocoa Touch. In the next part of this book, we'll use these skills to start building actual apps.

PART II

An OS X App

Setting Up the OS X Notes App

In [Part I](#), we looked at the Apple Developer Program, the tools you use for developing on Apple platforms, and the fundamentals of the Swift language. Now we're actually going to build some apps!

In this chapter, we'll start building *Notes*. *Notes* is a Mac app that lets you write notes, which contain text plus a number of other attachments: images, locations, videos, sounds, contacts, and more. We'll be creating an iOS counterpart for *Notes* later on, in [Part III](#).

We're not going to be doing any coding in this chapter, but it's still important! We'll be doing all the setup to make a real, working OS X app, using Xcode, by the end of the chapter (it won't do much, though!).

The kind of setup that we'll be doing in this chapter is fundamental to the creation of most Swift-based applications for OS X and iOS. One of the most striking things about developing for Apple's platforms using Xcode and Swift is just how much work is done for you. Just one or two years ago, the setup we'll accomplish in this chapter would have taken lines upon lines of code.

Even if you're only interested in learning to use Swift to create iOS applications, we suggest that you work through the chapters (there are only four!) that cover the creation of the OS X application anyway. You'll gain a better understanding of using Swift with Xcode to build applications, and you'll be better equipped to work on the iOS application once we start on that, in [Part III](#).

Designing the OS X Notes App

When we first sat down to build this app, the only thing we had figured out so far was that we wanted to “make a notes app that lets you add attachments.” To determine how this would work overall, we started drawing *wireframes*.



A wireframe is a very rough drawing of the app that you’re about to make. It’s much faster to get your ideas down on paper (digital or physical) than it is to actually implement the app itself, and the act of drawing your ideas helps you organize your thoughts.

The application that we used to make these wireframes was *OmniGraffle*, a fantastic vector drawing tool that’s very well suited for wireframes; however, you don’t need any software at all to get started figuring out an app idea, and pencil and paper will work just as well.



The wireframes were drawn several weeks before we started writing this book, not once we had a finished app ready. This means, just like wireframes for real-world products, they differ slightly from the finished product. This is OK when your development team is small, such as when it’s just you and maybe one other, because in this case, the goal of wireframing isn’t to create a perfect blueprint for others to implement, but rather to get a solid understanding of how your app needs to work.

This book isn’t here to teach you how to design wireframes or conceptualize the applications that you’ll build, but we have to start somewhere. Programming without considering what you’re building, in our experience, leads to poor-quality software. That’s why we’re starting with wireframes, and also showing them to you.

The process for figuring out how the wireframes needed to come together came from the OmniGraffle equivalent of doodling: we drew rectangles on the page, pretended they were windows, and asked ourselves how we’d use the app. When we (inevitably) ran up against a limitation in the design, we went back to the design, and added, removed, or changed the content of the screen. We continued to go back and forth on this design until we were sure that the app’s design was usable.

You can see the wireframe for the app in [Figure 4-1](#).

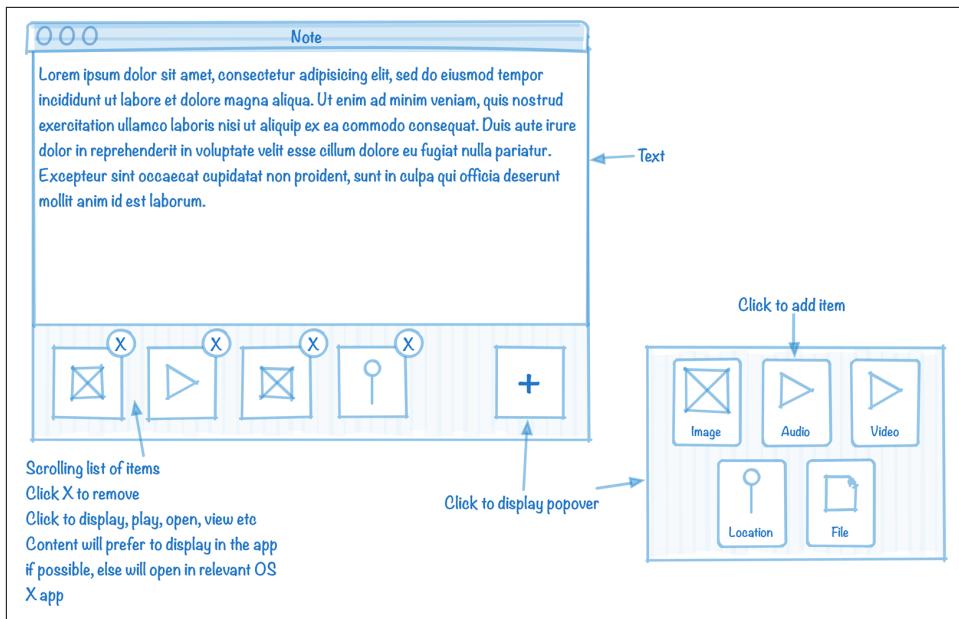


Figure 4-1. The OS X app's wireframes

On OS X, each document is given its own window. The app itself has no “main window”; instead, the only visible component will be the document windows.

The focus of the app is the text editor, which takes up the majority of the space. Underneath it, a horizontally scrolling list of all of the attachments is shown. For each attachment in the document, we'll show a preview image. Next to the list of attachments, we'll show a button that allows the user to attach new items to the document; when it's clicked, a popover will appear that presents the various options available.

By the end of these chapters, the app outlined in the wireframes will be a real, working app, as shown in [Figure 4-2](#).

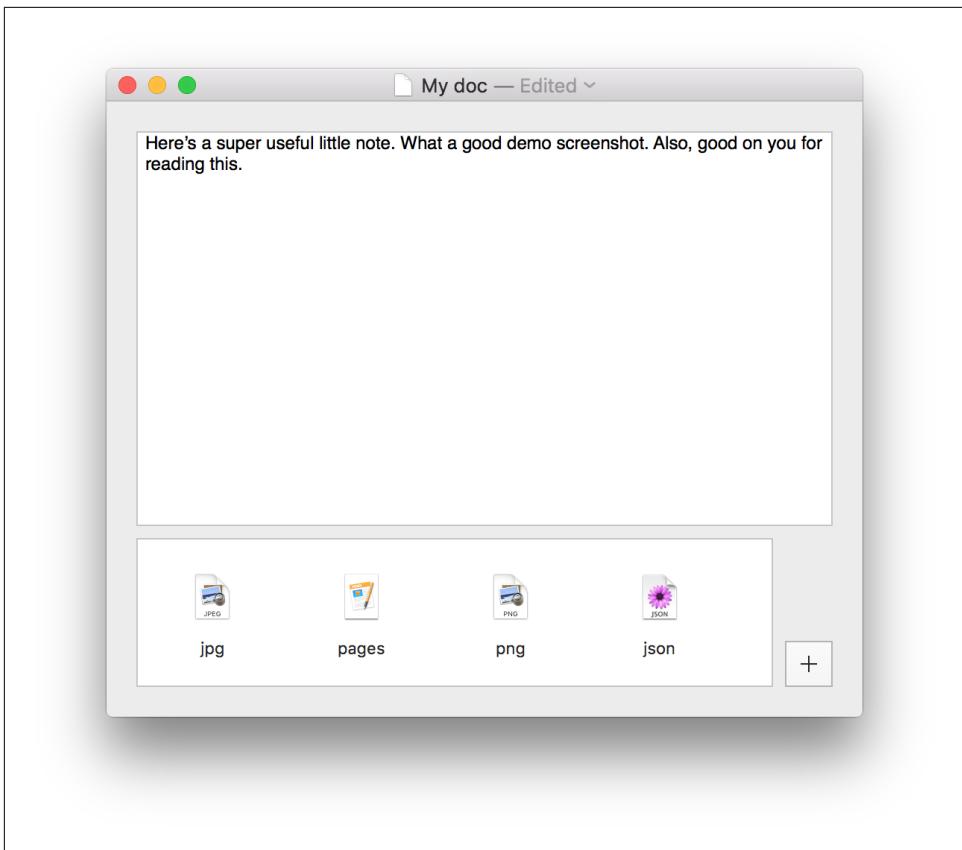


Figure 4-2. The OS X app

The Mac app has several key features:

- It uses the OS X document model, which means that it gets a number of useful behaviors for free, including versioning and autosave, plus the ability to associate its document types with the app (meaning that when you double-click a file, it will open in the app).
- Documents contain text that can be formatted—that is, you can italicize and bold text, change the color of letters, and so on.
- Documents can also store attachments. When you add an attachment, it's displayed in a list underneath the text area.
- You can add attachments by either clicking an Add button, which presents a window that lets you select the file you want to add, or by dragging and dropping the file into the list of attachments.

- Double-clicking an attachment presents a Quick Look window that allows you to view the contents of the file.
- Double-clicking location attachments (which we'll be examining in quite a bit more detail when we build the iOS app in [Part III](#)) opens that location in the Maps application.

Let's get started!

Creating the OS X Project

The first thing we need to do is create an Xcode project for our OS X app. We'll be working in this project for the majority of the rest of the book, including the iOS app, which will be added as a target in the same project. If you need a refresher on Xcode and the development tools, see [Chapter 1](#).

1. Launch Xcode, as shown in [Figure 4-3](#).

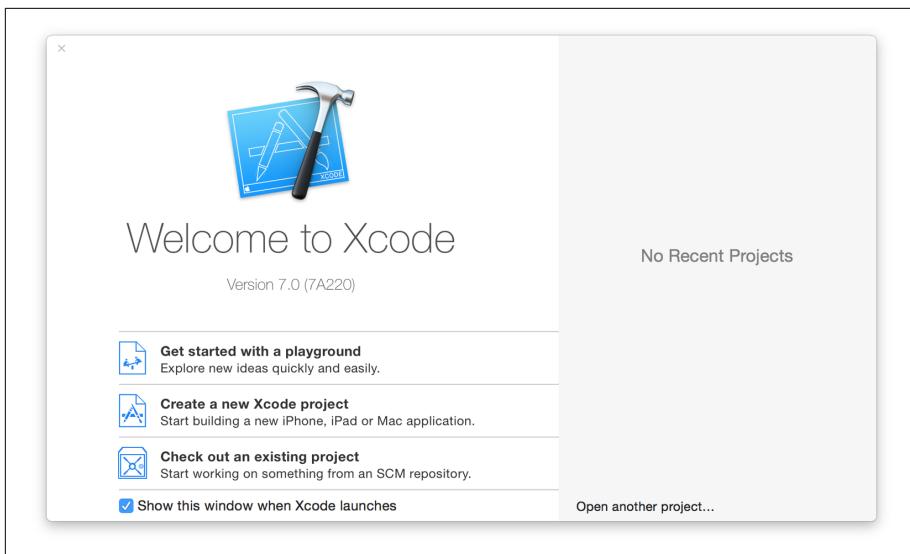


Figure 4-3. The Welcome to Xcode screen

2. Click the “Create a new Xcode project” button.

The list of project templates will appear. Click Application under the OS X heading, in the left column (which includes categories for Apple's other platforms, such as iOS, tvOS, and watchOS), and then select Cocoa Application ([Figure 4-4](#)). Click Next.



The other templates provide a default setup for different types of application. You can do everything provided by each template manually, if you want. They're just a collection of provided files and code. The templates shown in [Figure 4-4](#) are those provided by Apple, and ship with Xcode.

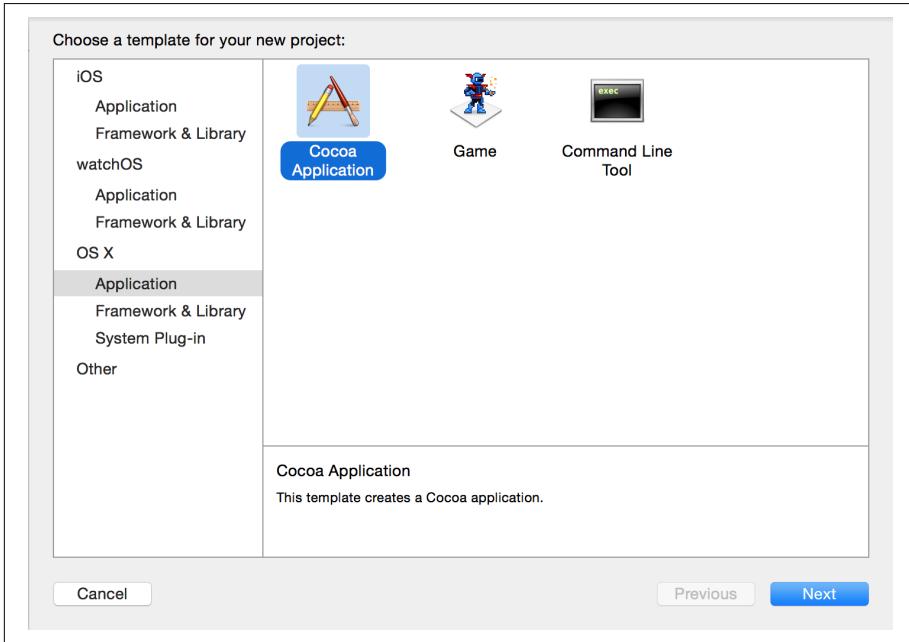


Figure 4-4. Selecting a Cocoa app

3. You'll be prompted to give the project a name, plus some additional information (see [Figure 4-5](#)). Use the following settings:
 - **Product Name:** Notes
 - **Organization Name:** Your company's name. Enter your own name if you're not making this app for a company.
 - **Organization Identifier:** Your domain name, reversed; for example, if you own mycompany.com, enter **com.mycompany**. (Customize this based on your domain name; if you don't have one, enter **com.example**.)

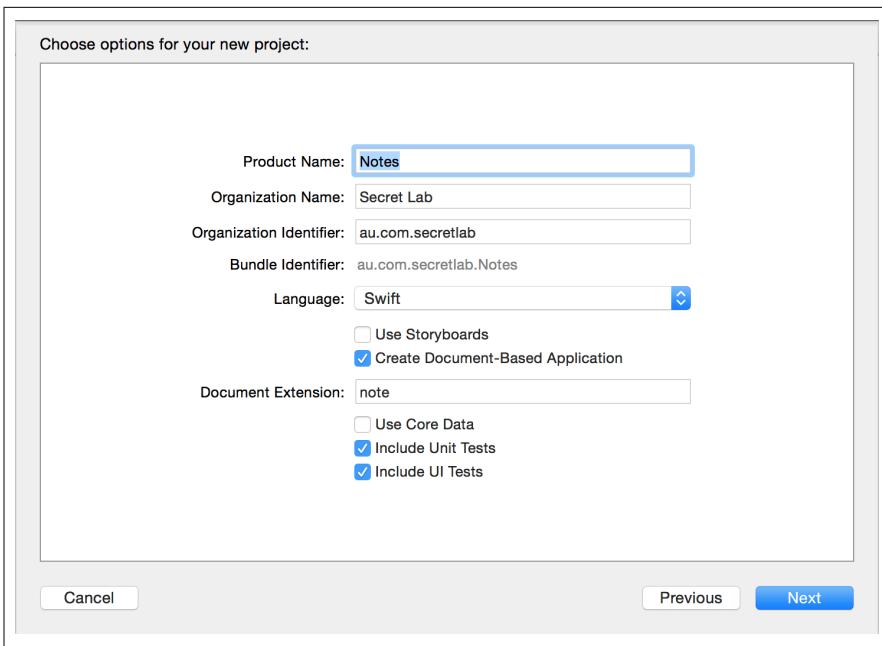


Figure 4-5. Configuring the Cocoa app



The organization name and the product name are used to create the app's *bundle identifier*. A bundle identifier is a period-separated string that uniquely identifies a bundle of code and resources. For example, if you use `com.example` as your organization identifier, the bundle ID will be `com.example.Notes`.

Bundle identifiers are used everywhere in the OS X and iOS ecosystem. A bundle identifier forms the basis of your *app ID*, which is the unique string that identifies your app on the App Store. Bundle IDs are used to distinguish between apps. Your app's bundle ID is also used as the basis of other IDs, such as the uniform type identifier (UTI) for your documents, which we'll cover in “[Defining a Document Type](#)” on page 98.

- **Language:** Swift

We're setting the language to Swift, because—well—this is a Swift book! You can set this to Objective-C if you want, though! But the rest of the book will make absolutely no sense if you do.

- **Use Storyboards:** Off

We're not turning storyboards on here because we're going to use the other means of creating a UI, nibs, for the OS X app. We'll use storyboards when we build the iOS app, in [Part III](#). We're deliberately using both UI techniques so you'll get experience with both. We'll explain more about nibs versus storyboards in "[A Basic UI](#)" on page 117.

- **Create Document-Based Application:** On

This setting asks Xcode to provide the basics of a document-based application to us, in the template that it generates for the project. This will give us a [Document](#) class that we can build from. A document-based application is one that handles multiple documents, each with its own window. Much of this infrastructure is provided for free by Apple's document architecture. You can learn more about this in the [documentation](#).

- **Document Extension:** [note](#)

Since our Notes app will work with documents that represent notes, we set the file extension for the basic document-based application that Xcode is going to generate to something that makes sense. In this case, we'll be making a Notes app that works with [.note](#) files. We'll talk about this more throughout the remainder of this chapter.

- **Use Core Data:** Off

Core Data is a framework provided by Apple that lets you store data in a manner similar to a database, but local to your app. We're not using Core Data in this book, as it's a topic that warrants a book all on its own. Additionally, the limits of Core Data are quite easy to hit, and it's often more useful, as well as more of a learning experience, to build storage infrastructure for your app from scratch. If we'd turned this on, stubs for Core Data, as well as a data model, would be added to the project that Xcode will generate for us. If you really must, you can learn more about Core Data in the [documentation](#). Don't say we didn't warn you!

- **Include Unit Tests:** On

- **Include UI Tests:** On

Leaving these two on creates stubs for unit tests and UI tests, respectively. We'll touch on these subjects much later, in [Chapter 17](#).



If you're using OS X Yosemite, note that UI tests will run only on OS X 10.11, El Capitan. You can *create* a project that includes UI tests on Yosemite, but you won't be able to run them.

1. Click the “Next” button, and Xcode will ask you where you’d like to save the project (which will be a folder with the same name as you put in the Product field), and then it will create a project for you to work with.

Now that the project has been set up, we need to provide more information about the documents that this app will be working with.



We recommend that you store this project (and, indeed, anything else that you might work on) in Git, or a similar version control system. It’s out of the scope of this book to explore Git, but we strongly recommend you take some time to explore it if you’re not already using it. Xcode has some basic support for Git built in, which you can read about in [Apple’s documentation](#).

2. Select the Notes project at the top of the Project Navigator ([Figure 4-6](#)). If you need a refresher on the Xcode interface, flip back to “[The Xcode Interface](#)” on [page 12](#).

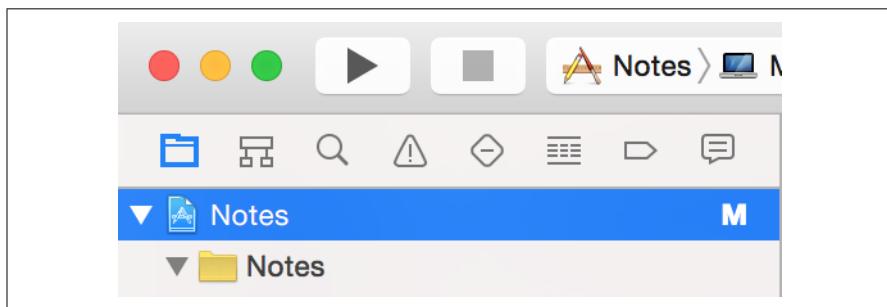


Figure 4-6. Selecting the project

The main editor will show information about the overall project.

There’s a lot that you get for free just by creating the project. In addition to the app itself, you get an application that is capable of working with document-like objects. If you run the application right now, you’ll already be able to create new *documents* by pressing ⌘-N , though you won’t yet be able to save them to disk.

Defining a Document Type

We'll now provide some more information about the document type. Notes will be a document-based application, which means it will behave like other document-based applications on OS X, such as Pages orTextEdit.

1. Select the Notes application from the list of targets. As a reminder, a project can contain multiple targets, each of which collects the code, user interface, and other resources required to generate a product. We first mentioned targets back in “[The Xcode Interface](#)” on page 12.

If you don't see the list of targets, make sure the Notes project (it has a blueprint icon) is selected in the Project Navigator, and then click the icon that looks like a square with a vertical line inside it, at the top left of the editor ([Figure 4-7](#)). This will toggle the projects and targets list ([Figure 4-8](#)).

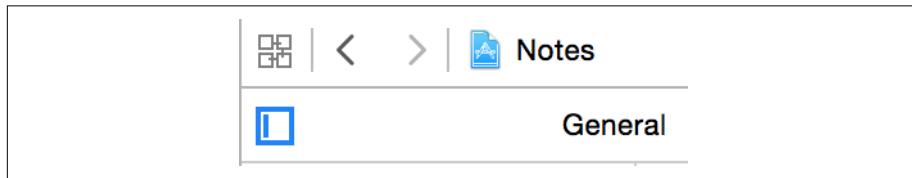


Figure 4-7. Opening the targets list

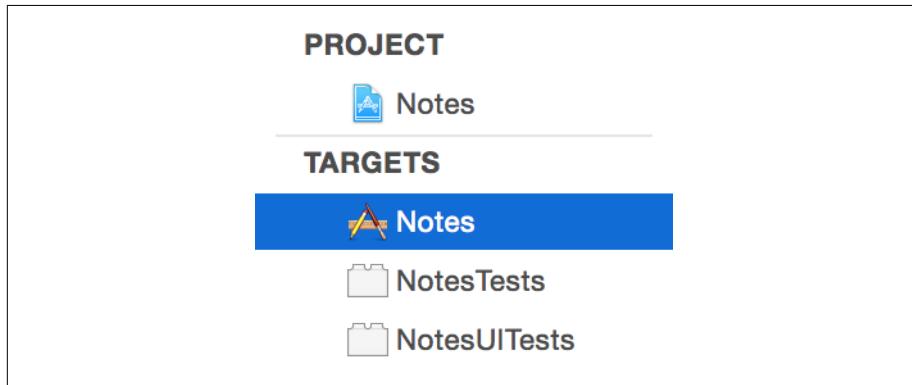


Figure 4-8. Selecting the Notes target

2. Select the Info tab from the top of the editor, shown in [Figure 4-9](#).



Figure 4-9. The Info tab

3. Scroll down to the Document Types section, and open it by clicking the triangle. There's already the beginnings of a document type laid out, because we asked Xcode to create a document-based application, and it knows that such an application will need a document type.

We need to add a little more description, including a proper name for the document, as well as an identifier similar to our organization identifier, so our document type won't collide with any other possible files with a `.note` extension:

- a. Set Name to **Note**.
- b. Set Identifier to your organization identifier, plus `.Note`. For example, if your organization identifier is `com.example`, the document's identifier is `com.example.Note`.

This defines this document as conforming to this uniform type identifier, which is the method by which the system works out the types of files.

A uniform type identifier looks very similar to a bundle identifier: it's a period-separated string. For example, the UTI for PDF files is `com.adobe.pdf`.

UTIs were invented to deal with the thorny problem of identifying the types of files. If you're given a blob of information, what you can do with it depends on the kind of data that it contains. For example, Adobe Photoshop can open images but not Word documents, and if the user wants to open a Word document, the operating system shouldn't even consider opening it in Photoshop. However, it's not reasonable for the OS to inspect the contents of the file to tell the difference, so we need some kind of *metadata* that describes those contents.

Originally, file types were simply identified by the file extension. For example, the JSON data interchange format uses the file extension `.json`. This worked fairly well, until we hit the problem of *type granularity*.

You see, a JSON file isn't just describable solely as JSON data—it's also a text file, a chunk of binary data, and a file (as opposed to a directory). There are thousands of plain-text formats out there, and a text editor shouldn't have to manually specify each one that it's capable of opening.

This is where UTIs come in. UTIs are a *hierarchy* of types: when a UTI is declared, it also declares all of the other types that it *conforms* to. For example, the UTI for JSON is `public.json`; this UTI also conforms to `public.text`, which represents *plain text* and itself conforms to both `public.data` and `public.content`. This means that, even if you don't know anything about the specifics of the JSON file format, you know that JSON is text.

When you create a new type of document, you add information to the app that *exports* the new UTI. This means that when the app is installed on the system, the

operating system will detect the fact that you’re declaring a new type of document. In addition, because your app registers itself as one that can also *open* that type of document, the system will record that if the user double-clicks files of that type, your app should be the one that’s launched.

When you export a UTI, you provide as much information as possible about it: any icon to use, a textual description of what the type is, all existing UTIs that the new type conforms to, and any other information that the system can use to identify the file. This additional information includes things that other operating systems use, such as file extensions, MIME types, and OSTypes (which were used by Mac OS Classic, the precursor to OS X).



Different kinds of apps work with different kinds of data, and it helps to be familiar with the different types of UTIs that are out there. You can find a list of UTIs that the system defines in [Apple’s documentation](#).

The document type in this app will be one that conforms to the `com.apple.package` type, which means that it’s a folder that contains other files, but should be presented to the user as a single file. OS X and iOS make extensive use of packages, since they’re a very convenient way to present a file that contains other information. This is perfect for our file format, since it contains attachments.



We’ll be talking more about this approach in “[Package File Formats](#)” on page 108.

1. Select the box for “Document is distributed as a bundle” (Figure 4-10).

A screenshot of a Mac OS X system preferences window titled "Document Types". Under the "Note" entry, there is a checkbox labeled "Bundle" with the subtitle "Document is distributed as a bundle". The checkbox is checked. Other fields shown include "Name: Note", "Class: \${PRODUCT_MODULE_NAME}.Document", "Extensions: note", "Icon: None", "Identifier: au.com.secretlab.Note", "Role: Editor", and "Mime Types: None".

Figure 4-10. Defining a document type

The Note document type that we’ve just described is a new type that the rest of the system doesn’t know about yet. Because we’ve just invented this new UTI, we need to export it to the system, as shown in Figure 4-11. Let’s do that now.

2. Open the Exported UTIs section.
3. Click the + button in this section to add a new entry.
4. Provide the following information, as shown in [Figure 4-11](#):
 - a. Set Description to **Note**.
 - b. Set Extensions to **note**.
 - c. Set Identifier to the same as the identifier you provided earlier (for example, **com.example.Note**).
 - d. Set Conforms To to **com.apple.package**. This tells the system that files of this type are actually folders (“packages”) of files.



Figure 4-11. Defining a new uniform type identifier

5. Run the app by clicking the play button in the upper-left corner of the window, or by pressing ⌘-R on your keyboard. After compiling, the app will launch.

It doesn’t do much, but you can already create new *documents* by pressing ⌘-N, as shown in [Figure 4-12](#). Pretty neat!

It might not seem like you’ve done a lot, because we haven’t done any programming (we did warn you!). But really, you’ve accomplished a whole lot in this chapter, helped along by parts of the process that Xcode automates. In brief, you’ve:

- created a brand-new OS X app, complete with support for multiple documents, open in multiple windows.
- defined a brand-new file extension, *.note*, and told the system about it by exporting it as a UTI.
- been given a *Document* class, written in Swift, for you to extend to do what you need. (Did you notice the *Document.swift* file in the Project Navigator? We’ll be working with that in the next chapter!)

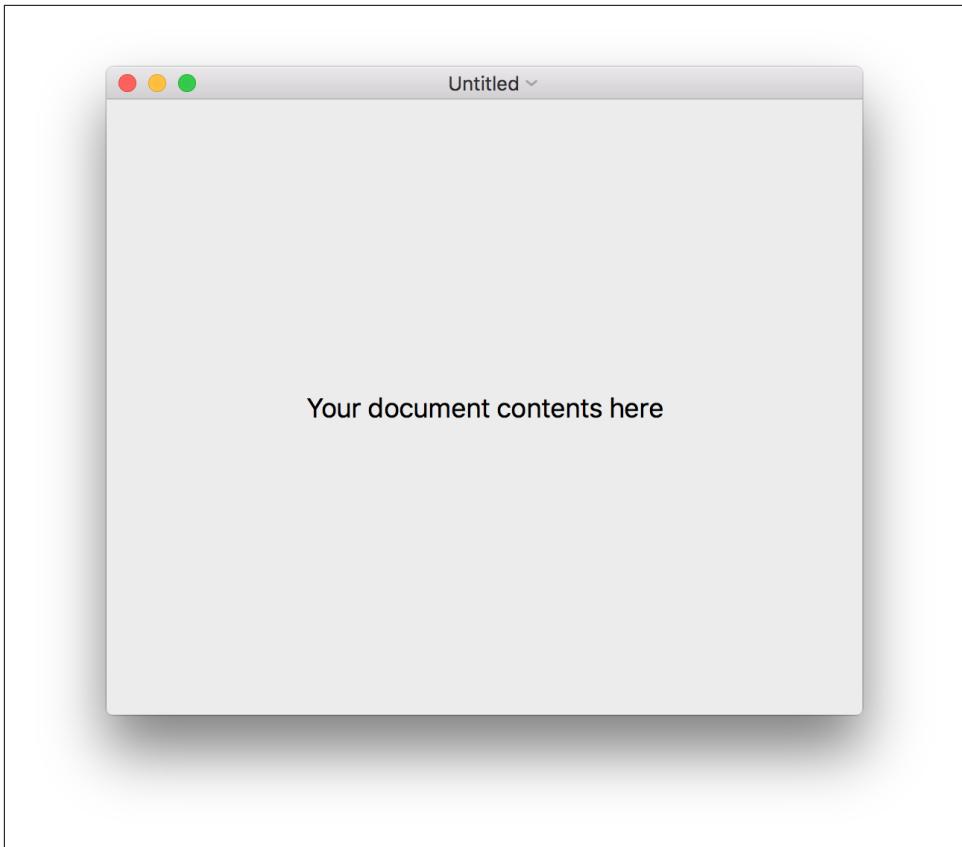


Figure 4-12. The current state of the app

In the next chapter, we'll make the app even better, but there's one last cosmetic thing we need to do first!

Adding the Icon

Finally, we'll add the icon to the application's *asset catalog*. We probably wouldn't really add the application icon at this point in the process, but since we're providing an icon for you to use, and since apps look better with an actual icon instead of the Apple default icon, we thought we'd do it here. It's also a good opportunity to talk about asset catalogs.

In Xcode, an asset catalog is a file that contains the assets that your app uses. It is most commonly used to store images, but can be used to store all sorts of assets: data files, app icons, placeholder images for certain OS features, and various other things.

The most predominant use for asset catalogs is storing images. Asset catalogs simplify management of images that are used by your app as part of its user interface. Importantly, each image itself is composed of *each of the different versions* that the system could use. A good example of this in practice is the icon that we're about to add.

An OS X app's icon can be presented at a variety of sizes: if it's in the Dock, it will probably be about 64 pixels high, but if it's being shown in List mode in the Finder, it may be only 16 pixels high. This gets even more complicated when you add Retina displays into the mix, where there may be more physical pixels per screen point than a non-Retina screen (that is, an image might report itself as 16×16 screen points, but will physically be a 32×32 pixel image). For optimal image quality, it's best to provide a separate image file for different sizes—downscaling a large image, or upscaling a small one, generally results in a pretty significant drop in image quality.

1. Locate the *OS X Icon.png* and *OS X Icon@2x.png* files in the downloaded resources (as a reminder, these are available via this book's [website](#)).
2. Open the *Assets.xcassets* file, and select the *AppIcon* item in the list of assets.
3. Drag the *OS X Icon.png* file onto the slot labeled *1x Mac 512pt*. Next, drag the *OS X Icon@2x.png* file onto the slot labeled *2x Mac 512pt*.

The app now has an icon (see [Figure 4-13](#)!). You might be wondering what the “1x” and “2x” mean: the 1x icon is the version of the icon for non-Retina displays, and the 2x icon is the version of the icon for Retina displays. The 2x image is double the resolution of the 1x image. You can learn more about Retina displays and OS X apps in [Apple's documentation](#).

Rather than requiring you to individually address each possible version of the image, the asset catalog saves you time by creating *image sets* for each image. The application image is an image set, which lets you provide multiple files for a single image. At run-time, the system will select the most appropriate image to use. You still provide the images, but you only have to refer to what the image is representing by name, rather than the specific resolution version. In this case, the system looks for the *AppIcon* item, in the asset catalog, and knows to use the 1x version for non-Retina displays, and the 2x version for Retina displays.

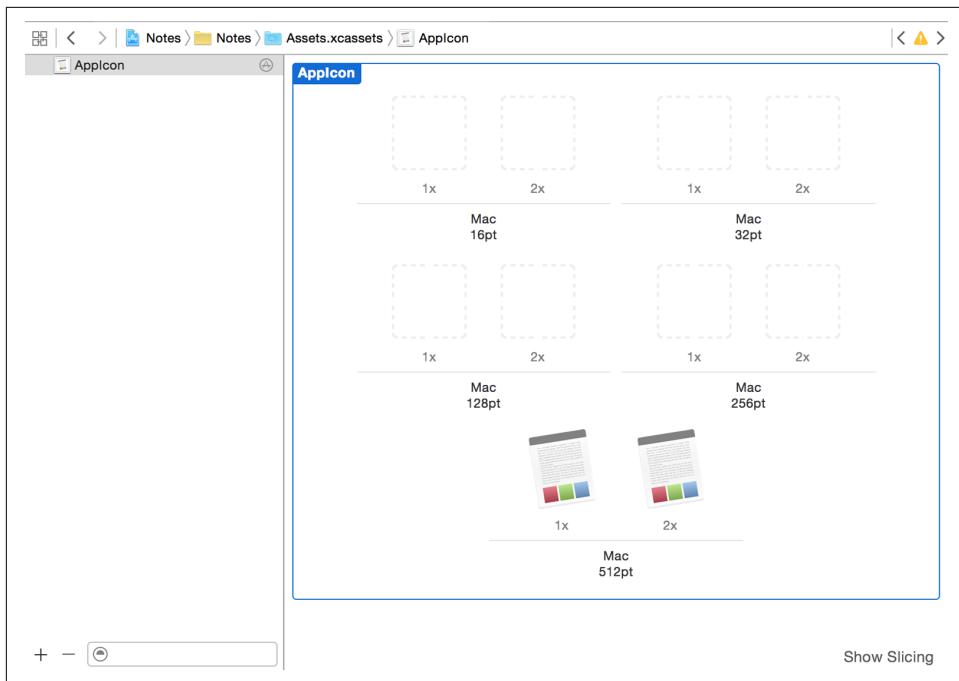


Figure 4-13. The app icon

Conclusion

Now that you've made it to the end of this first chapter, let's look back at what you've learned. In addition to developing an idea of how document-based applications work and how this particular app will work, we've done some fairly low-level plumbing of the type system and introduced an entirely new document type. In the next chapter, we'll start adding features to the app and start building an actual, working, feature-full app.

Working with Documents on OS X

Now that we've done the groundwork for the OS X application, we can start adding the features that power it. Here's where we'll actually be doing some programming with Swift.

Because most of the functionality of the app, along with the user interface, comes from the `Document` class that was automatically provided when we first created the project in Xcode, we'll be spending most of our time working with `Document` and enhancing its features to meet our needs. We'll be adding support for storing text inside our note document format, creating a user interface to show that text, and making sure the app can save and open note files.

Along the way, we'll talk about how documents work on OS X, how to build applications that work with the document system to help users get their work done, and how Swift fits into all of this.

The `NSDocument` Class

In OS X, documents are represented by the `NSDocument` class. When you create a new type of document, you subclass this class, inheriting from it, and add the properties and methods that are specific to your situation. For example, later in this chapter, we'll be adding properties that store the text of the note. If you need a refresher about subclassing and inheritance, refer back to “[Inheritance](#)” on page 62.



iOS has a similar class, called `UIDocument`. We'll be looking at `UIDocument` in lots of detail in [Chapter 9](#).

The `NSDocument` class and its many related classes form a framework that allows you to focus on the specifics of how your application needs to work. You don't, for example, need to re-implement common features like a filepicker to let the user choose what file to open. By using `NSDocument`, you also automatically gain access to advanced features like autosaving and versions.

An instance of `NSDocument`, or one of its subclasses, represents a single document and its contents. When the application wants to create a new document, it creates a new instance of the class; when that document needs to be saved, the system calls a method that returns an encoded version of the document's contents, which the system then writes to disk. When an existing document needs to be loaded, an instance is created and then given an encoded representation to use.

This means that your `NSDocument` subclasses never directly work with the filesystem, which allows OS X to do several behind-the-scenes tricks, like automatically saving backup copies or saving snapshots over time.



`NSDocument` is not part of the Swift programming language, but is instead part of the AppKit framework. AppKit is the framework Apple provides to build graphical applications for OS X, and it contains windows, buttons, menus, text fields, and so on. You can learn more about AppKit in [Apple's documentation](#).

We're going to work with `NSDocument`, using Swift, through the rest of this chapter, and we'll explain how it fits together as we go.

Storing Data in the Document

In [Chapter 4](#) we created a new project and asked it to set up a “document-based application” for us. Because of this, our project already has a `Document` class file in place, with some method stubs, as shown here (with comments removed). You'll find this in the `Document.swift` file, which you can open by clicking on it in the Project Navigator, located on the left side of the screen. As ever, if you need a refresher on the structure of Xcode's user interface, check back to [“The Xcode Interface” on page 12](#).

When you open `Document.swift` in the editor, you'll see a number of stub functions that the template gave us. Here are the two we are interested in:

```
override func dataOfType(typeName: String) throws -> NSData {
    throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimpErr, userInfo: nil)
}

override func readFromData(data: NSData, ofType typeName: String) throws {
    throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimpErr, userInfo: nil)
}
```

The method stubs provided to us don't really do much at the moment. All we have right now is some methods that get called when a document of whatever type (in our case, a note) gets written to, read from, or displayed. We're going to need to make sure this `Document` class is actually useful to us.



The `throw` keyword, in this case, causes an `NSError` object to be relayed back to the document system, indicating that there was a problem in saving or opening the document. In this case, the problem is that the methods are unimplemented.

The first thing we need to do is customize our `Document` class to support storing the data that our documents contain. There are two main items that the documents keep: the text and the attachments. The first item is very straightforward; the second is quite a bit trickier.

Storing Text

The Notes application is primarily about storing written text. In just about every programming language under the sun, text is stored in strings, which means that we'll need to add a string property in which to store the document's text.



Strings in Swift are *really* powerful. In Swift, a string is stored as a series of Unicode characters. If you're an old Objective-C programmer, you might (or might not, if you disliked `NSString`!) be pleased to know that Swift `String` class is bridged to Foundation's `NSString` class, which means you can do anything to a Swift `String` that you could do to an `NSString`. If you don't know what this means, then you don't need to worry about it!

However, the Notes application should be slightly fancier than a plain-text editor. We want the user to be able to **bold** and *italicize* the text, or maybe **both**, and regular strings can't store this information. To do so, we'll need to use a different type than `String`: we'll need to use `NSAttributedString`.



`NSAttributedString` is from Foundation, the base layer of classes that were created to support Objective-C, Apple's other programming language. Because of this, `NSAttributedString` has a few differences around its use than the native Swift `String` class but in practice, this often doesn't matter.

An *attributed* string is a type of string that contains *attributes* that apply to ranges of characters. These attributes include things like **bold**, **color**, and **font**.



Attributed text is also referred to as *rich text*.

1. Open the `Document.swift` class file containing stubs created by Xcode.
2. Add the following property to the `Document` class above the `init` method:

```
// Main text content
var text : NSAttributedString = NSAttributedString()
```



Although in theory you can put your property declarations pretty much anywhere you want, it is standard practice to add them to the top of the class declaration. We talked more about properties in Swift back in [Chapter 2](#).

This `NSAttributedString` property has a default value of the empty attributed string and will be used to store the text for a note file. `NSAttributedString` is all you need in order to store and work with formatted text (that is, text with attributes, such as a font and a size) almost anywhere within your apps. User interface elements provided by Apple support `NSAttributedString` and know how to display it. It's that easy!

Package File Formats

In addition to storing plain text, the `Document` class also needs to store attachments. These attachments can be *any* file that the user chooses, which means that we need to think carefully about how we approach this.

On most operating systems, documents are represented as single file. This makes a lot of intuitive sense in most situations, since a “document” can be thought of as a single “thing” on the disk. However, if you have a complex document format that contains lots of different information, it can cause a lot of work: the document system needs to read through the file, determine what information is where, and parse it into a usable in-memory representation. If the file is large, this can mean that the system needs to make sure that it doesn’t run out of memory while reading the file.

OS X deals with this kind of problem in a simpler, more elegant way. Instead of requiring all documents to be individual files, documents can also be *packages*: folders that contain multiple files. The `NSDocument` class is capable of working with both flat files and packages in the same way.

A file package allows you to use the filesystem to work with different parts of your document. For example, Apple’s presentation tool Keynote uses a package file format

to store the content of the slides separately from the images that appear on those slides. Additionally, all applications on OS X and iOS are themselves packages: when you build an application using Xcode, what's produced is a folder that contains, among much else, the compiled binary, all images and resources, and files containing information that describes the capabilities of the application to the operating system.



Package file formats have a lot of advantages, but they have a single, large disadvantage: you can't directly email a folder to someone. Instead, you have to store the folder in an archive, such as a ZIP file. Additionally, users of other operating systems won't see a package as a single document, but rather as a folder.

To work with package file formats, you use the `NSFileWrapper` class. An `NSFileWrapper` is an object that represents either a single file, or a directory of multiple files (each of which can itself be a file wrapper representing a directory).

The `Document` class will contain at least two file wrappers:

- One for the `.rtf` file containing the text, called `Text.rtf`
- One for a folder called `Attachments`, which will store the attachments.

We need two file wrappers in order to store both parts of a note. As we described back in [Chapter 4](#), a note is composed of formatted text, plus any number of attachments, which can be arbitrary files. To store the text to disk—which is represented and manipulated within our Swift code as an `NSAttributedString`—we use one file wrapper to store it, saving it using the pre-existing *rich-text format* (RTF). To store the attachments, we'll use a folder, called `Attachments`, which will live inside the package that represents an individual `.note` file.

We need to implement methods that load from and save to a file wrapper, as well as the necessary machinery for accessing the contents of the files. We'll implement the first file wrapper, for the text of a note, in this chapter, and the second file wrapper, for attachments, in the next chapter.

However, before we start implementing the `Document` class, we need to do a little bit of preparation. First, we'll define the names of the important files and folders that are kept inside the documents; next, we'll lay out the types of errors that can be generated while working with the documents.

These will be kept inside an enum, which we talked about in [“Enumerations” on page 47](#); by using this approach, we'll avoid annoying bugs caused by typos. This enumeration is one that we'll be adding to as we extend the functionality of the `Document` class.

1. Add the following enumeration to the top of *Document.swift* (that is, before the *Document* class):

```
// Names of files/directories in the package
enum NoteDocumentFileNames : String {
    case TextFile = "Text.rtf"

    case AttachmentsDirectory = "Attachments"

}
```



Note that the type associated with this enumeration is `String`. This allows us to associate each value of the enumeration with a corresponding string.

Opening and saving a document can fail. To diagnose *why* it failed, it's useful to build a list of error codes, which will help us figure out the precise causes of failures. The list of errors we've chosen here is derived from [Apple's list of possible `NSError` types](#).

In the `NSError` system (which we discussed back in [“Error Handling” on page 77](#)), each possible error is represented by an error *code*: a number that represents the error in question. Rather than having to manually specify the error codes for each thing that could go wrong, we'll use an enumeration; this allows us to focus on the errors themselves instead of having to be reminded that we're really working with numbers.

2. Add the following list of possible errors, which is also an enumeration. This enumerator is an `Int` type, since that's what `NSError` requires for its error codes. As with the `NoteDocumentFileNames` enumeration, we want to add this one above the class definition, at the top of the *Document.swift* file:

```
enum ErrorCode : Int {

    /// We couldn't find the document at all.
    case CannotAccessDocument

    /// We couldn't access any file wrappers inside this document.
    case CannotLoadFileWrappers

    /// We couldn't load the Text.rtf file.
    case CannotLoadText

    /// We couldn't access the Attachments folder.
    case CannotAccessAttachments
```

```
/// We couldn't save the Text.rtf file.  
case CannotSaveText  
  
/// We couldn't save an attachment.  
case CannotSaveAttachment  
}
```

We're using a triple-slash (///) for our comments in the preceding code for a reason. The triple-slash tells Xcode to treat that comment as documentation. Put triple-slash comments above method names and entries in `enums` to define what they mean, and Option-click those names to see this documentation.

To save typing, we'll also create a method that prepares an `NSError` object for us based on the types of errors that can occur while a user is opening or saving a document.

3. Above the `Document` class definition, implement the `err` function:

```
let ErrorDomain = "NotesErrorDomain"  
  
func err(code: ErrorCode, _ userInfo:[NSObject:AnyObject]? = nil)  
-> NSError {  
    // Generate an NSError object, using ErrorDomain and whatever  
    // value we were passed.  
    return NSError(domain: ErrorDomain, code: code.rawValue,  
        userInfo: userInfo)  
}
```



The `userInfo` parameter is a little complex, so let's break it down a bit. The underscore before the parameter's name (`userInfo`) indicates to Swift that calls to this function don't need to label the parameter—they can just call it as `err(A, B)` instead of `err(A, userInfo: B)`. The type of the parameter is an optional dictionary that maps `NSObject`s to any object. If this parameter is omitted, this parameter's value defaults to `nil`.

This function takes our enumeration from before, as well as the object that caused the error, and returns an `NSError` object.

The `NSError` class represents something—*anything*—that can go wrong. In order to properly deal with the specific things that can go wrong while someone is working with the document, it's useful to have an `NSError` that describes what happened. However, the `NSError` class's initializer is complicated and verbose.

It's easier to instead create a simple little function that you can just pass a value from the `ErrorCode` enumeration in, as in this example (which is part of the code we'll be writing later), instead of having to pass in the `ErrorDomain` variable and

an `Int` version of the error code. It saves typing and reduces the chance of accidentally introducing a bug.

You'll be using the `err` method later in this chapter, when we start making the loading and saving system. Here's what it looks like:

```
// Load the text data as RTF
guard let documentText = NSAttributedString(RTF: documentTextData,
    documentAttributes: nil) else {
    throw err(.CannotLoadText)
}
```

The guard Keyword, and Why It's Great

You'll notice we're using the `guard` keyword in the previous example. The `guard` keyword was introduced in Swift 2 and helps you to avoid writing two kinds of painful code: if-pyramids (sometimes called "pyramids of doom"), and early returns.

An if-pyramid looks something like this:

```
if let someObjectA = optionalA {
    if let someObjectB = optionalB {
        if let someObjectC = optionalC {
            // do something that relies on all three of these optionals
            // having a value
        }
    }
}
```

And an early return looks something like this:

```
if conditionA == "thing" { return }
if conditionB == "thing" { return }
if conditionC == "thing" { return }

// Do something that relies on conditionA, conditionB, and
// conditionC all NOT being equal to "thing".

// Don't forget to include the 'return' statements, or you're in trouble!
```

We suspect that at least one of these looks familiar! The `guard` keyword lets you avoid this pain. It embodies Swift's philosophy of encouraging, or even forcing, you to write safe code. You tell `guard` what you want to be the case, rather than what you don't want to be the case; this makes it easier to read the code and understand what's going on.

When you use `guard`, you provide a condition to test and a chunk of code. If the condition evaluates to `false`, then the chunk of code is executed. So far, this might seem similar to the `if` statement, but it has an interesting extra requirement: at the end of

the code, you're *required* to exit from the current scope. This means, for example, you're have to return from the function you're in. For example:

```
guard someText.characters.count > 0 else {
    throw err(.TextIsEmpty)
}
```

Here, we *guard* on the premise that a variable called `someText` has more than zero characters. If it doesn't, we throw an error. Again, while *guard* might not look that different from a bunch of `if` statements right now, it's a lot easier to read and understand what the code is going to do.

Getting back to the app, there is one more task we need to do before we can start saving and loading files. We'll add a property to the `Document` class: an `NSFileWrapper` that represents the file on disk. We'll be using this later to access the attachments that are stored in the document.

Add the following property to the `Document` class (this goes inside the class definition):

```
var documentFileWrapper = NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [:])
```

The `documentFileWrapper` will represent the contents of the document folder, and we'll use it to add files to the package. Defining the variable with the default value `NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [:])` ensures that the variable will always contain a valid file wrapper to work with.

Saving Files

With the groundwork in place, we can now implement the guts of loading and saving. We'll start by implementing the method that saves the content, and then we'll implement the loading method.

The saving method, `fileWrapperOfType`, an `NSDocument` method we are going to override, is required to return an `NSFileWrapper` that represents a file or directory to be saved to disk. It's important to note that you don't actually write a file yourself; instead, the `NSFileWrapper` object merely *represents* a file and its contents, and it's up to OS X to actually commit that object to disk. The advantage of doing it like this is that you can construct whatever organization you need for your package file format without actually having to have files written to disk. You simply create "imaginary" files and folders out of `NSFileWrapper` objects and return them from this method, and the system takes care of actually writing them to disk.

Inside the `Document` class implement the `fileWrapperOfType` method, which prepares and returns a file wrapper to the system, which then saves it to disk:

```
override func fileWrapperOfType(typeName: String) throws -> NSFileWrapper {
```

```

let textRTFData = try self.text.dataFromRange(
    NSRange(0..

```

This function takes a single parameter: a string, which contains a UTI that describes the kind of file that the system would like returned to it.



In this application, which only works with *one* type of file, we can safely ignore this parameter. In an app that can open and save multiple types of documents, you'd need to check the contents of this parameter and tailor your behavior accordingly. For example, in an image-editing application that can work with both PNG and JPEG images, if the user wants to save her image as a PNG, the `typeName` parameter would be `public.png`, and you'd need to ensure that you produce a PNG image.

The method creates a new variable, called `textRTFData`, which contains the text of the document encoded as an RTF document. The line in which this happens is complex, so let's take a closer look at it:

```

let textRTFData = try self.text.dataFromRange(
    NSRange(0..

```

This line of code does a lot of work, all at once. It first accesses the `self.text` property, and accesses the `NSAttributedText` that contains the document's text. It then

calls the `dataFromRange` method to convert this attributed string into a collection of bytes that can be written to disk. This method first requires an `NSRange`, which represents a chunk of the text; in this case, we want the entire text, so we ask for the range starting at zero (the start of the text) and ending at the last character in the text.

The `dataFromRange` method also needs to know *how* the data should be formatted, because there are multiple ways to represent formatted text; we indicate that we want RTF text by passing in a dictionary that contains the `NSDocumentTypeDocumentAttribute` key, which is associated with the value `NSRTFTextDocumentType`.

This whole line is prefixed with the `try` keyword, which is required because `dataFromRange` is capable of failing. However, we don't need to actually deal with this error, because the `fileWrapperOfType` method *itself* is marked as capable of failing (this is the `throws` keyword at the top of the function). In other words, if there is a problem in getting the formatted data, the entire function will immediately return, and the calling function will need to deal with the error object that is generated. (The calling function, in this case, is part of the OS X document system; we don't need to worry about the specifics. But if you're curious, it displays an alert box to users to tell them that there was a problem saving their file.)

At this point, the method is taking advantage of an especially useful combination of Swift's features. Remember that, in Swift, nonoptional variables are required to be non-`nil`—that is, they have a value. The only way for the `dataFromRange` method to fail to provide a value is to completely fail in its task. This is indicated from the way that `dataFromRange`'s method is declared:

```
func dataFromRange(  
    range: NSRange,  
    documentAttributes dict: [String : AnyObject]) throws -> NSData
```

Notice how the return type of this method is `NSData`, not `NSData?` (with a question mark at the end). This indicates that the method will either succeed and give you a value, or completely fail. If it fails, the fact that this method `throws` and that any errors from `dataFromRange` are not specifically caught means that the method will immediately return. This means that you don't have to do any `nil` checking or optional unwrapping on the value you get back from `dataFromRange`.

Once the `textRTFData` variable has been created, the method then needs to determine whether or not it needs to replace any existing text file. The reason for this is that an `NSFileWrapper` can have multiple file wrappers inside it *with the same name*. We can't simply say “add a new file wrapper called `Text.rtf`,” because if one already existed, it would be added as `“Text 2.rtf”` or something similar. As a result, the document asks itself if it already has a file wrapper for the text file; if one exists, it is removed.

After that, a new file wrapper is created that contains the `textRTFData` that we prepared earlier. This is added to the document's `documentFileWrapper`.



Remember, `documentFileWrapper` is guaranteed to always exist and be ready to use, because it was defined with a default value.

Finally, the `documentFileWrapper` is returned to the system. At this point, it's now in the hands of the operating system; it will be saved, as needed, by OS X.

Loading Files

Next, we'll implement the function that loads the data from the various files into memory. This is basically the reverse of the `fileWrapperOfType` method: it receives an `NSFileWrapper` and uses its contents to get the useful information out.

Implement the `readFromFileWrapper` method, which loads the document from the file wrapper:

```
override func readFromFileWrapper(fileWrapper: NSFileWrapper,
    ofType typeName: String) throws {

    // Ensure that we have additional file wrappers in this file wrapper
    guard let fileWrappers = fileWrapper.fileWrappers else {
        throw err(.CannotLoadFileWrappers)
    }

    // Ensure that we can access the document text
    guard let documentTextData =
        fileWrappers[NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue]?
            .regularFileContents else {
        throw err(.CannotLoadText)
    }

    // Load the text data as RTF
    guard let documentText = NSAttributedString(RTF: documentTextData,
        documentAttributes: nil) else {
        throw err(.CannotLoadText)
    }

    // Keep the text in memory
    self.documentFileWrapper = fileWrapper

    self.text = documentText
}
```

This function takes an `NSFileWrapper` and uses guard to make sure that we actually have access to our collection of file wrappers; otherwise, it throws one of our errors, from the enumeration we made earlier. It then checks that there is text inside that we can access (again, otherwise throwing an error) and then loads the text into an `NSAttributedString` (which stores formatted text, as we discussed earlier). If that fails, then we throw yet another possible error.

If we have successfully made it past the three guard statements, then we have successfully loaded the text. We can now store the loaded text in the `text` property; we'll also keep the `NSFileWrapper` that we just loaded from in the `documentFileWrapper` property. This is used later, when the document is saved.

In this book, because the Note file format uses a package file format, we'll be using the methods that are specific to package file format. However, this is only one of the two approaches.

If you're making a document-based application that stores its data in flatfiles, you implement the `readFromData` and `dataOfType` methods instead of the `readFromFileWrapper` and `fileWrapperOfType` methods. In the `readFromData` method, your class is handed an `NSData` object that contains the raw data loaded from the file that the user wants to open, and it's up to you to interpret the contents of that data:

```
override func readFromData(data: NSData, ofType typeName: String) throws {
    // Load data from "data".
}
```

Conversely, the `dataOfType` method is expected to create and return an `NSData` object that contains the information that should be written out to disk:

```
override func dataOfType(typeName: String) throws -> NSData {
    // Return an NSData object. Here's an example:
    return "Hello".dataUsingEncoding(NSUTF8StringEncoding)!
```



Don't implement both the `NSFileWrapper` methods and the `NSData` methods in the same class. If you do, you're likely to confuse the system in regards to how your documents are stored.

A Basic UI

Now that the document class has been prepared, we can create a user interface that will let users actually edit their documents. We're going to create a UI at this point, because if we don't, it will be hard to make sure that the app is behaving as expected. OS X apps are very visual (and iOS apps even more so), and are more often than not—as is the case here—intrinsically linked between code and interface.



It's very easy to think of Xcode's interface builder as being a tool that lets you design a layout and then serialize it into some form of markup that describes the position, type, size, and so on of each object. This is not what's happening. The interface you build is actually the real, bona fide interface that your app uses, not a visual representation of it. This has some consequences that we'll touch on as they come up. We also mentioned this back in “[Designing the Interface](#)” on page 21.

In OS X and iOS, you design an interface using Xcode's built-in interface builder. The interface builder is a drag-and-drop environment in which you both lay out your interface and also connect it to your code. The interface files are stored either as *nib files* or as *storyboard files*; nib files are simpler to work with than storyboards, but storyboards have more features. We briefly touched on the interface builder earlier, in “[Developing a Simple Swift Application](#)” on page 20.



We'll be using nib files in the OS X app, and storyboard files in the iOS app. The user interface needs of the OS X app are much simpler than those of the iOS app we'll be building later, and this way you get to see the use of nibs and storyboards in one book!

When the application creates or opens a document, it needs to present some kind of interface to the user. It does this by first asking the `Document` instance that it just created for the name of the nib file that will contain the document's UI, by accessing its `windowNibName` property:

```
override var windowNibName: String? {
    // document supports multiple NSWindowControllers; you should remove
    // this property and override 'makeWindowControllers' instead.
    return "Document"
}
```

Let's now implement the user interface:

1. Open `Document.xib`, as shown in [Figure 5-1](#).

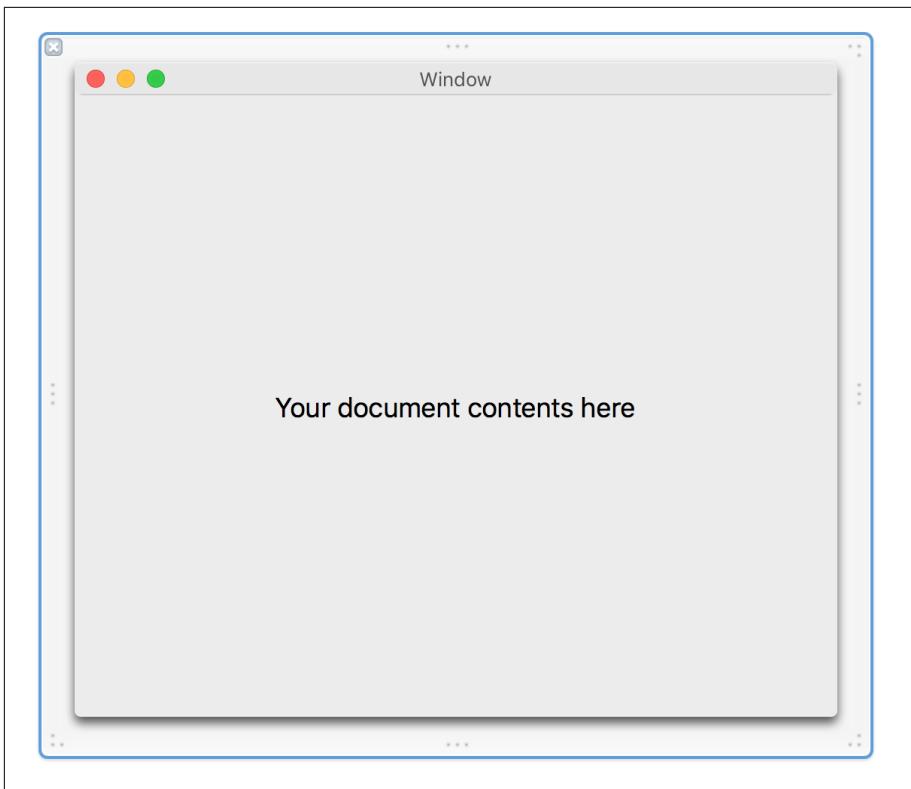


Figure 5-1. The empty Document.xib, opened for the first time



Nib used to stand for “NeXT Interface Builder,” which was the original program that developers used to create their interfaces. The file format was later changed from a custom binary format to XML, which is why the files have the filename extension `.xib`. It’s still referred to as “nib.” The N in the various NS-prefixed classes has the same origin.

2. Set the window’s Full Screen mode to Primary Window (see [Figure 5-2](#)). Full-screen support is free, especially when you use constraints, but you need to turn it on. Do this by clicking the icon representing the window in the sidebar of the nib editor (it’s below the “A” icon made out of a paintbrush, pencil, and ruler), and then use the Attributes Inspector (one of the tabs on the right side of the screen) to select Primary Window from the drop-down menu next to Full Screen.

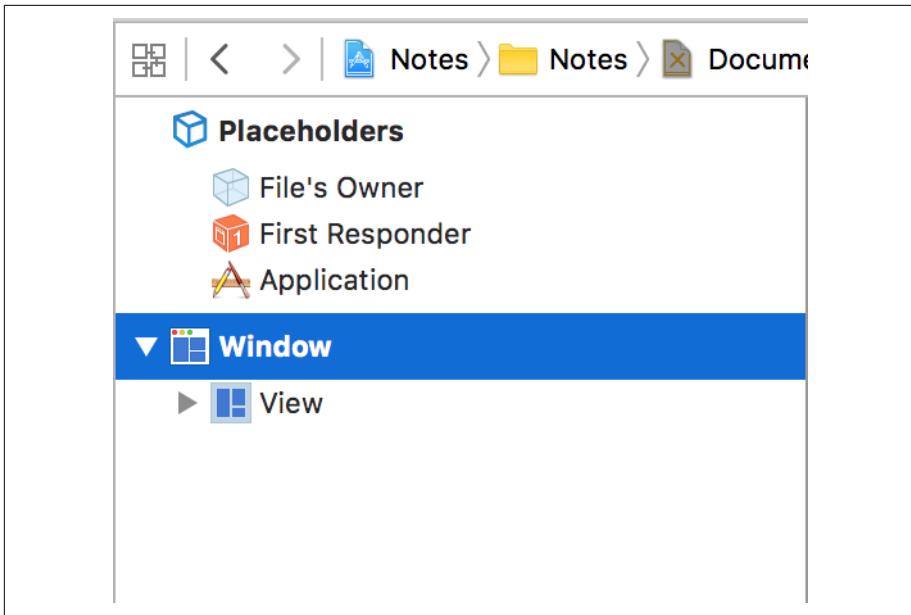


Figure 5-2. Selecting the window in the outline

3. The window includes a label; select it and delete it. We'll be building our own interface, and don't need it.



If you need a reminder of where to find the Attributes Inspector, the Object library, or any other part of the Xcode user interface, revisit “[The Xcode Interface](#)” on page 12.

4. Search for `NSTextView` in the Object library (see Figure 5-3).



An `NSTextView` is used for drawing text (and selecting and modifying text). It's a simple interface to Cocoa's very, very powerful text system. You can read more about it [in Apple's documentation](#).

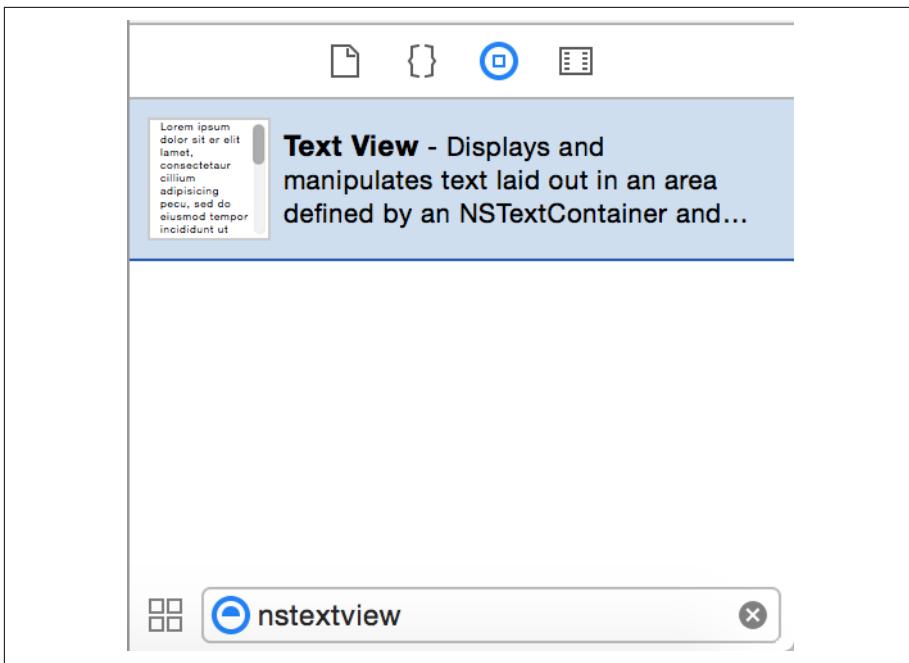


Figure 5-3. An NSTextView

5. Drag it into the interface and resize it to fill the window, leaving a little bit of margin on all sides ([Figure 5-4](#)).

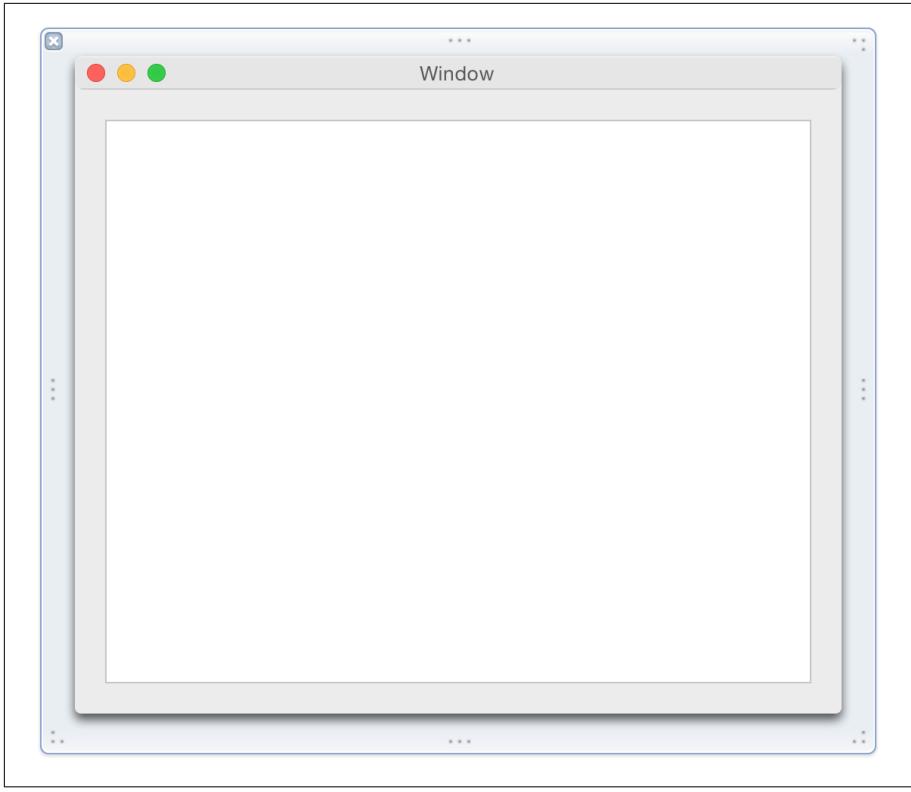


Figure 5-4. Adding the text view

6. Select the text view and open the Editor menu. Choose Resolve Auto Layout Issues→Reset to Suggested Constraints. This will add constraints that define the view's position and size in the window.



Constraints are rules that define the position and size of the different parts of the user interface. We'll be looking at them in a lot of detail as we build the OS X and iOS apps.

7. If it isn't already open, open the outline by clicking the icon at the lower left of the view ([Figure 5-5](#)).



Figure 5-5. The outline button

8. Expand the Bordered Scroll View, and then expand the Clip View that's inside it. Select the Text View ([Figure 5-6](#)).



You might also be wondering what's up with the fact that a text view is really a Bordered Scroll View, which contains a Clip View, which contains the Text View itself. The issue is complicated and mostly boils down to "for historical reasons," but the essentials are as follows: the text view simply displays text and allows the user to type, a clip view provides some underlying support for the scroll view, and the scroll view allows users to scroll to access the content of the text view if they type more than can fit in the view.

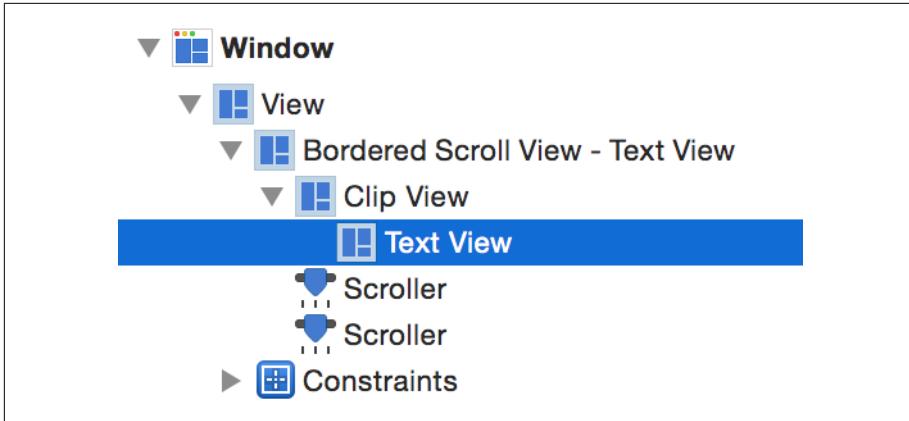


Figure 5-6. Selecting the Text View, inside its parent views

9. Open the Attributes Inspector (if it isn't already visible) and scroll down to the bottom of the list. Turn on Smart Links. This will make any URLs that the user enters appear as clickable links.

Finally, we need to connect the user interface to the underlying Document class. To do this, we'll use *bindings*, which link the value of a user interface element, such as a text field or a label, to a property in another object. When you make changes to the UI element, the property is updated; when the property is updated, the UI element is updated as well.



Bindings are available only on OS X. On iOS, we'd need to manually register to be notified of changes that the user makes.

10. Open the Bindings Inspector by either clicking on the second-to-last button at the top of the utilities pane, or by pressing ⌘-⌘-7 (see Figure 5-7).



Figure 5-7. The Bindings Inspector

11. Open the Attributed String section.
12. Select the Bind To box.
13. Change Bind To to File's Owner.
14. Change Model Key Path to `self.text`.

- Run the app; you can now enter and save text ([Figure 5-8](#)). Close the document and reopen it, and notice that the contents of the document are saved. You also get free undo and revision control—lots of stuff is taken care of for you!



Bindings are an incredibly powerful technology that's available on OS X. They save you a lot of work in ensuring that your controls and the data that they represent are in sync, and they can be applied to almost every control. In addition to binding individual controls, like the text field in this app, you can bind the content of collection views and table views. We won't be doing that in this app, but you can learn more about it in [Cocoa Bindings Programming Topics](#).



Figure 5-8. The app in its current form

After you've saved a document, locate it in the Finder and right-click it. Choose Show Package Contents, and you'll find the *Text.rtf* file, as shown in [Figure 5-9](#). This is the text file wrapper that we wrote to earlier, when we added code to `fileWrapperOfType` inside the `Document` class.

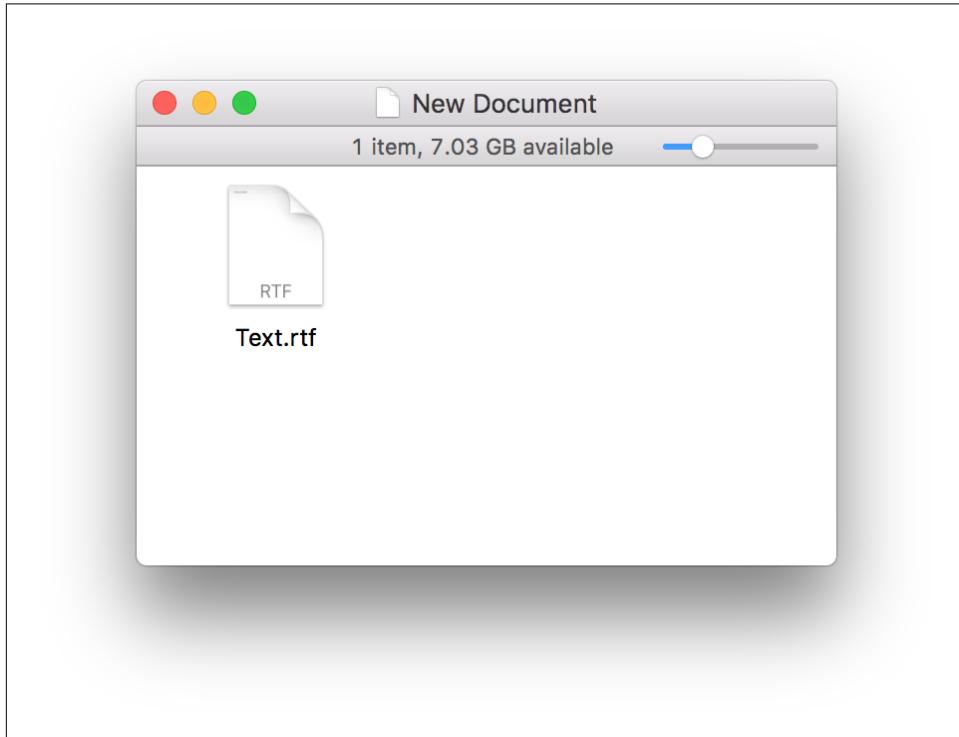


Figure 5-9. The text file inside the document

Conclusion

We've accomplished a lot in this chapter! At a high level, we've:

- manipulated the document model of OS X, which is built on `NSDocument`.
- worked with styled (attributed) text, storing it in memory, in Swift, using `NSAttributedString`, and on disk as a rich-text format file.
- used `NSFileWrapper` to save and load data, connecting it back to the `Document` class that was created for us by Xcode back in [Chapter 4](#).

In the next chapter, we'll add attachment support to the OS X app.

User Interfaces and iCloud

In its current state, our note-taking app for OS X allows you to view and edit the text in documents. In this chapter, we'll add the ability to work with attachments, and then we'll add support for iCloud.

First, we'll add support for the general concept of attachments, including the user interface—that is, attaching arbitrary files to a notes document—and then we'll expand it, adding support for double-clicking attachments to open them, for including attachments that represent a real-world location, and for dragging and dropping files on notes to attach them. We'll also add support for Quick Look on our notes file format, allowing users to view the contents of a note from within the OS X Finder.

As you learned in “[Package File Formats](#)” on page 108, when we set up the file wrappers for this app, attachments are stored in the document's *Attachments* directory. This means that the `Document` class needs tools for working with the contents of this directory. It also needs an interface for presenting the attachments and a method of adding new attachments.

In this chapter, we'll use `NSCollectionView`, some more advanced features of `NSFileWrapper`, and `NSOpenPanel` to select files to add as attachments. The `NSCollectionView` and `NSOpenPanel` classes are advanced user interface elements of OS X and will allow you to present a grid or list of data, and allow users of your apps to pick files from the filesystem for use in your app, respectively.

Updating the UI

The first thing we need to do is update our user interface, adding a collection view to show a list of attachments. In the previous chapter, we wrote code and then created a UI. This time we're going to make a UI, then write code. This is because the UI we're

making here is a little more complex than the UI from the last chapter, and we'll need certain parts of it in place before we can connect the code we'll be writing to it.

1. Open *Document.xib*.
2. Resize the text view (using the handles, just like any GUI resize) we added in the last chapter so that there's more margin at the bottom of the window (see [Figure 6-1](#)). This margin is where the collection view will go.

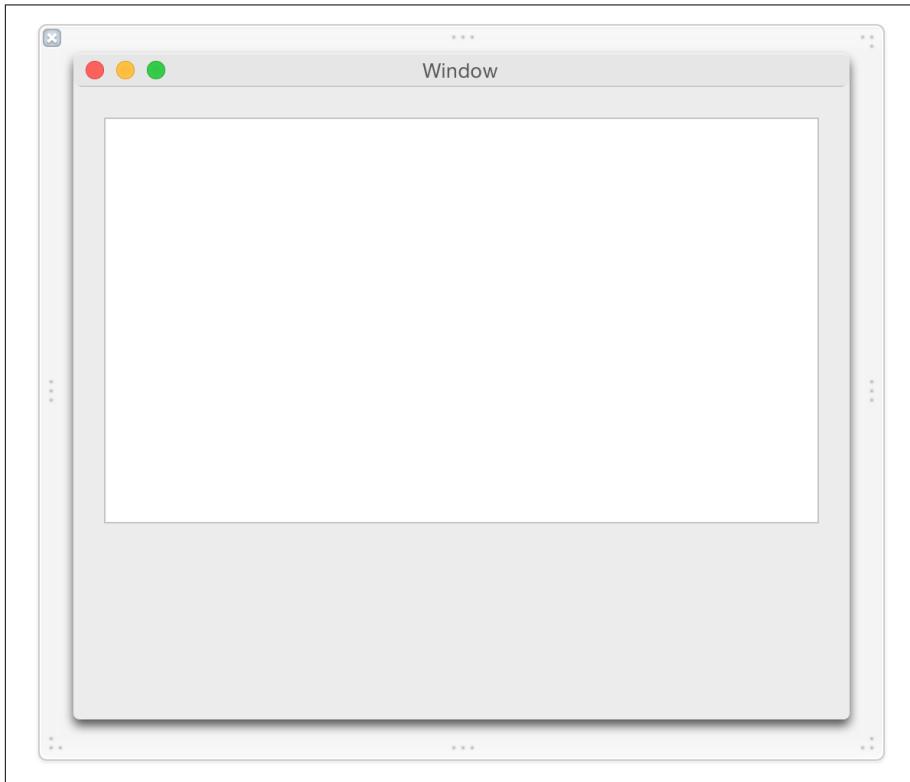


Figure 6-1. Resizing the text view to make room

3. Search for `NSCollectionView` in the Object library (see [Figure 6-2](#)). Drag in a collection view. We're going to use this to display any attachments for the open note document.

`NSCollectionView` is provided by AppKit to display a grid of other views. Each view it displays is managed by an `NSCollectionViewItem`.

To create the collection view, we also need to create the view for each cell. We only need to create one of these views—the collection view will create and manage multiple copies of them, one for each attachment in the documents.



The closest equivalent for iOS is a UICollectionView, which we'll use later on, in “Collection Views” on page 202.

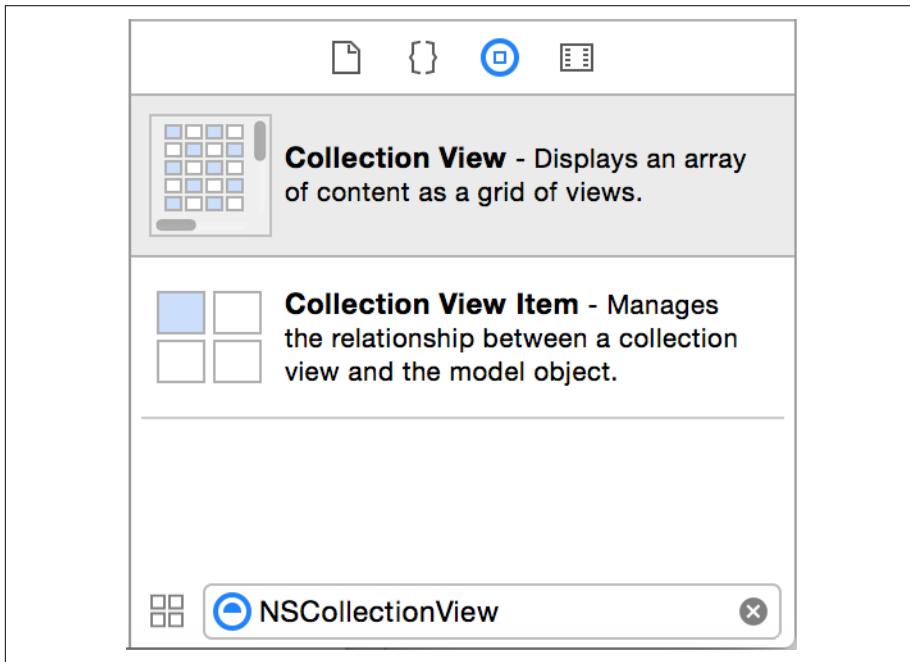


Figure 6-2. Finding the NSCollectionView

4. Resize the collection view to fill the margin beneath the text view, but leave some space on the right hand side (see Figure 6-3).

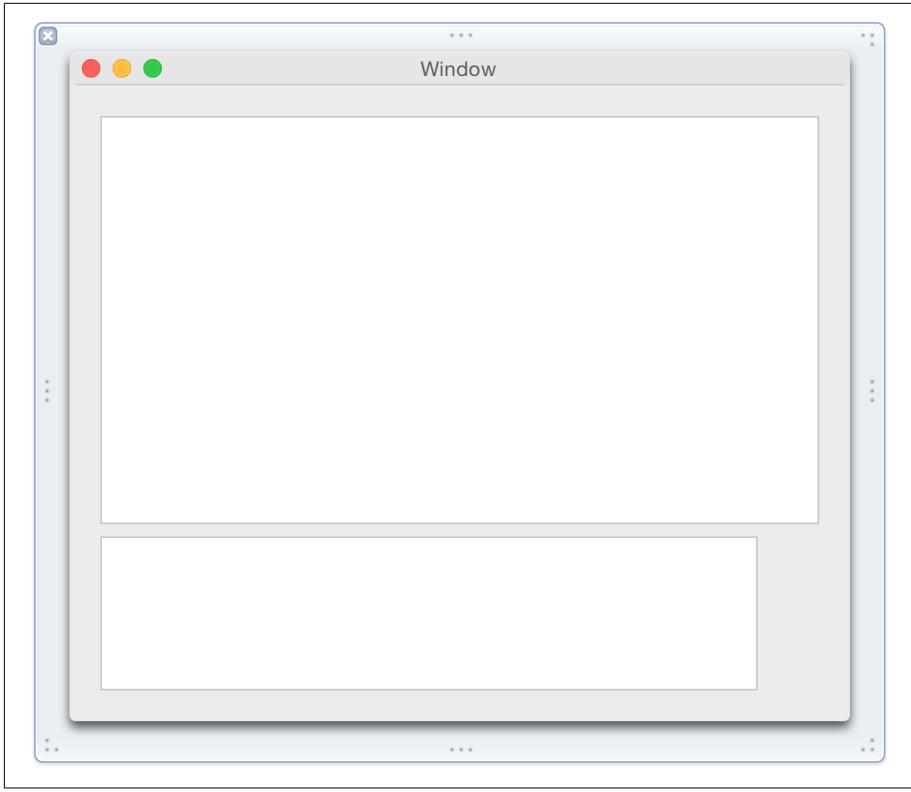


Figure 6-3. Adding the collection view

5. Select the collection view and open the Attributes Inspector. In the Layout options, change it to Flow, which will create a nice, simple, linear layout for our attachments.
6. Select both the text view and the collection view. Open the Editor menu, and choose Resolve Auto Layout Issues, and choose Reset to Suggested Constraints.
7. Open *Document.swift* in the Assistant.
8. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the collection view into the Document class. Create a new outlet connection called `attachmentsList`. You can now close the Assistant if you need the screen space.
9. Hold down the Control key again, and drag from the collection view to the File's Owner in the outline. Choose “delegate” from the list that appears.
10. Hold down the Control key a third time, and drag from the collection view to the File's Owner. Choose “dataSource” from the list that appears.



Because of the hierarchy of views in our interface, selecting from the interface will often grab a parent object instead of the view we want. It is generally easier to select the correct object from the outline than from the views.

For just a few clicks and some dragging, we have done rather a lot. We added a collection view to our interface and then we used the built-in tool to fix the constraints on our interface. Next, we created an outlet for the collection so we can refer to it in our code. Finally, we hooked up the `delegate` and `dataSource` properties of the collection view to our `Document.swift` class. We've done all of this so we can refer to and configure the collection view in our code.

Document-Filetype-Extension UI

Next, we need to design the view that will be used for each attachment in the collection view. At the same time, we'll create a new class that will act as the manager for the cell's view. We won't be adding any code to this class right away, but it saves a little time to do it now rather than to create the file later.

1. Create a new Cocoa class named `AttachmentCell` by going to `File→New→File` in the menu or by pressing `⌘-N`. Make it a subclass of `NSCollectionViewItem`, and turn on “Also create XIB file for user interface,” as shown in [Figure 6-4](#).

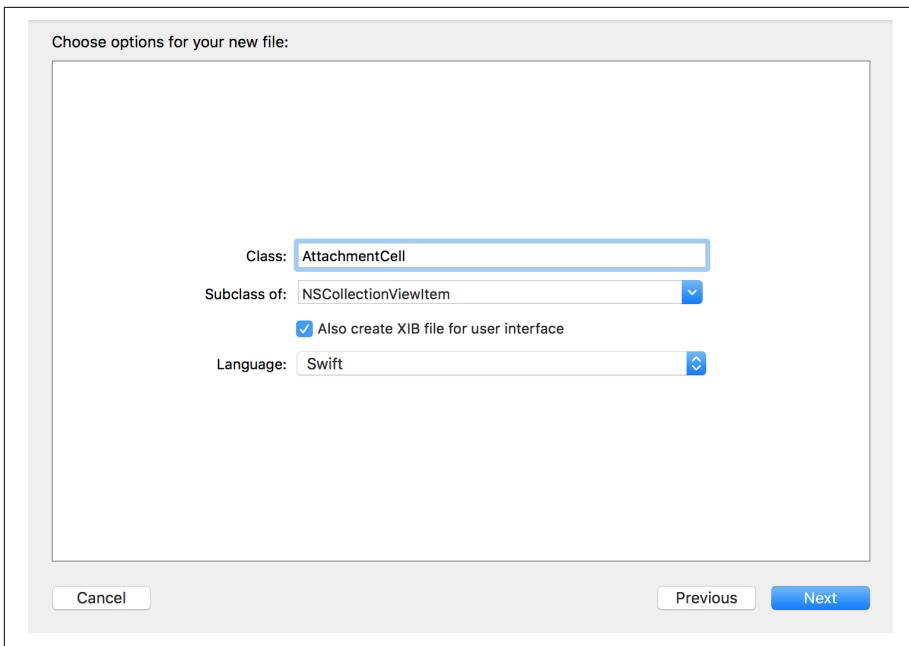


Figure 6-4. Adding the AttachmentCell

2. Open the newly created *AttachmentCell.xib*.
3. Go to the Object library, and search for Collection View Item ([Figure 6-5](#)). Drag one into the outline view, at the left.

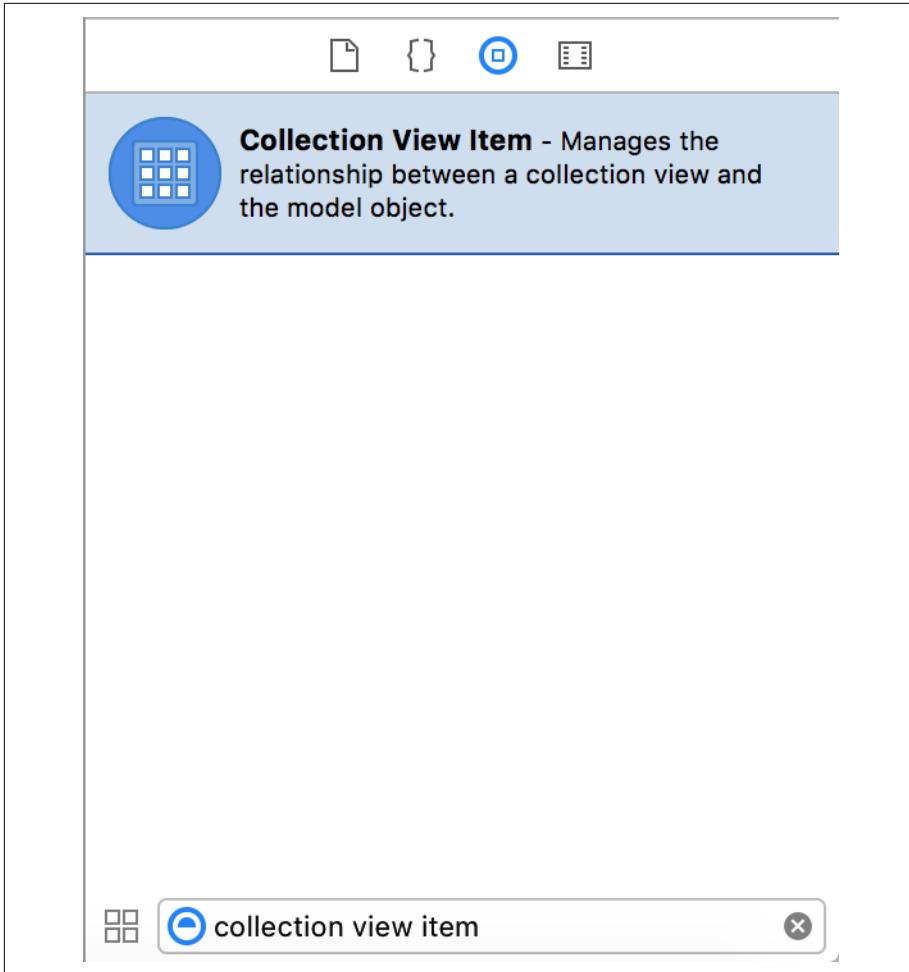


Figure 6-5. Searching for a collection view item

4. We need to make the collection view use the `AttachmentCell` class, so select it and go to the Identity Inspector. Change its class from `NSCollectionViewItem` to `AttachmentCell` (Figure 6-6).

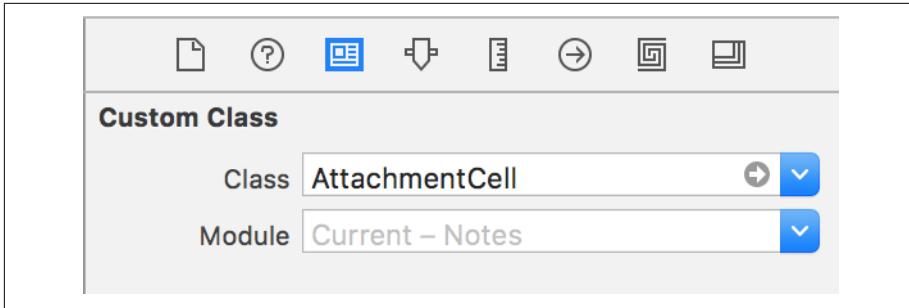


Figure 6-6. Changing the class for the collection view

We'll now add an image view to represent the attachments, and a label to show their file extension.

5. Search for NSImageView in the Objects library (Figure 6-7).

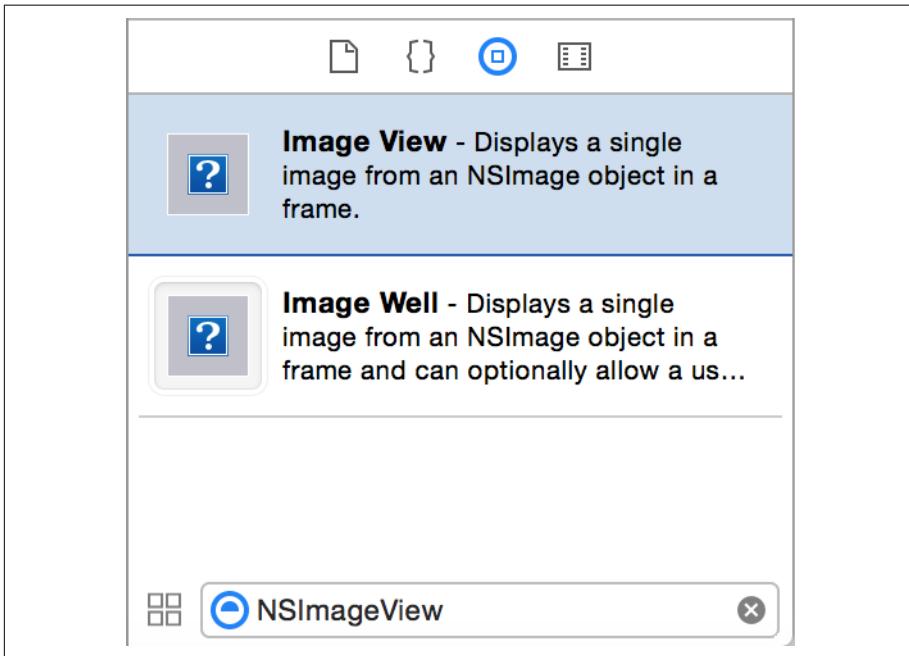


Figure 6-7. The NSImageView in the library

6. Drag in an image view, and place it in the center of the canvas. Resize it to give it a bit of space around the edges (Figure 6-8).

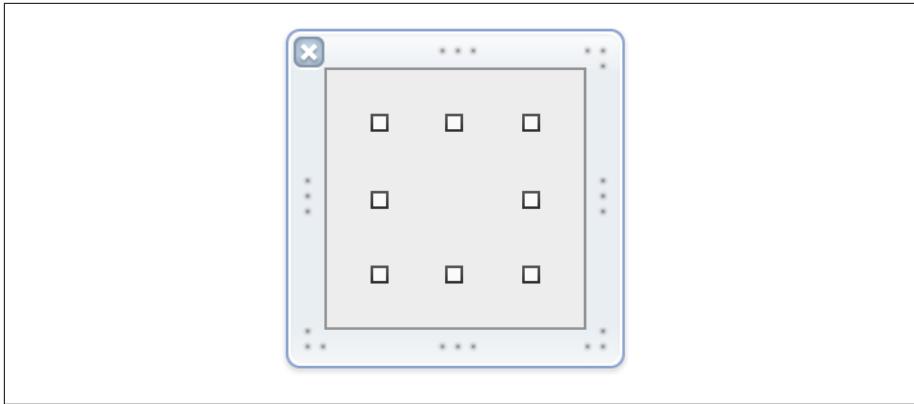


Figure 6-8. Adding the image view

7. Next, we'll add a label to show the file type.
8. Drag in a label from the Object library, and place it beneath the image view.
9. Select the new image view and label, and open the Editor menu. Choose Resolve Auto Layout Issues→Reset to Suggested Constraints.

Next, we need to tell the collection view item about the image view and text field that we just added.

10. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the attachment cell in the outline to the image view. Select `imageView` in the menu that appears.
11. Repeat this process, but this time drag from the attachment cell to the label, and select `textField` in the menu.
12. Repeat this process a third time, and Control-drag from the attachment cell onto the view that contains the image view (not the image view itself). Select `view` in the menu that appears.



Collection view items already have an outlet set up for an image view and a text field, so you don't need to create them yourself.

The interface for the collection view cells are now ready. It's time to set up the `Document` class to be able to provide data to the collection view.

Getting an Icon for the Collection View Cells

As part of displaying attachments, we need some kind of picture to show them. We'll also display the file extension of each attachment in the label that you just created.

Because attachments are represented by `NSFileWrapper` objects, we need a way to get a representative image from them. This means extending the `NSFileWrapper` class to add a method that returns an image. We'll also need a way to get the file's extension so that it can be displayed, too.



We're talking about two types of "extension" here: one is the file's extension (e.g., the "rtf" component of a filename *Text.rtf*) and the other is in terms of a Swift extension, which we covered in "[Extensions](#)" on page 67. Don't get confused! We often do.

1. Open `Document.swift`.
2. Add the following extension to the top of the file, outside of the `Document` class:

```
extension NSFileWrapper {

    dynamic var fileExtension : String? {
        return self.preferredFilename?
            .componentsSeparatedByString(".").last
    }

    dynamic var thumbnailImage : NSImage {

        if let fileExtension = self.fileExtension {
            return NSWorkspace.sharedWorkspace()
                .iconForFileType(fileExtension)
        } else {
            return NSWorkspace.sharedWorkspace().iconForFileType("")
        }
    }

    func conformsToType(type: CFString) -> Bool {

        // Get the extension of this file
        guard let fileExtension = self.fileExtension else {
            // If we can't get a file extension,
            // assume that it doesn't conform
            return false
        }

        // Get the file type of the attachment based on its extension
        guard let fileType = UTTypeCreatePreferredIdentifierForTag(
            kUTTagClassFilenameExtension, fileExtension, nil)?

```

```

        .takeRetainedValue() else {
            // If we can't figure out the file type
            // from the extension, it also doesn't conform
            return false
    }

    // Ask the system if this file type conforms to the provided type
    return UTTypeConformsTo(fileType, type)
}
}

```

This extends `NSFileWrapper` to provide a means for getting a thumbnail—in this case, the icon for a specific file extension—for each attachment. The extension is in the `Document.swift` file because of the close relationship the file wrappers have with the document—it makes sense to keep the related functionality together.

The `fileExtension` property takes the name of the `NSFileWrapper` and splits it up at every `.` character. It then returns the last item in this list.

The `thumbnailImage` property takes the `fileExtension` and asks the `NSWorkspace`, which represents the environment in which the app is running, to provide the image used for files with this extension. If the extension is `nil`, a generic icon is used.

Finally, `conformsToType` takes the `fileExtension` and asks the operating system's type system to convert the file extension into an object representing that file type. If this succeeds, that type object is used to check whether it conforms to the provided type identifier.



If you are wondering what the `takeRetainedValue()` function is doing, or why we have these weird-looking values like `kUTTagClassFilenameExtension`, it's because this code is using some libraries that are written in the C programming language, not in Swift. Unfortunately for us, C is not as nice as Swift, so we need to jump through a few hoops and use some weird syntax to get the two languages to play nicely with each other.

Adding Attachments

Finally, we need to add the button, which we'll use to allow users to add new attachments. We'll be adding code to this button shortly to actually make it work.

1. Open `Document.xib`.
2. Search for `NSButton` in the Object library (see [Figure 6-9](#)).

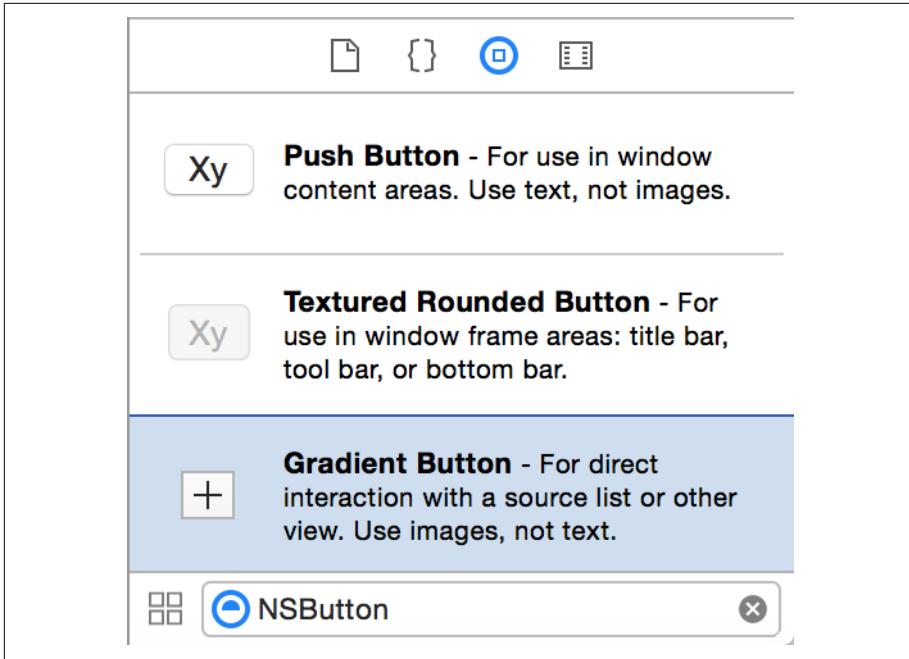


Figure 6-9. The NSButton in the library

3. Drag in a gradient button, and place it in the lower-right corner of the window (Figure 6-10).
4. Resize it to 32 × 32.
5. Select the collection view, the text view, and the button. Open the Editor menu, and choose Resolve Auto Layout Issues→Reset to Suggested Constraints.

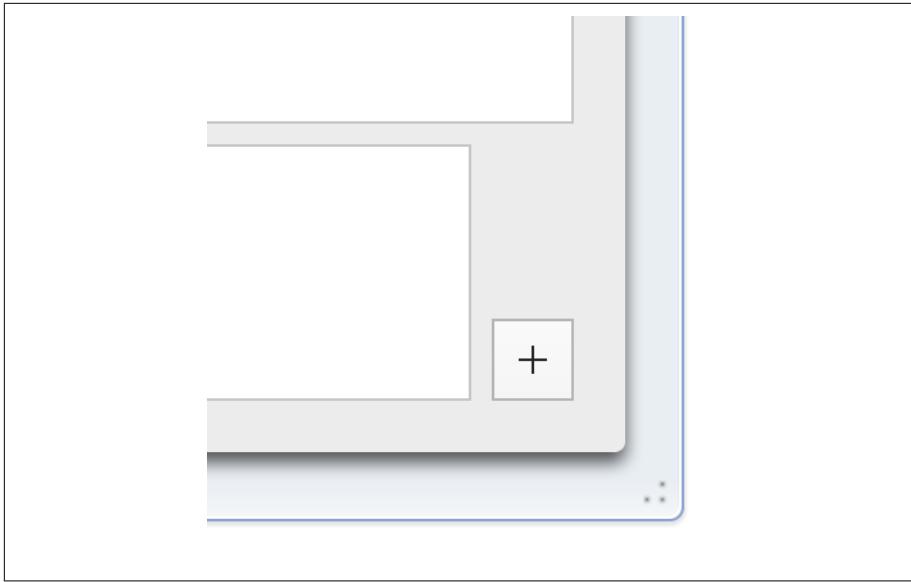


Figure 6-10. Adding the button

Next, we'll set up the user interface that appears when this button is clicked. We'll need to create a new class that controls it. We're making a new class, which will come with a XIB file of its own, because this piece of UI will be displayed in a popover. We'll explain popovers in a moment.

6. Open the File menu, and choose New→File.
7. Select the Source item under OS X, and then select Cocoa Class (Figure 6-11). Click Next.

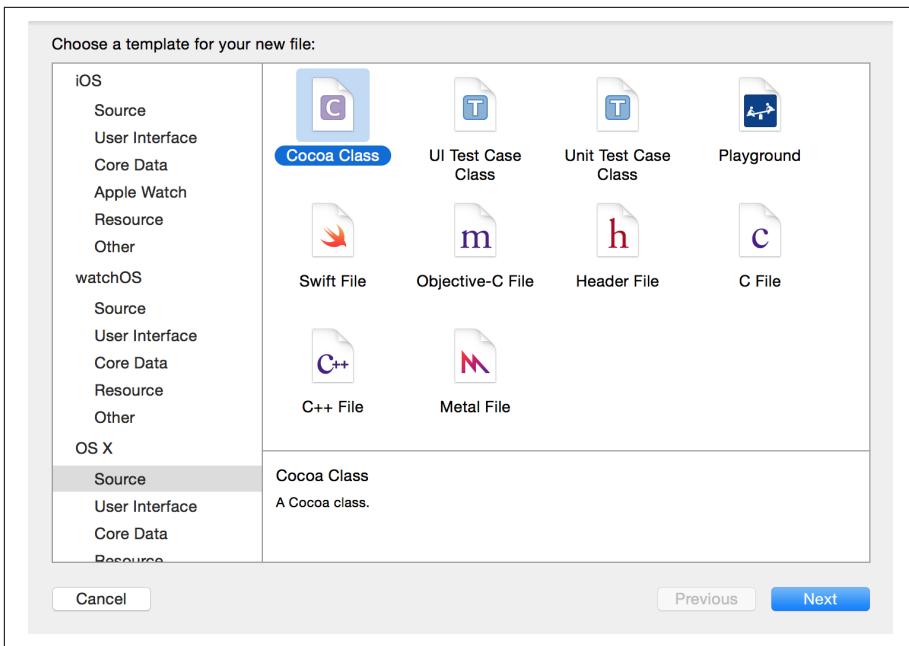


Figure 6-11. Selecting the Cocoa Class file type

8. Name the new class `AddAttachmentViewController`, and make it a subclass of `NSViewController`. Select “Also create XIB file for user interface,” and ensure that the language is set to Swift ([Figure 6-12](#)).

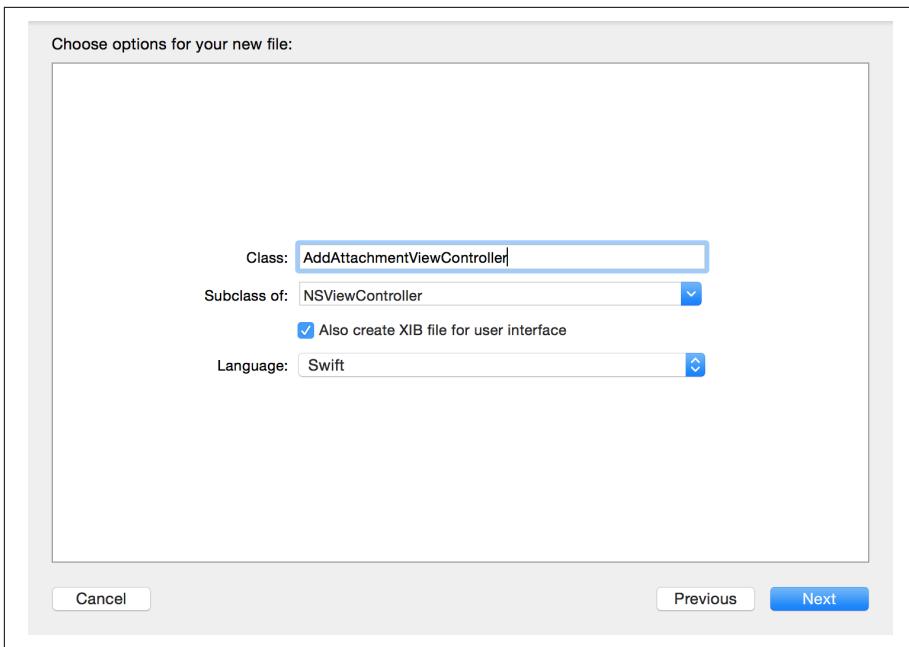


Figure 6-12. Setting up the new file

9. Open `AddAttachmentViewController.xib`. You'll see a brand-new, empty view (Figure 6-13).



Figure 6-13. The empty `AddAttachmentViewController.xib`

10. Resize the empty view to about one quarter of the width and height.
11. Add a new push button to the view and set its text to Add File, as shown in [Figure 6-14](#). Place it in the center of the view, and add constraints that keep it in the center by opening the Editor menu and choosing Resolve Auto Layout Issues→Reset to Suggested Constraints.

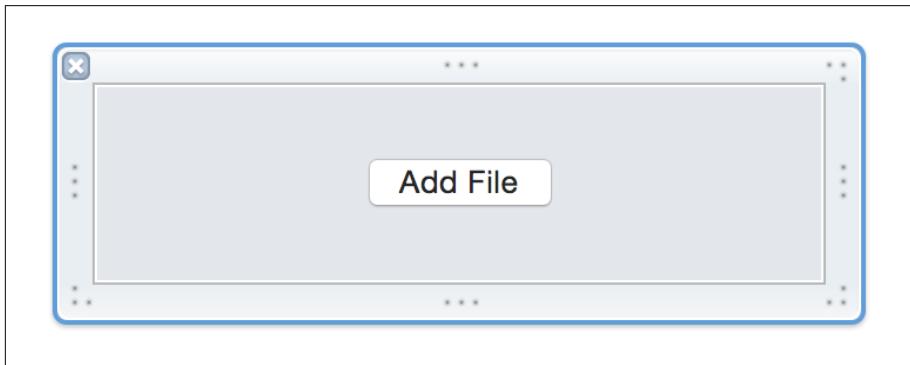


Figure 6-14. Adding the Add File button

12. Now we'll confirm that the File's Owner is correct. Select the File's Owner at the top of the outline ([Figure 6-15](#)). File's Owner exists within every nib file. It's a placeholder object that represents the controller object that works with the contents of the nib. Connecting File's Owner to the class `AddAttachmentViewController` (which is inside the `AddAttachmentViewController.swift` file) means the instance of `AddAttachmentViewController` can work with objects (like the user interface elements) inside the nib file. (There is generally an automatic connection between the Swift file and the nib file, because we asked Xcode to “also create XIB file” when we added this class, but it is always worth double checking.)



Figure 6-15. The File's Owner

13. Go to the Identity Inspector by clicking on the third icon at the top of the utilities pane, or by pressing ⌘-⌘-3 ([Figure 6-16](#)).



Figure 6-16. The Identity Inspector

14. Change the class to `AddAttachmentViewController` (Figure 6-17).

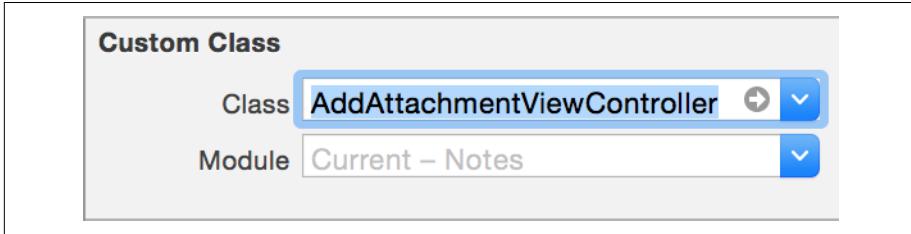


Figure 6-17. Updating the object's class

15. Open the Assistant by clicking on the Assistant Editor button, or by pressing `⌘-⎇` (Figure 6-18).



Figure 6-18. The Assistant button

16. Ensure that the Assistant is showing the `AddAttachmentViewController.swift` file by clicking the leftmost segment of the jump bar and choosing Automatic→`AddAttachmentViewController.swift` (Figure 6-19).



Figure 6-19. Finding `AddAttachmentViewController.swift` in the jump bar

17. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the Add File button into the `AddAttachmentViewController` class. Release the mouse button, and in the window that appears, create a new Action connection named `addFile` (see Figure 6-20). As a reminder, we talked about Action connections back in “Connecting the Code” on page 22.

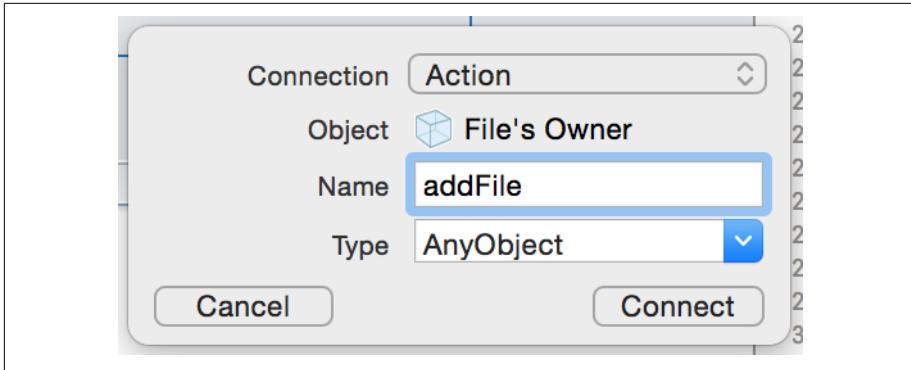


Figure 6-20. Defining a new action method

18. Close the Assistant by pressing either the Standard Editor button (Figure 6-21) or ⌘-⇥.



Figure 6-21. The Standard Editor button

19. Open `AddAttachmentViewController.swift`.
20. Add the `AddAttachmentDelegate` protocol to the top of the file:

```
protocol AddAttachmentDelegate {  
  
    func addFile()  
  
}
```

We introduced protocols back in “[Protocols](#)” on page 66. Using a protocol for this feature allows us to take advantage of a powerful programming concept that Swift encourages: the idea that objects should know as little about each other as possible. The less an object knows about another, the fewer assumptions it can make about how it’s going to behave and what methods and properties it has. This approach means that it becomes a lot less tempting to make an object depend upon the internals of how another object works.

The `AddAttachmentDelegate` protocol defines a single method, `addFile`, because there’s only one thing that the `AddAttachmentViewController` needs to know about the `delegate` object: what method to call when the user adds a file. It doesn’t need to know that the `delegate` object will be the `Document` object, and it doesn’t need to know about any of that object’s methods and properties beyond `addFile`.

21. Add a new property to the `AddAttachmentViewController` class:

```
var delegate : AddAttachmentDelegate?
```

22. Update the `addFile` method by adding the following code:

```
@IBAction func addFile(sender: AnyObject) {  
    self.delegate?.addFile()  
}
```

This code provides an action that can be called from a user interface element created in the interface builder, which calls the `addFile` method on the `delegate` object.

Finally, we'll add the ability to display the new attachment screen.

23. Open `Document.xib`, and open `Document.swift` in the Assistant Editor.
24. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the + button into the `Document` class. Create a new action called `addAttachment`.

Storing and Managing Attachments

We now need to implement support for actually storing and managing attachments in these documents.

1. Add the `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper` computed property to the `Document` class, which returns an `NSFileWrapper` that represents the document's `Attachments` folder. A computed property is essentially a property that behaves like a function: the code inside it runs every time it's accessed. We discussed computed properties, in “Properties” on page 62:

```
private var attachmentsDirectoryWrapper : NSFileWrapper? {  
  
    guard let fileWrappers = self.documentElementWrapper.fileWrappers else {  
        NSLog("Attempting to access document's contents, but none found!")  
        return nil  
    }  
  
    var attachmentsDirectoryWrapper =  
        fileWrappers[NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue]  
  
    if attachmentsDirectoryWrapper == nil {  
  
        attachmentsDirectoryWrapper =  
            NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [:])  
  
        attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.preferredFilename =  
            NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue  
    }  
}
```

```

        self.documentFileWrapper.addFileWrapper(attachmentsDirectoryWrapper!)
    }

    return attachmentsDirectoryWrapper
}

```

The `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper` property represents the *Attachments* folder inside the document's package. When you access it, first it does a safety check to get access to the list of file wrappers inside the document. It then checks to see if that list already contains an *Attachments* directory; if it doesn't, a new one is created and added to the document. Lastly, the file wrapper is returned.

2. Next, add the `addAttachmentAtURL` method, which adds a new attachment to the document:

```

func addAttachmentAtURL(url: NSURL) throws {
    guard attachmentsDirectoryWrapper != nil else {
        throw err(.CannotAccessAttachments)
    }

    self.willChangeValueForKey("attachedFiles")

    let newAttachment = try NSFileWrapper(URL: url,
                                          options: NSFileWrapperReadingOptions.Immediate)

    attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.addFileWrapper(newAttachment)

    self.updateChangeCount(.ChangeDone)
    self.didChangeValueForKey("attachedFiles")
}

```

This method adds an attachment to the document's *Attachments* directory. It works by first getting access to the `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper` (by calling the property that you just added); it then indicates to the system that the `attachedFiles` property will change. A new `NSFileWrapper` containing the provided file is created and added to the `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper`. Lastly, the fact that the document's contents were changed is registered.

3. Finally, add the `attachedFiles` property, which returns the list of `NSFileWrapper`s currently inside the document:

```

dynamic var attachedFiles : [NSFileWrapper]? {
    if let attachmentsFileWrappers =
        self.attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.fileWrappers {

        let attachments = Array(attachmentsFileWrappers.values)

        return attachments
    }
}

```

```
    } else {
        return nil
    }
}
```

The `attachedFiles` property simply gets the dictionary that maps filenames to file wrappers inside the `Attachments` directory and returns the list of file wrappers. The `dynamic` keyword here indicates to any other object that's watching the variable for changes that it can be changed by other parts of the object.

We want to display the Add File button in a popover, so we'll need a property in which to store that popover.



A popover is provided by `NSPopover` and is a piece of user interface that sits on top of existing content. Popovers are available on both OS X and iOS. We'll use an iOS popover later on, in [“Adding Attachments” on page 281](#).

4. Add the following property to the `Document` class:

```
var popover : NSPopover?
```

5. Next, update the `addAttachment` method to include the following code:

```
@IBAction func addAttachment(sender: NSButton) {

    if let viewController = AddAttachmentViewController(
        nibName:"AddAttachmentViewController", bundle:NSBundle.mainBundle()
    ) {

        self.popover = NSPopover()

        self.popover?.behavior = .Transient

        self.popover?.contentViewController = viewController

        self.popover?.showRelativeToRect(sender.bounds,
            ofView: sender, preferredEdge: NSRectEdge.MaxY)
    }
}
```



Note that you need to make the `sender` parameter's type `NSButton`. That's important because `showRelativeToRect` expects the `ofView` parameter to be an `NSView` or one of its subclasses.

This method creates an `AddAttachmentViewController` using the `AddAttachmentViewController.xib` file that you designed earlier. Once the file has been created, the popover is set up to display the view controller and is then displayed while attached to the button.

To be notified when the user selects a type of attachment, we need to conform to the `AddAttachmentDelegate` protocol. We'll do this in an extension to help keep the code we're about to add separate from the core functionality of the `Document` class.

6. Add the following extension to `Document.swift` outside of the `Document` class:

```
extension Document : AddAttachmentDelegate {  
}  
}
```

7. Add the required `addFile` method to this extension:

```
func addFile() {  
  
    let panel = NSOpenPanel()  
  
    panel.allowsMultipleSelection = false  
    panel.canChooseDirectories = false  
    panel.canChooseFiles = true  
  
    panel.beginWithCompletionHandler { (result) -> Void in  
        if result == NSModalResponseOK,  
            let resultURL = panel.URLs.first {  
  
            do {  
                // We were given a URL - copy it in!  
                try self.addAttachmentAtURL(resultURL)  
  
                // Refresh the attachments list  
                self.attachmentsList?.reloadData()  
            } catch let error as NSError {  
  
                // There was an error adding the attachment.  
                // Show the user!  
  
                // Try to get a window in which to present a sheet  
                if let window = self.windowForSheet {  
  
                    // Present the error in a sheet  
                    NSApp.presentError(error,  
                        modalForWindow: window,  
                        delegate: nil,  
                        didPresentSelector: nil,  
                        contextInfo: nil)  
                }  
            }  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```
        } else {
            // No window, so present it in a dialog box
            NSApp.presentError(error)
        }
    }
}
```

`addFile` creates an instance of `NSOpenPanel`, a class provided by Apple that lets users browse the filesystem and pick a file; it sets some options on the `NSOpenPanel`, disallowing users to pick more than one file at a time, preventing them from choosing directories, and allowing them to pick only individual files.

`addFile` then presents the panel to the user and gets the selected URL. It then calls `addAttachmentAtURL` with the URL of the file the user selected; if this results in an error, it's presented to the user.

8. Update the `addAttachment` method to make the `AddAttachmentViewController` use the document as its delegate:

```
@IBAction func addAttachment(sender: NSButton) {  
  
    if let viewController = AddAttachmentViewController(  
        nibName: "AddAttachmentViewController", bundle: NSBundle.mainBundle()  
    ) {  
  
        viewController.delegate = self  
  
        self.popover = NSPopover()  
  
        self.popover?.behavior = .Transient  
  
        self.popover?.contentViewController = viewController  
  
        self.popover?.showRelativeToRect(sender.bounds,  
            ofView: sender, preferredEdge: NSRectEdge.MaxY)  
    }  
}
```

Displaying Data in the Collection View

We now have everything that we need to display content in the collection view, except for the methods that actually deliver data to the collection view itself. Let's add that now!

To provide cells to a collection view, we need to connect its `dataSource` outlet (which we set up earlier) to an object that conforms to the `NSCollectionViewDataSource` protocol. This means that we need to make the `Document` class conform to this protocol. We'll do this using an extension.

1. Add the following code to the `Document.swift` file:

```
extension Document : NSCollectionViewDataSource {  
}  
}
```

There are two methods that you need to implement in order to conform to `NSCollectionViewDataSource`. The first tells the system how many items exist, and the second provides an `NSCollectionViewItem` for the collection view to display.

2. Add the following method to the extension you just added:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: NSCollectionView,  
    numberOfRowsInSection section: Int) -> Int {  
  
    // The number of items is equal to the number of  
    // attachments we have. If for some reason we can't  
    // access 'attachedFiles', we have zero items.  
    return self.attachedFiles?.count ?? 0  
}
```



The `??` operator is called the *nil coalescing* operator. If the value on the lefthand side of the `??` is `nil`, the value on the right hand side is used instead. It's a faster way of saying:

```
if let count = self.attachedFiles?.count {  
    return count  
} else {  
    return 0  
}
```

This method is called for each `section` (that is, each group of cells) that exists in the collection view. By default, a collection view only contains a single section, so we ignore the `section` parameter and simply return the number of items in the `attachedFiles` list, or `0` if that list can't be accessed.

Next, we need to add a method that returns an `NSCollectionViewItem` for each attachment.

3. Add the following method to the extension:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: NSCollectionView,  
    itemForRepresentedObjectAtIndex indexPath: NSIndexPath)  
-> NSCollectionViewItem {
```

```
// Get the attachment that this cell should represent
let attachment = self.attachedFiles![indexPath.item]

// Get the cell itself
let item = collectionView
    .makeItemWithIdentifier("AttachmentCell", forIndexPath: indexPath)
as! AttachmentCell

// Display the image and file extension in the cell
item.imageView?.image = attachment.thumbnailImage
item.textField?.stringValue = attachment.fileExtension ?? ""

return item
}
```

This method first uses the `indexPath` parameter, which describes the location in the collection view that we're trying to display, to locate the appropriate attachment. It then calls the `makeItemWithIdentifier` method to get a `NSCollectionViewItem` object, which it then casts to an `AttachmentCell`.

The reason why this cast works (and why we can use the `as!` operator) is that `makeItemWithIdentifier`'s first parameter is used by OS X to search for a `.xib` file with the same name. If this `.xib` file contains a Collection View Item (which we added earlier), it's returned.

We then use the `imageView` and `textField` properties of the `AttachmentCell` to set up the image view with the icon with the thumbnail image, and the label with the file extension.

Now we are ready to test our fancy new attachment system! Run the app and add an attachment. It will appear in the list of attachments ([Figure 6-22](#)). If you save the document and then view its contents, it's there!

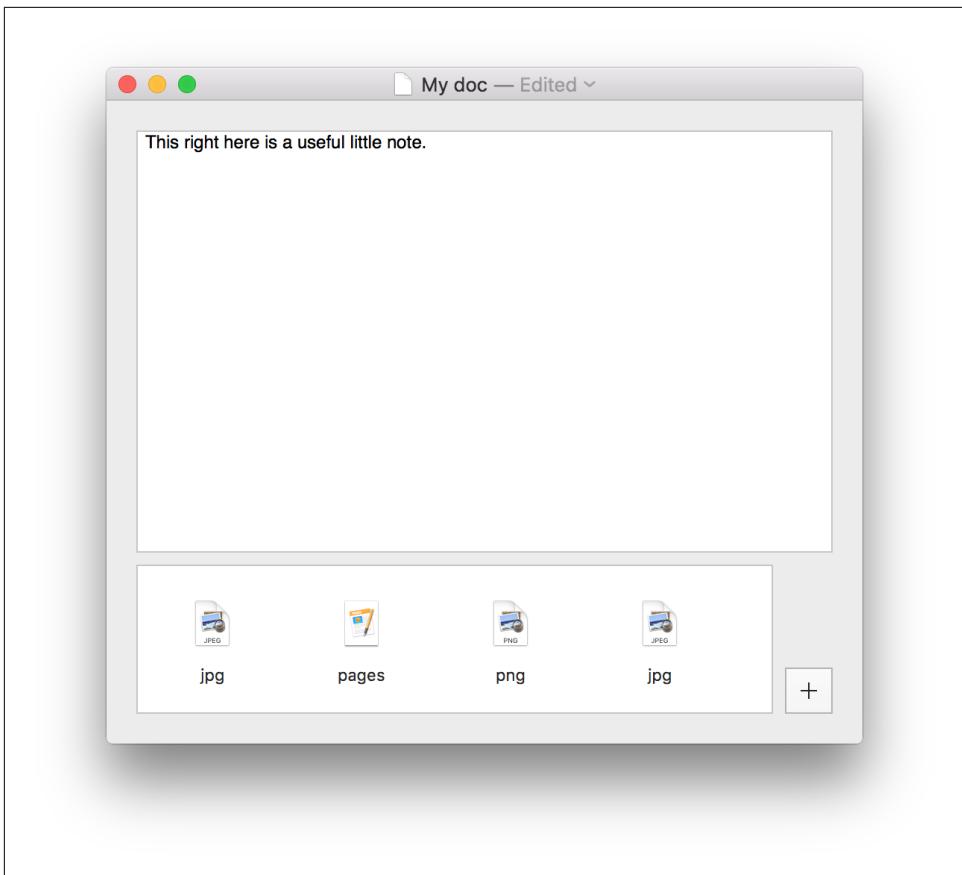


Figure 6-22. Basic attachments are working

Enhancing Attachments

We've got the basics of attachments down, so now we need to add support for some more advanced features in our attachment system, such as the ability to actually open attachments, include Quick Look attachments, view location attachments in the system Maps application, and drag files into the app to attach them.

Opening Attachments

First, we want to be able to double-click an attachment and have that file open up in whatever application is most appropriate for it.

To do this, we need to first recognize a double-click on a collection view item. Next, we need a method of telling the system to open the attachment that the collection view item represents.

To recognize double-clicks, we need to implement the `mouseDown` method in the `AttachmentCell` class. `mouseDown`, which is provided by default with a view, doesn't come with support for double-clicks (the mouse action, not `the band`), so we'll be adding it. We also need a way for the `AttachmentCells` to tell the `Document` about when this happens.

First, we'll define a protocol for the document to implement.

1. Open `Document.swift`, and add the following protocol to the file:

```
@objc protocol AttachmentCellDelegate : NSObjectProtocol {
    func openSelectedAttachment(collectionViewItem : NSCollectionViewItem)
}
```



Again, we're using a protocol here to limit the amount of information that the `Document` needs to know about whatever object ends up viewing the attachment. It only needs to know how to ask the object to open the attachment.

Next, we'll add an extension to the `Document` class that makes it open whatever attachment is currently selected. This works through a little Apple magic: we use `NSWorkspace`, which is provided to work with other parts of the system your app is running on, such as launching other apps or files and working with connected devices, and ask it to open the URL of the attached file. You can learn more about `NSWorkSpace` in [Apple's documentation](#).

```
extension Document : AttachmentCellDelegate {
    func openSelectedAttachment(collectionItem: NSCollectionViewItem) {

        // Get the index of this item, or bail out
        guard let selectedIndex = self.attachmentsList
            .indexPathForItem(collectionItem)?.item else {
            return
        }

        // Get the attachment in question, or bail out
        guard let attachment = self.attachedFiles?[selectedIndex] else {
            return
        }

        // First, ensure that the document is saved
        self.autosaveWithImplicitCancellability(false,
                                                completionHandler: {
            (error) -> Void in

            var url = self.fileURL
            url = url?.URLByAppendingPathComponent(

```

```

        NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue,
        isDirectory: true)

    url = url?
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent(
            attachment.preferredFilename!
        )

    if let path = url?.path {
        NSWorkspace.sharedWorkspace().openFile(
            path, withApplication: nil, andDeactivate: true)
    }
}

}

```

We'll now make the `AttachmentCell` have a property that lets it keep a reference to an object that conforms to `AttachmentCellDelegate`.

2. Open `AttachmentCell.swift`.
3. Add the following property to the `AttachmentCell` class:

```

class AttachmentCell: NSCollectionViewItem {

    >    weak var delegate : AttachmentCellDelegate?

}

```

Next, we'll implement `mouseDown`. This method is called whenever the user clicks on the cell's view; in this method, we'll check to see if we've clicked *twice*, and if we have, we'll call the delegate's `openSelectedAttachment` method.

4. Add the following method to `AttachmentCell`:

```

override func mouseDown(theEvent:NSEvent) {
    if (theEvent.clickCount == 2) {
        delegate?.openSelectedAttachment(self)
    }
}

```

Finally, we need to make all `AttachmentCells` use the `Document` as their delegate.

5. Open `Document.swift`.
6. Add the following line of code to the `collectionView(_:, itemForRepresentedObjectAtIndexPath:)` method:

```

func collectionView(collectionView: NSCollectionView,
    itemForRepresentedObjectAtIndex indexPath: NSIndexPath)
-> NSCollectionViewItem {

    // Get the attachment that this cell should represent
    let attachment = self.attachedFiles![indexPath.item]

    // Get the cell itself
    let item = collectionView
        .makeItemWithIdentifier("AttachmentCell", forIndexPath: indexPath)
        as! AttachmentCell

    // Display the image and file extension in the cell
    item.imageView?.image = attachment.thumbnailImage
    item.textField?.stringValue = attachment.fileExtension ?? ""

    > // Make this cell use us as its delegate
    > item.delegate = self

    return item
}

```

7. You're done! Run the app, and double-click on an attachment. It will open!

JSON Attachments

We'll now add special support to the `Document` class to make it open locations in the Maps app. We have to special-case this, since maps are not really a standard format.

There's actually no standard file format for representing "locations"—the closest that we have is the vCard format, which is used for contact information. For this app and the iOS app that we're making in [Part III](#), we'll define a new type of file that represents latitude and longitude coordinates in JSON.

JSON is a standard for creating human-readable files that store attribute/value pairs. If you haven't encountered it much in the past, you surely will encounter it more in the future. JSON is not part of Swift, and was not created by Apple. It's useful for many different systems you might create, in any language. You can learn more about JSON on [Wikipedia](#).

Even though there might not be a built-in standard for storing locations, Apple has provided us with a framework to help create and manipulate maps, MapKit. So our very first step is to include the MapKit framework so that our program understands what to do once we tear the location out of the JSON attachment.

1. Open `Document.swift`, and at the very top of the file, add the following code:

```
import MapKit
```

2. Add the following code to `openSelectedAttachment`:

```
extension Document : AttachmentCellDelegate {
    func openSelectedAttachment(collectionItem: NSCollectionViewItem) {

        // Get the index of this item, or bail out
        guard let selectedIndex = self.attachmentsList
            .indexPathForItem(collectionItem)?.item else {
            return
        }

        // Get the attachment in question, or bail out
        guard let attachment = self.attachedFiles?[selectedIndex] else {
            return
        }

        // First, ensure that the document is saved
        self.autosaveWithImplicitCancellability(false,
                                                completionHandler: {
            (error) -> Void in

                // If this attachment indicates that it's JSON, and we're able
                // to get JSON data out of it...
                if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON),
                    let data = attachment.regularFileContents,
                    let json = try? NSJSONSerialization
                        .JSONObjectWithData(data, options:
                            NSJSONReadingOptions())
                    as? NSDictionary {

                    // And if that JSON data includes lat and long
                    // entries...
                    if let lat = json?["lat"] as? CLLocationDegrees,
                        let lon = json?["long"] as? CLLocationDegrees {

                        // Build a coordinate from them
                        let coordinate =
                            CLLocationCoordinate2D(latitude: lat,
                                longitude: lon)

                        // Build a placemark with that coordinate
                        let placemark =
                            MKPlacemark(coordinate: coordinate,
                                addressDictionary: nil)

                        // Build a map item from that placemark...
                        let mapItem = MKMapItem(placemark: placemark)

                        // And open the map item in the Maps app!
                    }
                }
            }
        )
    }
}
```

```

>                               mapItem.openInMapsWithLaunchOptions(nil)
>
>                           }
> } else {
>
>     var url = self.fileURL
>     url = url?.URLByAppendingPathComponent(
>         NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue,
>         isDirectory: true)
>
>     url = url?
>         .URLByAppendingPathComponent(attachment
>         .preferredFilename!)
>
>     if let path = url?.path {
>         NSWorkspace.sharedWorkspace().openFile(
>             path, withApplication: nil, andDeactivate: true)
>     }
>
> }
>
}

```

The additional code that we've added does quite a bit, so let's pull it apart a little.

First, we use the `conformsToType` method, which we added to `NSFileWrapper` in “[Getting an Icon for the Collection View Cells](#)” on page 136, to determine if the file is a JSON file. We then get the contents of that data as an `NSData` and attempt to decode the JSON content. If it succeeds, the `json` variable contains an `NSDictionary` object, which is similar to a Swift dictionary.

We then attempt to get the two values we care about from the dictionary, by using the `if let` structure to ensure that the dictionary contains values for the keys `lat` and `lon`, and that these values are usable as `CLLocationDegrees`. Notice the comma on this line, which makes the `if let` line check the two values at once, rather than having to create two nested `if let` checks.

If we can access the data, we then create a `CLLocationCoordinate2D` object, which combines the latitude and longitude values into a single value. Given this coordinate, we create an `MKPlacemark` object, which represents a named location on the planet. This is necessary for creating the `next` object, which is an `MKMapItem`; it is this `MKMapItem` that can be used to open the Maps application.

3. Next, create a new text file called `Location.json` either in Xcode or your text editor of choice, and add the following text to it:

```
{  
    "lat": -42.882743,  
    "long": 147.330234  
}
```

4. Attach this file to a document and then double-click it. It will open in the Maps app! (See [Figure 6-23](#).)

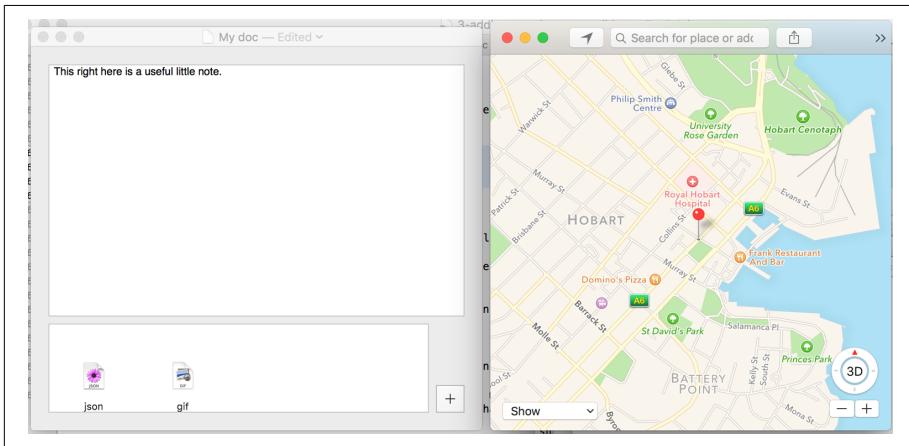


Figure 6-23. The Notes app, and the OS X Maps app, showing the authors' office

We'll be looking at using location a lot more when we add location attachments to the iOS app, in [Chapter 14](#).

Adding Attachments via Drag-and-Drop

Next we're going to add support for dragging and dropping files on our app in order to attach them to notes.

To add support for drag-and-drop in a view, you implement certain methods that define what kinds of content can be dropped onto a view, such as URLs, colors, and text. The collection view has special support for delegating this to another object, so we'll use that.

We need to make the attachments list register for dragging. The best place to do that is in the method `windowControllerDidLoadNib`, which is called after the interface has loaded, but before it appears on screen. In `windowControllerDidLoadNib`, all of the views that the user can see are prepared and ready to be displayed, which means it's the earliest chance we have to set up the behavior of our user interface. After `windowControllerDidLoadNib` has finished, the bindings system kicks in, pulling information from the `Document` object and displaying the data in the views in the window.

1. Update the `windowControllerDidLoadNib` method to the `Document` class:

```
override func windowControllerDidLoadNib(windowController:  
    NSWindowController) {  
  
    self.attachmentsList.registerForDraggedTypes([NSURLPboardType])  
}
```

By calling `registerForDraggedTypes` and passing in an array containing the `NSURLPboardType` value, we're telling the collection view that we will accept URLs—that is, links to files on disk—that get dropped on it.

Finally, we need to add methods that the collection view will call when files are dragged. We'll do this by adding an extension to the `Document` class that makes it conform to the `NSCollectionViewDelegate` protocol.



We *could* put these methods directly into the `Document` class. However, using an extension makes it a *lot* easier to keep the methods that are specific to `NSCollectionViewDelegate` in a single place.

2. Add the following extension to `Document.swift`:

```
extension Document : NSCollectionViewDelegate {  
  
    func collectionView(collectionView: NSCollectionView,  
        validateDrop draggingInfo: NSDraggingInfo,  
        proposedIndexPath proposedDropIndexPath:  
            AutoreleasingUnsafeMutablePointer<NSIndexPath?>,  
        dropOperation proposedDropOperation:  
            UnsafeMutablePointer<NSCollectionViewDropOperation>)  
    -> NSDragOperation {  
  
        // Indicate to the user that if they release the mouse button,  
        // it will "copy" whatever they're dragging.  
        return NSDragOperation.Copy  
    }  
  
    func collectionView(collectionView: NSCollectionView,  
        acceptDrop draggingInfo: NSDraggingInfo,  
        indexPath: NSIndexPath,  
        dropOperation: NSCollectionViewDropOperation) -> Bool {  
  
        // Get the pasteboard that contains the info the user dropped  
        let pasteboard = draggingInfo.draggingPasteboard()  
  
        // If the pasteboard contains a URL, and we can get that URL...  
        if pasteboard.types?.contains(NSURLPboardType) == true,
```

```

let url = NSURL(fromPasteboard: pasteboard)
{
    // Then attempt to add that as an attachment!
    do {
        // Add it to the document
        try self.addAttachmentAtURL(url)

        // Reload the attachments list to display it
        attachmentsList.reloadData()

        // It succeeded!
        return true
    } catch let error as NSError {

        // Uhoh. Present the error in a dialog box.
        self.presentError(error)

        // It failed, so tell the system to animate the
        // dropped item back to where it came from
        return false
    }
}

return false
}
}

```

There are two important methods that we're implementing here: the `validateDrop` method, and the `acceptDrop` method.

The `validateDrop` method is called when the user drags something *over* the collection view. We've already told the collection view that it will accept URLs in general; the `validateDrop` method allows us to be more selective about the URLs that we accept. In this app, we'll accept any old URL, so we'll instantly return `NSDragOperation.Copy` to indicate that we should tell the user that dropping the object will result in it being copied.

The `acceptDrop` method is called when the user *drops* the file (that is, releases the mouse button while the cursor is over the collection view). At this point, we use the `draggingInfo` parameter to get information about what was dropped.

In OS X's drag-and-drop system, you don't drop entire files, but rather just `NSURL` objects that link to files. This means that we first have to access the URL, by using the `NSURL` method's `fromPasteboard:` initializer. If that works, we use the `addAttachmentAtURL` method, which we wrote before; if it doesn't work, we use the

`NSDocument` class's built-in `presentError` method to tell the user about the problem.

Finally, the method returns either `true` or `false` to indicate that the drop was accepted or not. If the drop was not accepted, then OS X will animate the dragged object “flying back” to where it was dragged from, which tells the user that the drag failed.

You can now drag and drop files onto the list of attachments (see [Figure 6-24](#))!

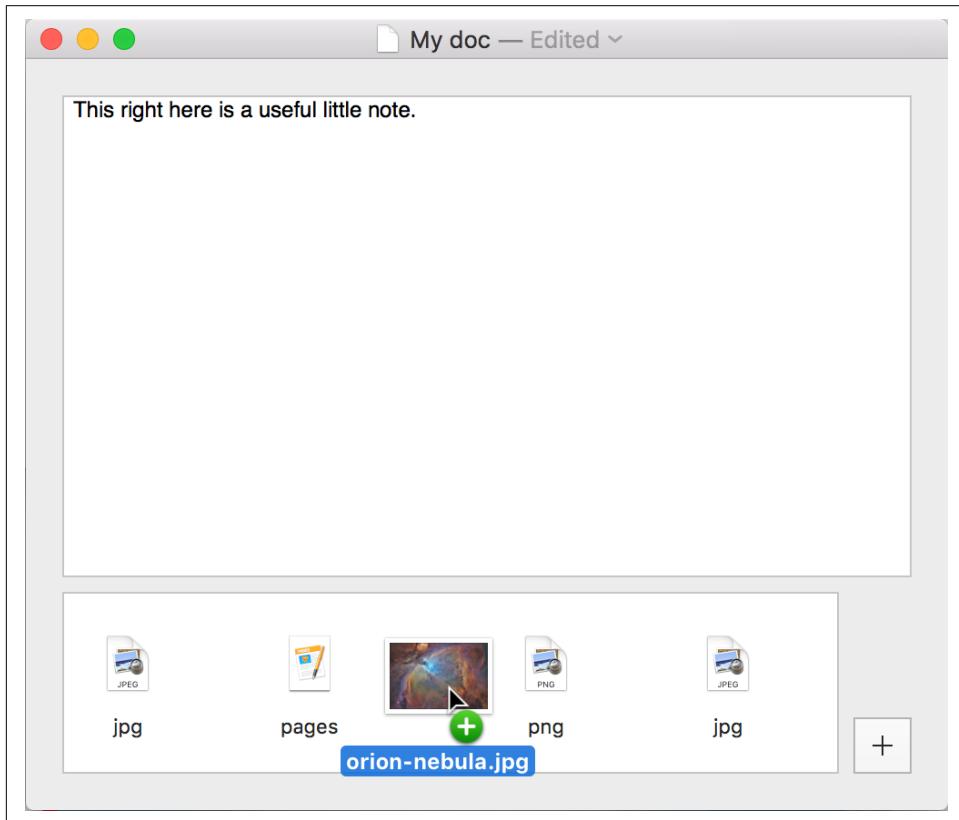


Figure 6-24. Drag-and-drop being demonstrated

Adding QuickLook

If a document uses a package file format, you can very easily take advantage of the Quick Look feature of OS X by including a folder called *QuickLook*. If this folder contains a file called *Preview.png* (or *.txt*, *.pdf*, and so on), it will be displayed when the user selects the file in Finder and presses the space bar. We're only going to imple-

ment Quick Look for the text component of a note, since displaying all the attachments goes beyond its capabilities.

Additionally, if the *QuickLook* folder contains a file called *Thumbnail.png* (or similar), this will be used as the document's icon.

First, we'll add items to the `NoteDocumentFileNames` enumeration, and then we'll add code to `fileWrapperOfType` that makes it save a copy of the *Text.rtf* file in the *QuickLook* folder.

1. Add the following items to the `NoteDocumentFileNames` enumeration:

```
// Names of files/directories in the package
enum NoteDocumentFileNames : String {
    case TextFile = "Text.rtf"

    case AttachmentsDirectory = "Attachments"
    > case QuickLookDirectory = "QuickLook"
    >
    > case QuickLookTextFile = "Preview.rtf"
    >
    > case QuickLookThumbnail = "Thumbnail.png"
}
```

2. Next, add the following method to the `Document` class:

```
func iconImageDataWithSize(size: CGSize) -> NSData? {
    let image = NSImage(size: size)

    image.lockFocus()

    let entireImageRect = CGRect(origin: CGPoint.zero, size: size)

    // Fill the background with white
    let backgroundRect = NSBezierPath(rect: entireImageRect)
    NSColor.whiteColor().setFill()
    backgroundRect.fill()

    if self.attachedFiles?.count >= 1 {
        // Render our text, and the first attachment
        let attachmentImage = self.attachedFiles?[0].thumbnailImage

        var firstHalf : CGRect = CGRectZero
        var secondHalf : CGRect = CGRectZero

        CGRectDivide(entireImageRect,
                     &firstHalf,
                     &secondHalf,
                     entireImageRect.size.height / 2.0,
```

```

        CGRectGetEdge.MinYEdge)

    self.text.drawInRect(firstHalf)
    attachmentImage?.drawInRect(secondHalf)
} else {
    // Just render our text
    self.text.drawInRect(entireImageRect)
}

let bitmapRepresentation =
    NSBitmapImageRep(focusedViewRect: entireImageRect)

image.unlockFocus()

// Convert it to a PNG
return bitmapRepresentation?
    .representationUsingType(.NSPNGFileType, properties: [:])
}

```

This method is responsible for preparing an image and then returning it as an `NSData` object containing a PNG. We first start building the image by creating a new `NSImage` object, passing in the size of the image we want to create. We then call the `lockFocus` method, which tells the drawing system that we wish to start drawing into this new image.

Next, we start the drawing itself. We first fill the entire image with a white background, and then check to see if we have attachments. If we have any attachments, we draw the first attachment's thumbnail image into the top half of the canvas, and the text of the note into the bottom half; if we have no attachments, we draw just the text.

Once the drawing is done, we create an `NSBitmapImageRep` object, which allows us to convert the image into a bitmap format, such as PNG. This is necessary, because `NSImage` can also just as easily be converted to a vector format, like PDF; we need to be specific about what we want to do with the image.

Once the bitmap representation has been created, we call `unlockFocus` to tell the drawing system that we're done working with the image.



If you call `lockFocus`, you must call `unlockFocus`. If you don't, you'll cause all kinds of problems, because the drawing system won't know that you're done drawing content into your image.

Finally, we can return an `NSData` object by asking the bitmap representation to provide a PNG version of itself, which we then return.

Now that documents are capable of producing a thumbnail image that represents themselves, we can use these thumbnails in the document's Quick Look preview.

3. Add the following code to `fileWrapperOfType`:

```
override func fileWrapperOfType(typeName: String) throws -> NSFileWrapper {  
  
    let textRTFData = try self.text.dataFromRange(  
        NSRange(0..        documentAttributes: [  
            NSDocumentTypeDocumentAttribute: NSRTFTextDocumentType  
        ]  
    )  
  
    // If the current document file wrapper already contains a  
    // text file, remove it - we'll replace it with a new one  
    if let oldTextFileWrapper = self.documentFileWrapper  
        .fileWrappers?[NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue] {  
        self.documentFileWrapper.removeFileWrapper(oldTextFileWrapper)  
    }  
  
    // Create the QuickLook folder  
    //  
    let thumbnailImageData =  
        self.iconImageDataWithSize(CGSize(width: 512, height: 512))!  
    let thumbnailWrapper =  
        NSFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: thumbnailImageData)  
    //  
    let quicklookPreview =  
        NSFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: textRTFData)  
    //  
    let quickLookFolderFileWrapper =  
        NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [  
            NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookTextFile.rawValue: quicklookPreview,  
            NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookThumbnail.rawValue: thumbnailWrapper  
        ])  
    //  
    quickLookFolderFileWrapper.preferredFilename  
        = NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookDirectory.rawValue  
    //  
    // Remove the old QuickLook folder if it existed  
    if let oldQuickLookFolder = self.documentFileWrapper  
        .fileWrappers?[NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookDirectory.rawValue] {  
        self.documentFileWrapper.removeFileWrapper(oldQuickLookFolder)  
    }  
    //  
    // Add the new QuickLook folder  
    self.documentFileWrapper.addFileWrapper(quickLookFolderFileWrapper)  
  
    // Save the text data into the file
```

```

        self.documentFileWrapper.addRegularFileWithContents(
            textRTFData,
            preferredFilename: NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue
        )

        // Return the main document's file wrapper - this is what will
// be saved on disk
        return self.documentFileWrapper
    }
}

```

This method gets the PNG data that contains the document’s thumbnail image and creates an `NSFileWrapper` to represent a file that stores that data. Next, it takes the note’s text, which has previously already been stored in the `textRTFData` variable, and stores it in a second `NSFileWrapper`, to represent the document’s preview file. Finally, a third `NSFileWrapper` is created, which represents the folder that contains the thumbnail and preview files.

Next, the method checks to see if the document’s file wrapper already contains a *QuickLook* folder. If it does, it’s removed. Finally, the newly created *QuickLook* folder is added to the document’s file wrapper. As a result, when the document is saved, the *QuickLook* folder and its required files are written to disk.

4. Run the app and save the document. Select the document in the Finder, and hit the space bar. You’ll see the document’s text, as shown in [Figure 6-25](#).

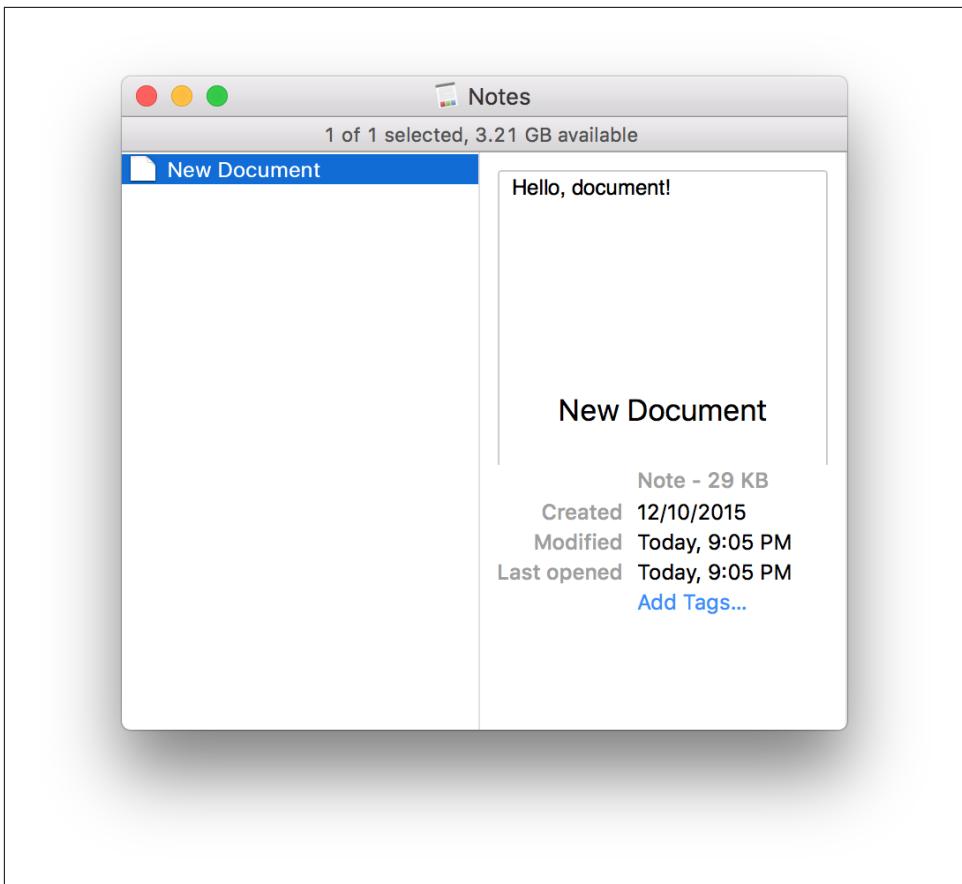


Figure 6-25. Quick Look working on a Notes file

iCloud

The Mac app is now almost entirely done and dusted, and the last thing to add is integration with iCloud, which will make all documents that you create in the app available on the user's other devices.



In order to be able to effectively test and develop applications (for both OS X and iOS) that use iCloud, you will need to make sure your devices are set up with your own iCloud account. If iCloud is not enabled, you can't test apps you develop that use iCloud.

iCloud is an online storage and syncing service provided by Apple. It is promoted as a service that makes “all of your data available on all of your devices”: the user’s mail,

settings, documents, and data are all synced via the iCloud server across all devices that are signed in to the same account.

On OS X, an application doesn't need to do a great deal of work to gain access to iCloud's file-syncing services. All you need to do is turn the feature on in Xcode, and OS X will take care of the rest. This is a very short section!

The minimal amount of work required to make an OS X app work with iCloud is almost the opposite of the amount of work required to make an iOS app work with iCloud. OS X and iCloud, for document-based apps, is easy. iOS and iCloud is...not! Sorry!

The Basics of iCloud

iCloud actually exists as three related services:

- iCloud key/value storage allows applications to store simple information, like strings and numbers, in a dictionary-like structure that's synced across all of a user's devices.
- iCloud document storage provides a folder to each application whose contents are synced across devices.
- CloudKit is a cloud-hosted database that allows both applications running on the user's devices as well as external services, like a server that you host, to access the data.

iCloud is designed to provide maximum privacy and safety for the user: your apps are able to access only data made by an app that you own, and iCloud is available only to apps that have been signed by a registered Apple developer.

To add support for storing data in iCloud, you must provision the application for use with iCloud. This isn't as ominous as it sounds (at least for the OS X app).

1. Click on the project at the top of the Project Navigator.
2. Select the Notes target, and go to the General tab. Ensure that the team is not set to None; if it is, select your development team. If you don't have a development team, refer to “[The Apple Developer Program](#)” on page 5 to learn how to set up your account.
3. Go to the Capabilities tab.
4. Turn iCloud on.

Xcode will spin for a few moments while it sets up your application for use with iCloud.

5. In the Services section, select iCloud Documents, and deselect everything else (Figure 6-26).

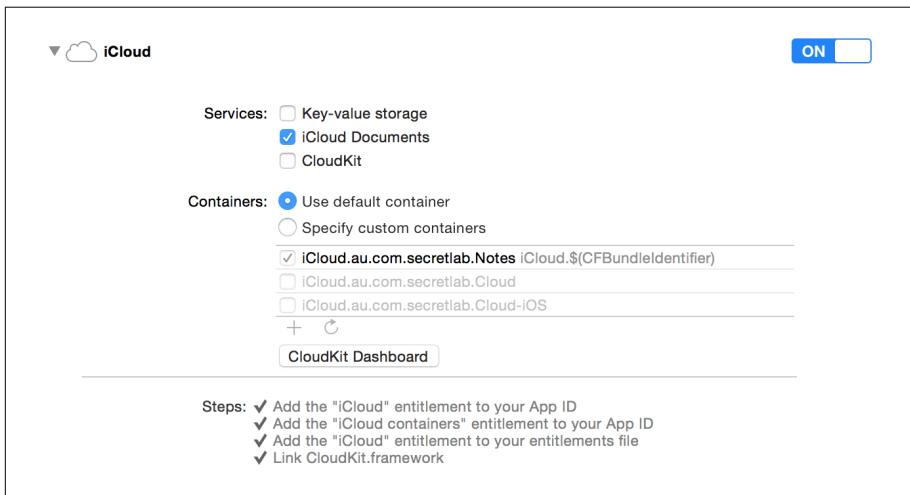


Figure 6-26. Setting up iCloud

Note the name of the iCloud container: in Figure 6-26, it's "iCloud.au.com.secretlab.Notes," but yours will be different. You'll need this in a moment.



The name of the iCloud container will be used in a moment to ensure that the iCloud Drive folder for this app is visible.

Next, we need to indicate to the system that this application should have a folder in iCloud Drive. iCloud Drive is the users' view of all of the various files they've stored in iCloud, and each application that has access to iCloud can potentially have a folder appear in iCloud Drive.



Having the ability to store documents in iCloud is not the same thing as having a visible folder in the iCloud Drive interface. If you have iCloud Documents turned on, your app can store files in iCloud, but your app won't appear in iCloud Drive. You need to turn it on manually.

6. Go to the Info tab. Add a new entry to the Custom OS X Target Properties list by moving the mouse over anywhere in the list and clicking the + button. Name the

new entry `NSUbiquitousContainers`, and change its type to `Dictionary` by clicking anywhere inside its second column ([Figure 6-27](#)).

▼ Custom OS X Application Target Properties		
Key	Type	Value
Copyright (human-readable)	String	Copyright © 2015 Jonathc
Bundle identifier	String	<code>\$(PRODUCT_BUNDLE_ID)</code>
InfoDictionary version	String	6.0
Bundle versions string, short	String	1.0
Bundle version	String	3
Executable file	String	<code>\$(EXECUTABLE_NAME)</code>
Principal class	String	<code>NSApplication</code>
Bundle OS Type code	String	APPL
Icon file	String	
Bundle creator OS Type code	String	????
Main nib file base name	String	MainMenu
Minimum system version	String	<code>\$(MACOSX_DEPLOYMENT)</code>
Localization native development region	String	en
NSUbiquitousContainers	Dictionary	(1 item)
Bundle name	String	<code>\$(PRODUCT_NAME)</code>

Figure 6-27. Adding a new entry to the custom target properties list

7. Expand the new `NSUbiquitousContainers` entry, and add a new entry inside it by moving the mouse over the row and clicking the `+` button. This entry should have the same name as your iCloud container from earlier, and its type should be `Dictionary`.
8. Add the following three entries to this dictionary (by moving the mouse over this *additional* row that you just added, and clicking `+`), as shown in [Figure 6-28](#):
 - `NSUbiquitousContainerIsDocumentScopePublic (Boolean)`: YES
 - `NSUbiquitousContainerSupportedFolderLevels (String)`: Any
 - `NSUbiquitousContainerName (String)`: Notes

▼ NSUbiquitousContainers	Dictionary	(1 item)
▼ iCloud.au.com.secretlab.Notes	Dictionary	(3 items)
NSUbiquitousContainerIsDocumentScopePublic	Boolean	YES
NSUbiquitousContainerSupportedFolderLevels	String	Any
NSUbiquitousContainerName	String	Notes

Figure 6-28. The newly added entries

The app is now set up for iCloud. You can save documents in iCloud Drive, and they'll be synced across all devices that have the Notes app installed. When we implement the iOS app in [Part III](#), it will receive the documents as well.



iCloud, being a networked service, can occasionally behave in ways you don't expect. If you're having trouble figuring out why iCloud is doing things you don't want it to, like failing to sync changes to files, there's a debugging tool that you can use to observe what iCloud's doing behind the scenes.

Open the Terminal app, which you'll find in the *Applications→Utilities* folder. Next, type the following and press Return:

```
brctl log --wait --shorten
```

This will start logging all iCloud activity across all applications until you press Control-C.

Conclusion

We've done a huge amount in this chapter! In brief, we've:

- explored more complex pieces of OS X user interface that are available, such as `NSCollectionView`—which provides the ability to display a grid of views, and used it to display a list of attachments for our notes—and `NSPopover`.
- used outlets and actions, allowing us to easily connect code to the user interface of our apps.
- created new classes, and subclassed existing classes, in order to add functionality.
- implemented Quick Look on our custom file format, allowing users of our app to preview the contents of files using the OS X Finder.
- added iCloud support.

That's basically everything we're going to do for the OS X app in this book. We're keeping it short and simple. If you're interested in taking it further, we'll provide some suggestions on our [website](#).

In the next part of the book, we'll start working with iOS!

PART III

An iOS App

Setting Up the iOS Notes App

People carry their phones everywhere, and they expect to have access to everything, any time. This means that, for a note-taking app like the one we made in [Part II](#), our users are going to want access to the notes that they've been writing while on their phones.

Over the next several chapters, we'll implement an iOS application that allows users to both write new notes while on the go and also access the notes that they've made on their Mac, using the OS X app we built in [Part II](#). Because the Mac app was already set up using iCloud, their documents already exist in the cloud; this means that our iOS application will be able to access them.

By storing documents that were created on the phone into iCloud, users can seamlessly move from their desktop computer to their phone and back again, while having access to all of their documents at the same time. Additionally, if they own more than one iOS device—for example, both an iPhone and an iPad—their documents will exist on all of their devices at the same time.



You can download the resources for this app, including wireframes, mockups, and icons from this [book's website](#).

We'll be doing a lot more coding in this part than we did back in [Part II](#), when we built the OS X app. We'll begin the iOS app by first discussing its design—both its visual design and the design of the software. Next, we'll dive in and begin creating the app, assembling a new Xcode project for it, adding the icon, and adding support for iCloud. We're setting up iCloud up front for the iOS app, instead of at the end, as we did for the OS X app (in “[iCloud](#)” on page 166) because iCloud is so tightly integrated

with everything in iOS, and can't just be turned on as with on OS X. After setting up iCloud, we'll set up the iOS app to work with the same Note document type we created for the OS X app in “[Defining a Document Type](#)” on page 98.

Designing the iOS Notes App

The most obvious difference between an iOS device and a Mac is the difference between the two display sizes. An iPhone is *much* smaller than a Mac, and while the iPad is bigger, it's still quite small. Only iPad Pro approaches, and in some cases exceeds, a regular laptop's size.

On top of this difference in size, iOS devices have a second, more important distinction: the user interacts with the interface using a touchscreen. Touchscreens change the way that you interact with any user interface, for a number of reasons. One of these is that because the user's hand is not transparent, anything that the user is touching is covered up by the finger that's touching it. On top of that, the rest of the hand that's attached to that finger—the palm, wrist, and so on—also covers up even more of the screen. Additionally, fingertips are significantly less precise than a mouse cursor, which means that everything needs to be bigger if you want the user to actually be able to touch it.



You might think that it's incredibly obvious that a mobile device is likely to be much smaller than a traditional computer, and you'd be right; but it's amazing how many mobile developers forget this and try to cram everything into a single screen of a mobile app interface.

On top of the constraints imposed by the touchscreen, you have a number of other hardware issues to deal with: the phone relies on a battery, which means that you have to be very economical with the amount of power that you consume. Additionally, because users will be switching from WiFi to cell coverage as they move around, your app can't rely on access to the Internet.

Finally, there are constraints imposed by iOS itself. Unlike in OS X, there is no Finder application that acts as the *host* for all other apps; instead of working primarily with their documents in the Finder, users work with apps in the home screen. This means that every iOS app that works with files is responsible for presenting the list of the user's files. This includes searching the iCloud container for files that the app should present, as well as identifying when that list of files changes due to other devices making changes to the container.



Starting with iOS 9, users can browse the contents of their iCloud Drive using a built-in app. However, the user may not be using it—the app can be disabled, the user may not have access to iCloud, or the user may simply not know where to find it. The iCloud Drive app is meant to be a secondary method for users to access their files, because the iOS philosophy is that apps “contain” their documents. This means that your app needs to present and manage its own list of documents.

Additionally, not every file that’s in the user’s iCloud container will be downloaded to the device. This differs from how it works on OS X, which automatically downloads every file. Your app needs to specifically request to download each file that the user wants to access.

With this in mind, we started designing wireframes for the iOS app: the basic layout of each screen for the app, and how they relate (see Figures 7-1 through 7-3).

The wireframe shows a grid of notes. A sidebar on the left has a 'Settings' button and a 'Tap and hold items to enter edit mode' instruction. The main area is titled 'Notes' with a '+' button. The grid contains six items:

Icon	Title
T	Day at the Beach
▶ T	Meeting Notes
▶ T	Things To Do
T	Inspirational Thoughts
T	App Ideas
T	Apology letter to my editor
T	Next Book Idea

Annotations on the right side explain the icons and features:

- Grid of notes; icon depends on attachments**
- Handoffs: jump between documents on OS X, iOS and Watch**
- Each icon shows representations of their attachments: a snapshot of the text, icons for attachments**
- This screen works on iPhone and iPad**

Figure 7-1. The document list

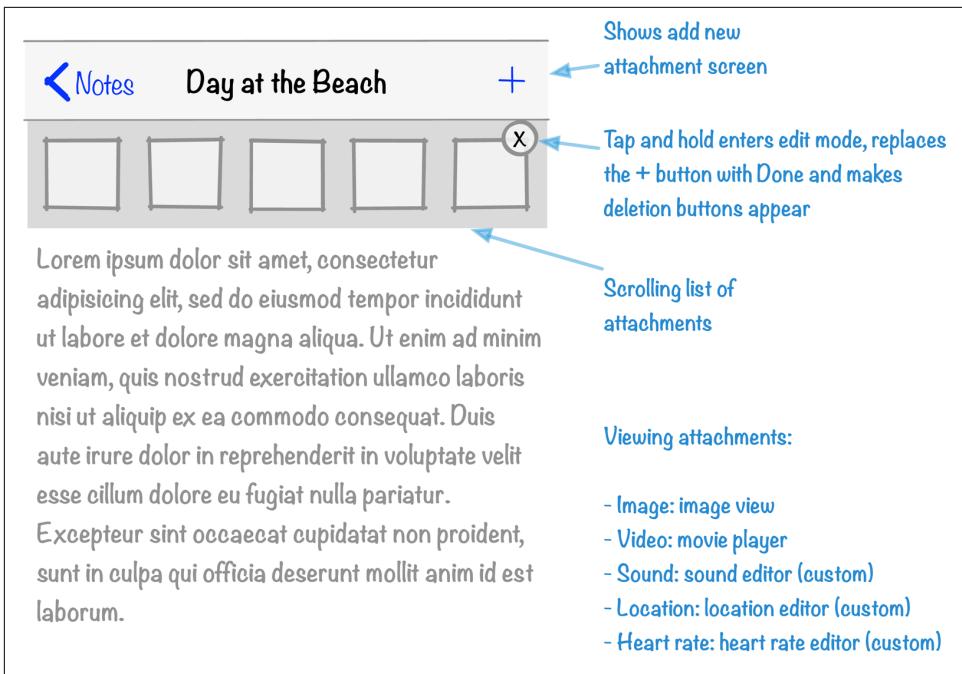


Figure 7-2. A single document

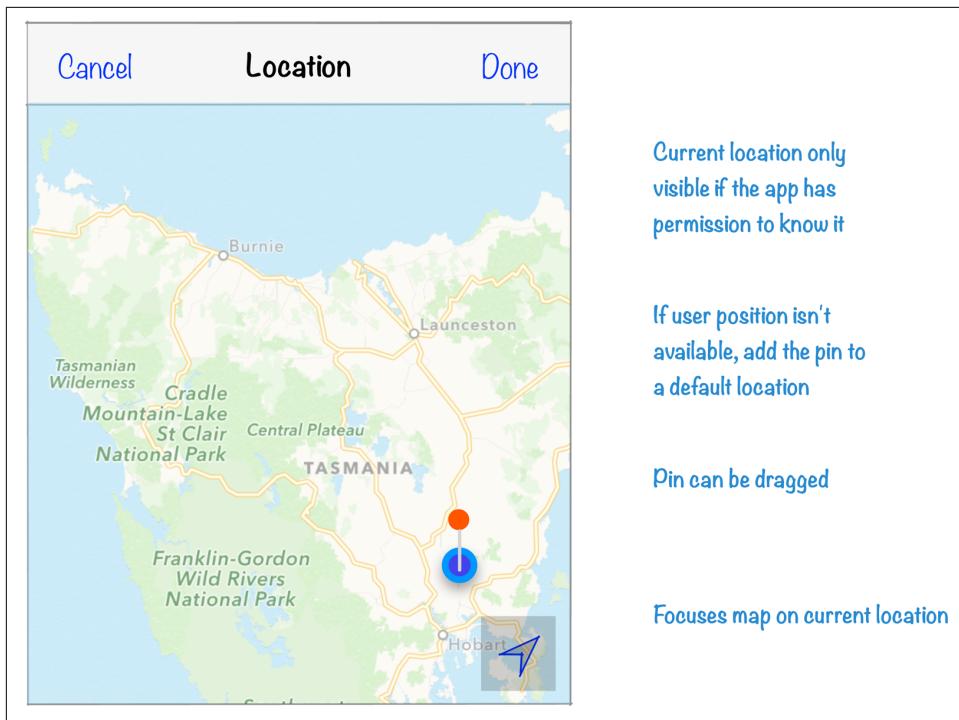


Figure 7-3. Location attachments

You'll notice that the attachments list appears at the top of the screen, instead of at the bottom. The reason for this is the on-screen keyboard, which occludes everything in the bottom half of the screen; if users want to access their attachments, it's not reasonable to ask them to dismiss the keyboard first.

At the end of these chapters, you'll have implemented the whole application, which will look like Figures 7-4 through 7-6.

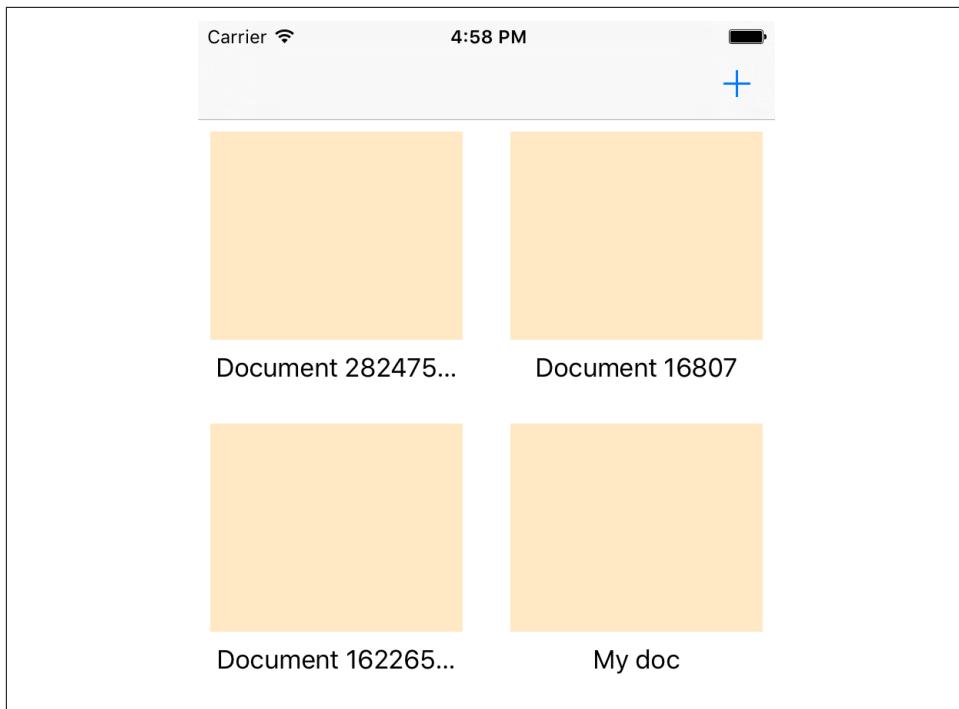


Figure 7-4. The document list

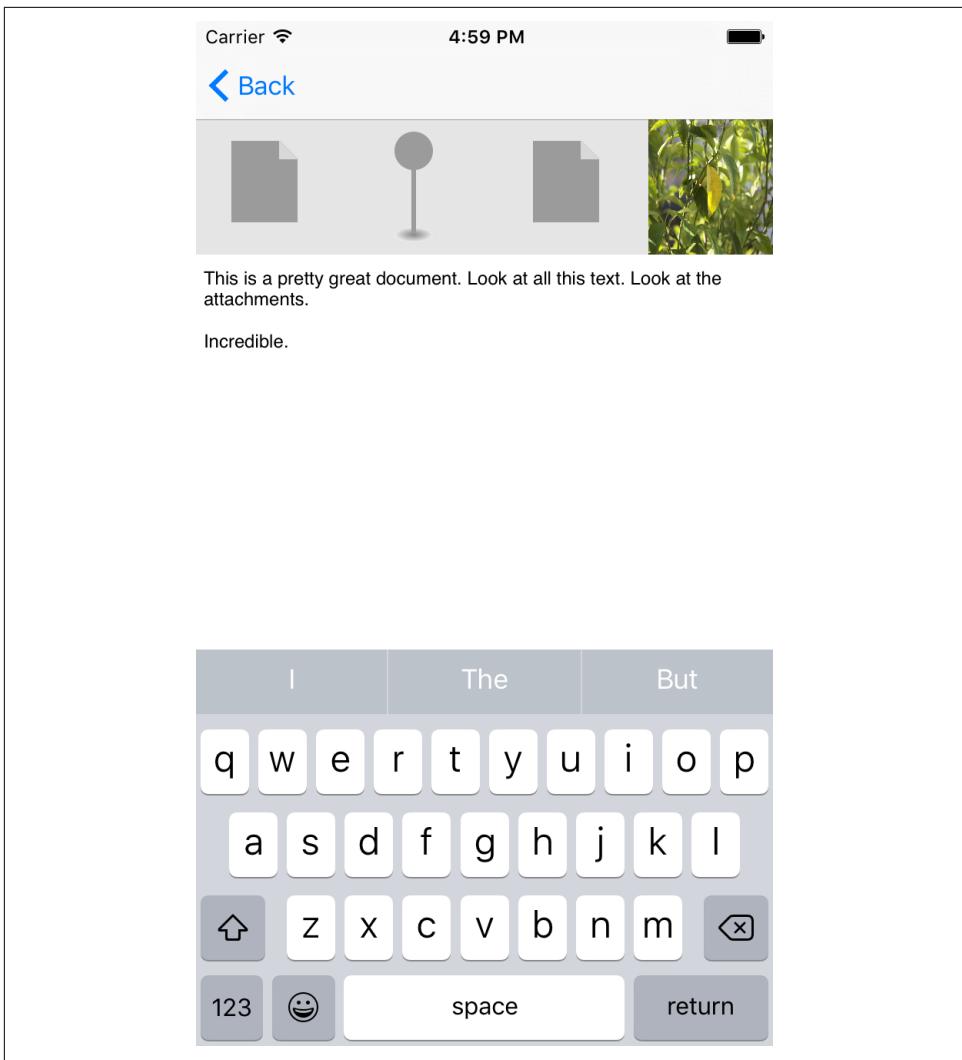


Figure 7-5. A single document

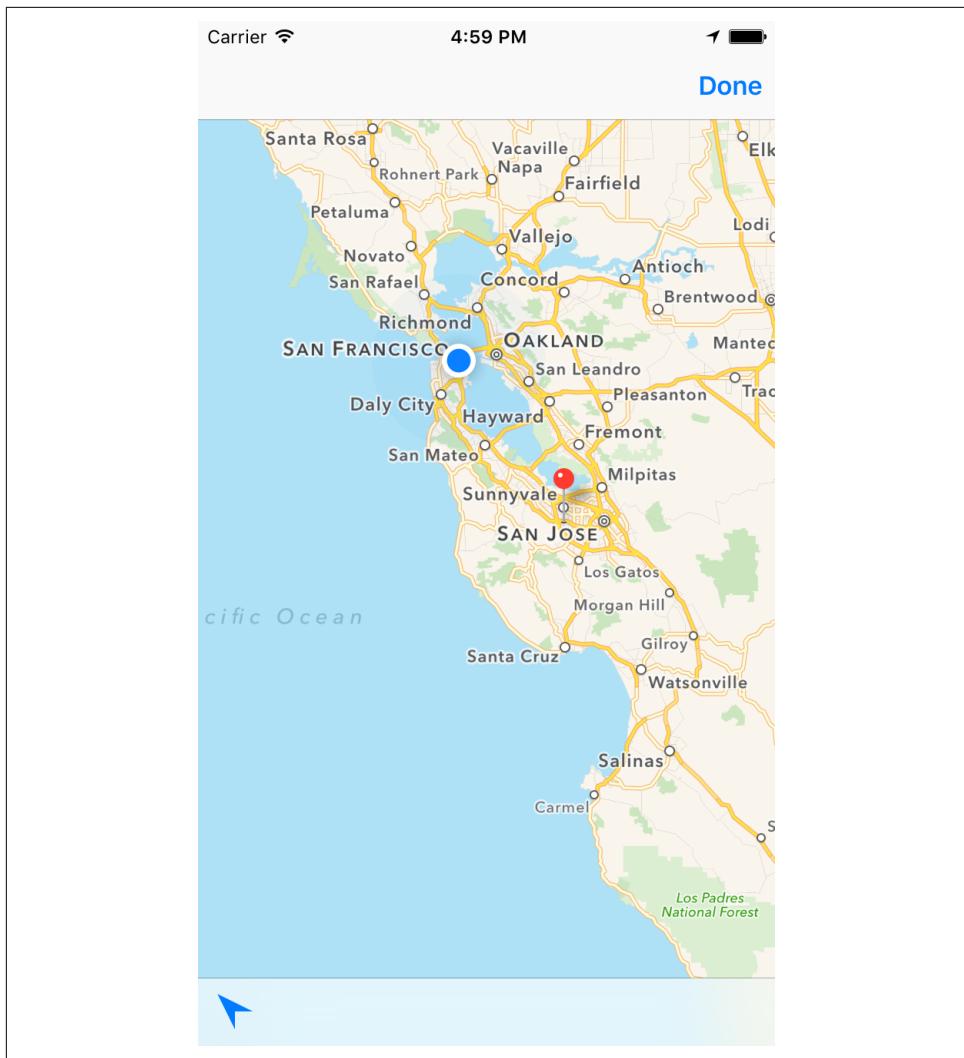


Figure 7-6. Location attachments

The iOS app will have many features, and we'll be adding all of them over the coming chapters:

- Compatibility with the OS X app's documents: users can start writing a note on OS X and make changes to it on any of their iOS devices.
- Files are stored in either iCloud or locally on the user's device, as per the user's preference.

- Conflict resolution for notes, so users can pick the most recent version if there's a conflict when notes are synchronized between devices.
- Attachments can be added to notes and viewed. These attachments include:
 - images and videos, captured using the device's camera.
 - audio recordings, captured with the microphone.
 - locations, using the device's GPS.
 - contacts, chosen from the user's list of contacts.
- The user can set alarms on notes and be reminded to revisit them via a pop-up notification.
- Image attachments can be shared via any of the user's apps that support sharing (Twitter, Facebook, Pinterest, and so on).
- Handoff support allows users to instantly move from one device to the next while editing a document.
- A Today screen extension, which shows a list of notes in the user's Notification Center.
- Search indexing means that notes appear in Spotlight search results.
- Undo support means that users can instantly revert a change that they've made to the note text.
- Links are detected in note text, and when users tap on them, an embedded web browser will appear.
- Users can customize the behavior of the app via the Settings app.
- Images can have filters applied to them, such as grayscale and film effects.
- Text to speech means users can select text in the document and have their device speak it.



You'll notice that the iOS app has many more features than the Mac app. Most of this is because Mac apps have quite a bit of stuff already taken care of for them: if we double-click an image, it launches in the Preview app, whereas an iOS app has to create its own view controller and present it in an image view. iOS apps just take more work.

Creating the iOS Project

Because it's part of the same collection of products, the iOS app will be added as a target attached to the original project. This allows it to share code with the Mac tar-

get, and it keeps everything in one place. If you need a reminder on targets, flip back to “[The Xcode Interface](#)” on page 12.

1. Open the File menu, and choose New→Target.
2. In the window that appears, select Application under the iOS heading. Select Single-View Application, and then click Next (see [Figure 7-7](#)).

Xcode provides a number of different templates for iOS applications, but they’re all fundamentally the same. The only difference between most of them is which view controllers are set up ahead of time. We’re using a Single-View Application because we’ll be building things out piece by piece, and don’t want a lot of boilerplate that we either have to contrive a use for or delete.

The other templates are as they sound: Master-Detail provides the basics of an app with a list down the left side and a detail view on the right side (like Mail), Page-Based provides the basics of an app with multiple views scrolling across the screen (like Weather), Tabbed provides the basics of a tab bar setup (like Music), and Game provides an empty game view, using Apple’s SceneKit framework. As you become familiar with the basics of iOS development, you’ll typically start most of your apps from the Single-View template, as we do here, because you’ll want to define what’s going on yourself, rather than rely on a template skeleton.

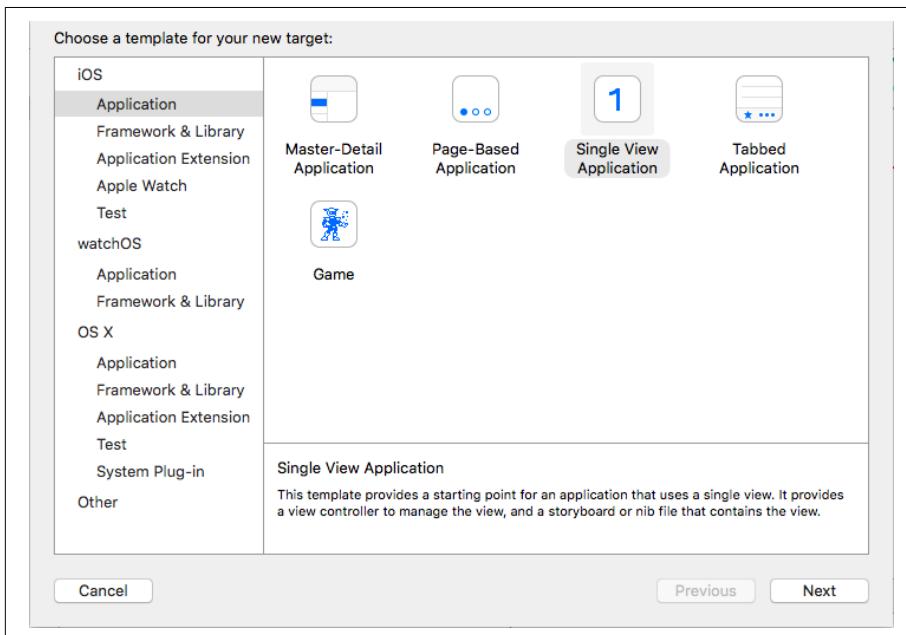


Figure 7-7. Creating the target

3. Name the application **Notes-iOS**. Set Devices to Universal, and ensure that Use Core Data is turned off (see Figure 7-8). Click Finish.



Core Data

Core Data is a database framework that comes bundled with iOS and OS X. Core Data is a huge, powerful, complex system that's designed for working with objects in a database. It's so huge, in fact, that describing it usually fills entire books.

Core Data is very well suited for when the data your app needs to work with is composed of multiple objects that all need to link together. For the app in this book, we just need to save chunks of raw text and attachments via file wrappers; however, if we were forced to not use file wrappers, and had to store all of the components of the documents in a single file, Core Data might be a useful way of dealing with it.

If you want to learn more about Core Data, we highly recommend Marcus S. Zarra's *Core Data: Data Storage and Management for iOS, OS X, and iCloud* (Pragmatic Programmers); additionally, [Apple's documentation](#) is extremely good.

Choose options for your new target:

Product Name:	<input type="text" value="Notes-iOS"/>
Organization Name:	<input type="text" value="Secret Lab"/>
Organization Identifier:	<input type="text" value="au.com.secretlab"/>
Bundle Identifier:	<input type="text" value="au.com.secretlab.Notes-iOS"/>
Language:	<input type="text" value="Swift"/>
Devices:	<input type="text" value="Universal"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Core Data	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include Unit Tests	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include UI Tests	
Project:	<input type="text" value="Notes"/>

Cancel **Previous** **Finish**

Figure 7-8. Finishing up the target

There will now be an additional scheme in the scheme selector for Notes-iOS, at the top left of the window. Select it, and choose any simulator device you wish, so that pressing **⌘R** will launch the app (Figure 7-9).



Figure 7-9. Selecting the scheme

Finally, we'll add the icon. All icons are available in the resources for this book; if you don't already have them, grab them by following the instructions in “[Resources Used in This Book](#)” on page ix.

iOS icons come in multiple sizes, and each one is designed for a different purpose. This is because of the diversity of devices that run iOS; in addition to iPhone and iPad, there's also the fact that different devices have different screen densities. Devices with a Retina display (that is, the devices with high-resolution screens, such as all iPhones after the iPhone 4 and all iPads after the iPad 3) need higher-resolution icons; in addition, larger models of iPhones, such as the iPhone 6 Plus and iPhone 6S Plus, have even higher resolutions.

To give your app an icon on iOS, you need multiple copies of the same image. Again, we've provided these in the downloadable resources.

To add the icon, follow these steps:

1. Open the iOS app's *Assets.xcassets* file, and select the *AppIcon* entry. You'll see a collection of slots—one for each of the different possible icon sizes.
2. Drag and drop the files from the downloadable resources into the slots. Use the names of each file to work out which slot they belong in; for example, *Icon-60@2x.png* belongs in the “60pt” category's “@2x” slot.



If you accidentally add an image to the wrong icon category, you can remove it by selecting the errant image slot and pressing Delete.

When you're done, the asset catalog should look like Figure 7-10. If you need a reminder on asset catalogs, refer to “[Adding the Icon](#)” on page 102, when we added the icon to the OS X app.

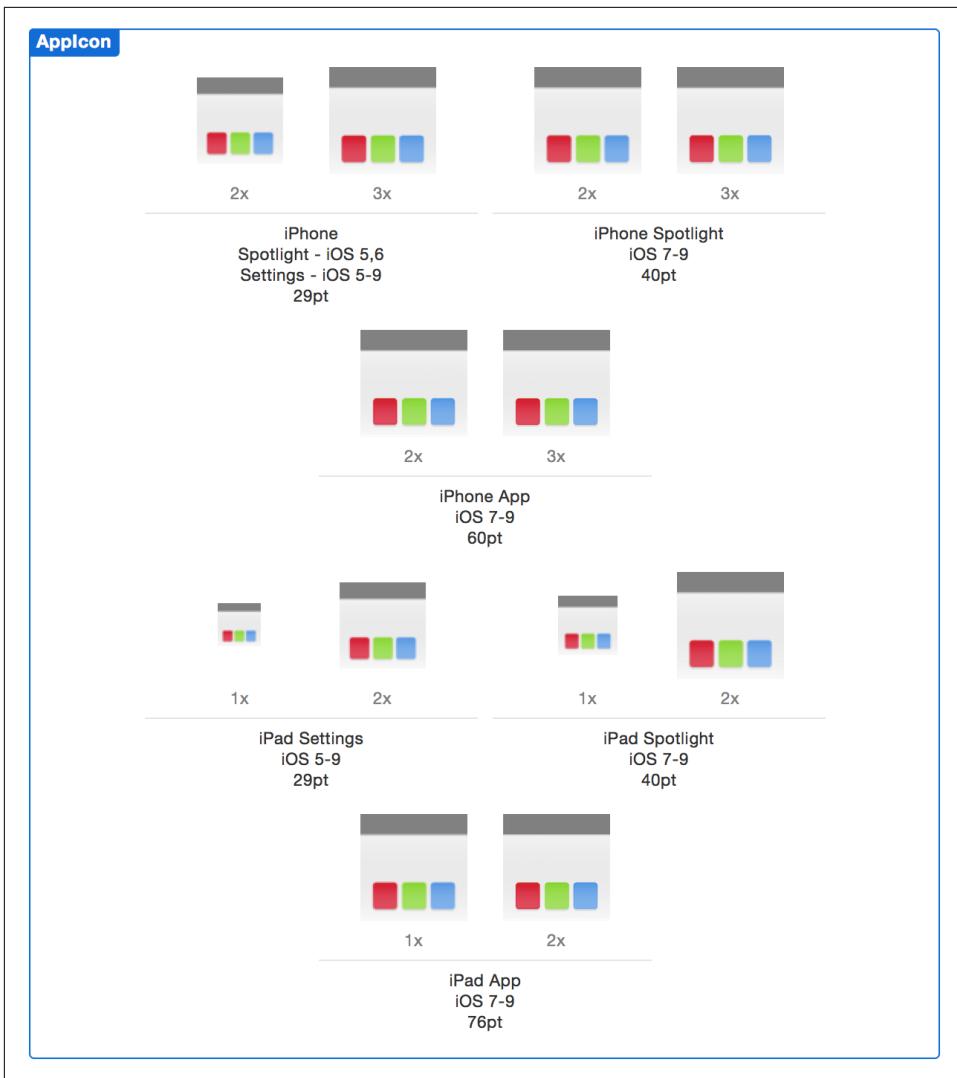


Figure 7-10. The asset catalog for the icons

Enabling the iOS App for iCloud

We'll now set up the project so that it has access to the same iCloud container as the OS X app. In particular, we need to enable the iCloud Documents feature, which will give the app access to the iCloud container.



You need to have a paid Apple developer account in order for your apps to access iCloud. If you don't have one, head to “[The Apple Developer Program](#)” on page 5 to learn how to set up your account.

1. Select the project at the top of the Project Navigator. The project properties will appear. Select the Notes-iOS target ([Figure 7-11](#)).

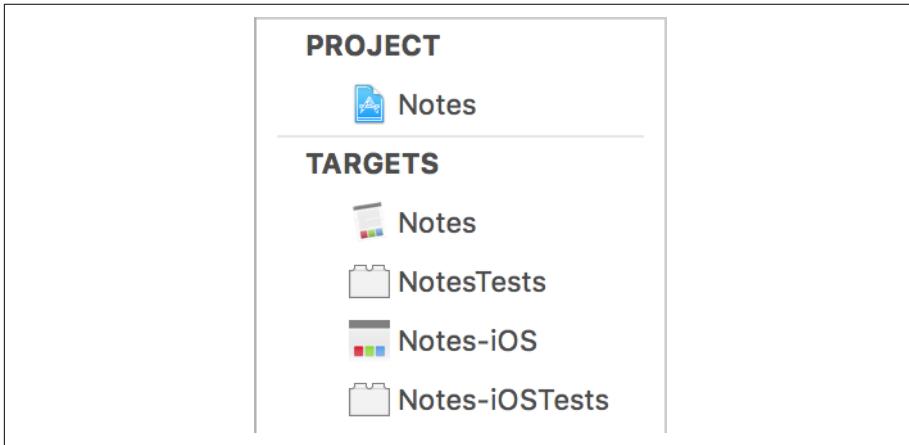


Figure 7-11. Selecting the target

2. Go to the Capabilities tab and find the iCloud section. Turn the switch on, and Xcode will add support for iCloud to the Notes-iOS target. It'll take a moment, so wait for the spinner to go away.
3. Once iCloud has been enabled, you need to enable access to iCloud Documents so that you can access the iCloud container folder that stores the files, and you need to configure the application to access the same container as the Mac app. We don't need the iOS application to have its own, separate container.

Change the Services setting to only iCloud Documents, and change the Containers setting to “Specify custom containers.” Next, select the iCloud container that you set up for the Mac app, and no others. See [Figure 7-12](#).

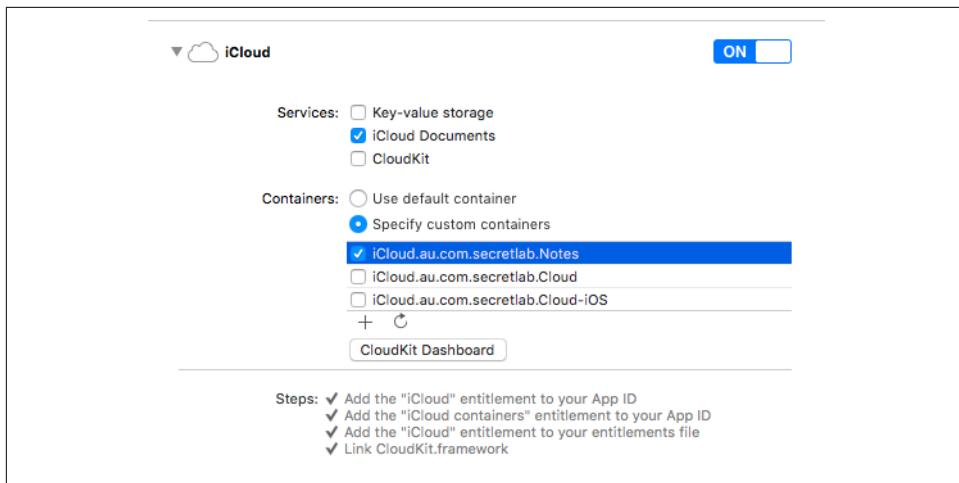


Figure 7-12. Enabling iCloud



Don't forget that iCloud can be used for more than just document storage. You can also store simple key/value data, as well as more complex database-oriented apps; for more info, see ["iCloud" on page 166](#).

Next, we need to ensure that the app has access to iCloud. To do this, we'll ask the `NSFileManager` to tell us the location of the iCloud container on the disk; calling this will result in the creation of an iCloud container, if none previously existed.



Apple requires that you also have the ability to solely store files locally, if iCloud is not available or not turned on. We'll talk about this more in ["iCloud Availability" on page 195](#).

1. Open `AppDelegate.swift`.
2. Add the following code to `application(_:, didFinishLaunchingWithOptions:)`:

```
// Ensure we've got access to iCloud
let backgroundQueue = NSOperationQueue()
backgroundQueue.addOperationWithBlock() {
    // Pass nil to this method to get the URL for the first
    // iCloud container listed in the app's entitlements
    let ubiquityContainerURL = NSFileManager.defaultManager()
        .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)
    print("Ubiquity container URL: \(ubiquityContainerURL)")
}
```

Note that the call to `URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier` is done in a background queue. This is because the first time you call this method, the system performs quite a bit of work to set up the container before the method returns. As a result, calling this on the main thread means that it will block anything else from happening, including responding to user input, so make sure to do it in the background.



On iOS—indeed, on all modern operating systems—programs are divided into one or more *threads* of execution. Threads are executed simultaneously by the CPU, which means that running multiple threads means you can do multiple things at once. iOS and Mac apps always have at least one thread, called the *main* thread. All user interface work is done on the main thread, which means that if something takes a lot of time to finish—like preparing the iCloud container—then the app will appear to hang. We deal with this by creating a *background queue* and doing the work there.

Before you launch, you should sign in to iCloud on your iOS simulator.



Testing iCloud in the Simulator

It's very strongly suggested that you create a new Apple ID and use that to do your testing; if you do, it's less of a problem if you accidentally erase all documents in the iCloud container. [Apple's Documentation](#) provides guidance on this process.

3. To sign into iCloud in the simulator, follow the same steps as you do on the device by using the Settings application, navigating to the iCloud section, and entering your username and password.

You can now test the application. To do this, you need to install it on a system that is signed in to iCloud. This can be either a simulator or a real device that's signed into iCloud; it's up to you.



Each device and simulator has its own settings, so to move between them you'll need to make sure they are signed into iCloud with the account you are using.

4. Go back to Xcode and run the app; after a few seconds, it will log the location of the container!



If you get a `nil` value instead of a URL, double-check the Settings app to make sure that you’re signed in to iCloud. Additionally, check the project’s Capabilities tab to make sure that the app is permitted to access iCloud.

Defining a Document Type

Now that the application has access to iCloud, we will set it up so that the app registers the Note document type with the system. Because iOS apps present their own methods for listing and opening documents, this isn’t as critical to the whole document flow as it is in OS X, but it is necessary to support later features, such as Hand-off. As a result, it’s better to get it done sooner rather than later.

1. Go to the project properties, and select the Notes-iOS target.
2. Select the Info tab. Scroll down to the Document Type section, and click the triangle to open it.
3. Click the + button to create a new document type ([Figure 7-13](#)), and fill in the following fields:
 - Name: **Note**
 - Types: **au.com.secretlab.Note**



In place of `au.com.secretlab.Note` you will have to input your own identifier if you want it to work correctly with the OS X app you made earlier!

4. Add an entry to the “Additional document type properties” field by clicking the triangle inside the box, and then clicking in the field that’s exposed. Name the entry `CFBundleTypeExtensions`, and set its type to `Array`.
5. Next, add an entry to this new array: a string, with the value `note`.

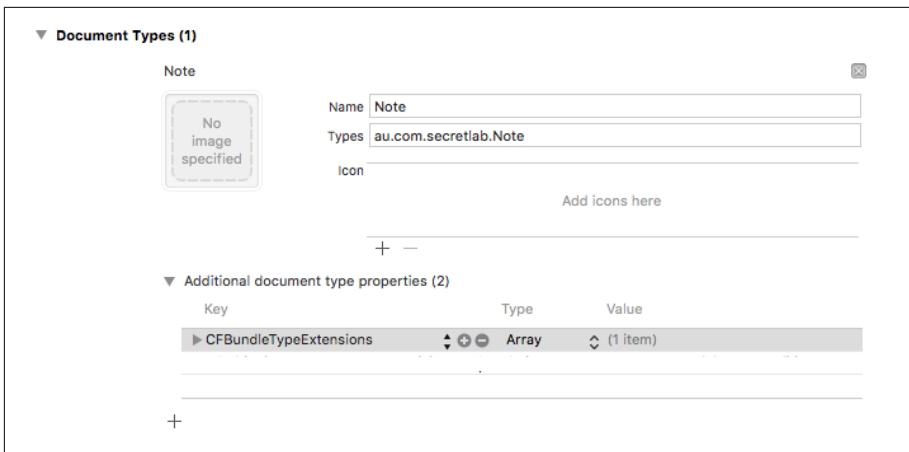


Figure 7-13. Adding a new document type

Now that the application has registered that it can open these documents, we need to expose a uniform type identifier (UTI) to the system that describes what the type actually is. Check back to “[Defining a Document Type](#) on page 98”, when we set up the document type for OS X, for more information on UTIs.

1. Open the Exported UTIs section, and click the + button to create a new type.
2. Fill in the fields as follows:
 - Description: **Note**
 - Identifier: **au.com.secretlab.Note**
 - Conforms to: **com.apple.package**
3. Add an entry to the “Additional exported UTI properties” field by clicking the triangle inside the box, and then clicking in the field that’s exposed. Name it **UTTypeTagSpecification**, and set its type to **Dictionary**.
4. Add a single entry to this dictionary: **public.filename-extension**; set its type to **Array**.
5. Add a single element to this array: the string **note**.



Make sure that you type everything as written, with the same capitalization. If you used a different identifier back when you created the OS X application, use that here in place of `au.com.secretlab.Note`.

The app is now associated with this type (see [Figure 7-14](#)); when the app is installed, the iPhone will register the following things:

- A file format named Note exists.
- It has the file extension `.note`.
- It conforms to the `com.apple.package` format.

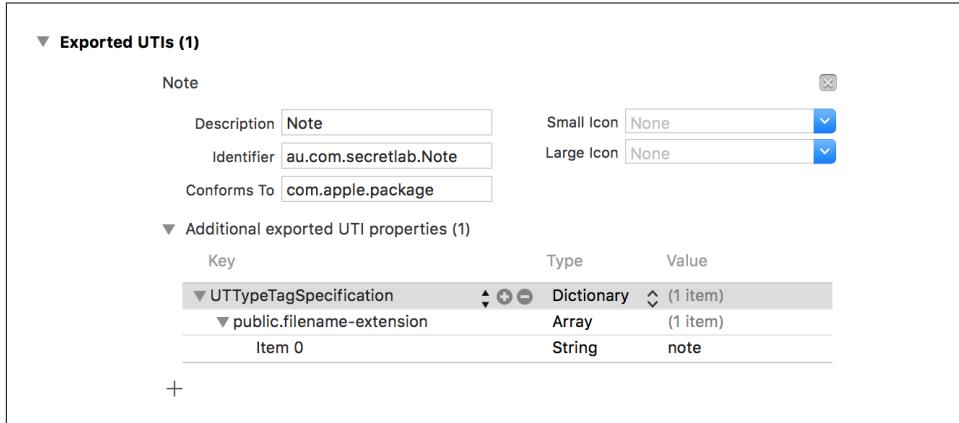


Figure 7-14. The finished document and exported UTI

Conclusion

In this chapter, we've laid the groundwork for our iOS counterpart to the OS X app. We've looked at the planned design of the app, consisting of wireframes and a planned feature set; created a new project for the iOS app to live in, adding it as a target alongside the OS X app; enabled iCloud document support; and set up the same document type we made for the OS X app in the iOS app.

In the next chapter, we'll build upon this foundation and start working on actually using the files in iCloud.

Working with Files in iCloud

In this chapter, we'll discuss working with documents in iCloud on iOS. File management in iOS is handled by the apps themselves, rather than by a system-provided app like the Finder. As a result, we need to take care of tasks like providing a list of all available files to the user, opening the files, and saving changes.

This means that, when you work with documents in iOS, you need to do quite a bit more work. While you still have built-in automatic saving, you need to manually open and close documents; additionally, because bindings don't exist on iOS, you need to manually update the contents of the document object whenever the user provides input.

We'll start by listing whatever's already in iCloud, to demonstrate that we've got access to the same container as the Mac app and also to provide what will eventually become the user interface for opening these documents; next, we'll implement the `Document` class, which is the iOS counterpart of the Mac app's `Document` class. Finally, we'll add support for creating new documents.

The App Sandbox

Apps on iOS are extremely limited in terms of the files that they're allowed to access. Any app that you install via the App Store—which means any third-party app—is *sandboxed*: the system will only permit it to read and write files in a single folder. This keeps any other app from reaching into the app's files and prevents your app from poking around the user's other files. The goal is to preserve user privacy: if apps can't get into files they shouldn't, it becomes a lot less likely for the user's data to be breached by a malicious app.

When installed, apps are placed inside a directory with a predefined structure that looks like [Figure 8-1](#).

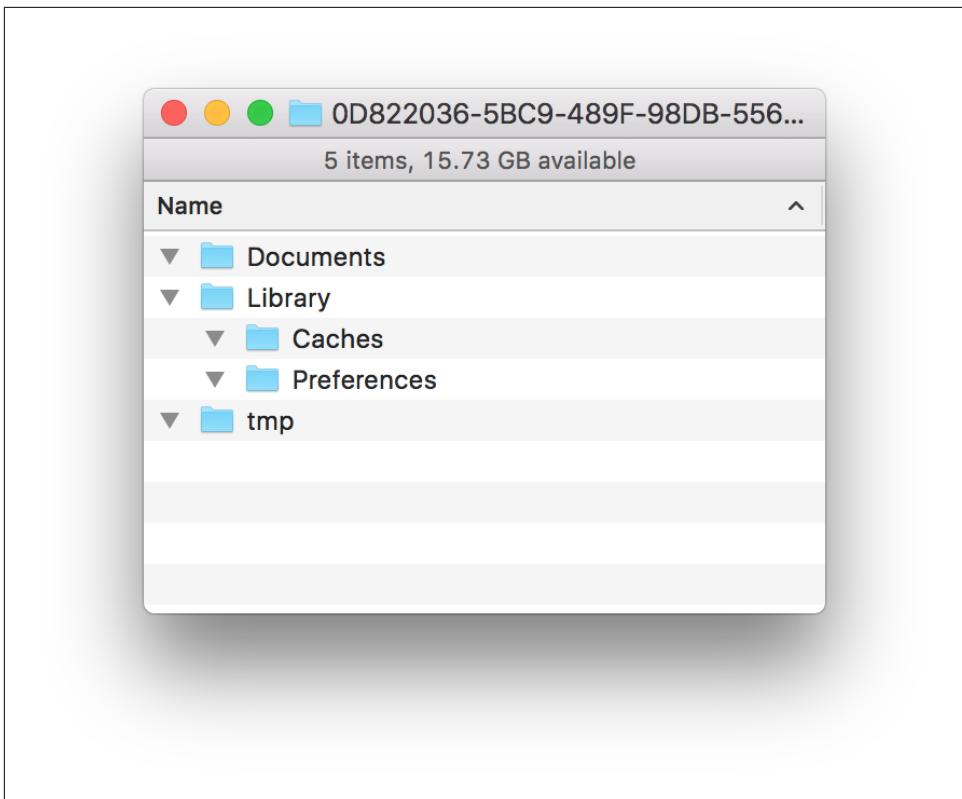


Figure 8-1. An empty application sandbox

The different folders that exist in the sandbox have special meaning to iOS:

- The *Documents* folder contains documents created by the user. Everything inside this folder is backed up to iCloud or to the user's computer if iCloud backups are disabled.
- The *Library* folder contains files that the app uses to operate. It has two subfolders:
 - The *Preferences* folder contains the user preferences, which are accessed via the `NSUserDefaults` class (more on this class later in this chapter!). These files are included in the backup.
 - The *Caches* folder stores data that the app stores locally to improve performance. This includes things like resources downloaded from the Internet or files that can otherwise be regenerated if needed. These files are not included in the backup, and the system will delete the contents of the *Caches* folder when it begins to run low on storage space.

- The `tmp` folder is a temporary storage area that gives users a place to store files that they only need for a moment. This folder is not included in the backup; additionally, the system reserves the right to delete the contents of this folder at any time.

The sandbox also includes the iCloud container, which is a folder stored on disk. However, the specific location of the iCloud container is irrelevant to you as the developer, since you don't actually use the built-in filesystem management tools to work with it. Instead, as you'll see as we implement the application, you treat the whole thing as a separate layer of abstraction.

iCloud Availability

When you're writing an application, you can never assume that your app will always have access to iCloud. For example, consider the following scenarios:

- Your app is downloaded, but the user has no iCloud account.
- The user has an iCloud account, and is using your app to store documents in iCloud, but later signs out of the account.
- The user starts with no iCloud account, but later signs into iCloud.

Apps that use iCloud aren't allowed to *rely* on access to iCloud. If you're making an app, you're required to let users decline to store their files in iCloud; if they do, their files have to be stored locally.

This means that any code that works with files needs to work with both files saved locally and files saved inside iCloud. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you never store data *both* in iCloud and locally at the same time; for one reason, users should never care about the details of where the files they're looking at are stored (they should just be "on the phone"), and for another, you don't want to have to keep track of which file is local and which is remote.

There isn't a single solution to this problem, so we'll describe how the Notes application deals with it:

- When the application first launches (and *only* on the first launch), it asks if the user wants to use iCloud or use local files only. It saves the user's choice.
- Depending on whether the user chose to use iCloud or not, the app will store all documents in either iCloud or in local storage.
- The app will expose a setting to let users change their minds (which we'll cover in "[Settings](#)" on page 405).

- If the user previously chose to store files locally, and later opts to store them on iCloud instead, all files will be moved from local storage to iCloud.

With this in mind, let's get building!

Creating the Document List View Controller

The documents in the application's iCloud container need to be shown to the user so that they can be selected and opened. To do this, we'll need to create a user interface that can present this list.

There are three main options for presenting this sort of list in apps:

- A list, using `UITableView`, that looks similar to the list seen in the iOS Settings application ([Figure 8-2](#))
- A grid, using `UICollectionView`, that looks similar to the iOS Photos application ([Figure 8-3](#))
- Something entirely custom and handcoded

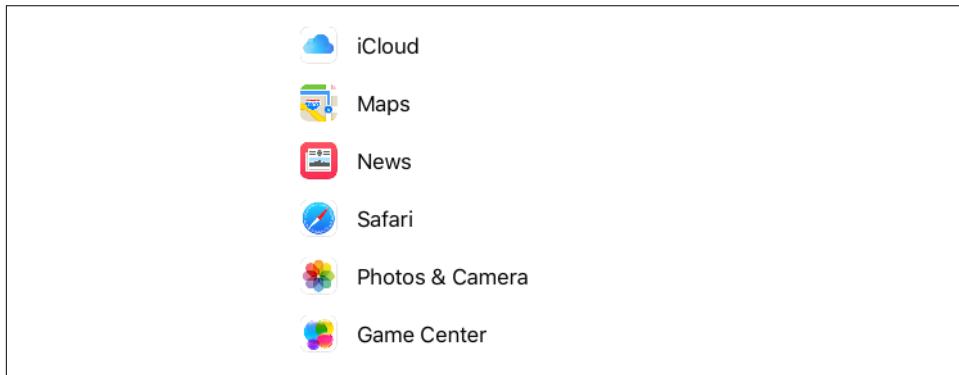


Figure 8-2. The Settings list

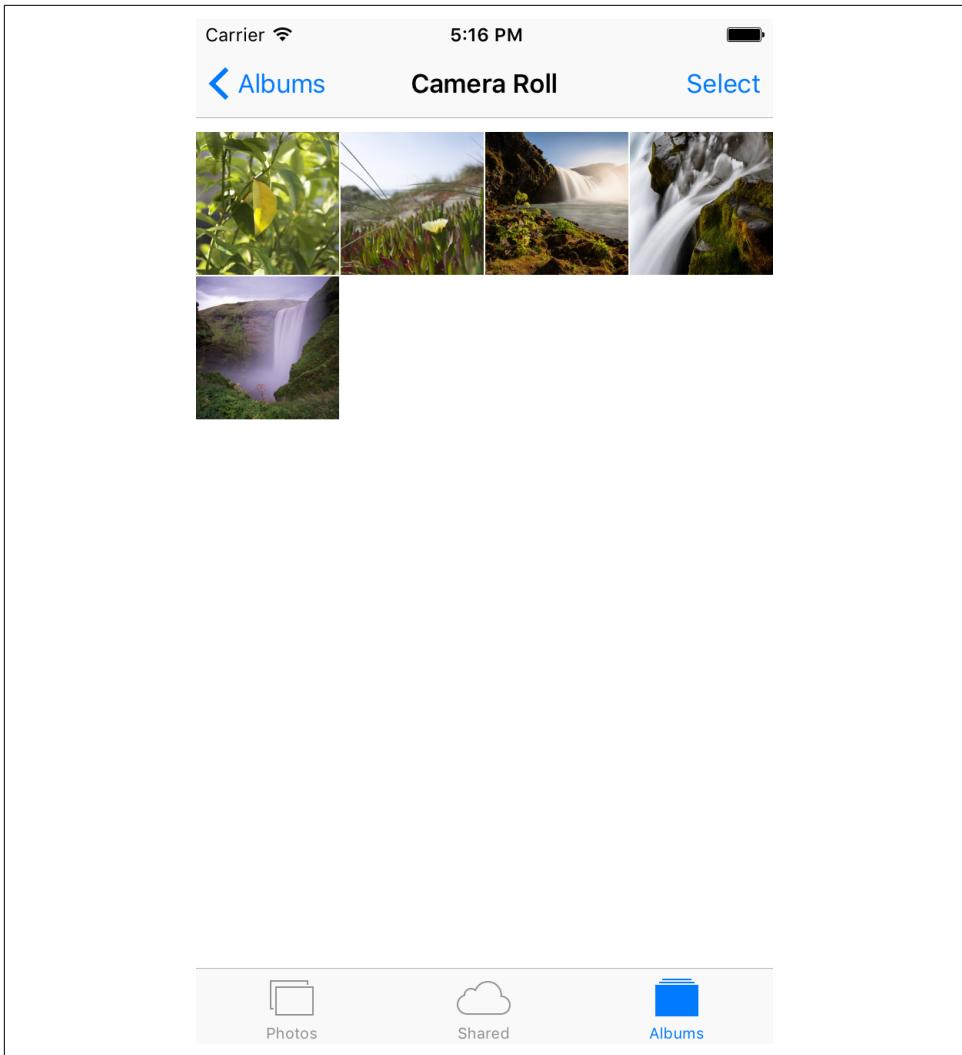


Figure 8-3. The Photos grid

In this app, we'll use a `UICollectionView`. The main reason for this choice is that table views don't look good when they're very wide, which is what will happen on the iPad, whereas collection views can look good at any size.

To get started, we'll first rename the view controller that the template starts with to something more descriptive. This is purely for our own convenience—the app will function the same way, but it's a lot clearer to refer to a “document list view controller” than to just a “view controller.”

1. Find the `ViewController.swift` file in the Project navigator.
2. Rename `ViewController.swift` to `DocumentListViewController.swift` (Figure 8-4). Do this by clicking on `ViewController.swift` and pressing Return.
3. Open this file, and rename the `ViewController` class to `DocumentListViewController`. Make `DocumentListViewController` be a subclass of `UICollectionViewController`.

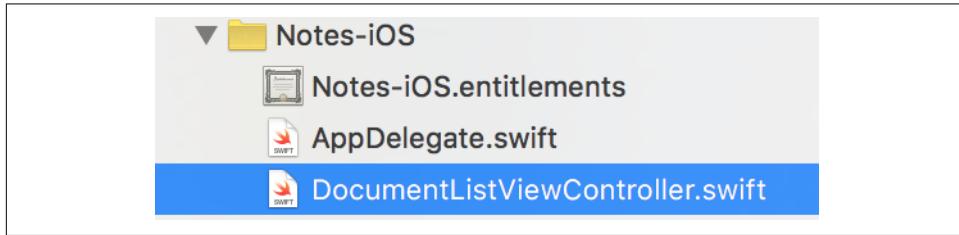


Figure 8-4. The newly renamed file

View Controllers and Storyboards

The code that runs the view controller is kept inside the `DocumentListViewController.swift` file. However, this is only half of the picture; in addition to the code, you also need to design the interface. To do this, you'll work with a storyboard.

A *storyboard* is a file that contains the interfaces for multiple view controllers, all linked together with *segues*. Storyboards allow you to work with your application's screens all in a single place, which gives you a much better idea of how the whole thing fits together. Storyboards are the preferred method of building apps for iOS, because the constraints placed upon the software by the device (such as the limited screen size) mean that what the user sees is limited to one screen at a time. Storyboards help you navigate the structure of your app.

When you created the project, a storyboard file was created for you. For most apps, you generally don't need to create a new storyboard beyond the first one.

The Navigation Controller

Now we'll start building the interface for the document list view controller.

1. Open `Main.storyboard`. You'll be looking at an empty view controller, which was created when the project was first created.
2. Select the existing view controller in the canvas and delete it. We'll replace it with our own in order to get a better picture of how these things come together.

3. Enter **navigation controller** in the Object library. The list will be reduced to just the navigation controller object, allowing you to quickly drag it out into the empty storyboard (see [Figure 8-5](#)).

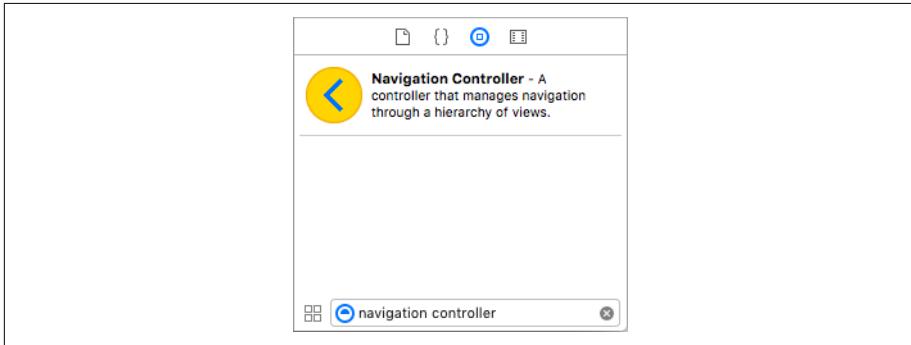


Figure 8-5. Locating the navigation controller

4. Drag out a navigation controller into the storyboard. By default, it comes with a table view controller, which we don't need; we'll be using a collection view controller, so select the table view controller and delete it ([Figure 8-6](#)).

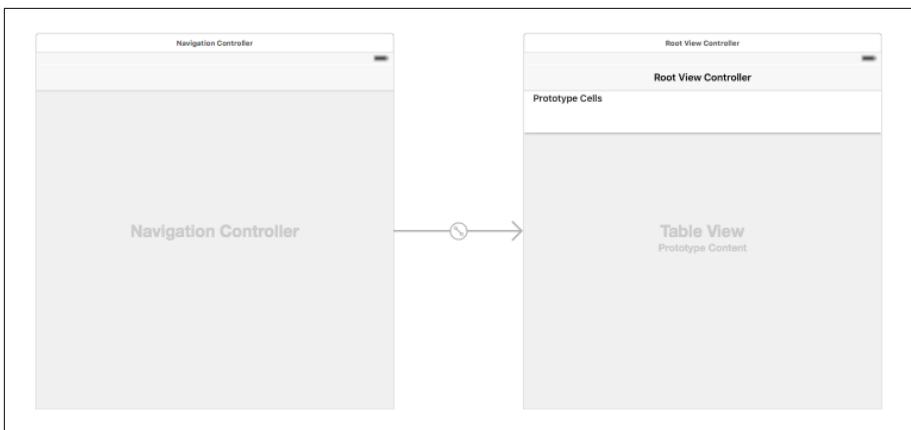


Figure 8-6. The navigation controller, with the table view controller that comes with it by default; you'll need to delete the table view controller

When the storyboard starts up, it needs to know what view controller to show first. This view controller, which Xcode calls the *initial view controller*, will be installed as the window's root view controller before the app is presented to the user.

Currently, there is no initial view controller, because we just deleted the earlier ones. This means that if you were to launch the app now, you'd simply get a black screen.

5. Select the navigation controller that you just added, and go to the Attributes Inspector. Select the Is Initial View Controller checkbox ([Figure 8-7](#)).

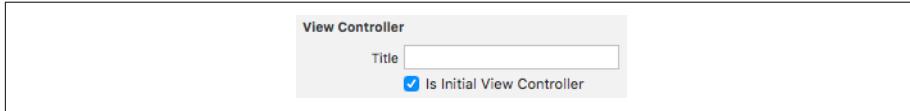


Figure 8-7. Making the navigation controller the initial view controller.

6. Go to the Object library, and search for a collection view controller. Drag it out into the storyboard ([Figure 8-8](#)).

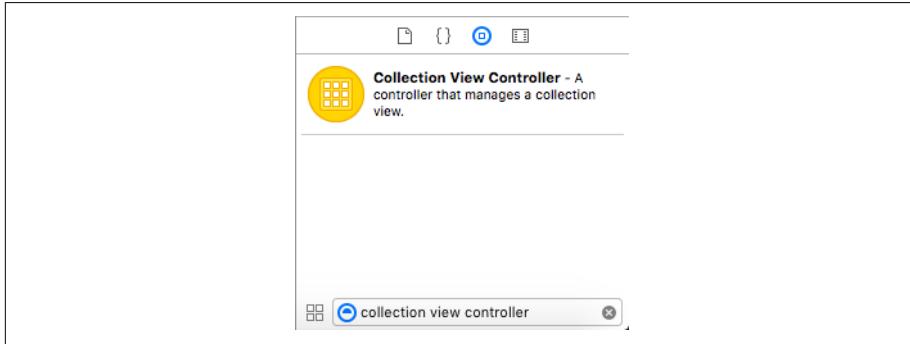


Figure 8-8. Locating the collection view controller

By default, collection view controllers have a transparent background, which isn't exactly nice to look at, so we need to change it to white so we can properly see it.

1. Select the collection view inside the collection view controller we just added.
2. If it isn't open, open the Attributes Inspector and scroll down to the View section.
3. Under the background property, press the small disclosure arrow and choose White Color. Now the collection view has a background we can more easily see ([Figure 8-9](#)).

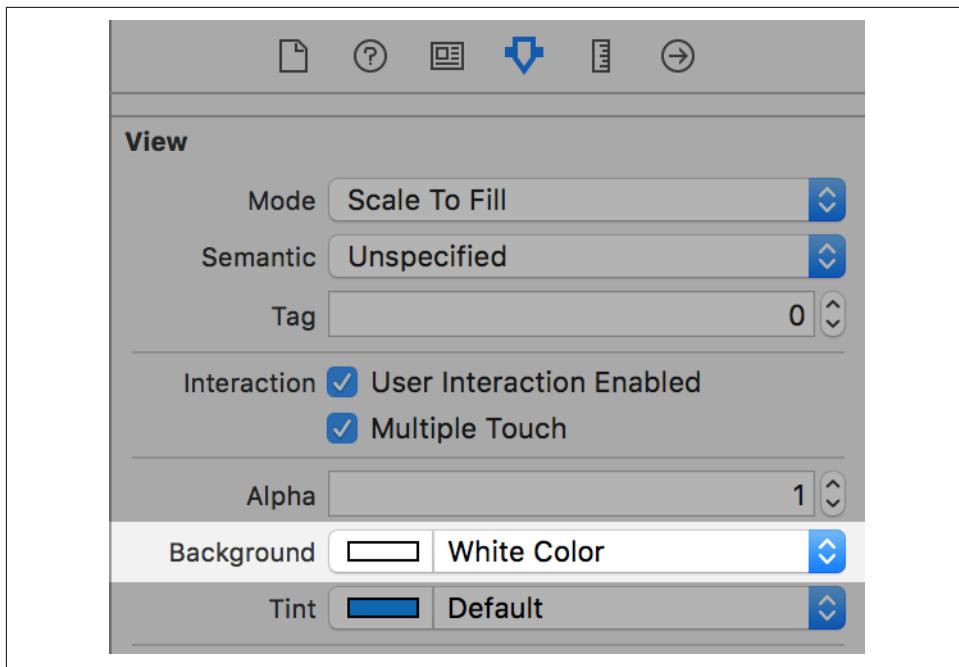


Figure 8-9. Changing the background color of the collection view

The entire purpose of a navigation controller is to present other view controllers. When it first appears, the navigation controller needs to have at least one view controller to present: the *root view controller*.

We'll now make the new collection view controller be the root view controller of the navigation controller.

1. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the navigation controller to the collection view controller. Select “root view controller” from the menu that appears.



Drag from the view controller, not the view. It's easiest to do this by zooming out first. You can also use the navigation controller and collection view controller representations in the outline if you prefer.

Now we need to link the new collection view controller up to our custom class we created.

2. Select the collection view controller and open the Identity Inspector.
3. Change the class to `DocumentListViewController`.

Collection Views

Collection views present a grid of *cells*; each cell contains views that present whatever information you want.

You don't create the individual cells in a collection view yourself; instead, you create a single *prototype* cell and prepare the views inside that. Typically, you also create a subclass of the base `UICollectionViewCell` class and set it as the custom class for the cell. Doing this allows you to create outlets in the custom class that link to the views you design in the interface builder.

In order to display its data, a collection view contacts an object, known as its *data source*, to ask questions about the information it should display. These questions include, "how many sections are there?", "how many items are there in each section?" and "what should I display for this specific item in this specific section?" This works exactly the same as the `NSCollectionView` we wrote in the OS X application, just with different method calls.



When you use a collection view controller, the link between the collection view and the data source (which the view controller itself acts as) is automatically set up. If you're doing it yourself, you make your view controller—or any other object in the scene—conform to the `UICollectionViewDataSource` protocol (see ["Protocols" on page 66](#)).

Once you've designed the cell, you give it an *identifier*. This is used in the `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)` method to prepare and return the correct type of cell for a given item in the collection view; we'll be creating this method later in the chapter.

Next, we'll set up the cell that will represent each note. To do that, we'll define the class that controls each cell, and then we'll set up the cell's interface.

1. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift`.
2. Add the `FileCollectionViewCell` class to the end of the file:

```
class FileCollectionViewCell : UICollectionViewCell {
    @IBOutlet weak var fileNameLabel : UILabel?

    @IBOutlet weak var imageView : UIImageView?

    var renameHandler : (Void -> Void)?
    @IBAction func renameTapped() {
        renameHandler?()
    }
}
```

```
}
```

This code defines the class, a subclass of `UICollectionViewCell`, that specifies how each cell showing a note will behave. Right now it doesn't do much; it just has a `UIImageView` and some stubs to handle renaming in the future. But, now that the class exists, we can use it to set up the cell.

3. Open `Main.storyboard`, and select the collection view in the document list view controller ([Figure 8-10](#)).

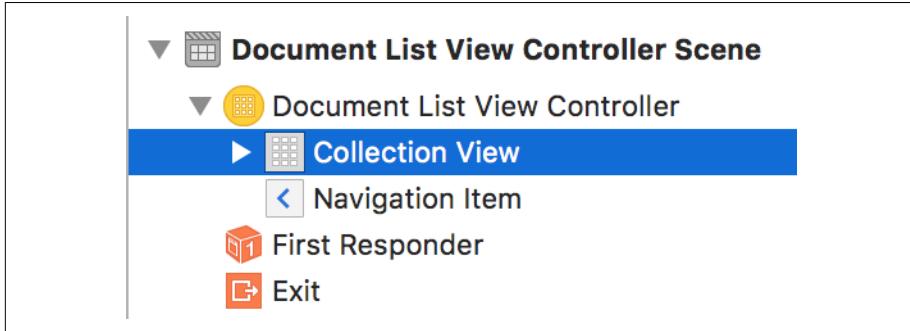


Figure 8-10. Locating the collection view in the outline

4. Open the Size Inspector, and set Cell Size to 180×180 ([Figure 8-11](#)). If you don't see any fields to change the cell size, change the cell size from Default to Custom in the drop-down box .

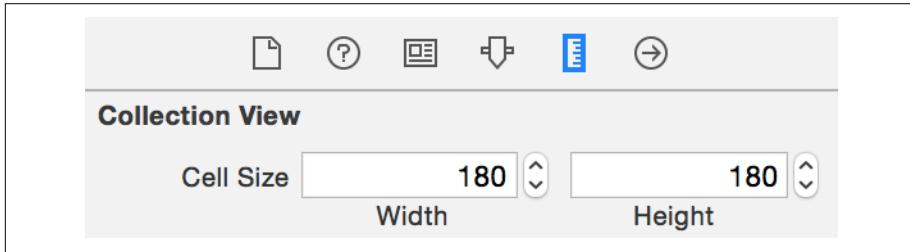


Figure 8-11. Setting the size of the cells

5. Select the cell. It looks like [Figure 8-12](#).

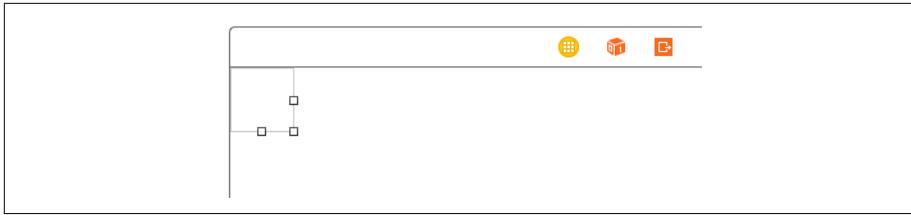


Figure 8-12. The collection view cell

6. Open the Identity Inspector, and change its class from `UICollectionViewCell` to `FileCollectionViewCell`.
7. Open the Attributes Inspector and set the cell's Identifier to `FileCell`.
8. Drag in a `UILabel` and place it at the bottom of the view.

Using Constraints to Control Size and Position

When a view is added to the screen, it needs to know its size and position. Views on iOS are never shown in isolation—they’re always displayed alongside other content, inside other views, and in cooperation with other stuff that the user cares about. This means that the position and size of any view depends upon where everything *else* on the screen is: content should never overlap other content, for example; and if you place a button in the bottom-right corner of a view, it should stay in that corner even when that view changes size.

This is where *constraints* come in. A constraint is a rule that defines some component of a view’s size and position. These constraints are rules like, “view A’s top edge is always 10 points away from view B’s bottom edge” or, “view A’s width is equal to half of the screen width.”

The constraints of a view always need to be sufficient to define the size and position of that view. If there aren’t enough constraints to fully define this, then the system will warn you, and you’ll end up with a different layout to what you expect.



If you add *no* constraints to a view, the system will automatically add the constraints that set its size and position, based upon where it was placed in the interface builder.

To add constraints, you select a view and click one of the buttons at the bottom right of the canvas ([Figure 8-13](#)).



Figure 8-13. The constraint buttons, at the bottom right of the canvas

The buttons in this collection are, from left to right:

Stack

This button allows you to quickly arrange a collection of views into a vertical or horizontal stack. We'll be working with stack views later in this book, in [Chapter 10](#).

Align

This button allows you to add constraints that align the selected view(s) to other views. For example, you can add constraints that say “the horizontal center of this view is the same as its containing view”; doing this will center the view along that line.

Pin

This button allows you to define the spacing between the selected view(s) to other views. For example, using this button, you can add constraints that say “the leading edge of this view is always 20 points away from the trailing edge of another view.”

Resolve Auto Layout Issues

This button opens a menu that contains useful tools for resolving common problems with your constraints.

To place this label in the correct location, we need to add constraints to it that centers it horizontally, keeps it at the bottom of the container, and makes it fill the width of the container while also ensuring that it has the correct height.

1. With the label selected, click the Align button, and turn on Horizontally in Center. Click Add Constraints.
2. Click the Pin button, and click the red bar icons at the left, right, and bottom. Additionally, set the Height to 20. Click Add Constraints.



By doing this, you've added the following constraints:

- Align Center X to container
- Leading Space to container margin = 0
- Trailing Space to container margin = 0
- Bottom Space to container margin = 0
- Height = 20

These constraints make the label take up the bottom section of the view.

3. Next, drag in a `UIView`. This will eventually be the preview image for the note documents.
4. Set its background color to something visible, like an orange color. (The precise color doesn't matter; this is just for your temporary use so that you can see the position and size of the view.)
5. Using the Align and Pin menus, add the following constraints:
 - Leading space to container margin = 0
 - Trailing space to container margin = 0
 - Top space to container margin = 0
 - Bottom space to the `UILabel` = 8

These constraints make the view take up the space above the label and ensure that there's a buffer between the view and the label.

6. Next, drag in a `UIImageView`, and place it inside the orange view.
7. Resize it to fill the entire view.

The cell should now look like [Figure 8-14](#).

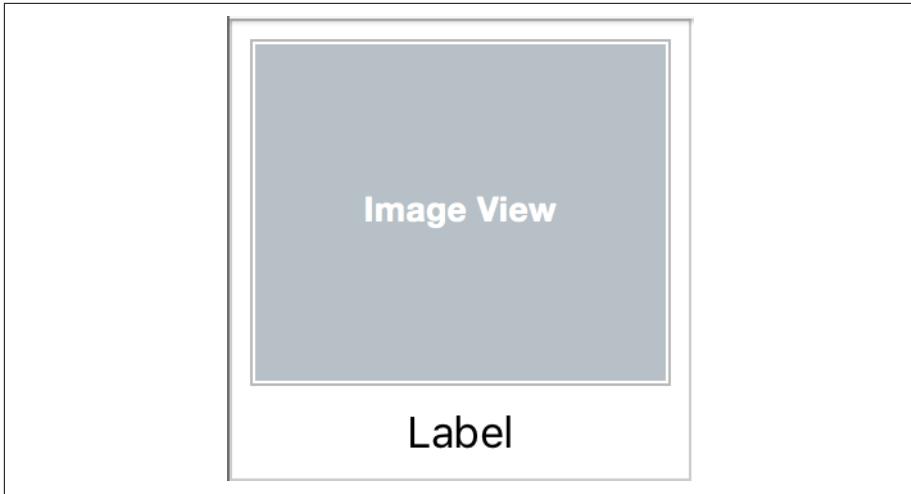


Figure 8-14. The laid-out collection view cell

8. Add the following constraints:

- Leading space to superview = 0
- Trailing space to superview = 0
- Top space to superview = 0
- Bottom space to superview = 0



For this view, ensure that Constrain to Margins is off. This is because the view should be flush with the edges; we want the constraints to be relative to the edge, not to the margins. The view would be inset if the constraints were relative to the margins.

These constraints make the image view fill its container.

You can now connect the label and image view to the `FileCollectionViewController`.

9. Open the Assistant, and ensure that it's got `DocumentListViewController.swift` open. If it doesn't, use the jump bar to navigate to Automatic→`DocumentListViewController.swift`.
10. Drag from the well—the small circle just to the left of the number 13 in [Figure 8-15](#)—at the left of the `fileNameLabel` property to the label in the cell. When you release the mouse button, the property will be connected to the label.

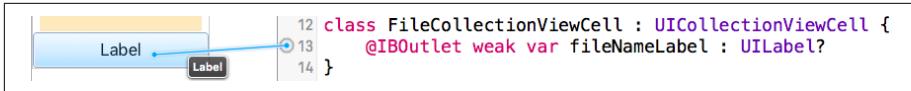


Figure 8-15. Connecting from the outlet to the label

11. Repeat the process for the image view: drag from the `imageView` property to the image view.

Each document can now display its filename, as well as its preview image.

Creating the Document Class

We need a Document class for the iOS app. It's similar to the Mac app, but we subclass `UIDocument` instead of `NSDocument`, and implement different methods.



`NSDocument`, which we used earlier for the OS X app, behaves a bit differently than `UIDocument` on iOS. They provide the same fundamental features, but approach things a little differently.

One of the main differences is that `NSDocument` has some knowledge of the interface that the user will interact with, while `UIDocument` does not. The reason for this is that, on OS X, it's easy to take an interface and use bindings to connect it to the document's code, whereas we need to create a view controller on iOS to mediate the flow of information between the document and the interface.

There are a few minor API differences, as well. In `NSDocument`, you implement either `dataOfType` or `fileWrapperOfType` in order to provide the ability to save the document; in `UIDocument`, you implement `contentsForType`, which can return either an `NSData` object or an `NSFileWrapper` object.

1. Open the File menu and choose New→File.
2. Select “Cocoa Touch class” and click Next.
3. Set the name of the class to `Document` and set the “Subclass of” to `UIDocument` (see [Figure 8-16](#)). Click Next.

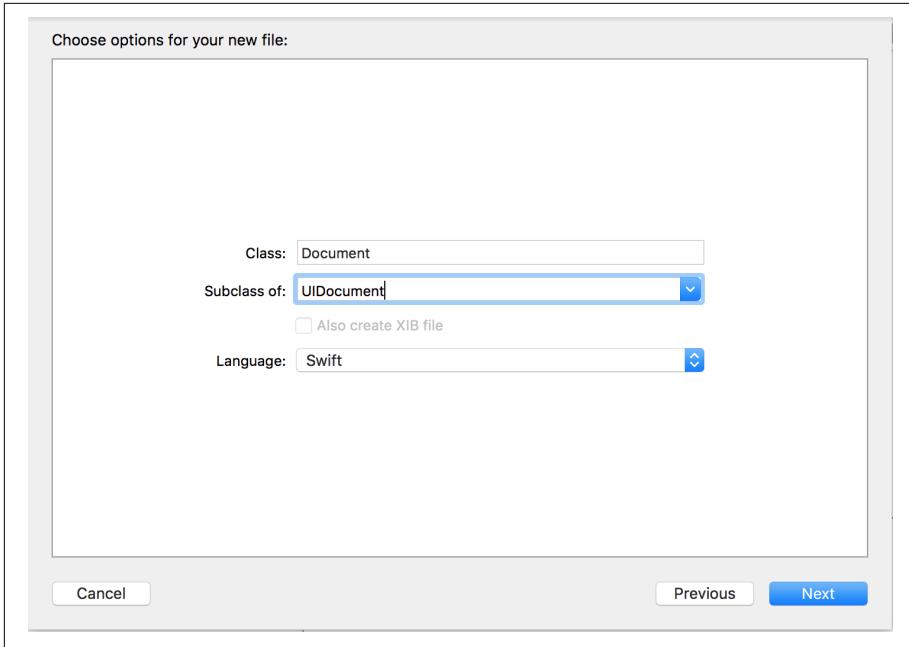


Figure 8-16. Adding the class

4. When saving the new class, make sure that it's added to the Notes-iOS target. Several important things need to be the same across the two different classes—for example, the names of the files in the file package. For this reason, we'll move the code that's common to both the Mac and iOS document classes into a separate file.
5. Right-click the project and select New Group. A new group will appear in the Project Navigator; name it **Common**.
6. Select this new group and go to the File Inspector.
7. Click on the little folder icon to set its location (see [Figure 8-17](#)). An open dialog box will appear, showing the project.

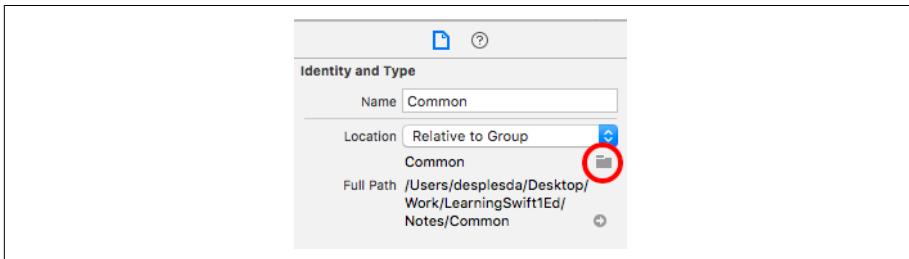


Figure 8-17. The location icon

8. In it, make a new folder called *Common* and then click Choose.

You've just made a new folder in which to put files that are common to both projects.



A group in Xcode does not necessarily have to map to a folder on the filesystem. Here, we created a group and then assigned it to a folder location that happened to have the same name. Groups don't have to represent a real folder at all, and can simply exist within the project hierarchy. The metadata that says what files live in the group is maintained by Xcode when you drag a file into them.

9. Right-click the Common group and add a new Swift file.



Don't add a new Cocoa Touch class; you're adding a new, empty file. We're not using this file to make a Swift class, we're going to use it to store some variables that are common to both the iOS and OS X project, and we don't need a class to do that.

10. Name this new document *DocumentCommon.swift*.

11. With the *DocumentCommon.swift* file selected, open the File Inspector and add it to both the Notes and Notes-iOS targets by checking the boxes for each target in the Target Membership pane (see [Figure 8-18](#)).



A target in Xcode specifies a thing (called a *product*) to build and tells Xcode how to build it and what files to use. Because we want *DocumentCommon.swift* to be part of both the OS X and the iOS products, we add it to both targets.

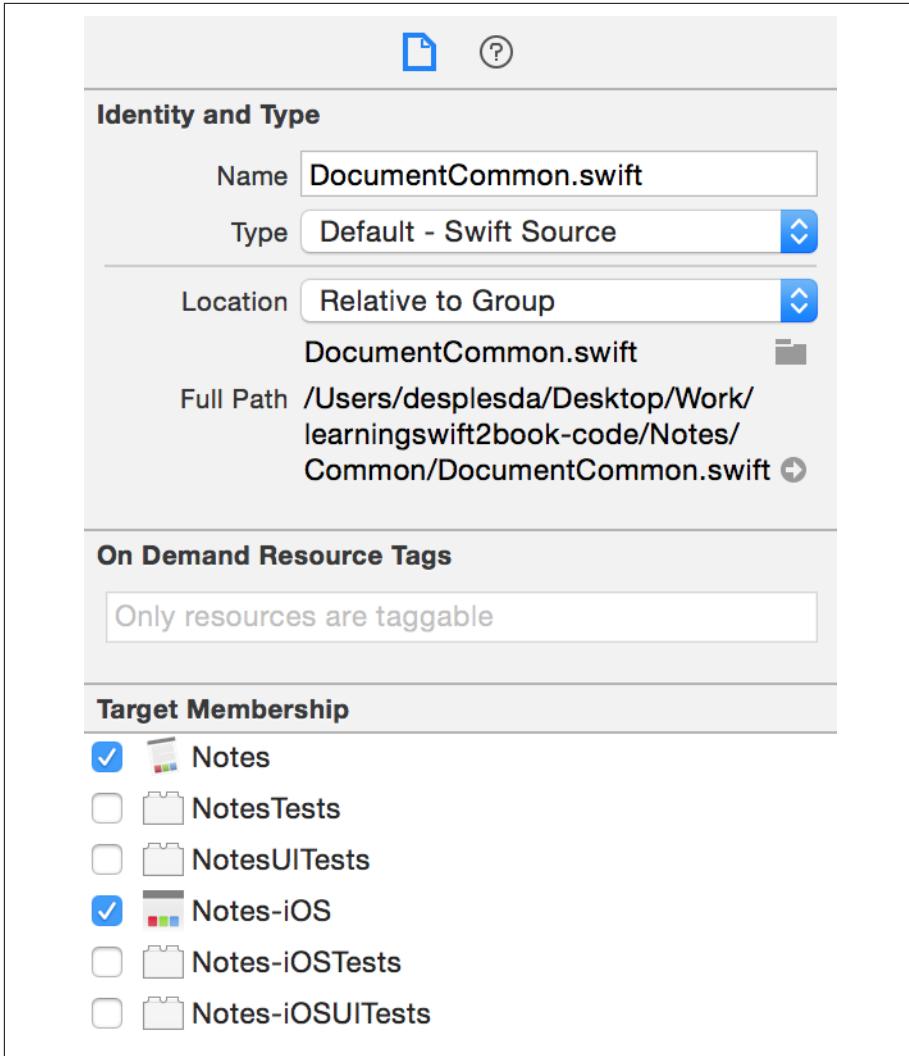


Figure 8-18. Adding the file to the targets

12. Open the *DocumentCommon.swift* file, and add the following code to it:

```
// We can be throwing a lot of errors in this class, and they'll all
// be in the same error domain and using error codes from the same
// enum, so here's a little convenience func to save typing and space
```

```
let ErrorDomain = "NotesErrorDomain"

func err(code: ErrorCode, _ userInfo:[NSObject:AnyObject]? = nil)
-> NSError {
    // Generate an NSError object, using ErrorDomain and using whatever
```

```

    // value we were passed.
    return NSError(domain: ErrorDomain, code: code.rawValue,
    userInfo: userInfo)
}

// Names of files/directories in the package
enum NoteDocumentFileNames : String {
    case TextFile = "Text.rtf"

    case AttachmentsDirectory = "Attachments"

    case QuickLookDirectory = "QuickLook"

    case QuickLookTextFile = "Preview.rtf"

    case QuickLookThumbnail = "Thumbnail.png"
}

let NotesUseiCloudKey = "use_icloud"
let NotesHasPromptedForiCloudKey = "has_prompted_for_icloud"

/// Things that can go wrong:
enum ErrorCode : Int {

    /// We couldn't find the document at all.
    case CannotAccessDocument

    /// We couldn't access any file wrappers inside this document.
    case CannotLoadFileWrappers

    /// We couldn't load the Text.rtf file.
    case CannotLoadText

    /// We couldn't access the Attachments folder.
    case CannotAccessAttachments

    /// We couldn't save the Text.rtf file.
    case CannotSaveText

    /// We couldn't save an attachment.
    case CannotSaveAttachment
}

```

All this code contains is a convenience function for errors, an enumeration containing all the possible files inside the package of our Note document type and the error codes we created earlier. Check back to “[Package File Formats](#)” on page 108, when we were setting up the OS X app, for a reminder.

Because we are building this application in stages, we have just rewritten a whole bunch of code that already existed inside *Document.swift*. Because of this, we need to delete the duplicated code.

1. Open *Document.swift* and delete the `ErrorDomain` constant, `err` method, and `NotesDocumentFileNames` and `ErrorCode` enums.



If you don't delete the duplicate code, you will get build errors.

If you've done everything correctly, the Mac app should still build with no errors. Double-check that now by changing the scheme to the Notes app and pressing ⌘B. If it doesn't, double-check that the *DocumentCommon.swift* file's Target Membership settings include the Mac app.

You're now ready to set up the iOS document class.

1. Open the iOS app's *Document.swift* file.
2. Add the following code to the Document class:

```
var text = NSAttributedString(string: "") {
    didSet {
        self.updateChangeCount(.Done)
    }
}

var documentFileWrapper = NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [:])

override func contentsForType(typeName: String) throws -> AnyObject {

    let textRTFData = try self.text.dataFromRange(
        NSRange(0..
```

```

}

override func loadFromContents(contents: AnyObject,
    ofType typeName: String?) throws {

    // Ensure that we've been given a file wrapper
    guard let fileWrapper = contents as? NSFileWrapper else {
        throw err(.CannotLoadFileWrappers)
    }

    // Ensure that this file wrapper contains the text file,
    // and that we can read it
    guard let textFileWrapper = fileWrapper
        .fileWrappers?[NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue],
        let textFileData = textFileWrapper.regularFileContents else {
            throw err(.CannotLoadText)
    }

    // Read in the RTF
    self.text = try NSAttributedString(data: textFileData,
        options: [NSDocumentTypeDocumentAttribute: NSRTFTextDocumentType],
        documentAttributes: nil)

    // Keep a reference to the file wrapper
    self.documentElementWrapper = fileWrapper
}

}

```

This block of code:

- adds the `NSAttributedString` property `text`, which defaults to the empty attributed string.
- adds the `NSFileWrapper` property `documentFileWrapper`, which defaults to an empty directory file wrapper.
- implements `loadFromContents` to load the text.
- implements `contentsForType` to store the text. Importantly, in the `contentsForType` method, the app first checks to see if there's already an existing text file. If one exists, it's removed so that the new text file can replace it.

With this done, we've now implemented the text-related features of the Document system.

Listing Documents

We can now start listing documents in our `UICollectionView`. In order to show the user a list of available files, we need to have a way of finding out what files exist. As

we discussed in “[iCloud Availability](#)” on page 195, there are two possible places where files can be found: in the iCloud container or locally on the device.



Strictly speaking, files stored in iCloud are also stored locally on the device, but it’s useful to think of them as existing outside the device. Doing this helps you to remember that the files may not yet have been downloaded and are therefore not ready to use.

To find files in iCloud, we use a class called `NSMetadataQuery` to compose a search query to return all files with a `.note` extension inside the iCloud container. Finding files stored locally simply involves asking the operating system to give us a list of files.

Regardless of how we find the list of files that are available, we need to keep track of this list so that it can be used to populate the list of documents that the user can see. To handle this, we’ll create an array of `NSURL` objects.

1. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift`.
2. Add the `availableFiles` property:

```
var availableFiles : [NSURL] = []
```

This variable will store the `NSURL` for every file in the container that the app currently knows about. We’ll now add code that will watch for changes to the list, so that if a new file is added—such as by another device—then the app will find out about it.

3. Add the `iCloudAvailable` property to the `DocumentListViewController` class:

```
class var iCloudAvailable : Bool {  
  
    if NSUserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()  
        .boolForKey(NotesUseiCloudKey) == false {  
  
        return false  
    }  
  
    return NSFileManager.defaultManager().ubiquityIdentityToken != nil  
}
```



This is a *class property*: one that’s part of the class, and not attached to any specific instance of that class. You access this property by saying `DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable`; you don’t need to have an instance of the class to access it.

This computed property returns `true` if the user is signed in to iCloud and has indicated that he or she wants to use iCloud; otherwise, it returns `false`. If you need a reminder on computed properties in Swift, flip back to “[Properties](#)” on [page 62](#).

4. Add the `metadataQuery`, `queryDidFinishGatheringObserver`, and `queryDidUpdateObserver` properties:

```
var queryDidFinishGatheringObserver : AnyObject?
var queryDidUpdateObserver: AnyObject?

var metadataQuery : NSMetadataQuery = {
    let metadataQuery = NSMetadataQuery()

    metadataQuery.searchScopes =
        [NSMetadataQueryUbiquitousDocumentsScope]

    metadataQuery.predicate = NSPredicate(format: "%K LIKE '*.%note'",
                                          NSMetadataItemFSNameKey)
    metadataQuery.sortDescriptors = [
        NSSortDescriptor(key: NSMetadataItemFSContentChangeDateKey,
                         ascending: false)
    ]

    return metadataQuery
}()


```

This composes a `NSMetadataQuery` query to look for files with our Notes file extension by making its `predicate` search for filenames ending in `.note`. You can customize and refine this search query by providing a different query; you can find more information on how to compose these queries in the [Predicate Programming Guide](#).



Note the parentheses at the end of the preceding code snippet and the equals sign before the opening brace near the top. This format means that, when the `DocumentListViewController` is created, the `metadataQuery` object will be created and prepared before any other code executes. This means that the rest of the code doesn’t need to check to see if `metadataQuery` is ready to use or not—we’re guaranteeing that it always will be ready.

5. Add the following code, which implements the `localDocumentsDirectoryURL` property. That property gives us the folder in which to store our local documents and implements the `ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL` property, which in turn

gives us the location of where to put documents in order for them to be stored in iCloud:

```
class var localDocumentsDirectoryURL : NSURL {
    return NSFileManager.defaultManager().URLsForDirectory(
        .DocumentDirectory,
        inDomains: .UserDomainMask).first!
}

class var ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL : NSURL? {
    return NSFileManager.defaultManager()
    .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)?
    .URLByAppendingPathComponent("Documents")
}
```

The `URLsForDirectory` method allows you to request a *type* of directory that you'd like—for example, `.DocumentDirectory` lets you request a place to store user documents. The method returns an array of `NSURL`s that you can use; on iOS, this will always point to the app sandbox's *Documents* folder. Because we specifically want the `NSURL`, and not an array of `NSURL`s, we return the `first` entry in the array; because this is optional, we must first unwrap it with `!`. It's worth pointing out that this will crash the program if, for some reason, `URLsForDirectory` returns an empty array; however, this won't happen, because all iOS apps are given a *Documents* directory when they're installed.



These two variables are class variables in order to ensure that they don't depend on the state of any specific instance of the `DocumentListViewController` class. This isn't strictly necessary, but it helps to keep things tidier.

6. Make `viewDidLoad` set up the observers, which will be updated when the metadata query discovers new files:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()

    self.queryDidUpdateObserver = NSNotificationCenter
        .defaultCenter()
        .addObserverForName(NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification,
            object: metadataQuery,
            queue: NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()) { (notification) in
                self.queryUpdated()
}

self.queryDidFinishGatheringObserver = NSNotificationCenter
    .defaultCenter()
    .addObserverForName(NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification,
        object: metadataQuery,
```

```

        queue: NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()) { (notification) in
            self.queryUpdated()
    }

}

```

When the document list controller's view loads, we need to register with the system the fact that if either `NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification` or `NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification` is posted, we want to run some code in response. The `NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification` is sent when the metadata query finishes its initial search for content, and the `NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification` is sent when any new files are discovered after this initial search. In both of these cases, we'll call a method called `queryUpdated`, which we'll add shortly.

7. Implement the `refreshLocalFileList` method:

```

func refreshLocalFileList() {

    do {
        var localFiles = try FileManager.defaultManager()
            .contentsOfDirectoryAtURL(
                DocumentListViewController.localDocumentsDirectoryURL,
                includingPropertiesForKeys: [NSURLNameKey],
                options: [
                    .SkipsPackageDescendants,
                    .SkipsSubdirectoryDescendants
                ]
    )

    localFiles = localFiles.filter({ (url) in
        return url.pathExtension == "note"
    })

    if (DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable) {
        // Move these files into iCloud
        for file in localFiles {
            if let documentName = file.lastPathComponent,
                let ubiquitousDestinationURL =
                DocumentListViewController
                    .ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL?
                    .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName) {
                    do {
                        try FileManager.defaultManager()
                            .setUbiquitous(true,
                                itemURL: file,
                                destinationURL:
                                ubiquitousDestinationURL)
                } catch let error as NSError {

```

```

        NSLog("Failed to move file \(file) " +
              "to iCloud: \(error)")
    }
}

} else {
    // Add these files to the list of files we know about
    availableFiles.appendContentsOf(localFiles)
}

} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Failed to list local documents: \(error)")
}
}

```

This looks for files stored locally. If it finds local files, and if iCloud is available, those files will be moved into iCloud for the `NSMetadataQuery` to find; if iCloud is not available, their URLs will be added to the `availableFiles` array so that the collection view displays them.

You'll notice that we use the `NSFileManager` class to access the list of files and also to move documents into iCloud. The `NSFileManager` class is your gateway to the filesystem. Just about anything you can do with files or folders can be done with `NSFileManager`, including creating, moving, copying, renaming, and deleting files.

Next, we need to make the `viewDidLoad` method ask users if they want to use iCloud; if they've been asked already, then it should either start searching iCloud or list the collection of local files.

- Add the following code to the end of the `viewDidLoad` method:

```

override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()

    self.queryDidUpdateObserver = NSNotificationCenter
        .defaultCenter()
        .addObserverForName(NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification,
                           object: metadataQuery,
                           queue: NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()) { [notification] in
            self.queryUpdated()
    }

    self.queryDidFinishGatheringObserver = NSNotificationCenter
        .defaultCenter()
        .addObserverForName(NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification,
                           object: metadataQuery,
                           queue: NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()) { [notification] in
            self.queryUpdated()
    }
}

```

```

    }

> let hasPromptedForiCloud = UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
>     .bool(forKey: NotesHasPromptedForiCloudKey)

>
> if hasPromptedForiCloud == false {
>     let alert = UIAlertController(title: "Use iCloud?", 
>         message: "Do you want to store your documents in iCloud, " + 
>             "or store them locally?", 
>         preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

>
>     alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "iCloud", 
>         style: .Default, 
>         handler: { (action) in

>
>             UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
>                 .setBool(true, forKey: NotesUseiCloudKey)

>
>             self.metadataQuery.startQuery()
>         }))

>
>     alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Local Only", style: .Default, 
>         handler: { (action) in

>
>             UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
>                 .setBool(false, forKey: NotesUseiCloudKey)

>
>             self.refreshLocalFileList()
>         }))

>
>     self.presentViewController(alert, animated: true, completion: nil)

>
>     UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
>         .setBool(true, forKey: NotesHasPromptedForiCloudKey)

>
> } else {
>     metadataQuery.startQuery()
>     refreshLocalFileList()
> }

}

```

This code displays an alert that, on the first launch of the application, asks users if they'd like to use iCloud. It first checks to see if the user has already seen the iCloud prompt. If not, then an alert is constructed from a `UIAlertController` object. There are two possible actions that the user can take: choose to use iCloud, or choose to save documents locally only. If the user chooses to save it in iCloud, then the iCloud-searching metadata query is started; if the user chooses to save locally, then the `refreshLocalFileList` method that you just wrote is

called. In either case, the user's preference is recorded in the user preferences system. The alert is then presented, and the method records the fact that the user has seen this prompt.

If the user *has* previously seen the prompt, then the query is started *and* the file list is refreshed. This is done on purpose:

- If the user is not using iCloud, then the metadata query will find no files. This is fine, because checking for local files will happen immediately afterward.
 - If the user *is* using iCloud, then the metadata query will begin searching for files; at the same time, by searching for local files, it will move any files that were stored locally into iCloud. This is useful for when the user previously elected to not use iCloud, but then changed his or her minds because we don't want any files to be stranded in local storage, we want to ensure that we sweep up any local files and store them in iCloud.
9. Implement the `queryUpdated` method, which is called if the `NSMetadataQuery` finds any files in iCloud. This method updates the list of known files in iCloud:

```
func queryUpdated() {
    self.collectionView?.reloadData()

    // Ensure that the metadata query's results can be accessed
    guard let items = self.metadataQuery.results as? [NSMetadataItem]
    else {
        return
    }

    // Ensure that iCloud is available—if it's unavailable,
    // we shouldn't bother looking for files.
    guard DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable else {
        return;
    }

    // Clear the list of files we know about.
    availableFiles = []

    // Discover any local files that don't need to be downloaded.
    refreshLocalFileList()

    for item in items {

        // Ensure that we can get the file URL for this item
        guard let url =
            item.valueForAttribute(NSMetadataItemURLKey) as? NSURL else {
            // We need to have the URL to access it, so move on
            // to the next file by breaking out of this loop
            continue
    }
}
```

```

    }

    // Add it to the list of available files
    availableFiles.append(url)

}

}

```

We'll now add the two critical methods that provide data to the `UICollectionView` View:

- `collectionView(_:, numberOfItemsInSection:)`, which is given a section number (starting at zero) and returns the number of items in that section.
- `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)`, which is given an `NSIndexPath` object, which contains a section number and an item number. It's expected to return a `UICollectionViewCell` that's been prepared with the data that should appear for this point in the grid.

There's also a third important method: `numberOfSectionsInCollectionView`, which returns the number of sections in the table view. However, if you don't implement it, the collection view assumes that there is one section. We only have one section in this collection view, so we'll save some typing and not include it:

1. Implement the `numberOfItemsInSection` and `cellForItemAtIndexPath` methods:

```

override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    numberOfRowsInSection section: Int) -> Int {

    // There are as many cells as there are items in iCloud
    return self.availableFiles.count
}

override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath)
-> UICollectionViewCell {

    // Get our cell
    let cell = collectionView
        .dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier("FileCell",
            forIndexPath: indexPath) as! FileCollectionViewCell

    // Get this object from the list of known files
    let url = availableFiles[indexPath.row]

    // Get the display name

```

```

var fileName : AnyObject?
do {
    try url.getResourceValue(&fileName, forKey: NSURLNameKey)

    if let fileName = fileName as? String {
        cell.fileNameLabel!.text = fileName
    }
} catch {
    cell.fileNameLabel!.text = "Loading..."
}

return cell
}

```

The `numberOfItemsInSections` is responsible for letting the collection view know how many items need to be displayed. There are always as many items in the collection view as there are `NSURL` objects in the list, so we just ask the `availableFiles` variable for its count.

The `cellForItemAtIndexPath` method is more complex. It's responsible for providing to the collection view each of its cells and making sure that each cell has the correct content.

You might notice that we don't actually create our own cells—that is, we never call the initializer for `FileCollectionViewCell`. Instead, we call the `dequeueReusableCellReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier` method on the collection view.

We do this for performance reasons. If you had a large number of items to display in the collection view, it's extremely inefficient to create all of the possible cells, and creating a cell on demand is bad as well, because memory allocation can be CPU-intensive.

Instead, the collection view system maintains a *reuse queue* system. When a cell is scrolled off-screen, it's not removed from memory; instead, it's simply taken off the screen and placed in the queue. When a new cell needs to appear, you call `dequeueReusableCellReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier` to retrieve a cell from the queue. If the queue is empty, a new cell is allocated and created.



This approach to reusing a small number of UI elements is quite common in Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, where only a small number of elements ever exist and are simply reconfigured and reused as needed.

This, by the way, is why you gave the cell an identifier in the interface builder. The *reuse identifier* you pass in to the call to `dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier` is what the collection view uses to determine which queue of `UICollectionViewCells` to get a cell from.

2. Run the app! If there are documents in the container from before (when you were making the OS X app), they will appear—it might take a moment.

Creating Documents

Currently, the app can show documents that have been added to the iCloud container, but it can't create its own. Let's make that happen!



At this point, the icons shown in the document list will still be a flat color. Additionally, the code that actually makes the documents download from iCloud hasn't yet been added yet, so you'll just see the word "Loading..." under each of the icons. Don't panic—we'll be adding both of these in time.

In iOS, documents must be manually created by your code. You do this by creating a new instance of your `UIDocument` class, and then telling it to save; this will create the document on the disk.



This is the same method that is used to update an existing document on disk.

Now we can start creating new documents.

The way that saving works is this: we first create the document and save it to the local *Documents* directory. Once it's written, we can then move it into iCloud, where it will be synced to all devices.

Inside `DocumentListViewController.swift` implement the `createDocument` function, which creates and saves the document:

```
func createDocument() {  
  
    // Create a unique name for this new document by adding a random number  
    let documentName = "Document \(arc4random()).note"  
  
    // Work out where we're going to store it temporarily  
    let documentDestinationURL = DocumentListViewController  
        .localDocumentsDirectoryURL
```

```

.URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName)

// Create the document and try to save it locally
let newDocument = Document(fileURL:documentDestinationURL)
newDocument.saveToURL(documentDestinationURL,
    forSaveOperation: .ForCreating) { (success) -> Void in

    if (DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable) {

        // If we have the ability to use iCloud...
        // If we successfully created it, attempt to move it to iCloud
        if success == true, let ubiquitousDestinationURL =
            DocumentListViewController.ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL?
                .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName) {

                // Perform the move to iCloud in the background
                NSOperationQueue().addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in
                    do {
                        try FileManager.defaultManager()
                            .setUbiquitous(true,
                                itemAtURL: documentDestinationURL,
                                destinationURL: ubiquitousDestinationURL)

                        NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()
                            .addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in

                                self.availableFiles
                                    .append(ubiquitousDestinationURL)

                                self.collectionView?.reloadData()
                            }
                    } catch let error as NSError {
                        NSLog("Error storing document in iCloud! " +
                            "\((error.localizedDescription)")
                    }
                }
            }
        } else {
            // We can't save it to iCloud, so it stays in local storage.

            self.availableFiles.append(documentDestinationURL)
            self.collectionView?.reloadData()

        }
    }
}

```

This code first creates the file locally, and then does different things depending on whether the user has access to iCloud or not:

- If the user has access to iCloud, it works out where it should exist in iCloud, and then moves it to that location. It does this in a background queue, because it can take a moment to finish moving to the iCloud container.
- If the user has no access to iCloud, it manually adds the document to the list of files and reloads the list. It does this because, unlike when iCloud is available, there's no object watching the directory and keeping the file list up to date. Once that's done, the document is opened.

Now that we have the ability to create documents, we need a way to let the user initiate the process. We'll do this by adding a little button to the top of the screen, by adding a `UIBarButtonItem` to the view controller's `UINavigationItem`.

Every view controller that exists inside a `UINavigationController` has a `UINavigationItem`. This is an object that contains the content for the navigation bar for that view controller: its title and any buttons that should go in the bar. When the view controller is on screen, the navigation controller will use our `DocumentListViewController`'s navigation item to populate the navigation bar (see [Figure 8-19](#)).



Figure 8-19. The Add button, which will be added to the top of the screen



There's only ever one navigation bar in the entire navigation controller. When you switch from one view controller to another, the navigation controller notices this fact and updates the contents of the bar, animating it into place.

To create the button, we'll use a `UIBarButtonItem`. This is a button designed to go inside either a navigation bar or a toolbar. You can create one in the storyboard, but it's useful to know how to create one programmatically as well.

We'll use a `UIBarButtonItem` to show our Add button, which will look like a little + icon. When the button is tapped, the `createDocument` method that you just added will be run.

1. Add the following code to the `viewDidLoad` method:

```
let addButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Add,  
    target: self, action: "createDocument")  
self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = addButton
```

Notice the `target` and `action` parameters that are passed to the `UIBarButtonItem`'s initializer. When the user taps on the button, iOS will call the `action` method on the `target` object. This means that tapping on the Add button will call the `createDocument` method that you added earlier.

2. Run the app, click the + button, and add new files!

Downloading from iCloud

We've already got the app listing files, whether the user has chosen to get them locally or use iCloud. If the files are all stored locally, then we have no problem: the files are in place, and we can open them. However, if they're stored in iCloud, we hit a snag: the files that are in iCloud and are being reported by the `NSMetadataQuery` are not yet downloaded to the local device, which means we can't use them.

On OS X, this isn't a problem, because the system will automatically download every single file that's in the iCloud container. iOS doesn't do this, because there's significantly less storage space available on the smaller device, and the user may be on a cellular network.

If we want to be able to open the user's files, we need to download them. Additionally, we need to be able to tell whether a file is downloaded or not. Finally, we need to be able to convey to users that a file is not yet ready to be opened so that they don't get confused when they try to open a file that the system hasn't downloaded yet.



In this application, we're automatically downloading all files that we know about. This isn't the best approach for all apps, especially if the files can be quite large; in those situations, you should wait for the user to explicitly request for a file to be downloaded.

First, we need to show files that aren't yet downloaded.

1. Still inside `DocumentListViewController.swift`, implement `itemIsOpenable`, which tells us if we have downloaded the latest version of the file:

```
// Returns true if the document can be opened right now  
func itemIsOpenable(url: NSURL?) -> Bool {  
  
    // Return false if item is nil  
    guard let itemURL = url else {
```

```

        return false
    }

    // Return true if we don't have access to iCloud (which means
    // that it's not possible for it to be in conflict - we'll always have
    // the latest copy)
    if DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable == false {
        return true
    }

    // Ask the system for the download status
    var downloadStatus : AnyObject?
    do {
        try itemURL.getResourceValue(&downloadStatus,
            forKey: NSURLUbiquitousItemDownloadingStatusKey)
    } catch let error as NSError {
        NSLog("Failed to get downloading status for \(itemURL): \(error)")
        // If we can't get that, we can't open it
        return false
    }

    // Return true if this file is the most current version
    if downloadStatus as? String
        == NSURLUbiquitousItemDownloadingStatusCurrent {

        return true
    } else {
        return false
    }
}

```

The `itemIsOpenable` method returns `true` when the file is fit to be opened, and `false` otherwise. If the app doesn’t have any access to iCloud, then the file must be openable; however, if the app *does* have access to iCloud, we have to do some additional checks.

First, we ask the `NSURL` to let us know what the *downloading status* is for the file. We do this by using the `getResourceValue` method, which works by receiving a reference to a variable, along with the name of the resource value we want; when the method returns, the variable that we pass in contains the value. Note the ampersand (`&`) in front of the `downloadStatus` variable—that’s what tells Swift that the variable that we’re passing in will have its value changed.

A file can be in one of several download states:

- `NSURLUbiquitousItemDownloadingStatusNotDownloaded` means we don’t have it;

- NSURLUbiquitousItemDownloadingStatusDownloaded means it's downloaded, but it's out of date;
- NSURLUbiquitousItemDownloadingStatusCurrent means it's downloaded and up to date.

We can only open files that are downloaded and up to date; otherwise, we have to tell the user that it's not openable.

2. Add checks in `cellForItemAtIndexPath` to make unavailable documents transparent:

```
override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath)
-> UICollectionViewCell {

    // Get our cell
    let cell = collectionView
        .dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier("FileCell",
            forIndexPath: indexPath) as! FileCollectionViewCell

    // Get this object from the list of known files
    let url = availableFiles[indexPath.row]

    // Get the display name
    var fileName : AnyObject?
    do {
        try url.getResourceValue(&fileName, forKey: NSURNameKey)

        if let fileName = fileName as? String {
            cell.fileNameLabel!.text = fileName
        }
    } catch {
        cell.fileNameLabel!.text = "Loading..."
    }

    > // If this cell is openable, make it fully visible, and
    > // make the cell able to be touched
    > if itemIsOpenable(url) {
    >     cell.alpha = 1.0
    >     cell.userInteractionEnabled = true
    > } else {
    >     // But if it's not, make it semitransparent, and
    >     // make the cell not respond to input
    >     cell.alpha = 0.5
    >     cell.userInteractionEnabled = false
    > }

    return cell
}
```

```
}
```

In order to let the user know whether a document can be opened or not, we'll set the `alpha` property of the cell to 0.5 if the cell is not openable. The `alpha` property controls how transparent the view is: 1.0 means it's fully opaque, and 0.0 means it's entirely see-through.

3. Next, update `queryUpdated` to begin downloading any files that aren't already downloaded:

```
func queryUpdated() {
    self.collectionView?.reloadData()

    // Ensure that the metadata query's results can be accessed
    guard let items = self.metadataQuery.results as? [NSMetadataItem]
    else {
        return
    }

    // Ensure that iCloud is available - if it's unavailable,
    // we shouldn't bother looking for files.
    guard DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable else {
        return;
    }

    // Clear the list of files we know about.
    availableFiles = []

    // Discover any local files that don't need to be downloaded.
    refreshLocalFileList()

    for item in items {

        // Ensure that we can get the file URL for this item
        guard let url =
            item.valueForAttribute(NSMetadataItemURLKey) as? NSURL else {
            // We need to have the URL to access it, so move on
            // to the next file by breaking out of this loop
            continue
        }

        // Add it to the list of available files
        availableFiles.append(url)

        >      // Check to see if we already have the latest version downloaded
        >      if itemIsOpenable(url) == true {
        >          // We only need to download if it isn't already openable
        >          continue
        >      }
    }
}
```

```

>
>     // Ask the system to try to download it
>     do {
>         try NSFileManager.defaultManager()
>             .startDownloadingUbiquitousItemAtURL(url)
>
>     } catch let error as NSError {
>         // Problem! :(
>         print("Error downloading item! \(error)")
>
>     }
>
}

```

When this code has been added, when you launch the iOS app, documents that have already been added to the iCloud container from other locations—such as from the OS X app—will start downloading. You’ll see the “Loading...” text under the icons start gradually disappearing and being replaced with the actual filenames.

As you can see, there’s not a huge amount of work that needs to be done in order for the app to ensure that files are available. All we have to do is first check to see if it’s not already available; if it’s not, then we ask the `NSFileManager` to start downloading the file. The `NSMetadataQuery` will update us later when the file finishes downloading.

- Run the app. Any files that are not yet downloaded to the device will start downloading; until they’re downloaded, they’ll be semi-transparent in the documents list.

Deleting Documents

Now we’ll add some of the groundwork support for editing. We need to do two things to hook this up: first, we’ll add an icon into the project that can be used for the Delete button, and then we’ll add a button that will use that icon.

- Open the `Assets.xcassets` asset catalog.
- Drag the Delete icon, available in the *Design* folder in the downloaded resources (see “[Resources Used in This Book](#)” on page ix), into the list of assets. Unlike in the past where we’ve been dragging images into predetermined slots, we can just drag the image into anywhere in the asset pane.
- Open `Main.storyboard` and select the `FileCollectionViewController`.
- Search for `UIButton` in the Object library and drag a new button into the cell.

5. Go to the Attributes Inspector, and change the button's Type from System to Custom.
6. Delete the button's title and set its image to Delete.
7. Position it at the top-right corner of the cell.
8. Open the Editor menu, and choose Resolve Auto Layout Issues→Reset to Suggested Constraints. The result is shown in [Figure 8-20](#).

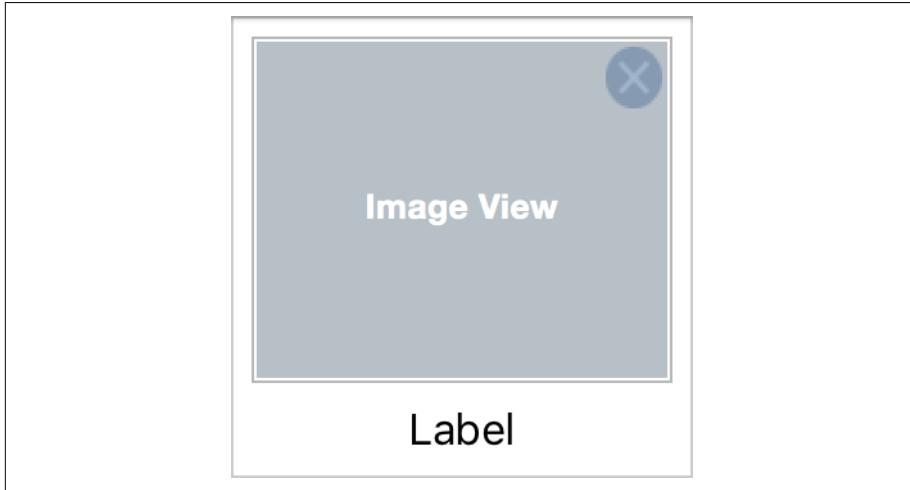


Figure 8-20. The delete button

9. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift` in the Assistant.
10. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the delete button into `FileCollectionViewController`. Create a new outlet for the button called `deleteButton`.
11. Hold down the Control key again, and drag from the delete button into `FileCollectionViewController`. Create a new action for the button called `deleteTapped`.
12. Add the following property to `FileCollectionViewController`:

```
var deletionHandler : (Void -> Void)?
```

This will be a closure that is run when the user taps on the delete button.

13. Add the following code to the `deleteTapped` method:

```
@IBAction func deleteTapped() {
    deletionHandler?()
}
```

This method calls the deletion closure; the actual content of the closure will be set up in `cellForItemAtIndexPath`.

We want to draw the user's attention to the deletion buttons when they appear. To do this, we'll make the cells fade out, using iOS's animation system, when the deletion buttons are visible.

Animating a property of a `UIView` is as simple as telling the `UIView` class that you'd like to `animate` and indicating how long the animation should take. You also provide a closure, which the `UIView` class will run when it's ready to start animating content. Inside this closure, you make the changes you want: changing size, opacity, color, and mode.

Add the following method to `FileCollectionViewController`:

```
func setEditing(editing: Bool, animated:Bool) {
    let alpha : CGFloat = editing ? 1.0 : 0.0
    if animated {
        UIView.animateWithDuration(0.25) { () -> Void in
            self.deleteButton?.alpha = alpha
        }
    } else {
        self.deleteButton?.alpha = alpha
    }
}
```

The `setEditing` method simply changes the opacity of the cell's `deleteButton`. When `setEditing` is called, it receives two parameters: first, whether the button should be visible or not, and second, whether the change in opacity should be animated.

The change in opacity should be animated if the cell is on screen. It doesn't look great for a view to suddenly *pop* from fully opaque to slightly transparent, so it should gradually fade, via an animation. However, if the view is off-screen, it *shouldn't* fade.

If the change in opacity needs to be animated, the second parameter of this method is set to `true`. This makes the change to the `deleteButton`'s `alpha` property wrapped inside a call to `UIView`'s `animateWithDuration`; otherwise, it's simply assigned.

We'll now add a button that puts the collection of documents into Edit mode. There's actually an incredibly simple way to add an Edit button, and you can do it with a single line of code.

Add the following code to the `viewDidLoad` method:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()

    let addButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Add,
        target: self, action: "createDocument")
    self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = addButton

    self.queryDidUpdateObserver = NSNotificationCenter
```

```

.defaultCenter()
.addObserver(forName: NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification,
    object: metadataQuery,
    queue: OperationQueue.mainQueue()) { [notification] in
    self.queryUpdated()
}
self.queryDidFinishGatheringObserver = NotificationCenter
.defaultCenter()
.addObserver(forName: NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification,
    object: metadataQuery,
    queue: OperationQueue.mainQueue()) { [notification] in
    self.queryUpdated()
}

> self.navigationItem.leftBarButtonItem = self.editButtonItem()

let hasPromptedForiCloud = UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
.boolForKey(NotesHasPromptedForiCloudKey)

if hasPromptedForiCloud == false {
    let alert = UIAlertController(title: "Use iCloud?",
        message: "Do you want to store your documents in iCloud, " +
        "or store them locally?", preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

    alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "iCloud",
        style: .Default,
        handler: { [action] in

            UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
                .setBool(true, forKey: NotesUseiCloudKey)

            self.metadataQuery.startQuery()
        }))

    alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Local Only", style: .Default,
        handler: { [action] in

            UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
                .setBool(false, forKey: NotesUseiCloudKey)

            self.refreshLocalFileList()
        }))

    self.presentViewController(alert, animated: true, completion: nil)
}

UserDefaults.standardUserDefaults()
.setBool(true, forKey: NotesHasPromptedForiCloudKey)

} else {
    metadataQuery.startQuery()
    refreshLocalFileList()
}

```

```
}
```

```
}
```

The `editButtonItem` method returns a `UIBarButtonItem` that, when tapped, calls the `setEditing` method. We'll implement that now.

Inside `DocumentListViewController.swift`, implement the `setEditing` method to make all cells that are visible change their editing state:

```
override func setEditing(editing: Bool, animated: Bool) {  
  
    super.setEditing(editing, animated: animated)  
  
    for visibleCell in self.collectionView?.visibleCells()  
        as! [FileCollectionViewCell] {  
  
        visibleCell.setEditing(editing, animated: animated)  
    }  
}
```

First, notice the call to `super.setEditing`. The superclass implementation of `setEditing` updates the class's `editing` property, which we'll make use of in a moment, and also updates the edit button that you added a moment ago to show either Edit or Done. Once it's done with that, it asks the collection view to provide an array of all visible `FileCollectionViewCells`. Each of these cells then has its `setEditing` method called.

Finally, we need to ensure that any cells that *aren't* visible also have their deletion button's opacity at the correct level. Remember, collection view cells that aren't visible don't actually exist; they're waiting in limbo to be added to the collection view on demand. This means that, in our `cellForItemAtIndexPath` method, we'll need to ensure that the deletion button's opacity is set correctly.



This is why the `FileCollectionViewCell`'s `setEditing` method allows you to control whether the change is animated or not. Cells that are being prepared in `cellForItemAtIndexPath` should not animate the change, because it would look a little odd for them to be fading in as you scroll. In addition, we'll give all cells a closure to call when the deletion button is tapped.

Add the following code to `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)` to add the deletion handler for cells. When the cell's delete button is tapped, we'll call the `deleteDocumentAtURL` method, which we'll add in a moment:

```
override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,  
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) -> UICollectionViewCell {
```

```

// Get our cell
let cell = collectionView
    .dequeueReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier("FileCell",
        forIndexPath: indexPath) as! FileCollectionViewCell

// Get this object from the list of known files
let url = availableFiles[indexPath.row]

// Get the display name
var fileName : AnyObject?
do {
    try url.getResourceValue(&fileName, forKey: NSURLNameKey)

    if let fileName = fileName as? String {
        cell.fileNameLabel!.text = fileName
    }
} catch {
    cell.fileNameLabel!.text = "Loading..."
}

>     cell.setEditing(self.editing, animated: false)
>     cell.deletionHandler = {
>         self.deleteDocumentAtURL(url)
>     }

// If this cell is openable, make it fully visible, and
// make the cell able to be touched
if itemIsOpenable(url) {
    cell.alpha = 1.0
    cell.userInteractionEnabled = true
} else {
    // But if it's not, make it semitransparent, and
    // make the cell not respond to input
    cell.alpha = 0.5
    cell.userInteractionEnabled = false
}

return cell
}

```

Finally, add the `deleteDocumentAtURL` method, which actually deletes it:

```

func deleteDocumentAtURL(url: NSURL) {

    let fileCoordinator = NSFileCoordinator(filePresenter: nil)
    fileCoordinator.coordinateWritingItemAtURL(url,
        options: .ForDeleting, error: nil) { (urlForModifying) -> Void in
        do {
            try NSFileManager.defaultManager()
                .removeItemAtURL(urlForModifying)

            // Remove the URL from the list
        }
    }
}

```

```
        self.availableFiles = self.availableFiles.filter {
            $0 != url
        }

        // Update the collection
        self.collectionView?.reloadData()

    } catch let error as NSError {
        let alert = UIAlertController(title: "Error deleting",
            message: error.localizedDescription,
            preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

        alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Done",
            style: .Default, handler: nil))

        self.presentViewController(alert,
            animated: true,
            completion: nil)
    }
}
```

The `deleteDocumentAtURL` method, as its name suggests, removes a document from the system. However, you might notice that the line that actually does the deleting—that is, the call to `NSFileManager`'s `removeItemAtURL` method—is wrapped in a *lot* of other stuff. All of that is necessary, because the app is being extremely cautious about deleting the file at a safe time to do it. It does this through the use of an `NSFileCoordinator`.

The `NSFileCoordinator` class allows you to ensure that file-related tasks, such as opening, saving, deleting, and renaming files, are done in a way that won't interfere with any other task on the system trying to work with the same file. For example, if you happen to attempt to open a file at the same time it's deleted, you don't want both actions to happen at the same time.

The `coordinateWritingItemAtURL` method lets you tell the system ahead of time what you intend to do with the file. In this case, we're passing the `.ForDeleting` flag, indicating that we'd like to remove the file entirely. We also pass in a closure, which is run after the system has ensured that it's safe to make changes. You'll notice that the closure itself receives a parameter, called `urlForModifying`. This is an `NSURL` that the file coordinator provides to you to make changes to. This may or may not be the same as the original URL that you passed in; it's possible that, in some cases, the file coordinator might provide you with a temporary URL for you to use instead.

Inside the closure, we remove the file by calling `removeItemAtURL`, passing in the URL that the file coordinator has given us. We also remove the original URL—not the one that the file coordinator has given us—from the list of available files. We do this

by using the `filter` method on the array, which filters the array to only include items that are *not* `url`. We use the original URL, because if `urlForModifying` is different from the original `url` variable, we may not actually remove the entry from the list.

Lastly, we update the list of files by calling the collection view's `reloadData` method.

Run the app, and tap the Edit button. The delete buttons will appear, and you can tap them to delete them.

Renaming Documents

Finally, we'll add the ability to rename documents when you tap on their labels. The code for this will work in a similar way to deleting them: we'll give each cell a closure to run when the user taps on the label, and in this closure, we'll present a box that lets the user enter a new name.

To detect taps on the label, we need to create a *gesture recognizer* and connect it. We'll be using a very simple "tap" gesture recognizer in this chapter, but we'll be using a more complex one later, in "[Deleting Attachments](#)" on page 300.

1. Open `Main.storyboard`, and locate the label in the collection view cell.
2. Select the label, and go to the Attributes Inspector. Scroll down to the View section in the inspector, and select the User Interaction Enabled checkbox. This will allow the label to respond to taps.

Let's now add the ability to detect when the user has tapped on the label.

1. Add the following code to the `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)` method, after the deletion code:

```
override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) -> UICollectionViewCell {

    // Get our cell
    let cell = collectionView
        .dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier("FileCell",
            forIndexPath: indexPath) as! FileCollectionViewCell

    // Get this object from the list of known files
    let url = availableFiles[indexPath.row]

    // Get the display name
    var fileName : AnyObject?
    do {
        try url.getResourceValue(&fileName, forKey: NSURLNameKey)

        if let fileName = fileName as? String {
```

```

        cell.fileNameLabel!.text = fileName
    }
} catch {
    cell.fileNameLabel!.text = "Loading..."
}

cell.setEditing(self.editing, animated: false)
cell.deletionHandler = {
    self.deleteDocumentAtURL(url)
}

> let labelTapRecognizer = UITapGestureRecognizer(target: cell,
>                                                 action: "renameTapped")
>
> cell.fileNameLabel?.gestureRecognizers = [labelTapRecognizer]
>
> cell.renameHandler = {
>     self.renameDocumentAtURL(url)
> }

// If this cell is openable, make it fully visible, and
// make the cell able to be touched
if itemIsOpenable(url) {
    cell.alpha = 1.0
    cell.userInteractionEnabled = true
} else {
    // But if it's not, make it semitransparent, and
    // make the cell not respond to input
    cell.alpha = 0.5
    cell.userInteractionEnabled = false
}

return cell
}

```

This code does several things:

- First, it removes any existing gesture recognizers from the label. This is necessary, because cells get reused; if we don't remove existing recognizers, we'll end up with labels that attempt to rename multiple files at once when they're tapped.
- Next, it creates a new `UITapGestureRecognizer` and makes it call the cell's `renameTapped` method. It then adds it to the label. Once this is done, tapping on the label will make the cell call the rename handler block, which is added next. The rename block simply calls the `renameDocumentAtURL` method, which you'll add in a second.

2. Add the following method to DocumentListViewController:

```
func renameDocumentAtURL(url: NSURL) {

    // Create an alert box
    let renameBox = UIAlertController(title: "Rename Document",
                                    message: nil, preferredStyle: .Alert)

    // Add a text field to it that contains its current name, sans ".note"
    renameBox.addTextFieldWithConfigurationHandler({ (textField) -> Void in
        let filename = url.lastPathComponent?
            .stringByReplacingOccurrencesOfString(".note", withString: "")
        textField.text = filename
    })

    // Add the cancel button, which does nothing
    renameBox.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Cancel",
                                    style: .Cancel, handler: nil))

    // Add the rename button, which actually does the renaming
    renameBox.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Rename",
                                    style: .Default) { (action) in

        // Attempt to construct a destination URL from
        // the name the user provided
        if let newName = renameBox.textFields?.first?.text,
           let destinationURL = url.URLByDeletingLastPathComponent?
                .URLByAppendingPathComponent(newName + ".note") {

            let fileCoordinator =
                NSFileCoordinator(filePresenter: nil)

            // Indicate that we intend to do writing
            fileCoordinator.coordinateWritingItemAtURL(url,
                options: [],
                writingItemAtURL: destinationURL,
                options: [],
                error: nil,
                byAccessor: { (origin, destination) -> Void in

                    do {
                        // Perform the actual move
                        try NSFileManager.defaultManager()
                            .moveItemAtURL(origin,
                                toURL: destination)

                        // Remove the original URL from the file
                        // list by filtering it out
                        self.availableFiles =
                            self.availableFiles.filter {
                
```

```

        $0 != url
    }

    // Add the new URL to the file list
    self.availableFiles.append(destination)

    // Refresh our collection of files
    self.collectionView?.reloadData()
} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Failed to move \(origin) to " +
        "\((destination)): \(error)")
}
}

// Finally, present the box.

self.presentViewController(renameBox, animated: true, completion: nil)
}

```

This method does several things:

- First, it creates a `UIAlertController`, which will be the interface through which the user actually renames the file.
- It adds a text field to it, using the `addTextFieldWithConfigurationHandler` method. This method takes a closure, which is called to fill the text field with content; in this case, it will contain the file's current name.
- It then adds two buttons: a cancel button, which does nothing except close the box, and a rename button.

The rename button, when tapped, gets the text that was entered and constructs a new `NSURL` for the document, representing where it will be moved to.



In Unix-based operating systems, such as iOS, “renaming” a file really means moving it to a new location. If you move a file called `apples.txt` to a new location called `oranges.txt`, you’ve renamed that file.

Once it has the new URL, it creates an `NSFileCoordinator` and asks it to coordinate a writing operation that involves both the file’s original location and the file’s new location.

When the file coordinator is ready to perform the write, the `NSFileManager` is then used to move the file from its original location to the new location. The

file's original URL is removed from the `availableFiles` list, and the new location is then added.

Finally, the collection view is asked to refresh its contents, and the user can view the result of the rename.

3. Now run the app and rename some files!

Conclusion

We have done a lot in this chapter, and we've added a whole lot of code! We've:

- implemented the iOS Document version of the document class, using `UIDocument`, as a counterpart to the OS X version of our document class, which uses `NSDocument`.
- added support for listing whatever note documents are stored in iCloud.
- added support for creating new documents and deleting or renaming existing documents.

So we've covered lot of the ins and outs of working with iCloud on iOS for documents. In the next chapter, we'll add a new view to display the text content of notes and allow people to actually edit their notes, as well as save them.

Working with Documents on iOS

In this chapter, we'll start making the iOS app feel more like an actual app: we'll add the ability to open notes and view their contents, as well as the ability to edit and save changes to notes.

Along the way, we'll create and connect up more new view controllers, create another new UI, and set up a segue to move between the list of notes and the note contents. We'll also use `UITextViewDelegate` to update the note document when the note text changes.

Adding a View to Display Notes

At the moment, the app has got the basics of note storage, but we don't have any ability to actually view or edit our notes on iOS. To add this, we'll create a view controller that lets you see and modify the content of note documents.

1. Open the File menu and choose New→File.
2. Ensure “Also create XIB file” is unchecked; we'll be using the storyboard we already have set up.
3. Select Cocoa Touch Class and click Next.
4. Name the new class `DocumentViewController`, and make it a subclass of `UIViewController`. This will be responsible for displaying the note, and eventually letting us edit the contents of notes.
5. Open `Main.storyboard`.
6. Go to the Object library and drag a new view controller into the canvas.

7. Select the new view controller, open the Identity Inspector, and set its class to `DocumentViewController` (see [Figure 9-1](#)). This connects the view controller in the storyboard to the view controller class that we just created.

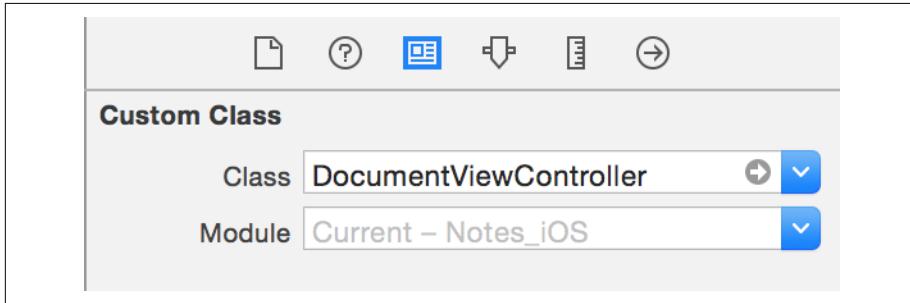


Figure 9-1. Setting the new view controller's class to DocumentViewController

8. Hold down the Control key and drag from the document list view controller to the new document view controller. A list of potential types of segues you can create will appear; click Show (see [Figure 9-2](#)).



A segue is a transition between one view (and view controller) to another. Segues are used only with storyboards, not nibs. Segues are triggered, typically, by user interaction, and end when the new view controller is displayed. You construct the segue in the interface builder, and then it's either triggered automatically or manually through code using the `performSegueWithIdentifier` method. We'll be using this later in the chapter.

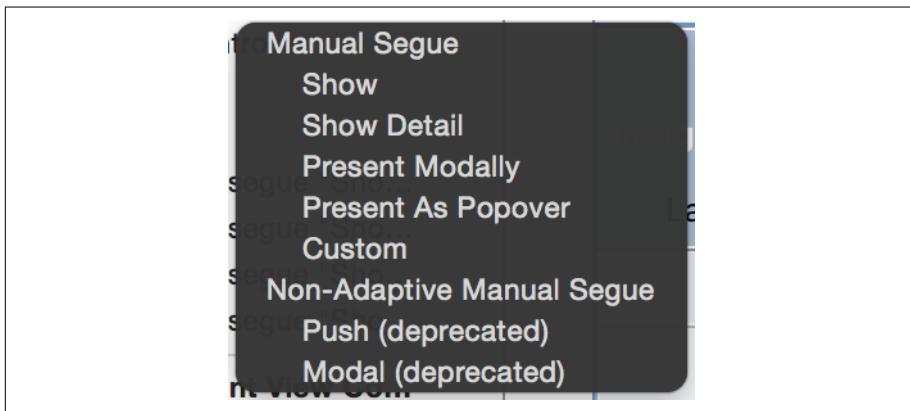


Figure 9-2. Creating the segue

9. Select the “Show segue to ‘Document View Controller’” item in the outline, and go to the Attributes Inspector.
10. Set the Identifier of the segue to **ShowDocument** (Figure 9-3).

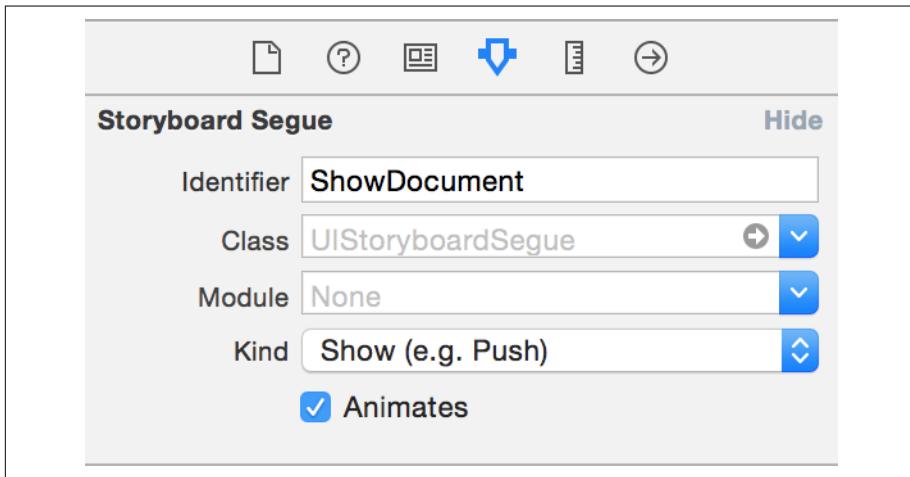


Figure 9-3. Configuring the segue

Next, we'll set up the user interface for the document view controller.

1. Add a `UITextView` to the document view controller. We'll use this to display the text contents of a note document.
2. Resize it to fill the entire screen, and add the following constraints to it:
 - Leading spacing to container's leading margin = 0
 - Trailing spacing to container's trailing margin = 0
 - Bottom spacing to bottom layout guide = 0
 - Top spacing to top layout guide = 0This will make the text view that we just added fill the majority of the screen.
3. Go to the Attributes Inspector, and change its mode from Plain to Attributed (Figure 9-4). We'll be displaying attributed text—text that has formatting attributes—so we need to make sure that the text view we're using knows how to display that.

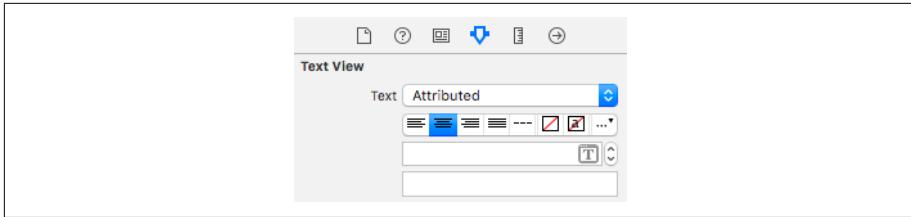


Figure 9-4. Setting the mode of the text view

4. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
5. Add the following code to implement the `textView`, `document`, and `documentURL` properties:

```
@IBOutlet weak var textView : UITextView!  
  
private var document : Document?  
  
// The location of the document we're showing  
var documentURL: NSURL? {  
    // When it's set, create a new document object for us to open  
    didSet {  
        if let url = documentURL {  
            self.document = Document(fileURL:url)  
        }  
    }  
}
```

The `textView` property will be used to connect this code to the text view that shows the document's text, while the `document` property holds the `Document` object that's currently open. The `documentURL` property stores the location of the document that the view controller is currently displaying; importantly, when it's set, it creates and prepares the `document` property with a `Document` object to use.

6. Open `Main.storyboard` and open `DocumentViewController.swift` in the Assistant. Connect the text view to the `textView` outlet.



For a quick reminder on how to connect views to outlets, see “[Connecting the Code](#)” on page 22.

7. Implement `viewWillAppear` to open the document and load information from it:

```
override func viewWillAppear(animated: Bool) {  
    // Ensure that we actually have a document  
    guard let document = self.document else {  
        NSLog("No document to display!")  
    }
```

```

        self.navigationController?.popViewControllerAnimated(true)
    return
}

// If this document is not already open, open it
if document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.Closed) {
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
        if success == true {
            self.textView?.attributedText = document.text
        }
    else
    {
        // We can't open it! Show an alert!
        let alertTitle = "Error"
        let alertMessage = "Failed to open document"
        let alert = UIAlertController(title: alertTitle,
                                     message: alertMessage,
                                     preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

        // Add a button that returns to the previous screen
        alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Close",
                                     style: .Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
            self.navigationController?
                .popViewControllerAnimated(true)
        }))
    }

    // Show the alert
    self.presentViewController(alert,
                             animated: true,
                             completion: nil)
}
}
}

```

The code for opening documents is verbose but pretty straightforward. We first check to ensure that the view controller actually has a Document to open; if it doesn't, it tells the navigation controller to return to the document list.

Next, it asks if the document is currently closed. If it is, we can open it by calling `openWithCompletionHandler`. This attempts to open the document and takes a closure that gets informed whether it was successfully opened or not. If opening succeeds, the Document's properties now contain the data that we need, like its `text`; as a result, we can grab the note's text and display it in the `textView`.

If opening the document fails, we need to tell the user about it. To handle this, we create and display a `UIAlertController`.

Next, we'll make tapping on a file in the document list view controller open that document.

1. Open *DocumentListViewController.swift*.
2. Implement the `didSelectItemAtIndexPath` to trigger the segue to the document:

```
override func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Did we select a cell that has an item that is openable?
    let selectedItem = availableFiles[indexPath.row]

    if itemIsOpenable(selectedItem) {
        self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument",
            sender: selectedItem)
    }
}
```

The `didSelectItemAtIndexPath` method is called when the user taps on any item in the collection view, and receives as parameters the collection view that contained the item, plus an `NSIndexPath` that represents the position of the item in question. `NSIndexPath` objects are really just containers for two numbers: the *section* and the *row*. Collection views can be broken up into multiple sections, and each section can contain multiple rows.

In order to access the correct document, we need to figure out the URL represented the item the user just selected. Because we only have a single section in this collection view, we can just use the `row` property to get the URL from the `availableFiles` list. If that URL is openable (which we test by using the `itemIsOpenable` method), we ask the system to perform the `ShowDocument` segue, passing in the URL.



We can also access the `row` property in `NSIndexPath` using the `item` property. They both represent the same value.

When we ask the system to perform a segue, the view controller at the other end of the segue will be created and displayed. Before it's shown, however, we're given a chance to prepare it with the right information that it will need. In this case, the `DocumentViewController` at the other end of the segue will need to receive the correct `NSURL` so that it can open the document.

1. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift`.
2. Implement `prepareForSegue` to prepare the next view controller:

```
override func prepareForSegue(segue: UIStoryboardSegue,
sender: AnyObject?) {

    // If the segue is "ShowDocument" and the destination view controller
    // is a DocumentViewController...
    if segue.identifier == "ShowDocument",
        let documentVC = segue.destinationViewController
        as? DocumentViewController
    {

        // If it's a URL we can open...
        if let url = sender as? NSURL {
            // Provide the url to the view controller
            documentVC.documentURL = url
        } else {
            // It's something else, oh no!
            fatalError("ShowDocument segue was called with an " +
                "invalid sender of type \(sender.dynamicType)")
        }
    }

}
```

The `prepareForSegue` method is called whenever the view controller is about to show another view controller, via a segue. It receives as its parameters the segue itself, represented by a `UIStoryboardSegue` object, as well as whatever object was responsible for triggering the segue. In the case of the `ShowDocument` segue, the `sender` is an `NSURL`, because we passed that in as the `sender` parameter to the `performSegueWithIdentifier` method in `didSelectItemAtIndexPath`.

To get the view controller that we're about to transition to, we ask the segue for its `destinationViewController` property and ask Swift to try to give it to us as a `DocumentViewController`. Next, we double-check the type of the `sender` and make sure that it's an `NSURL`. Finally, we give the view controller the URL.

Now's a great time to build and run the app. You should now be able to tap on document thumbnails and segue to the editing screen, and get a “back” button to return to the document list, which is provided automatically by the navigation controller. Edits can be made, though they can't be saved yet. But, still! There's some good progress happening here.

Finally, we also want to open documents that we've just created. We'll do this by creating a method called `openDocumentWithPath`, which will receive a `String` that con-

tains a path. It will prepare an NSURL, and then call `performSegueWithIdentifier`, passing the URL as the sender.



We'll be using this method from multiple different places later in this book, so we're putting it in a method.

1. Implement the `openDocumentWithPath` method, which takes a path and attempts to open it:

```
func openDocumentWithPath(path : String) {  
  
    // Build a file URL from this path  
    let url = NSURL(fileURLWithPath: path)  
  
    // Open this document  
    self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)  
  
}
```

Next, when a document is created, we'll want the app to immediately open it for editing.

2. Add the calls to `openDocumentWithPath` to the `createDocument` method:

```
func createDocument() {  
  
    // Create a unique name for this new document  
    // by adding a random number  
    let documentName = "Document \(arc4random()).note"  
  
    // Work out where we're going to store it temporarily  
    let documentDestinationURL = DocumentListViewController  
        .localDocumentsDirectoryURL  
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName)  
  
    // Create the document and try to save it locally  
    let newDocument = Document(fileURL:documentDestinationURL)  
    newDocument.saveToURL(documentDestinationURL,  
        forSaveOperation: .ForCreating) { (success) -> Void in  
  
        if (DocumentListViewController.iCloudAvailable) {  
  
            // If we have the ability to use iCloud...  
            // If we successfully created it, attempt to  
            // move it to iCloud  
            if success == true, let ubiquitousDestinationURL =  
                DocumentListViewController.ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL?
```

```
    .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName) {  
  
        // Perform the move to iCloud in the background  
        NSOperationQueue().addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in  
            do {  
                try NSFileManager.defaultManager()  
                    .setUbiquitous(true,  
                        itemAtURL: documentDestinationURL,  
                        destinationURL: ubiquitousDestinationURL)  
  
                NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()  
                    .addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in  
  
                        self.availableFiles  
                            .append(ubiquitousDestinationURL)  
  
                        // Open the document  
                        if let path = ubiquitousDestinationURL.path {  
                            self.openDocumentWithPath(path)  
                        }  
  
                        self.collectionView?.reloadData()  
                    }  
            } catch let error as NSError {  
                NSLog("Error storing document in iCloud! " +  
                    "\\"(error.localizedDescription)")  
            }  
        }  
    } else {  
        // We can't save it to iCloud, so it stays  
        // in local storage.  
  
        self.availableFiles.append(documentDestinationURL)  
        self.collectionView?.reloadData()  
  
        // Just open it locally  
        if let path = documentDestinationURL.path {  
            self.openDocumentWithPath(path)  
        }  
    }  
}
```

We're now able to open documents, but not much else. Next, we'll add the ability to actually edit the document.

Editing and Saving Documents

The last critical feature of this app is to let the user make changes to the document. When you’re using the `UIDocument` system, your documents are automatically saved when the user leaves your application or when you close the document. You don’t need to manually save changes—the system will automatically take care of it for you. To signal to iOS that the user is done with the document, we’ll close the document when the user leaves the `DocumentViewController`.

This means that, if the document was modified, the system will call `contentsForType` and ask the `Document` class to provide an `NSFileWrapper` containing the document’s contents, which will be saved to disk.

However, the system has to know that changes were applied in the first place, so, in order to tell the document that changes were made, we need to use the `updateChangeCount` method when the user makes a change to the text field. To find out *that* bit of information, we need to ask the text view to let the view controller know when a change is made.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
2. Make `DocumentViewController` conform to `UITextViewDelegate` by adding `UITextViewDelegate` to the class’s definition:

```
class DocumentViewController: UIViewController, UITextViewDelegate {
```

When an object conforms to the `UITextViewDelegate` protocol, it’s able to act as the *delegate* for a text view. This means that it can be notified about events that happen to the text view, such as the user making changes to the content of the text view.

3. Implement the `textViewDidChange` method to store text in the document, and update the document’s change count:

```
func textViewDidChange(textView: UITextView) {  
  
    document?.text = textView.attributedText  
    document?.updateChangeCount(.Done)  
}
```



Even though it’s called the change “count,” you don’t really work with a number of changes. Rather, the change count is internal to the document system; your app doesn’t need to know what the change count is, you just need to update it when the user modifies the content of the document.

With this method in place, the view controller is able to respond to a text view changing its content. We use this opportunity to update the Document's `text` property, and then call `updateChangeCount` to signal to the document that the user has made a change to its content. This indicates to the `UIDocument` system that the document has changes that need to be written to disk; when the system decides that it's a good time or when the document is closed, the changes will be saved.

Now that the document's contents are updated, we need to tell the document system to close the document when we leave the view controller.

1. Implement `viewWillDisappear` to close the document:

```
override func viewWillDisappear(animated: Bool) {  
    self.document?.closeWithCompletionHandler(nil)  
}
```

2. Open `Main.storyboard`.

3. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the text view to the document view controller ([Figure 9-5](#)). Select “delegate” from the menu that appears.



Remember to drag to the view controller itself, not the view that the view controller is managing. If you drag to the little yellow circle icon above the view controller's interface, you'll always be connecting to the right thing.

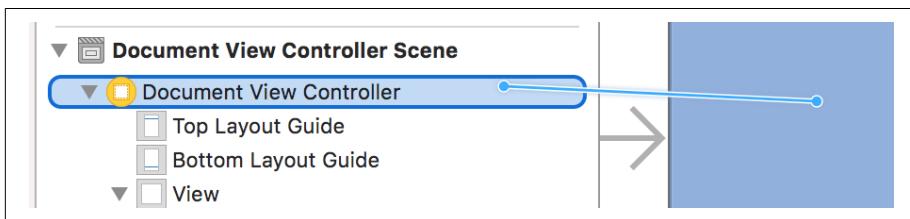


Figure 9-5. A drag in progress

4. Launch the app, open a document, make changes, close it, and reopen it—the changes are still there!

Conclusion

In this chapter, we've added the ability to open notes and view their contents, as well as the ability to actually edit and save the changes to notes. We did this by creating

some new view controllers and their UI in storyboards and connecting them with segues.

In the next chapter, we'll add support for file attachments and update the interface to show a list of attachments.

Working with Files and File Types

At the moment, the iOS app can work with the text content of note documents, but doesn't really know anything about attachments that might have been added through the OS X app.

In this chapter, we'll add support for working with attachments to the iOS app, as well as make its handling of note documents more robust. We'll do this by adding—you guessed it—more user interface to:

- display any attachments.
- handle conflict resolution, for when a file is synced from multiple devices.
- add Quick Look support, to display a thumbnail preview of attachments.

Setting Up the Interface for Attachments

First, we'll update the interface for the document view controller to support showing the list of attachments. This will involve reworking everything, as well as some reasonably complex constraints, so it's easier to start from scratch.

1. Open *Main.storyboard*.
2. Delete the text view from the document view controller's interface. We'll be reconstructing the interface, with room for the attachments to be displayed, so it's easier to remove everything than it is to rearrange.
3. It'll be easier to do this without the top bar in the way, so select the document view controller, and in the Simulated Metrics section of the Inspector, change Top Bar from Inferred to None ([Figure 10-1](#)).

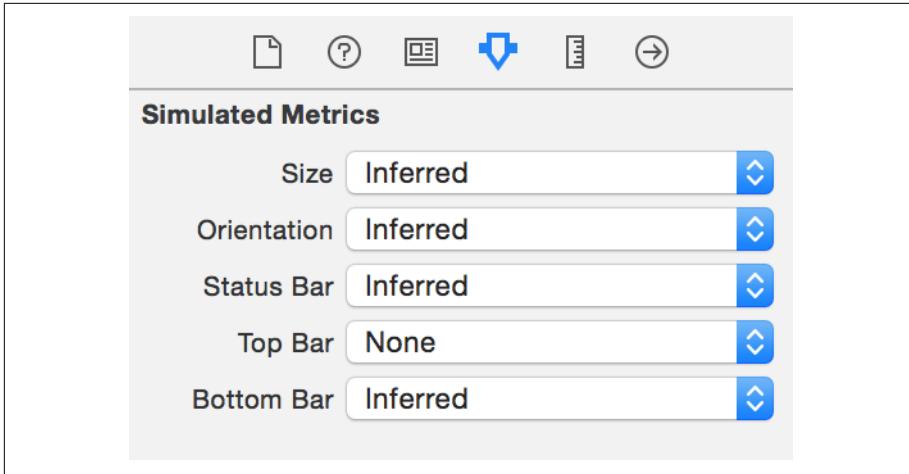


Figure 10-1. Setting the mode of the top bar

4. Drag a `UIScrollView` into the interface; this will enable us to display content larger than the view it's currently in (see [Figure 10-2](#)).

We want the scroll view to fill the entire screen. By default, constraints are made relative to the margins, and to the layout guides at the top and the bottom. However, because the contents of the entire screen need to scroll, we want to take up *all* of the space. This means that we need to add constraints differently.

5. Add constraints to the scroll view by selecting the scroll view and clicking the Pin button at the bottom right of the window. Turn off “Constrain to margins” and set all four of the numbers that appear to 0. Change Update Frames to Items of New Constraints, and click Add 4 Constraints. The scroll view will now completely fill the screen.

We'll now add controls inside it. In particular, we'll be adding a stack view, which will contain the text editor and the collection view that will show the list of attachments. A stack view handles most of the work of laying out views in a horizontal or vertical *stack*. If all you care about is “these views should be next to each other,” and you don't want to have to deal with more complex layouts, then stack views are exactly what you want.



While `UIStackView` is a single class, it appears in the Object library twice: once for “vertical stack view,” and once for “horizontal stack view.”



Figure 10-2. The empty document view controller interface

6. Drag a vertical `UIStackView` into the scroll view.
7. With the stack view selected, click the Pin button, and set the top, leading, trailing, and bottom space to 0.
8. Next, resize the stack view so that it's the same width as the scroll view.
9. Hold down the Control key and drag from the stack view to the scroll view. A list of possible constraints will appear; choose Equal Widths.



It's important to make it the same width as the scroll view. This ensures that the scroll view doesn't collapse it to 0.

10. Inside the Attribute Inspector, ensure that the stack view's Alignment and Distribution are both set to Fill. This means that the stack view will make the size of its child views sufficient to fill up the stack view's boundaries.
11. Drag a UICollectionView into the stack view.
12. Hold down the Control key and drag from the collection view *to the collection view itself*. Choose Height from the menu that appears.
13. Select the collection view's cell and resize the cell size to 88 by 88.
14. Set the collection view's background color to 90% white (very slightly gray) in the Attributes Inspector.

Next, we'll add (back) the text view, just like we did in the previous chapter.

15. Add a UITextView to the stack view.

It needs no constraints, since the stack view will size and position it. Setting the height to 88 for the collection view, and adding no other constraints, will make the stack view do two things: position the collection view at the very top and make it fill the width of the screen, and make other views expand their height to fill the remaining space.

16. Connect the document view controller's `textView` outlet to this text view.



The `textView` property has the type `UITextView`, which means that the connection can only be made to a text view. The interface builder won't let you connect to any other type of view.

17. Make the text view use the document view controller as its delegate, by Control-dragging from the text view onto the document view controller in the outline.
18. Select the text view, and go to the Attributes Inspector. Set the text view to use attributed text and then turn Scrolling Enabled off—it's not necessary, because it's already contained inside a scroll view (see [Figure 10-3](#)).

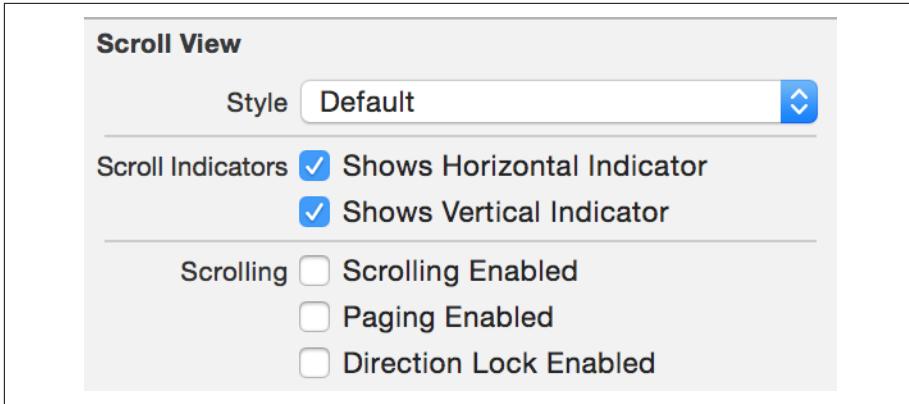


Figure 10-3. Disabling scrolling on the text view

19. Run the app; the text now appears underneath the collection view.

Listing Attachments

Now that the interface is set up, we'll add support for storing attachments in the iOS Document class.

1. Open `Document.swift`.
2. Add the following code to add the `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper` property, which returns the `NSFileWrapper` representing the folder where attachments are stored. If it doesn't exist, it creates it:

```
private var attachmentsDirectoryWrapper : NSFileWrapper? {

    // Ensure that we can actually work with this document
    guard let fileWrappers = self.documentFileWrapper.fileWrappers else {
        NSLog("Attempting to access document's contents, but none found!")
        return nil
    }

    // Try to get the attachments directory
    var attachmentsDirectoryWrapper =
        fileWrappers[NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue]

    // If it doesn't exist...
    if attachmentsDirectoryWrapper == nil {

        // Create it
        attachmentsDirectoryWrapper =
            NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [:])
        attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.preferredFilename =
```

```

NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue

// And then add it
self.documentFileWrapper
.addFileWrapper(attachmentsDirectoryWrapper!)

// We made a change to the file, so record that
self.updateChangeCount(UIDocumentChangeKind.Done)
}

// Either way, return it
return attachmentsDirectoryWrapper
}

```

The `attachmentsDirectoryWrapper` computed property first checks to make sure the Document's file wrapper actually has a usable array of file wrappers to access. Generally, this is always true, but if it's not, we can't continue.

Next, we attempt to get the file wrapper for the *Attachments* directory. If that doesn't exist, then we first create it, and add it to the document's file wrapper. Either way, by the end of the method, we've got an *Attachments* directory to use, which we then return.

3. Add the `attachedFiles` property, which returns an array of `NSFileWrappers`, each of which represents an attached file:

```

dynamic var attachedFiles : [NSFileWrapper]? {

    // Get the contents of the attachments directory
    guard let attachmentsFileWrappers =
        attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.fileWrappers else {
            NSLog("Can't access the attachments directory!")
            return nil
    }

    // attachmentsFileWrappers is a dictionary mapping filenames
    // to NSFileWrapper objects; we only care about the
    // NSFileWrappers, so return that as an array
    return Array(attachmentsFileWrappers.values)
}

```

To return the list of all attachments, we first ensure that we have an `attachments` directory to use. Next, we need to do a little bit of conversion. The `fileWrappers` property on `NSFileWrapper` objects returns a dictionary, in which strings are mapped to other `NSFileWrappers`. If we don't care about the filenames, and only care about the file wrappers, we need to ask the dictionary for its `values` value, and then ask Swift to convert it to an `Array`, which we then return.

4. Add the `addAttachmentAtURL` method, which adds an attachment to the document by copying it in:

```
func addAttachmentAtURL(url: NSURL) throws -> NSFfileWrapper {  
  
    // Ensure that we have a place to put attachments  
    guard attachmentsDirectoryWrapper != nil else {  
        throw err(.CannotAccessAttachments)  
    }  
  
    // Create the new attachment with this file, or throw an error  
    let newAttachment = try NSFfileWrapper(URL: url,  
                                           options: NSFfileWrapperReadingOptions.Immediate)  
  
    // Add it to the Attachments directory  
    attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.addFileWrapper(newAttachment)  
  
    // Mark ourselves as needing to save  
    self.updateChangeCount(UIDocumentChangeKind.Done)  
  
    return newAttachment  
}
```

Adding an attachment to the `Document` class works almost identically to the Mac version of the same method (seen in “[Storing and Managing Attachments](#)” on [page 145](#)). We first check to ensure that we have a file wrapper that we can place our attachments in, and then attempt to create a new file wrapper for the attachment. It’s then added to the `Attachments` directory, and we record the fact that the document changed.

Determining Types of Attachments

To show attachments in the list, we need a way to visually represent them. This means that we need to show some kind of thumbnail image. We’ll start by adding the default `File` image, which will be used as the fallback for when the app doesn’t have special support for a type of file.

1. Open the `Assets.xcassets` file.
2. Drag the `File.pdf` image from the resources we provided on our website into the list of images to add it to the collection.

Next, we’ll implement a way for the document to determine the type of the attachment, and a method to generate a thumbnail for the attachment. We’ll do this by adding methods to the `NSFileWrapper` class that allow it to determine its file type and to return a `UIImage` that’s appropriate for the type.

3. Open `Document.swift`.

4. Import the `MobileCoreServices` framework by adding this to the top of the file:

```
import MobileCoreServices
```



MobileCoreServices framework gives us access to uniform type identifiers—unique identifiers for each type of data, such as PDF, text, or JPEG. By using UTIs we can determine what type of data is inside an attachment without having to guess based on the attachment's name.

5. Add a new extension to `NSFileWrapper` by adding the following code to `Document.swift`. We'll be putting our extra methods for `NSFileWrapper` into it:

```
extension NSFileWrapper {  
}
```

6. Next, add the `fileExtension` property and the `conformsToType` method to this extension, which determines the file type:

```
var fileExtension : String? {  
    return self.preferredFilename?  
        .componentsSeparatedByString(".").last  
}  
  
func conformsToType(type: CFString) -> Bool {  
  
    // Get the extension of this file  
    guard let fileExtension = fileExtension else {  
        // If we can't get a file extension, assume that  
        // it doesn't conform  
        return false  
    }  
  
    // Get the file type of the attachment based on its extension.  
    guard let fileType = UTTypeCreatePreferredIdentifierForTag(  
        kUTTagClassFilenameExtension, fileExtension, nil)?  
        .takeRetainedValue() else {  
        // If we can't figure out the file type from the extension,  
        // it also doesn't conform  
        return false  
    }  
  
    // Ask the system if this file type conforms to the provided type  
    return UTTypeConformsTo(fileType, type)  
}
```

The `fileExtension` property simply splits the file extension's `preferredFileName` wherever a `.` appears, and takes the last item from that array. This has the effect of getting the file extension.



The `String` class used to have a `pathExtension` property, but it was deprecated, likely due to `NSURL` objects having the same method. However, since the `NSFileExtension` class doesn't have any knowledge of its URL, we need to go based on the filename instead. As a result, we have to do it ourselves.

The `conformsToType` method takes a UTI, stored in a `CString`, and asks the type system to give us the UTI that applies to our file extension (using the `fileExtension` property we just added). If that UTI conforms to the UTI that was passed in as a parameter, then we return `true`.



The `takeRetainedValue` method is necessary because the `UTType` collection of methods is written in C and isn't designed with Swift's memory management system. The `takeRetainedValue` method signals to Swift that it's responsible for disposing of the returned value from `UTTypeCreatePreferredIdentifierForTag` when it's all done.

- Finally, we'll add the method `thumbnailImage` to the extension, which uses the information from `conformsToType` to figure out and return the image:

```
func thumbnailImage() -> UIImage? {  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {  
        // If it's an image, return it as a UIImage  
  
        // Ensure that we can get the contents of the file  
        guard let attachmentContent = self.regularFileContents else {  
            return nil  
        }  
  
        // Attempt to convert the file's contents to text  
        return UIImage(data: attachmentContent)  
    }  
  
    // We don't know what type it is, so return nil  
    return nil  
}
```

The `thumbnailImage` property is one that we'll be adding to over time, as we continue to add support for additional types of attachments. At the moment, it simply checks to see if the file wrapper is an image file; if it is, it returns a `UIImage` based on the content of the file.



This is an early example of how UTIs can be powerful. To identify if the file wrapper is an image, we don't need to manually check to see if the file extension is `.png`, `.jpg`, `.jpeg`, and so on. We can simply ask the system. In addition, if iOS adds support for some additional image format, our code will automatically handle it.

Displaying Attachment Cells

Now that attachments are capable of providing an image, we'll make the attachments collection view show cells. We'll show one cell for each attachment, plus an additional "add new attachment" cell, which will add a new attachment when tapped.

First, we'll add the image for this "add attachment" cell, and then we'll connect up the collection view to the document view controller.

1. Open the `Assets.xcassets` file.
2. Add the `AddAttachment.pdf` image to the list of images. Next, we'll define the class that powers the collection view cells that represent each attachment.
3. In `DocumentViewController.swift`, add `AttachmentCell`. It's a subclass of `UICollectionViewCell` that has an outlet for an image view and for a label:

```
class AttachmentCell : UICollectionViewCell {  
  
    @IBOutlet weak var imageView : UIImageView?  
  
    @IBOutlet weak var extensionLabel : UILabel?  
  
}
```

Manually Adding Attachments

Because the iOS app doesn't have a way to add attachments yet, if you're using the iOS simulator, the easiest way to test the feature we're about to build is to manually add some attachments yourself. This also gives you a peek into how your app is laid out in an iOS system. You can do this by opening the document package in the iCloud container, and adding attachments:

1. Launch the app, and note the path that the app logs when it starts up. It should begin with something similar to `file:///Users/....`
2. Copy this URL excluding the `file://` at the start, and open the Terminal application. You'll find it in the *Applications→Utilities* folder on your Mac's hard drive.
3. Type `open`, type a " (double quotes), and then paste the URL. Type another " and press Enter. The container's folder will open in the Finder.
4. Open the *Documents* folder, and you'll find the list of documents that the iPhone simulator can access. Right-click on one of them, and click Show Package Contents. (If you don't have any documents, create one in the iPhone app, and it will appear in the Finder window.)
5. Open the *Attachments* folder. If it doesn't exist, create it (taking care to spell it correctly and use the same capitalization).
6. Drag any file you like into this folder. For best results, use an image.
7. You're done! The document now has an attachment.

If you like, you can also add attachments using the OS X application we completed earlier in the book.

Next, let's make the view controller use this new class to show the list of all attachments.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
2. Add an outlet for a `UICollectionView` called `attachmentsCollectionView`:
`@IBOutlet weak var attachmentsCollectionView : UICollectionView!`
3. Create an extension on `DocumentViewController` that conforms to `UICollectionViewDataSource` and `UICollectionViewDelegate`:

```
extension DocumentViewController : UICollectionViewDataSource,  
    UICollectionViewDelegate {
```

}



Putting the `UICollectionViewDelegate` and `UICollectionViewDataSource` methods in an extension allows us to keep these methods separate from the methods and properties that are specific to the `DocumentViewController` object. It's purely a stylistic choice.

4. Implement the `numberOfItemsInSection` method in this extension, which returns the number of attachments the document has, plus an additional cell (for the “add attachment” cell):

```
func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    numberOfItemsInSection section: Int) -> Int {

    // No cells if the document is closed or if it doesn't exist
    if self.document!.documentState.contains(.Closed) {
        return 0
    }

    guard let attachments = self.document?.attachedFiles else {
        // No cells if we can't access the attached files list
        return 0
    }

    // Return as many cells as we have, plus the add cell
    return attachments.count + 1
}
```

To figure out how many items need to exist in the attachments list, we need to first check to see if the document is closed; if it is, then we can't display any attachments, or the “add” cell. (This will be the case when the view controller has appeared on screen, but the document hasn't finished opening yet.) We then ask for the document's `attachedFiles` array and return its length, plus one. This additional cell will be the “add attachment” cell.

5. Implement the `cellForItemAtIndexPath` method:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) ->
    UICollectionViewCell {

    // Work out how many cells we need to display
    let totalNumberOfCells =
        collectionView.numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

    // Figure out if we're being asked to configure the add cell,
    // or any other cell. If we're the last cell, it's the add cell.
    let isAddCell = (indexPath.row == (totalNumberOfCells - 1))

    // The place to store the cell. By making it 'let', we're
    // ensuring that we never accidentally fail to give it a
    // value - the compiler will call us out.
    let cell : UICollectionViewCell

    // Create and return the 'add' cell if we need to
    if isAddCell {
        cell = collectionView.dequeueReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier(
```

```

        "AddAttachmentCell", forIndexPath: indexPath)
} else {

    // This is a regular attachment cell

    // Get the cell
    let attachmentCell = collectionView
        .dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier("AttachmentCell",
            forIndexPath: indexPath) as! AttachmentCell

    // Get a thumbnail image for the attachment
    let attachment = self.document?.attachedFiles?[indexPath.row]
    var image = attachment?.thumbnailImage()

    // Give it to the cell
    if image == nil {

        // We don't know what it is, so use a generic image
        image = UIImage(named: "File")

        // Also set the label
        attachmentCell.extensionLabel?.text =
            attachment?.fileExtension?.uppercaseString

    } else {
        // We know what it is, so ensure that the label is empty
        attachmentCell.extensionLabel?.text = nil
    }
    attachmentCell.imageView?.image = image

    // Use this cell
    cell = attachmentCell
}

return cell
}

```

The `cellForItemAtIndexPath` method is very similar to its counterpart in the `DocumentListViewController`: the collection view will provide an index path, and we use it to grab a thumbnail image for the attachment, which is displayed in the cell. The only significant twist in this method is that if the index path refers to the last item in the collection view, we don't display an attachment but instead display the `AddAttachmentCell`.

We'll now create the interface for the attachment cells.

1. Open `Main.storyboard` and select the collection view.

2. Go to the Attributes Inspector, change the number of Items from 1 to 2, and set the Scroll Direction to Horizontal ([Figure 10-4](#)).

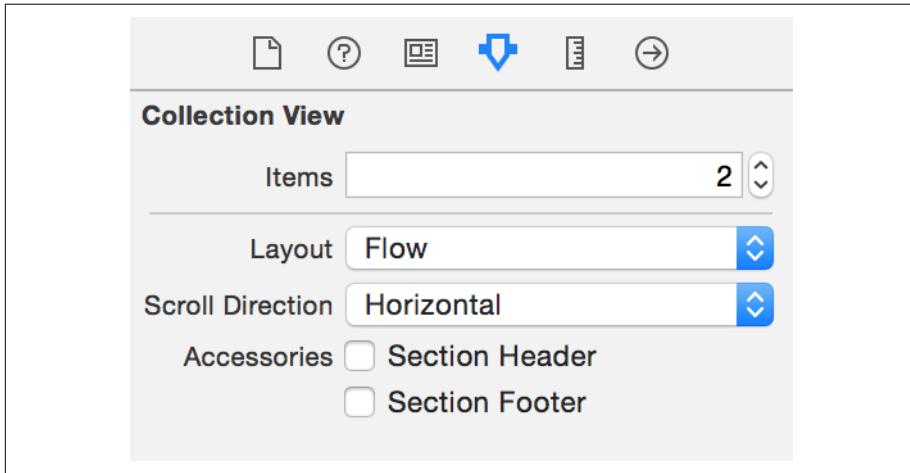


Figure 10-4. Updating the collection view's settings

3. Select the first cell and set its Identifier to `AttachmentCell`.
4. Go to the Identity Inspector, and set the class of this cell to `AttachmentCell`.
5. Select the second cell and set its Identifier to `AddAttachmentCell`.
6. Drag a `UIImageView` into both of these cells.
7. Make them both fill their cells—that is, resize them to fill the cell, and add constraints that pin the distances from all edges to 0.
8. Select the image view that you just added to the first cell—that is, `AttachmentCell`, and go to the Attributes Inspector. Set its Mode to Aspect Fill. This will make the image fill all of the image view.
9. Add a label to the first cell. Place it near the bottom of the cell, and resize it to fill the width.
 - Reduce the font size to 13.
 - Set its text alignment to Center.
 - Add constraints that pin the label to the bottom of the cell, and to the left and right edges.
10. Next, select the image view in the second cell (`AddAttachmentCell`). Set its Mode to Center. This will center the image in the middle of the view, without scaling.
11. Set the `AddAttachmentCell`'s image view's `Image` property to `AddAttachment`, as shown in [Figure 10-5](#).

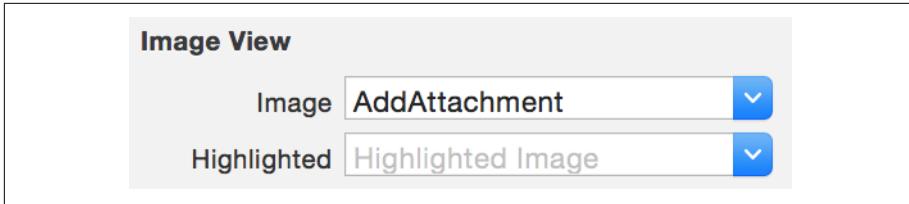


Figure 10-5. Setting the image view's image

The collection view's cells should now look like Figure 10-6.



Figure 10-6. The configured collection view

12. Open `DocumentViewController.swift` in the Assistant.
13. Connect the empty image view in `AttachmentCell` to the `imageView` outlet of `AttachmentCell`.
14. Connect the label to the `extensionLabel` outlet.
15. Connect the `attachmentsCollectionView` outlet of the `DocumentViewController` class to the collection view.
16. Hold down the Control key and drag from the collection view to the view controller, and then choose “data source” from the menu that appears.
17. Repeat the process, this time choosing “delegate” from the menu.
18. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`, and add the following code to the code in `viewWillAppear`:

```
// If this document is not already open, open it
if document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.Closed) {
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
        if success == true {
            self.textView?.attributedText = document.text
        }
    }
}
> self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()
```

This code makes the view controller reload the contents of the collection view once the document is opened. This ensures that the list of attachments actually contains content.

19. Finally, add the following code to the end of `viewWillAppear` to make the attachments list refresh even if the document wasn't just freshly opened:

```
// And reload our list of attachments, in case it changed  
// while we were away  
self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()
```

20. Run the app. You'll see the list of attachments, plus an add cell!

Dealing with Conflicts

This is now a good point to address conflict resolution in the files. When you're making an application that uses iCloud—or, for that matter, *any* app that deals with files that can be opened by multiple entities at the same time—you need to handle situations in which a file is changed from two places at once.

Consider the following situation: you're about to board your flight, and you're editing a note. Your flight is called, so you hit Save and close your laptop. As a result, your file doesn't get saved to iCloud yet. On board the flight, you pull out your phone, and open your document. You make some changes and put your phone away. You later get off the plane, and your phone syncs its changes to iCloud. You then get home and open up your laptop, which finally has a chance to send your changes to iCloud. Suddenly, there's a problem: the file was changed from two places at once, which means that the file is in conflict. Which version of the file is *correct*? The file on your laptop, or the file on your phone? Or both?

It's up to your app to decide what to do. There are three main methods for resolving a conflict:

- Pick whichever file was most recently modified, and throw away all others. A variant of this technique is used by Dropbox.¹
- Look at the contents of both files, and attempt to automatically merge them. This technique is used by source code management systems like Git.
- Present the user with the list of files that are in conflict, and ask him or her to choose the version to keep. This technique is used in Apple's productivity applications, like Pages and Keynote.

¹ Dropbox doesn't throw away the other versions; instead, it sticks *Jon's conflicted copy* to the end of them, so that you can later decide what you want to do.

Our app will pick the third option: if a document ends up in a conflicted state, then we'll simply show the list of possible options to the user, and let him or her decide. The advantage to doing this is that it's simple to think about, and generally what the user wants; the downside is that it will always involve discarding data.

1. Add the following property to the `DocumentViewController` class:

```
var stateChangedObserver : AnyObject?
```

2. Add the following code to `viewWillAppear`:

```
// If this document is not already open, open it
if document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.Closed) {
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
        if success == true {
            self.textView?.attributedText = document.text

        // Register for state change notifications
        self.stateChangedObserver = NSNotificationCenter
            .defaultCenter().addObserverForName(
                UIDocumentStateChangedNotification,
                object: document,
                queue: nil,
                usingBlock: { (notification) -> Void in
                    self.documentStateChanged()
                })
        }

        self.documentStateChanged()
    }
}
```

This code registers a closure with the system, which will be run every time iOS receives a notification that the document's state has changed. In this case, all it will do is call the `documentStateChanged` method, which will handle conflicts for us.

Currently, the view controller will close the document when the view controller disappears. This can happen for a number of reasons, and we don't want the document to be closed except when the user taps the back button to go back to the document list. We therefore need to add some code to support this.

3. Add the following property to `DocumentViewController` to keep track of whether we should close the document when `viewWillDisappear` is called:

```
private var shouldCloseOnDisappear = true
```

We'll use a `UIAlertController` to present the list of possible actions the user can take. We've used `UIAlertControllers` before to present a message and possible actions for the user to take, but they've all been presented as *dialog boxes*—small windows that appear with buttons underneath. When you could have multiple

options for the user to select from, or when the options might be quite wide, then an *action sheet* is better. Action sheets slide up from the bottom of the window and provide you room for multiple options. Functionally, there's no difference; the only way they differ is in their presentation.

4. Add the following method to DocumentViewController:

```
func documentStateChanged() {
    if let document = self.document
        where document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.InConflict) {

        // Gather all conflicted versions
        guard var conflictedVersions = NSFFileVersion
            .unresolvedConflictVersionsOfItemAtURL(document.fileURL) else {
            fatalError("The document is in conflict, but no " +
                "conflicting versions were found. This should not happen.")
        }
        let currentVersion
        = NSFFileVersion.currentVersionOfItemAtURL(document.fileURL)!

        // And include our own local version
        conflictedVersions += [currentVersion]

        // Prepare a chooser
        let title = "Resolve conflicts"
        let message = "Choose a version of this document to keep."

        let picker = UIAlertController(title: title, message: message,
            preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.ActionSheet)

        let dateFormatter = NSDateFormatter()
        dateFormatter.dateStyle = .ShortStyle
        dateFormatter.timeStyle = .ShortStyle

        // We'll use this multiple times, so save it as a variable
        let cancelAndClose = { (action:UIAlertAction) -> Void in
            // Give up and return
            self.navigationController?.popViewControllerAnimated(true)
        }

        // For each version, offer it as an option
        for version in conflictedVersions {
            let description = "Edited on " +
                "\(version.localizedDescriptionOfSavingComputer!) at " +
                "\(dateFormatter.stringFromDate(version.modificationDate!))"

            let action = UIAlertAction(title: description,
                style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default,
                handler: { (action) -> Void in
                    ...
                })
            picker.addAction(action)
        }
    }
}
```

```

// If it was selected, use this version
do {

    if version != currentVersion {
        try version.replaceItemAtURL(document.fileURL,
            options: NSFileVersionReplacingOptions
                .ByMoving)

        try NSFileVersion.
            removeOtherVersionsOfItemAtURL(
                document.fileURL
            )
    }

    document.revertToContentsOfURL(document.fileURL,
        completionHandler: { (success) -> Void in

            self.textView.attributedText = document.text
            self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

        })

        for version in conflictedVersions{
            version.resolved = true
        }

    } catch let error as NSError {
        // If there was a problem, let the user know and
        // close the document
        let errorView = UIAlertController(title: "Error",
            message: error.localizedDescription,
            preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

        errorView.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Done",
            style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel,
            handler: cancelAndClose))

        self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false
        self.presentViewController(errorView,
            animated: true,
            completion: nil)
    }

})
picker.addAction(action)
}

// Add a "choose later" option
picker.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Choose Later",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel, handler: cancelAndClose))

```

```
        self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false

        // Finally, show the picker
        self.presentViewController(picker, animated: true, completion: nil)
    }
}
```

First, this method asks if the document is in a conflicted state. If it is, we've got some problems to solve! We ask the system to provide us with a list of all of the possible versions of this file. We then add the local device's current version of this file to the list.

We then create a closure, called `cancelAndClose`, which bails on the whole operation and returns to the document list view controller. This is kept in a variable, because it's used both for the Choose Later option (which we'll add in a moment), as well as for when there's a problem resolving the conflict.

Once this is done, we create a `UIAlertAction`, and, for each version of the file, we create a new action. This action displays the name of the computer that created the conflicting version, as well as the date and time that the version was created. When the action is selected, the app indicates to the system that we should use the action's associated version of the file and discard every other version.

If there's a problem, we present a separate alert controller, indicating to the user that something's gone wrong. This alert controller only has a single action, which, when tapped, runs the `cancelAndClose` code.

Finally, we add a final option, labeled Choose Later, which simply runs the `cancelAndClose` code (see [Figure 10-7](#)). The action sheet is then presented, letting the user choose what to do.

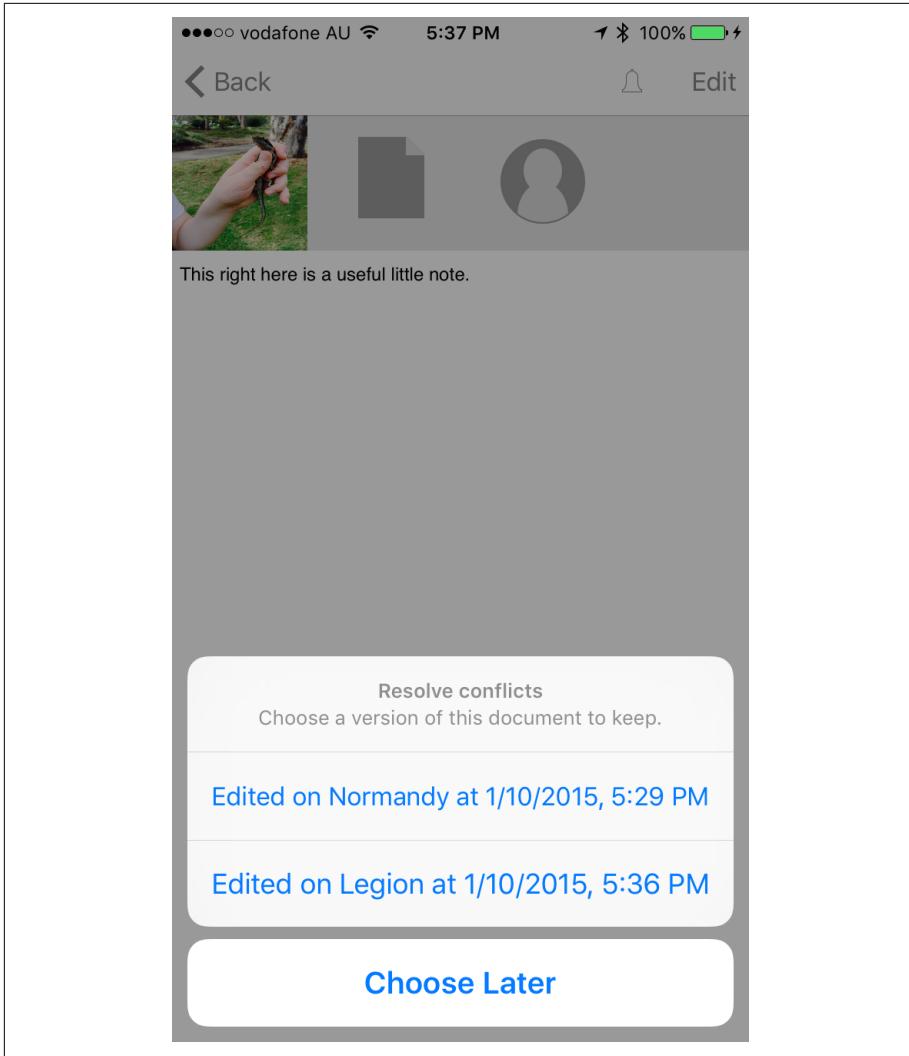


Figure 10-7. The interface that appears when resolving conflicts

5. Add the following code to `viewWillDisappear` to use the `shouldCloseOnDisappear` property to determine whether the document should be closed or not. Additionally, we'll clear the state changed observer:

```
override func viewWillDisappear(animated: Bool) {  
  
>     if shouldCloseOnDisappear == false {  
>         return  
>     }  
}
```

```
>     self.stateChangedObserver = nil  
  
     self.document?.closeWithCompletionHandler(nil)  
 }
```

6. Add the following code to the very end of `viewWillAppear` to reset the flag to `true` when the view controller reappears:

```
// We may be reappearing after having presented an attachment,  
// which means that our "don't close on disappear" flag has been set.  
// Regardless, clear that flag.  
self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = true
```

You can now test to see if it worked:

1. Open a document in the Mac application and make some changes. Don't save the changes yet.
2. Open the same document in the iOS application, ideally on a real device, and make some *different* changes to the ones you made on the Mac app.
3. Save and close the document in the Mac application, and then close the document in the iOS app. This will cause both of the apps to save their own versions, which will conflict with each other.
4. Wait a little bit of time—30 seconds or so—for both of the changes to be uploaded to iCloud and synchronized to the different apps.
5. Open the document one last time in the iOS app. Because it's in conflict, you'll see the UI that you just created!

Creating the Quick Look Thumbnail

Now that we can access the attachments, we'll add support for Quick Look in the iOS app.

We'll add a method to the `Document` class that generates an `NSData` containing a PNG-encoded image that can be used for the app. This will generate the same kind of image as used in the Mac app (which we added in “[Adding QuickLook](#)” on page 161); the difference being that we need to use the iOS methods for drawing.

1. Add the following method to the `Document` class:

```
func iconImageDataWithSize(size: CGSize) -> NSData? {  
    UIGraphicsBeginImageContext(size)  
    defer {  
        UIGraphicsEndImageContext()  
    }
```

```

let entireImageRect = CGRect(origin: CGPoint.zero, size: size)

// Fill the background with white
let backgroundRect = UIBezierPath(rect: entireImageRect)
UIColor.whiteColor().setFill()
backgroundRect.fill()

if self.attachedFiles?.count >= 1 {
    // Render our text and the first attachment
    let attachmentImage = self.attachedFiles?[0].thumbnailImage()

    var firstHalf : CGRect = CGRectZero
    var secondHalf : CGRect = CGRectZero

    CGRectDivide(entireImageRect, &firstHalf, &secondHalf,
                 entireImageRect.size.height / 2.0, CGRectEdge.MinYEdge)

    self.text.drawInRect(firstHalf)
    attachmentImage?.drawInRect(secondHalf)
} else {
    // Just render our text
    self.text.drawInRect(entireImageRect)
}

let image = UIGraphicsGetImageFromCurrentImageContext()
return UIImagePNGRepresentation(image)
}

```

To create the image in iOS, we first call `UIGraphicsBeginImageContext` to indicate that we'd like to start drawing in a canvas with the specified `size`. In addition, we need to be sure to tell iOS that we're done with this drawing once we are finished; to ensure that we don't forget, we'll use the `defer` keyword.

When you use `defer`, any code that you put in its associated block of code will be run when you exit the current scope. In this case, it means that just before we return from this method, we'll call `UIGraphicsEndImageContext`. `defer` is a great way to ensure that you clean up after yourself while keeping your clean-up code close to the code that actually creates the mess in the first place.

When we're drawing this icon, we use the `UIBezierPath` and `UIColor` classes to paint the entire canvas white. We then do the exact same thing as in the Mac version: if we have at least one attachment, we get its thumbnail image and draw it in the top half of the canvas while drawing the text in the lower half. If we don't have any attachments, we just draw the text.

Finally, we get the image from iOS by calling `UIGraphicsGetImageFromCurrentImageContext`, and convert it to an `NSData` containing the PNG-encoded image by calling `UIImagePNGRepresentation`.

2. Add the following code to the `contentsForType` method to add the Quick Look files to the document package:

```
override func contentsForType(typeName: String) throws -> AnyObject {

    let textRTFData = try self.text.dataFromRange(
        NSRange(0..

    let thumbnailImageData =
        self.iconImageDataWithSize(CGSize(width: 512, height: 512))!

    >

    let thumbnailWrapper =
        NSFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: thumbnailImageData)

    >

    let quicklookPreview =
        NSFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: textRTFData)

    >

    let quickLookFolderFileWrapper =
        NSFileWrapper(directoryWithFileWrappers: [
            NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookTextFile.rawValue: quicklookPreview,
            NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookThumbnail.rawValue: thumbnailWrapper
        ])
    quickLookFolderFileWrapper.preferredFilename =
        NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookDirectory.rawValue

    >

    // Remove the old QuickLook folder if it existed
    if let oldQuickLookFolder = self.documentFileWrapper
        .fileWrappers?[NoteDocumentFileNames.QuickLookDirectory.rawValue] {
        self.documentFileWrapper.removeFileWrapper(oldQuickLookFolder)
    }

    >

    // Add the new QuickLook folder
    self.documentFileWrapper.addFileWrapper(quickLookFolderFileWrapper)

    self.documentFileWrapper.addRegularFileWithContents(textRTFData,
        preferredFilename: NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue)

    return self.documentFileWrapper
}
```

Again, this is almost identical to the code seen in the Mac version: we create a file wrapper for the *QuickLook* folder, as well as file wrappers for both the thumbnail and preview file. We then remove the old *QuickLook* folder, if it exists, and add the new one to the document.

3. Run the app. When you close a document, it will update its Quick Look thumbnail.

Conclusion

We've now added a significant new feature to the iOS app. As a result, we're almost at feature parity with the Mac app; from now on, it's nothing but awesome new features. In the next chapter, we'll add the ability to create and add brand-new attachments, straight from the iOS app.

Images and Deletion

In this chapter, we'll add the interface that allows the user to create new attachments in the iOS version. Once that's done, we'll create the first attachment viewing interface, for image attachments, and then add the ability to remove attachments from Notes documents.

Adding Attachments

First, we'll get started by letting users add new attachments to their documents.

In order to be able to create and add new attachments, we need to create an interface that lets the user choose which type of attachment to add. Initially, this will only present a single option. This will be a popover on iPad, and a modal display on iPhone; additionally, on the iPhone, we need to add the controls that will allow the user to cancel selecting it.



A *popover* is a view that floats above the rest of your app. Popovers are great for presenting information about a specific item on the screen, or to provide access to tools, settings, or actions for a specific object. Popovers are most commonly used on the iPad, which is what we're doing here, where a modal view would really pull users out of what they're doing. We're using a modal view on non-iPad devices, where we have less available screen space.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
2. Add a new method to the `DocumentViewController` class:

```
func addAttachment(sourceView : UIView) {  
    let actionSheet  
        = UIAlertController(title: "Add attachment",
```

```

        message: nil,
        preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle
            .ActionSheet)

actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Cancel",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel, handler: nil))

// If this is on an iPad, present it in a popover connected
// to the source view
if UI_USER_INTERFACE_IDIOM() == UIUserInterfaceIdiom.Pad {

    actionSheet.modalPresentationStyle
        = .Popover
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceView
        = sourceView
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceRect
        = sourceView.bounds
}

self.presentViewController(actionSheet, animated: true,
completion: nil)

}

```

We'll be returning to this method several times, as we add support for other types of attachments. At the moment, all it does is present a `UIAlertSheet` that contains a single option, which closes it. However, note the `sourceView` parameter that gets passed to this method. This is used on the iPad, where the action sheet will be presented in a popover, which is visually attached to the `sourceView`'s location on screen.

3. Add the `collectionView(_:, didSelectItemAtIndexPath)` method to the extension that implements the `UICollectionViewDelegate` protocol. This method is run when the user taps on a cell in the attachment view; to start, we'll detect if the user tapped on the add cell and call the `addAttachment` method.

```

func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Get the cell that the user interacted with;
    // bail if we can't get it
    guard let selectedCell = collectionView
        .cellForItemAtIndexPath(indexPath) else {
        return
    }

    // Work out how many cells we have
    let totalNumberOfCells = collectionView
        .numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

```

```
// If we have selected the last cell, show the Add screen
if indexPath.row == totalNumberOfCells-1 {
    addAttachment(selectedCell)
}
}
```

This method is run whenever the user taps on a cell in the attachments list. Eventually, we'll extend this method to actually open attachments that the user taps on; for now, we'll just detect whether the user has tapped the last cell in the list. We do this by asking the collection view to tell us how many cells exist in the collection, as well as asking for the actual `UICollectionViewCell` object that the user has tapped on. If the index path of the selected cell represents the last item in the list, we call `addAttachment` method, passing in the cell.



Remember, an `UICollectionViewCell` is a view, which means the `addAttachment` method is able to use it to present its popover relative to the cell's position. In other words, the popover can appear attached to the add button.

4. Run the app, and open a document. Tap the add button, and you'll get a modal screen on iPhone and a popover on iPad.

Adding Image Attachments

Currently, the list of possible attachments that users can add is empty; all they can do is dismiss the pop up. We'll add a method that shows the camera and lets the user take a photo, which is then added as an attachment.

To do this, we'll be using `UIImagePickerController`, which provides Apple-created interfaces for capturing images and movies, as well as the gallery of previously captured images and movies. All interaction in the `UIImagePickerController` is provided and handled for you, with the results passed to a delegate object.



`UIImagePickerController` can have different source types assigned to it: the camera, for taking new images or movies, or the photo library, for choosing from existing images and movies from which to choose. In this app, we only use the source type of `UIImagePickerControllerSourceTypeCamera`, but you could very easily extend it to support the photo gallery as well, by providing access to a `UIImagePickerController` with a source type of `UIImagePickerControllerSourceTypePhotoLibrary`. You can learn more in [Apple's `UIImagePickerController` class reference](#).

1. First, because captured images will arrive as raw chunks of data, we need a way to add them as attachments to the document. Open *Document.swift* and add the following method to the Document class:

```
func addAttachmentWithData(data: NSData, name: String) throws {  
  
    guard attachmentsDirectoryWrapper != nil else {  
        throw err(.CannotAccessAttachments)  
    }  
  
    let newAttachment = NSFFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: data)  
  
    newAttachment.preferredFilename = name  
  
    attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.addFileWrapper(newAttachment)  
  
    self.updateChangeCount(.Done)  
}
```

This method takes an `NSData` that should be added to the document, as well as its filename. `NSData` objects on their own don't have any concept of a filename, so it needs to be a separate parameter.

To add the data, we construct an `NSFileWrapper` using the `regularFileWithContents` initializer, which takes the `NSData` object. We then provide the new file wrapper with a name and add it to the *Attachments* folder, just like we do in `addAttachmentAtURL`. Finally, we update the change count, marking the document in need of saving.

2. Next, we'll add a method that presents a `UIImagePickerController`. Open *DocumentViewController.swift*, and add the following method to `DocumentViewController`:

```
func addPhoto() {  
    let picker = UIImagePickerController()  
  
    picker.sourceType = .Camera  
  
    picker.delegate = self  
  
    self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false  
  
    self.presentViewController(picker, animated: true, completion: nil)  
}
```



You'll get a compiler error on the line that sets `delegate` to `self`, saying that the class doesn't conform to the protocol. Don't panic: we're about to tackle that next.

The `addPhoto` method creates a `UIImagePickerController`, which is a view controller that lets the user either take a photo using the built-in camera, or select a photo from the photo library. In this case, we're specifying that we want to use the camera. We then instruct it that we want it to contact this object when the user takes a photo, by setting its `delegate` to `self`; set the `shouldCloseOnDisappear` flag to `false` to prevent `viewWillDisappear` from closing the document when the image picker view controller appears; and then present the view controller.

3. Add the following extension to `DocumentViewController`, which adds support for dealing with the `UIImagePickerController`:

```
extension DocumentViewController : UIImagePickerControllerDelegate,  
    UINavigationControllerDelegate {  
  
    func imagePickerController(picker: UIImagePickerController,  
        didFinishPickingMediaWithInfo info: [String : AnyObject]) {  
        do {  
  
            if let image = (info[UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage]  
                ?? info[UIImagePickerControllerOriginalImage])  
                as? UIImage,  
                let imageData = UIImageJPEGRepresentation(image, 0.8)  
            {  
  
                try self.document?.addAttachmentWithData(imageData,  
                    name: "Image \u{1f3c4}random().jpg")  
  
                self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()  
  
            } else {  
                throw err(.CannotSaveAttachment)  
            }  
        } catch let error as NSError {  
            NSLog("Error adding attachment: \(error)")  
        }  
  
        self.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true, completion: nil)  
    }  
}
```

By extending the `DocumentViewController` to conform the `UIImagePickerControllerDelegate` protocol, we're enabling the view controller to respond when the user takes a photo. When the user takes a photo, the `didFinishPickingMediaWithInfo` method is called, which receives a dictionary describing the media that the user selected. This dictionary can contain quite a lot of stuff, but we specifically want the photo that the user has taken.

The photo can be in one of two possible places in this dictionary. If the user took a photo and then edited it (such as by cropping it, which the `UIImagePickerController` supports), then the image will be in the dictionary under the `UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage` key. Otherwise, if the user has not edited it, we can access the image through the `UIImagePickerControllerOriginalImage` key.



If the user edits the photo, *both* the edited and original images will be available. However, unless you have a specific reason for doing otherwise, you should *always* use the edited version to avoid throwing away the user's editing efforts. However, unless the user actually *did* edit the image, `UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage` will be `nil`. For that reason, we try to access the edited image first and then fall back the original image if it's `nil`.

Once we have the image, we encode it to JPEG, using the `UIImageJPEGRepresentation` function. This function takes a `UIImage`, as well as a compression factor, which is a float ranging from 0 (lowest size) to 1 (highest quality); a good compromise value is 0.8, which we're using here. This function returns an `NSData` object, which means we can just call the `Document` object's `addAttachmentWithData` method.

Then we dismiss the entire image picker by calling `dismissViewControllerAnimated`.

4. Lastly, we need to add the buttons that actually presents the camera. Go to the top of the file, and import the `AVFoundation` framework:

```
import AVFoundation
```



This isn't strictly necessary to access the camera, but it *is* required to determine whether you have permission to access the camera.

5. Add the following code to the `addAttachment` method to add the Camera entry to the attachment pop up. This button will either show the camera or ask the user for permission to go to the Settings app to enable access to the camera. In addition, we'll also add a cancel button that closes the pop up:

```
func addAttachment(sourceView : UIView) {
    let actionSheet
        = UIAlertController(title: "Add attachment",
                           message: nil,
                           preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle
                           .ActionSheet)

>    // If a camera is available to use...
>    if UIImagePickerController
>        .isSourceTypeAvailable(UIImagePickerControllerSourceType.Camera) {
>            // This variable contains a closure that shows the
>            // image picker, or asks the user to grant permission.
>            var handler : (action:UIAlertAction) -> Void

>
>            switch AVCaptureDevice
>                .authorizationStatusForMediaType(AMMediaTypeVideo) {
>                case .Authorized:
>                    fallthrough
>                case .NotDetermined:
>                    // If we have permission, or we don't know if it's
>                    // been denied, then the closure shows the image picker.
>                    handler = { (action) in
>                        self.addPhoto()
>                    }
>                default:
>
>                    // Otherwise, when the button is tapped, ask for permission.
>                    handler = { (action) in

>
>                        let title = "Camera access required"
>                        let message = "Go to Settings to grant permission to" +
>                            "access the camera."
>                        let cancelButtonTitle = "Cancel"
>                        let settingsButton = "Settings"

>
>                        let alert = UIAlertController(title: title,
>                           message: message,
>                           preferredStyle: .Alert)

>
>                        // The Cancel button just closes the alert.
>                        alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: cancelButtonTitle,
>                           style: .Cancel, handler: nil))

>
>                        // The Settings button opens this app's settings page,
>                        // allowing the user to grant us permission.
>
```

```

>         alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: settingsButton,
>                                         style: .Default, handler: { (action) in
>
>             if let settingsURL = NSURL(
>                 string: UIApplicationOpenSettingsURLString) {
>
>                 UIApplication.sharedApplication()
>                     .openURL(settingsURL)
>             }
>
>         }))
>
>         self.presentViewController(alert,
>                                     animated: true,
>                                     completion: nil)
>     }
>
> }
>
> // Either way, show the Camera item; when it's selected, the
> // appropriate code will run.
> actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Camera",
>                                     style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: handler))
> }

actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Cancel",
                                   style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel, handler: nil))

// If this is on an iPad, present it in a popover connected
// to the source view
if UI_USER_INTERFACE_IDIOM() == UIUserInterfaceIdiom.Pad {

    actionSheet.modalPresentationStyle
        = .Popover
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceView
        = sourceView
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceRect
        = sourceView.bounds
}

self.presentViewController(actionSheet, animated: true,
                           completion: nil)

}

```

This code does quite a bit. First, it asks the `UIImagePickerController` class to determine if a camera of any kind is available. If it's not—which is the case on the iOS simulator—then there's no point in offering the camera as an option.



Running Code on the Device

If you aren't already, now's a good time to run your app on the device. To do this, make sure that you're signed in to your iOS developer account by opening the Xcode menu, choosing Preferences, opening the Accounts tab, and adding your Apple ID. Once you've signed in, connect your device to your computer using the USB cable, and open the scheme selector at the top-left of the Xcode window. Select your device and then click the Run button. Xcode will compile and install your app on your device.

We then create a variable that holds the action that will run when the user taps on the Camera option in the list of possible attachments to add. The actual code that goes into this variable will depend on whether the user has granted permission to access the camera. If the app has explicit permission or the user hasn't yet decided, then the closure will simply call the `addPhoto` method, which presents the `UIImagePickerController`. When it appears, the image picker will ask the user for permission to access the camera if it hasn't already been granted.

If the user has explicitly *denied* permission, then we can't present the image picker controller. If we did, the image picker won't ask for permission a second time, and as a result, the user would be looking at useless, black screen. Instead, we prepare a dialog box that explains the situation, and includes an action that, when tapped, takes the user to the Settings screen to enable the app to have access.



As we mentioned earlier, you could extend this to support using photos from the device photo gallery.

6. Run the app. You can now add images to documents, and they'll appear in the list of attachments.

Viewing Attachments

Because there are multiple different types of attachment, it doesn't make much sense to duplicate the "show a view controller" code for each one. We're going to create a new view controller for each type of attachment, but we don't want to have to write the same code over and over again for showing each different type of view controller. It doesn't make sense to repeat things like "if it's an image segue, then get the image view controller and give it the image."

Instead, we'll create a protocol for these view controllers, which means we can treat them all the same way: we'll just give them the `NSFileWrapper` that represents the attachment, and they can do whatever they need to it. This way we only need to write the code to show an attachment once.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
2. Add the `AttachmentViewer` protocol:

```
protocol AttachmentViewer : NSObjectProtocol {  
  
    // The attachment to view. If this is nil,  
    // the viewer should instead attempt to create a new  
    // attachment, if applicable.  
    var attachmentFile : NSFileWrapper? { get set }  
  
    // The document attached to this file  
    var document : Document? { get set }  
}
```

Classes that conform to the `AttachmentViewer` protocol need to have two properties: the `attachmentFile` property, which is an optional `NSFileWrapper`, and the `document` property, which is an optional `Document`. Each of the view controllers that we'll be making will conform to this protocol, meaning that they can all be treated in the same way, and the `DocumentViewController` won't have to care about the specific type of each attachment view controller it presents.

Next, we'll implement the view controller that displays the image.

1. Open the File menu and choose New → File.
2. Select Cocoa Touch Class and click Next.
3. Name the new class `ImageAttachmentViewController` and make it a subclass of `UIViewController`.
4. Open `ImageAttachmentViewController.swift`, and make the class conform to the `AttachmentViewer` protocol.



Doing this will simplify how `DocumentViewController` works with the view controller, when we get to it later in this chapter.

```
class ImageAttachmentViewController: UIViewController, AttachmentViewer {
```

5. Add an `imageView` outlet:

```
@IBOutlet weak var imageView : UIImageView?
```

6. Add an `attachmentFile` and `document` property, to conform to the `AttachmentViewer` protocol:

```
var attachmentFile : NSFfileWrapper?
```

```
var document : Document?
```

7. Implement `viewDidLoad` to load the image from the data:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {  
    super.viewDidLoad()  
  
    // If we have data, and can make an image out of it...  
    if let data = attachmentFile?.regularFileContents,  
        let image = UIImage(data: data) {  
        // Set the image  
        self.imageView?.image = image  
  
    }  
}
```

When the view loads, we need to present whatever image is represented by the attachment given to this view controller by the `DocumentViewController`. We'll be making `DocumentViewController` actually give the view controller its attachment shortly.

To display it, we grab whatever `NSData` is inside the file wrapper and attempt to make a `UIImage` out of it. If this succeeds, we pass this image to the `UIImageView` for it to display.

Next, we'll set up the interface for this new view controller.

1. Open `Main.storyboard` and add a new `UIViewController`.
2. Select the new view controller and go to the Identity Inspector.
3. Change its class to `ImageAttachmentViewController`.
4. Select the view and go to the Attributes Inspector.
5. Change the background color to black ([Figure 11-1](#)).

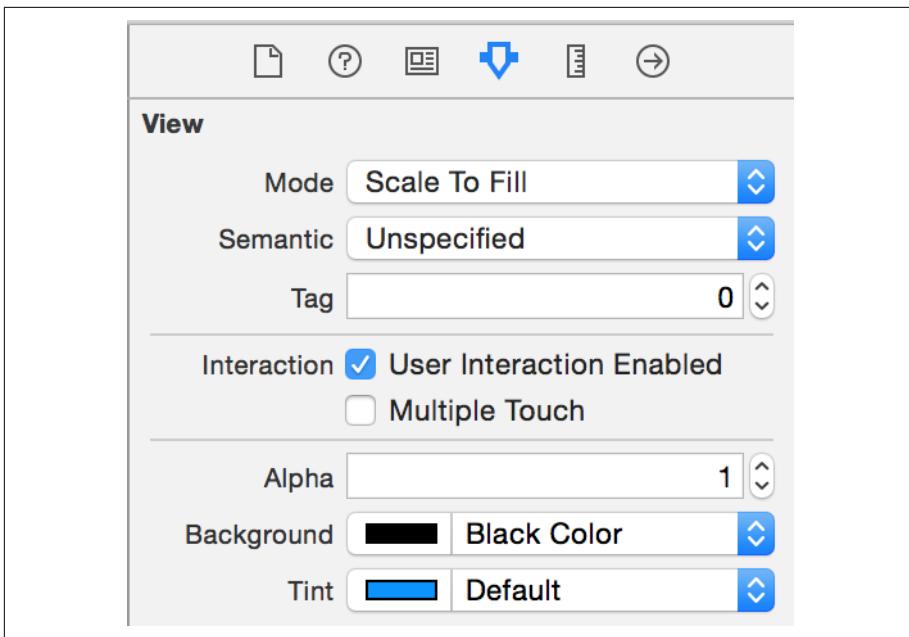


Figure 11-1. Updating the background color

6. Drag in a UIImageView and add constraints to make it fill the screen.
7. Go to the Attributes Inspector and set its Content Mode to Aspect Fit.
8. Hold down the Control key and drag from the image attachment view controller in the outline to the image view. Select the `imageView` outlet from the list that appears.

The interface should now look like [Figure 11-2](#).

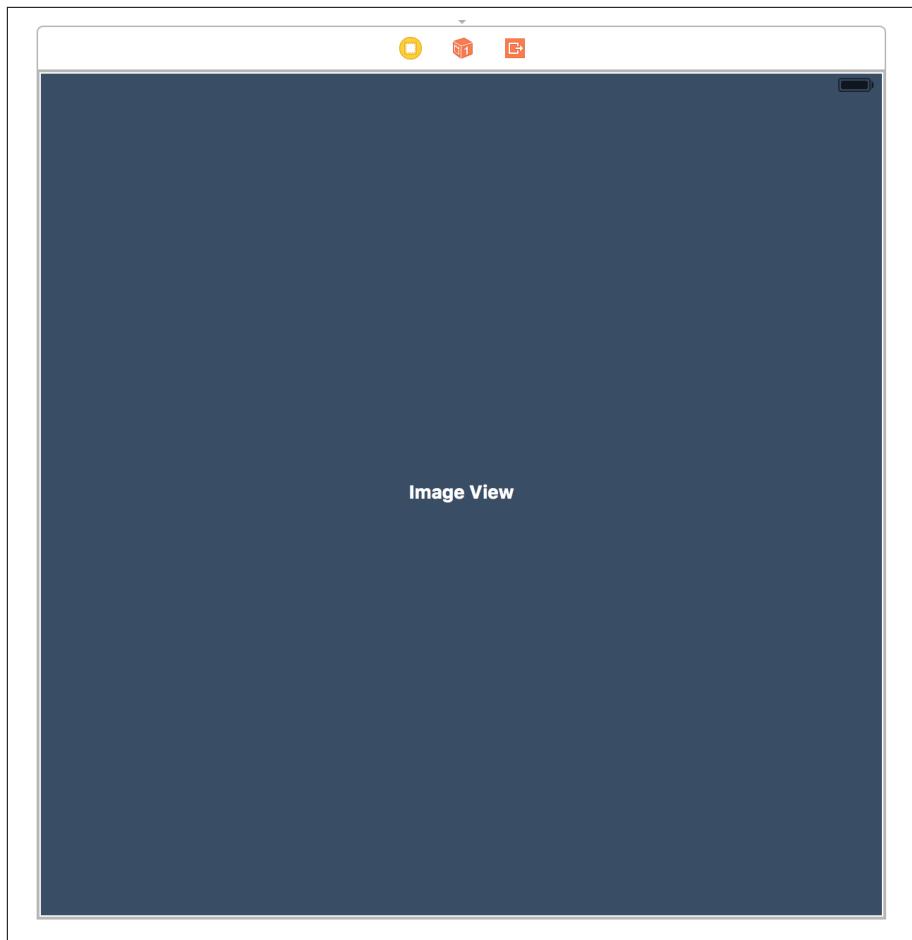


Figure 11-2. The laid-out image view

We'll now create a segue that connects this image attachment view controller to the document view controller.

1. In the outline, hold down the Control key and drag from the document view controller to the image attachment view controller. When prompted, choose to make a “present as popover” segue.
2. Select the new segue and go to the Attributes Inspector.
3. Set the identifier of the new segue to `ShowImageAttachment`.

4. Drag from the well in the Anchor slot in the Attributes Inspector to the document view controller's view. The Anchor is the view that the popover will be attached to.

Next, we'll add support for triggering a segue when an attachment is tapped. Importantly, we need to detect the type of the attachment and use that to determine which segue to use.

1. Open *DocumentViewController.swift* and add the following line of code to the top of the file, next to the other `import` statements:

```
import MobileCoreServices
```

2. Next, add code in `didSelectItemAtIndexPath` to detect the type of the attachment and trigger a segue:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Do nothing if we are editing
    if self.isEditingAttachments {
        return
    }

    // Get the cell that the user interacted with;
    // bail if we can't get it
    guard let selectedCell = collectionView
        .cellForItemAtIndexPath(indexPath) else {
        return
    }

    // Work out how many cells we have
    let totalNumberOfCells = collectionView
        .numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

    // If we have selected the last cell, show the Add screen
    if indexPath.row == totalNumberOfCells-1 {
        addAttachment(selectedCell)
    }
    else {
        // Otherwise, show a different view controller
        // based on the type of the attachment
        guard let attachment = self.document?
            .attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] else {
            NSLog("No attachment for this cell!")
            return
        }

        let segueName : String?
```

```

>
>     if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {
>         segueName = "ShowImageAttachment"
>
>     } else {
>
>         segueName = nil
>     }
>
>     // If we have a segue, run it now
>     if let theSegue = segueName {
>         self.performSegueWithIdentifier(theSegue,
>             sender: selectedCell)
>     }
>
> }
>
}

```

Our earlier implementation of `didSelectItemAtIndexPath` simply detected if the user was tapping the last cell, which resulted in the *new attachment* list appearing. However, we now need to handle what to do when the user taps on any of the actual attachment cells.

First, we attempt to get whatever attachment the selected cell represents by asking the document's `attachedFiles` array to give us the appropriate `NSFileWrapper`. Next, we need to decide what segue to run, based on the type of the attachment. Different types of attachments will require different view controllers, and each view controller will need a different segue to reach it.

At the moment, the only type of attachment that we have is images, so we simply ask the `attachment` if it conforms to the “image” type. If it does, then the name of the segue we need to run is `ShowImageAttachment`.

Finally, if we have a segue to run, we perform it.



We'll be adding more to this part of the method as we add more attachment types.

1. Add the `prepareForSegue` method to the `DocumentViewController` class, which gives the attachment to the view controller:

```

override func prepareForSegue(segue: UIStoryboardSegue,
    sender: AnyObject?) {

```

```
// If we're going to an AttachmentViewer...
```

```

if let attachmentViewer
    = segue.destinationViewController as? AttachmentViewer {

    // Give the attachment viewer our document
    attachmentViewer.document = self.document!

    // If we were coming from a cell, get the attachment
    // that this cell represents so that we can view it
    if let cell = sender as? UICollectionViewCell,
        let indexPath =
            self.attachmentsCollectionView?.indexPathForCell(cell),
        let attachment = self.document?.attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] {

            attachmentViewer.attachmentFile = attachment
        } else {
            // We don't have an attachment
        }

    // Don't close the document when showing the view controller
    self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false

    // If this has a popover, present it from the attachments list
    if let popover =
        segue.destinationViewController.popoverPresentationController {

        popover.sourceView = self.attachmentsCollectionView
        popover.sourceRect = self.attachmentsCollectionView.bounds

    }
}

}

```

It's in this method that we can take advantage of the `AttachmentViewer` protocol. Remember, `ImageAttachmentViewController` is an `AttachmentViewer`, and so will be every other view controller that can display an attachment. As a result, the `prepareForSegue` method doesn't have to be able to tell the difference between the different view controllers that will be presenting the attachment; all it needs to do is give the attachment viewer its attachment.

To do this, it first checks to see if the `sender` of this segue—that is, the object that was passed in as the `sender` parameter to `performSegueWithIdentifier`—is a `UICollectionViewCell`. If it is, we can figure out the attachment by asking the collection view for its index path and use that to get the attachment filewrapper.



If there's no attachment available, then that's not a problem—instead, the attachment view controller will be presented with no attachment and will let the user create a new one. This doesn't apply to the image view controller, because images get created by one type of view controller and viewed by another, but it will apply to other types of attachments.

2. Run the app. You can now tap image attachments and view them!

However, there's a problem on the iPhone: it lacks any way to close the view controller. The view will appear, but there won't be a close button. Let's add that.

3. In the `prepareForSegue` method, set up the view controller to make the popover controller its delegate. You'll get a compiler error, saying that `DocumentViewController` doesn't conform to the necessary protocol. Don't worry—we'll fix that in a moment:

```
override func prepareForSegue(segue: UIStoryboardSegue,
sender: AnyObject?) {

    // If we're going to an AttachmentViewer...
    if let attachmentViewer =
        = segue.destinationViewController as? AttachmentViewer {

        // Give the attachment viewer our document
        attachmentViewer.document = self.document!

        // If we were coming from a cell, get the attachment
        // that this cell represents so that we can view it
        if let cell = sender as? UICollectionViewCell,
            let indexPath =
                self.attachmentsCollectionView?.indexPathForCell(cell),
            let attachment = self.document?.attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] {

            attachmentViewer.attachmentFile = attachment
        } else {
            // We don't have an attachment
        }

        // If this has a popover, present it from the attachments list
        if let popover =
            segue.destinationViewController.popoverPresentationController {

            > // Ensure that we add a close button to the
            > // popover on iPhone
            popover.delegate = self

            popover.sourceView = self.attachmentsCollectionView
            popover.sourceRect = self.attachmentsCollectionView.bounds
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

4. Next, add the extension to `DocumentViewController` that makes it conform to `UIPopoverPresentationControllerDelegate`:

```
extension DocumentViewController : UIPopoverPresentationControllerDelegate
{
    // Called by the system to determine which view controller
    // should be the content of the popover
    func presentationController(controller: UIPresentationController,
        viewControllerForAdaptivePresentationStyle
        style: UIModalPresentationStyle) -> UIViewController? {
        // Get the view controller that we want to present
        let presentedViewController = controller.presentedViewController

        // If we're showing a popover, and that popover is being shown
        // as a fullscreen modal (which happens on iPhone).
        if style == UIModalPresentationStyle.FullScreen && controller
            is UIPopoverPresentationController {

            // Create a navigation controller that contains the content
            let navigationController =
                UINavigationController(rootViewController:
                    controller.presentedViewController)

            // Create and set up a "Done" button, and add it to the
            // navigation controller.
            // It will call the 'dismissModalView' button, below
            let closeButton = UIBarButtonItem(title: "Done",
                style: UIBarButtonItemStyle.Done, target: self,
                action: "dismissModalView")

            presentedViewController.navigationItem
                .rightBarButtonItem = closeButton

            // Tell the system that the content should be this new
            // navigation controller.
            return navigationController
        } else {
            // Just return the content
            return presentedViewController
        }
    }
}
```

```
func dismissModalView() {
    self.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true, completion: nil)
}
```

When a view controller is shown in a popover, the popover is managed by a `UIPopoverPresentationController`. This object manages the contents of the popover and gives us an opportunity to make changes to how the view controller is presented.

Specifically, if the view controller is being presented on an iPhone, we want to wrap the view controller in a navigation controller. Doing this means that the view controller will have a navigation bar at the top, in which we can place a Done button. When this button is tapped, we want the current view controller—that is, the `DocumentViewController`—to dismiss the attachment view controller.

However, on the iPad, we don't need to do this, because when you tap outside the view controller, the popover is closed. We therefore *shouldn't* do this extra work of adding and configuring a Done button if we're not running on the iPad.

There's one last consideration we need to take. So far in this chunk of code, we've been mostly talking about how we need to perform differently when we're on the iPad, but that's not precisely correct. The reason why this needs to behave differently is because, on the iPhone, when you request a popover, it will slide up from the bottom of the screen, covering everything else. This is due to the extremely limited screen space available on the phone: there's no point in wasting the space around the edges of the screen.

This is usually not a concern on the iPad, but things can change when the iPad is displayed in a split-screen view. If you're in another app, and you swipe from the right hand side of the screen, you can summon the Notes application and place it in a little bar, roughly one-third the width of the screen. When this happens, the app is practically just a tall iPhone.

Because applications can change their presentation styles, it's almost always better to ask yourself what is the specific behavior you're trying to deal with. Don't simply assume that the iPad behaves one way, and the iPhone behaves another.

So, rather than simply ask, "Are we on the iPad?" we'll instead check to see what style of presentation the popover is using. If it's `.FullScreen`, then we need to add the Done button.

The most straightforward way to add a navigation bar to the top of the content view controller is to put that view controller in a navigation controller. While it's *possible* to reach into the content view controller and insert a `UINavigationBar` into the top of the screen, you would then have to ensure that the navigation bar you've just added doesn't cover anything else up. It's easier to simply get a naviga-

tion controller, which takes care of resizing the content view controller's view to make room for the navigation bar.

So, we do this and embed the content view controller in the new navigation controller. We then create a new `UIBarButtonItem` and add it to the content view controller's `UINavigationItem`, which causes the button to appear at the top right. When the button is being created, we set its `target` to `self` (that is, the `DocumentViewController`) and the `action` to `dismissModalView`. This is a new method that simply calls `dismissViewControllerAnimated`; when this happens, the popover is dismissed.

Lastly, the navigation controller that now contains the content view controller is returned.

5. Run the application. You'll now have a close button when on the iPhone.

Deleting Attachments

We'll use the standard deleting gesture: when you tap and hold an attachment, we'll display a delete button. To detect when the user touches and holds on a cell, we'll use a gesture recognizer. Just as with the tap gesture recognizer that we added to the labels in the `DocumentListViewController` in “[Renaming Documents](#)” on page 238, we'll add a long-press gesture recognizer to detect when the user holds a finger down on the attachment. When the user does this, deletion buttons will appear, allowing the user to remove attachments. When these delete buttons appear, we also need a way to cancel deletion.



So far in this book, we've seen tap gesture recognizers, and we're about to start looking at long-press recognizers. There are several other types of recognizers available:

- Pan recognizers detect when a finger drags over the screen.
- Pinch recognizers detect when two fingers are placed on the screen and are moved together or away from each other.
- Rotation recognizers detect when two fingers are placed on the screen and then rotated around a central point.
- Swipe recognizers detect when a finger makes a swiping motion.
- Screen-edge swipe recognizers detect when a finger makes a swiping motion that begins off-screen.

We'll add a delegate protocol that lets cells notify their delegate that they've been deleted.

1. Add the `AttachmentCellDelegate` protocol to `DocumentViewController.swift`:

```
protocol AttachmentCellDelegate {
    func attachmentCellWasDeleted(cell: AttachmentCell)
}
```

2. Go to the `AttachmentCell` class, also in `DocumentViewController.swift`.

3. Add the following code to the class:

```
class AttachmentCell : UICollectionViewCell {

    @IBOutlet weak var imageView : UIImageView?

    @IBOutlet weak var extensionLabel : UILabel?

    >    @IBOutlet weak var deleteButton : UIButton?

    >
    >    var editMode = false {
    >        didSet {
    >            // Full alpha if we're editing, zero if we're not
    >            deleteButton?.alpha = editMode ? 1 : 0
    >        }
    >
    >        var delegate : AttachmentCellDelegate?
    >
    >        @IBAction func delete() {
    >            self.delegate?.attachmentCellWasDeleted(self)
    >        }
    >
    >    }
}
```

4. Add the `isEditingAttachments` property to `DocumentViewController`, which keeps track of whether the delete button attached to each cell should appear or not:

```
private var isEditingAttachments = false
```

5. In `cellForItemAtIndexPath`, set the `editMode` property of `AttachmentCell` to true if the view controller is in Edit mode:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    cellForItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath)
-> UICollectionViewCell {

    // Work out how many cells we need to display
    let totalNumberOfCells =
        collectionView.numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)
```

```

// Figure out if we're being asked to configure the add cell,
// or any other cell. If we're the last cell, it's the add cell.
let isAddCell = (indexPath.row == (totalNumberOfCells - 1))

// The place to store the cell. By making it 'let', we're ensuring
// that we never accidentally fail to give it a value - the
// compiler will call us out.
let cell : UICollectionViewCell

// Create and return the 'add' cell if we need to
if isAddCell {
    cell = collectionView.dequeueReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier(
        "AddAttachmentCell", forIndexPath: indexPath)
} else {

    // This is a regular attachment cell

    // Get the cell
let attachmentCell = collectionView
    .dequeueReusableCellWithReuseIdentifier("AttachmentCell",
        forIndexPath: indexPath) as! AttachmentCell

    // Get a thumbnail image for the attachment
let attachment = self.document?.attachedFiles?[indexPath.row]
var image = attachment?.thumbnailImage()

    // Give it to the cell
if image == nil {

    // We don't know what it is, so use a generic image
image = UIImage(named: "File")

    // Also set the label
attachmentCell.extensionLabel?.text =
    attachment?.fileExtension?.uppercaseString

} else {
    // We know what it is, so ensure that the label is empty
    attachmentCell.extensionLabel?.text = nil
}
attachmentCell.imageView?.image = image

>      // The cell should be in Edit mode if the view controller is
>      attachmentCell.editMode = isEditingAttachments
>
    // Use this cell
cell = attachmentCell
}

```

```
        return cell
    }
```

This ensures that all newly created attachment cells have their deletion button's visibility correctly set.

6. Add the `beginEditMode` action method; this makes all visible cells enter their Edit mode and adds a Done button to the navigation bar:

```
func beginEditMode() {
    self.isEditingAttachments = true
    UIVView.animateWithDuration(0.1) { () -> Void in
        for cell in self.attachmentsCollectionView!.visibleCells() {
            if let attachmentCell = cell as? AttachmentCell {
                attachmentCell.editMode = true
            } else {
                cell.alpha = 0
            }
        }
    }
    let doneButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem:
        UIBarButtonSystemItem.Done, target: self, action: "endEditMode")
    self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = doneButton
}
```

This does three things. First, it causes every attachment cell to change its Edit mode, causing their delete button to appear. At the same time, it causes every *non*-attachment cell (that is, the *add* cell) to fade out to nothing.

Finally, it creates and adds a new bar button item, labeled Done, which calls the `endEditMode` method that we're about to add. It places it at the right hand side of the navigation bar.

7. Add the `endEditMode` method:

```
func endEditMode() {
    self.isEditingAttachments = false
    UIVView.animateWithDuration(0.1) { () -> Void in
        for cell in self.attachmentsCollectionView!.visibleCells() {
            if let attachmentCell = cell as? AttachmentCell {
                attachmentCell.editMode = false
            } else {

```

```

        cell.alpha = 1
    }
}

self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = nil
}

```

This method does the reverse of the `beginEditMode` method by making all visible `AttachmentCells` leave Edit mode, ensuring the add cell is visible, and removing the Done button.

8. Add code at the start of `didSelectItemAtIndexPath` to ensure that we don't try to view an attachment if we're in Edit mode:

```

// Do nothing if we are editing
if self.isEditingAttachments {
    return
}

```

Next, we'll add the button to the `AttachmentCell`, which will appear when the cell enters Edit mode (that is, when the user long-presses it).

1. Open `Main.storyboard`, and locate the `AttachmentCell` in the document view controller.
2. Drag a `UIButton` into the `AttachmentCell`.
3. Go to the Attributes Inspector and change its type to Custom.
4. Remove the button's label and set the image to Delete ([Figure 11-3](#)).

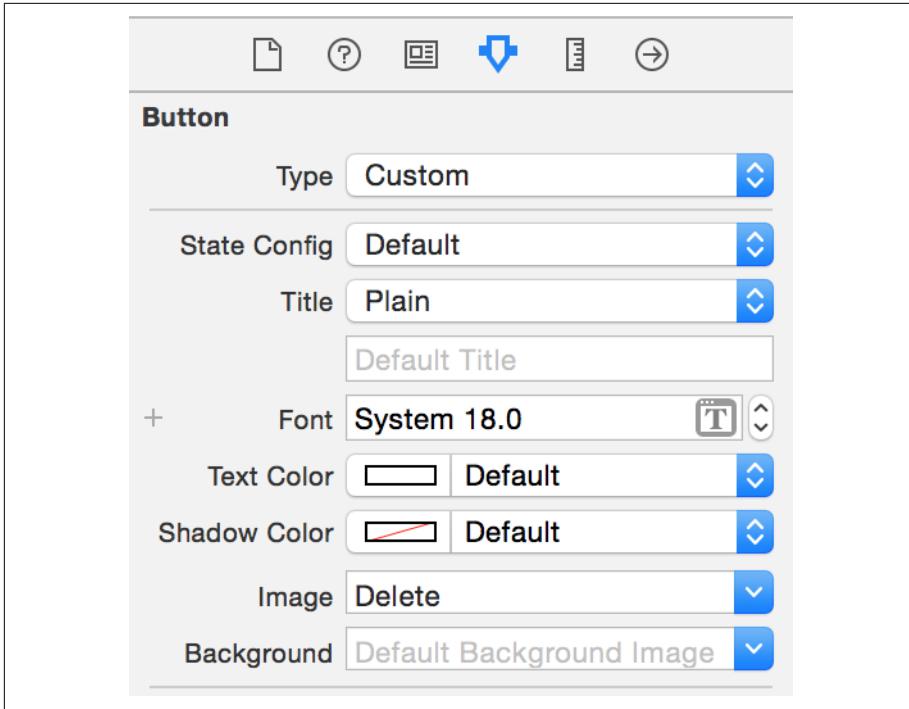


Figure 11-3. The delete button

5. Position the button at the top right of the cell, and add constraints that pin the top and right edges to the container.
6. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`, and locate the `AttachmentCell` class. Drag from the well next to the `deleteButton` outlet to the button you just added.
7. Hold down the Control key and drag from the `deleteButton` outlet to this button.
8. Add code in the `DocumentViewController`'s `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)` method to add a long-press gesture recognizer that enters Delete mode:

```
// The cell should be in Edit mode if the view controller is
attachmentCell.editMode = isEditingAttachments

> // Add a long-press gesture to it, if it doesn't
> // already have it
> let longPressGesture = UILongPressGestureRecognizer(target: self,
>     action: "beginEditMode")
> attachmentCell.gestureRecognizers = [longPressGesture]
```

Now we make the buttons actually delete stuff. We'll add a delegate protocol that lets cells notify their delegate that they've been deleted.

1. Add the `AttachmentCellDelegate` protocol to `DocumentViewController.swift`:

```
protocol AttachmentCellDelegate {
    func attachmentCellWasDeleted(cell: AttachmentCell)
}
```

2. Add the `delegate` property on `AttachmentCell`:

```
var delegate : AttachmentCellDelegate?
```

3. Open `Main.storyboard`, and open `DocumentViewController.swift` in the Assistant.
4. Hold down the Control key and drag from the delete button onto the `delete` method in the `AttachmentCell` class.
5. Open `Document.swift` and add the `deleteAttachment` method to the `Document` class, which removes an attachment:

```
func deleteAttachment(attachment: NSFileWrapper) throws {
    guard attachmentsDirectoryWrapper != nil else {
        throw err(.CannotAccessAttachments)
    }

    attachmentsDirectoryWrapper?.removeFileWrapper(attachment)

    self.updateChangeCount(.Done)
}
```

6. Go back to `DocumentViewController.swift`, and add an extension to `DocumentViewController` that conforms to `AttachmentCellDelegate`. We're adding this in an extension mostly to keep these methods visually separated in the code; it's purely a stylistic choice:

```
extension DocumentViewController : AttachmentCellDelegate {

    func attachmentCellWasDeleted(cell: AttachmentCell) {
        guard let indexPath = self.attachmentsCollectionView?
            .indexPathForCell(cell) else {
            return
        }

        guard let attachment = self.document?
            .attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] else {
            return
        }
        do {
            try self.document?.deleteAttachment(attachment)
        }
    }
}
```

```
        self.attachmentsCollectionView?
            .deleteItemsAtIndexPaths([indexPath])

        self.endEditMode()
    } catch let error as NSError {
        NSLog("Failed to delete attachment: \(error)")
    }

}
}
```

7. Add code to `collectionView(_:, cellForItemAtIndexPath:)` that sets the cell's delegate to `self`:

```
// Add a long-press gesture to it, if it doesn't
// already have it
let longPressGesture = UILongPressGestureRecognizer(target: self,
    action: "beginEditMode")
attachmentCell.gestureRecognizers = [longPressGesture]

> // Contact us when the user taps the delete button
> attachmentCell.delegate = self
```

8. Run the app—you can now delete attachments!

Conclusion

In this chapter, we created the interface that allows the user to create new attachments in the iOS version, and added support for viewing images attached to note documents and the ability to remove attachments from Notes documents.

Supporting the iOS Ecosystem

In this chapter, we'll add support for sharing, handoffs (so users can resume what they're doing on other iOS devices or in the OS X app), and search (so the iOS search system can be used to find text within note documents). All three of these features help to integrate your app into the wider context of the user's phone, which means that your app is no longer an island.

Sharing with `UIActivityController`

We'll start by adding sharing support to the image attachment view controller, as shown in [Figure 12-1](#).

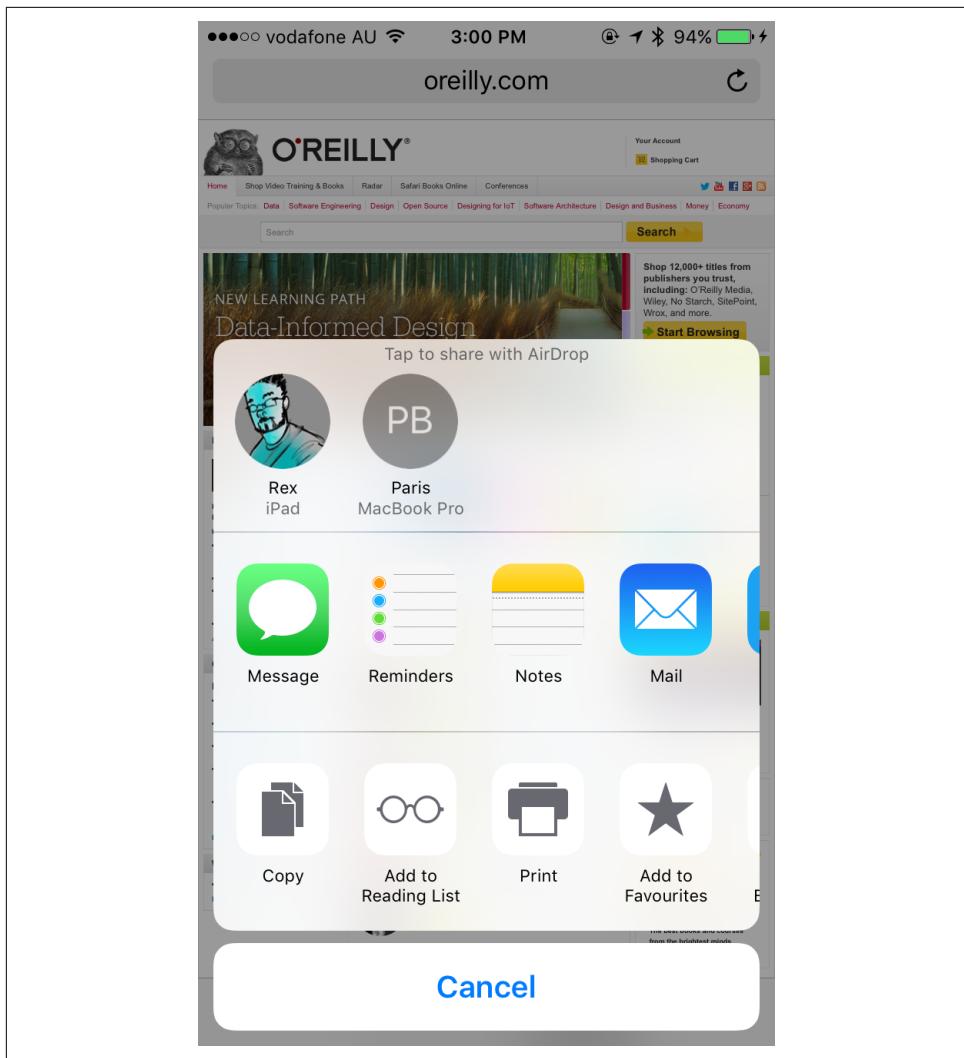


Figure 12-1. The standard iOS share sheet

Sharing on iOS is handled by `UIActivityViewController`, which provides a standard view controller offering system services, such as copy, paste, and so on, as well as sharing to social media, email, or text messaging. Other apps can also provide share destinations.

1. Open `Main.storyboard` and go to the image attachment view controller.

2. Add a UIToolBar from the Object library to the view and place it at the bottom of the screen. This will also include a UIBarButtonItem, which works pretty much exactly like our old friend UIButton, but is customized to work in toolbars.
3. Resize the toolbar to make it fit the width of the screen. Next, click on the Pin menu, and pin the left, right, and bottom edges of the view. This will keep it at the bottom of the screen and make it always fill the width of the screen.
4. Select the button and set its System Item property to Action, as shown in Figure 12-2. This will change its icon to the standard iOS share icon.

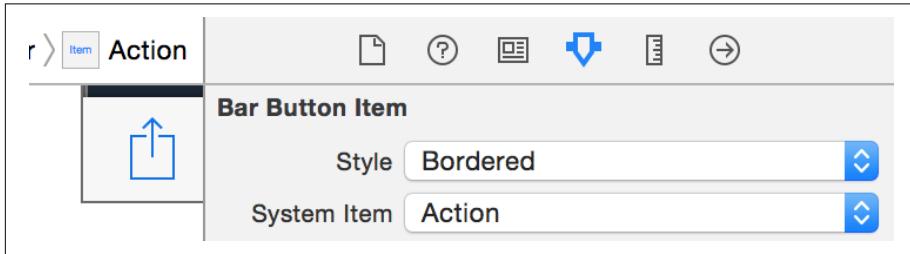


Figure 12-2. Setting the button to the Action mode

5. Open `ImageAttachmentViewController.swift` in the Assistant editor.
6. Hold down the Control key and drag from the toolbar button you just added into `ImageAttachmentViewController`. Create a new action called `shareImage`.
7. Add the following code to the `shareImage` method. Note that the type for the `sender` parameter is `UIBarButtonItem`—you'll need to change it when you start writing the code:

```
@IBAction func shareImage(sender: UIBarButtonItem) {

    // Ensure that we're actually showing an image
    guard let image = self.imageView?.image else {
        return
    }

    let activityController = UIActivityViewController(
        activityItems: [image], applicationActivities: nil)

    // If we are being presented in a window that's a regular width,
    // show it in a popover (rather than the default modal)
    if UIApplication.sharedApplication().keyWindow?.traitCollection
        .horizontalSizeClass == UIUserInterfaceSizeClass.Regular {
        activityController.modalPresentationStyle = .Popover

        activityController.popoverPresentationController?
            .barButtonItem = sender
    }
}
```

```
        self presentViewController(activityController, animated: true,  
                               completion: nil)  
  
    }
```

When the share button is tapped, we want to prepare and present a `UIActivityController`, which will allow the user to do something with the image. What that *something* actually is depends upon the capabilities of the system and the apps that the user has installed. To create it, you pass in an array of `activityItems`, which can be a wide variety of things: URLs, images, text, chunks of data, and so on. The `UIActivityController` will then determine what services can accept these items, and then let the user choose what to do.

When the app is being presented in a larger screen, such as on an iPhone 6+ or iPad, we want to show it as a popover. To detect this, we ask the window in which the app is running to tell us about its horizontal *size class*—that is, whether it is in a horizontally “compact” view, or a horizontally larger “regular” view. If it’s in a regular-sized view, we instruct the activity controller to use a popover, and we set the `barButtonItem` property on the `popoverPresentationController` to the `sender`, which will visually connect the popover to the share button in the toolbar.

Handoffs

Let’s imagine that your user’s on a bus, tapping out a note. She arrives at her stop, gets off the bus, and walks into the office, still writing the note. Eventually, she reaches her desk, and she wants to finish up the note. She *could* finish it up on the phone, but she’s right in front of a dedicated workstation. Rather than deal with a tiny touchscreen, she instead uses *Handoff* to move her work from her phone to the desktop.

Handoff is a technology on the Mac, iOS, and on watchOS that allows the user to start an activity on one device and seamlessly move to another device (see [Figure 12-3](#)). The way it works is this: applications register *activity types* with the system, which are simple text strings that are the same across all of the different apps that can receive the handoff. When the user opens a document, he marks it as the current *activity*; this makes the operating system broadcast this fact to all nearby devices. When the user decides to activate Handoff on another device, the originating device and the receiving device quickly swap information about what he wants to do, and the receiving device’s app delegate is then given the opportunity to continue the activity.

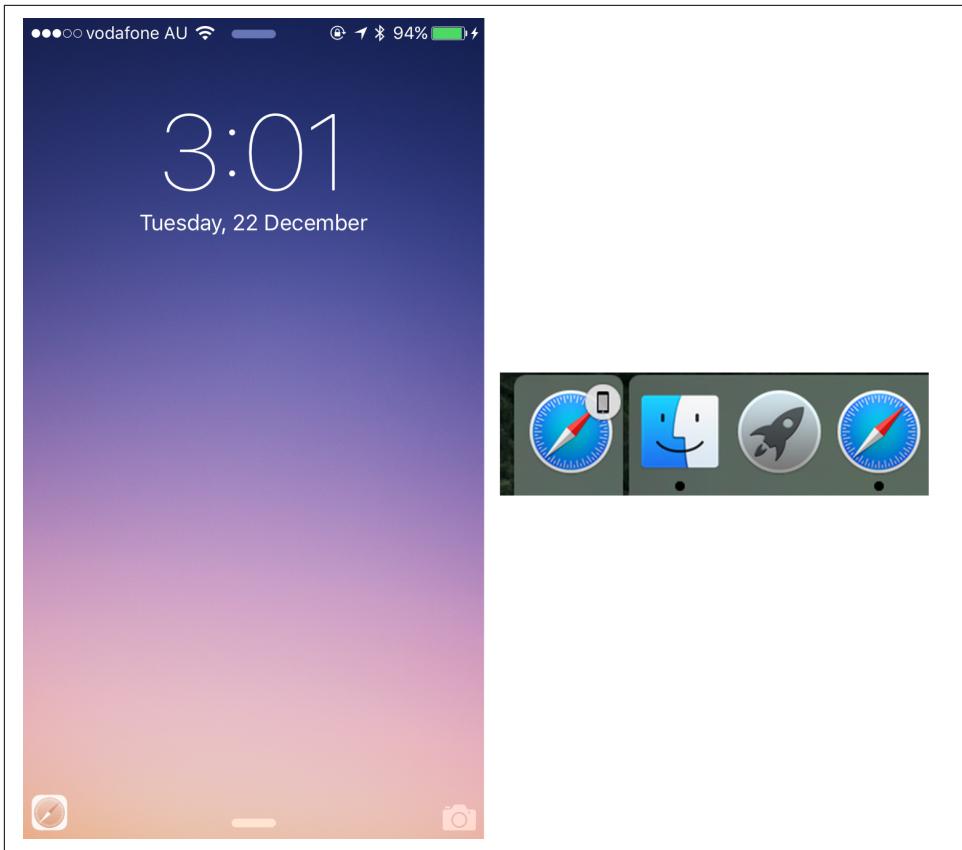


Figure 12-3. Handoffs working with Safari on iOS and OS X



Because we're using `NSDocument` and `UIDocument`, lots of the details of this get taken care of for you. If you weren't using the document system, you'd need to manually create your own `NSUserActivity` objects before calling `becomeCurrent`. For more information, see the [Handoff Programming Guide](#) in the Xcode documentation.

To get started using Handoff, we need to describe to the system the type of “activity” that is associated with editing this document. When we do this, the device will inform all other devices that belong to the same person that this specific document is being edited.

1. Select the project at the top of the Project Navigator ([Figure 12-4](#)).

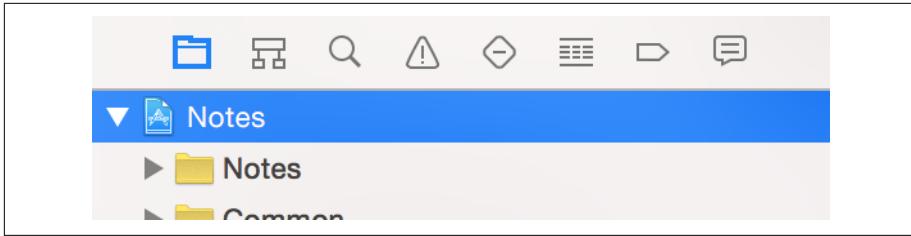


Figure 12-4. Selecting the project in the Project Navigator

2. Go to the Notes target settings (that is, the OS X app) and scroll down to the Document Types section.
3. Add a new entry in “Additional document type properties” by expanding the “Additional document type properties” triangle, selecting the `CFBundleTypos` entry, and clicking the + button that appears.
4. Call the new entry `NSUbiquitousDocumentUserActivityType` and set its type to `String`. Set its value to `au.com.secretlab.Notes.editing`.
5. Now go to the same place in Notes-iOS, and add the same entry.



If you have been using a custom bundleID throughout, make sure you use that here with `.editing` appended at the end. If you don't do this, handoffs will not work.

Once you've done this, the two applications will associate a Handoff-able activity with their document types. When the document is open, the app will be able to simply say to the system, “Begin broadcasting the fact that this document is open.”

6. Open the `AppDelegate.swift` file that belongs to the Notes-iOS target (not the OS X one!).
7. Implement the following method, which returns to the list of documents and then signals that that view controller should resume an activity:

```
func application(application: UIApplication,
    continueUserActivity userActivity: NSUserActivity,
    restorationHandler: ([AnyObject]?) -> Void) -> Bool {

    // Return to the list of documents
    if let navigationController =
        self.window?.rootViewController as? UINavigationController {

        navigationController.popToRootViewControllerAnimated(false)
```

```

    // We're now at the list of documents; tell the restoration
    // system that this view controller needs to be informed
    // that we're continuing the activity
    if let topViewController = navigationController.topViewController {
        restorationHandler([topViewController])
    }

    return true
}
return false
}

```

The `continueUserActivity` method is called when the user has decided to hand off the activity from one device to the next. The `userActivity` object contains the information describing what the user wants to do, and this method is responsible for telling the app what needs to happen to let the user pick up from where the last device left off.

It does this through the `restorationHandler` closure that it receives as a parameter. This closure takes an array of objects which the app should call the `restoreUserActivityState` method on; this method receives the `NSUserActivity` as a parameter, which can be used to continue the state.

The reason for doing this is to move as much of the logic that drives the continuation of the activity to the view controllers, instead of making the app delegate have to know about the details of how documents get opened.

The way that we'll handle this in this app is to return to the `DocumentListViewController`, and then indicate that the view controller should be told about the handoff by passing it to the `restorationHandler`.

8. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift`.
9. Add the following method to the `DocumentListViewController` class:

```

override func restoreUserActivityState(activity: NSUserActivity) {
    // We're being told to open a document

    if let url = activity.userInfo?[NSUserActivityDocumentURLKey]
    as? NSURL {

        // Open the document
        self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)
    }
}

```

This method is called as a result of passing the `DocumentListViewController` to the `restorationHandler` in `continueUserActivity`. Here, we extract the URL for the document that the user wants to open by getting it from the `NSUserActiv`

ity's `userInfo` dictionary, and then performing the `ShowDocument` segue, passing in the URL to open. This means that when the application is launched through the Handoff system, the document list will immediately open the document that the user wants.

10. Finally, add the following code to the `viewWillAppear` method of `DocumentViewController`, to make the activity current:

```
// If this document is not already open, open it
if document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.Closed) {
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
        if success == true {
            self.textView?.attributedText = document.text

            self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

        >           // We are now engaged in this activity
        >           document.userActivity?.becomeCurrent()

        // Register for state change notifications
        self.stateChangedObserver = NSNotificationCenter
            .defaultCenter().addObserverForName(
                UIDocumentStateChangedNotification,
                object: document,
                queue: nil,
                usingBlock: { (notification) -> Void in
                    self.documentStateChanged()
                }
            )

        self.documentStateChanged()
    }
}
```

Every `UIDocument` has an `NSUserActivity`. To indicate to the system, and to every other device that the user owns, that the user's current task is editing this document, we call `becomeCurrent` on the document's `userActivity`. This causes the current device to broadcast to all other devices in range, letting them know that we're offering to hand off this activity.

You can now test handoffs. Launch the iOS app on your phone, and then launch the OS X app. Open a document on your phone, and a Handoff icon will appear at the left of the dock on your Mac, as shown in [Figure 12-5](#).



Figure 12-5. Handoff on OS X

The reverse will also work on iOS: open a document on your Mac, and the iOS app's icon will appear on the lock screen (Figure 12-6).

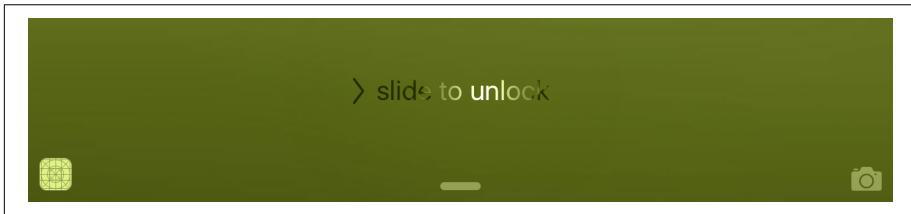


Figure 12-6. Handoff on iOS—the handoff icon is shown in the bottom-left corner

Searchability

The next feature we'll add is the ability for users to search the phone to find documents that they've written. There are three different searching technologies that we can use to support this: using `NSUserActivity` objects, Core Spotlight, and web indexing.

- `NSUserActivity` allows you to index parts of your app—for example, if you have an app that downloads and shows recipes, every time the user views a recipe, you record that as an activity and describe how to get back to this screen; Spotlight indexes this activity and displays it if the user searches for things that match the activity's description.
- Core Spotlight gives you control over the search index: you manually submit metadata items into the index. We'll be covering using Core Spotlight in “[Searching with a Spotlight Indexing Extension](#)” on page 322.
- Web indexing allows you to mark up websites for Apple's search crawler to view.



Because we're not building web apps in this book, we won't be covering web archiving. If you're interested in it, you can read more about it in the [App Search Programming Guide](#), in the Xcode documentation.

We'll be covering marking `NSUserActivity` objects as searchable in this chapter. In the next chapter, which covers creating extensions, we'll also talk about creating a Spotlight indexing extension, which provides additional search functionality by registering the contents of *all* documents in the app with Core Spotlight.

We'll start by adding support for indexing the app through `NSUserActivity`.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.
2. Import the Core Spotlight framework at the top of the file:

```
import CoreSpotlight
```

3. Update the `viewWillAppear` method to add searchable metadata to the document's user activity when the document is opened:

```
// If this document is not already open, open it
if document.documentState.contains(.Closed) {
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
        if success == .true {
            self.textView?.attributedText = document.text

            self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

        // Add support for searching for this document
        document.userActivity?.title = document.localizedDescription

        >
        let contentAttributeSet
        = CSSearchableItemAttributeSet(
            itemContentType: document.fileType!)

        >
        contentAttributeSet.title = document.localizedDescription
        contentAttributeSet.contentDescription = document.text.string

        >
        document.userActivity?.contentAttributeSet
        = contentAttributeSet

        >
        document.userActivity?.eligibleForSearch = .true

        // We are now engaged in this activity
        document.userActivity?.becomeCurrent()

        // Register for state change notifications
        self.stateChangedObserver = NotificationCenter
            .defaultCenter().addObserverForName(
```

```
    UIDocumentStateChangedNotification,
    object: document,
    queue: nil,
    usingBlock: { (notification) -> Void in
        self.documentStateChanged()
    })
}

self.documentStateChanged()

}
```

This code adds further metadata to the document's `userActivity`. First, it provides a name for the document, which will appear in the Spotlight search results. In addition, we create a `CSSearchableItemAttributeSet`, which is the (overcomplicated) term for "stuff the search system uses to decide if it's what the user's looking for." In this case, we provide two pieces of information: the name again, and the text of the document.

We then provide this to the `userActivity` and mark it as available for searching.

You can now test searching. Run the app and open a document. Type some words into the document, close the app, and go to the Search field (swipe down while on the home screen). Type in some of the words that you added to the document, and your document will appear! When you tap on the search result, the app will launch, and you'll be taken to the document.

Conclusion

When an application participates in the wider iOS ecosystem, it feels like it "belongs" on the user's device. When you take advantage of as many system features as possible, rather than reinventing new systems from whole cloth, it's more likely that users will consider your apps an indispensable part of their device use.

Extending iOS Apps

In this chapter, we'll add *app extensions* to the Notes app. In particular, we'll be adding a *Spotlight indexing extension*, which will ensure that all documents are kept up-to-date; and a *Today screen extension*, which will add an entry to the user's Notification Center that gives quick access to the user's documents.

An app extension is a program that's embedded in an app and used by the system for some auxiliary role. There are many different app extension types available:

- *Action extensions* appear as entries in a `UIActivityController`, allowing your app to receive and process content. Dropbox's "Save to Dropbox" feature is an action extension.
- *Audio unit extensions* allow an app to provide an *audio unit*, which is a plug-in that audio-processing apps can use to generate, modify, or receive audio.
- *Content blocker extensions* allow an app to provide a list of URLs and URL patterns that Safari will refuse to load resources from. Content blockers are primarily designed to let apps provide ad-blocking functionality to Safari by filtering out content from specific sites, such as ads hosted on ad-providing servers.
- *Custom keyboard extensions* allow your app to provide an entirely customized keyboard for the user to use. A famous example is the gesture-driven keyboard Swype.
- *Document providers* allow other applications to access files stored in your app's sandbox. For example, the Git version control app Working Copy allows other applications to access files under its control and make changes.
- *Photo editing extensions* are loaded by the Photos application and can be used to create a processed version of a photo in the user's photo library. The app Water-

logue is an excellent example of this: users can create a watercolor version of any photo without having to leave the Photos app.

- *Share extensions* are closely related to action extensions and allow your app to receive content for sharing. The Twitter, Facebook, and Pinterest apps all provide share extensions.
- *Shared Links extensions* allow apps to place links in the Safari “Shared Links” section. For example, the Twitter app provides one of these extensions, which makes any links from people you follow appear in Safari.

As mentioned, we’ll be building two different extensions in this chapter:

- *Spotlight indexing extensions* are periodically run by iOS to update the Spotlight search system.
- *Today extensions* allow an app to display a widget in the Notification Center, visible when users swipe down from the top of the screen.

We’ll add another app extension later on when we add Apple Watch support to the iOS app.

Searching with a Spotlight Indexing Extension

Spotlight, shown in [Figure 13-1](#), is iOS’s built-in searching system. When you pull down on the icons on the home screen, you enter Spotlight, where you can type and search for content inside your device and on the Web.

If you want your app’s contents to appear in Spotlight, you need to add information about that content to the *searchable index*. The searchable index is the search database used to locate everything on the device; if it’s not in the index, it won’t appear when you search for it.

In [“Searchability” on page 317](#), we added some initial support for searchability by marking the `NSUserActivities` that represent the documents as searchable. However, the limitation of this is that documents only become searchable when they’re opened, and if users change their content on another device, the search index won’t get updated to reflect their new contents until they’re opened.

To address this, we’ll add a Spotlight indexing extension. This is periodically awakened by the system and asked to update the searchable index. The specifics of what this involves are entirely up to your app; in our case, we’ll scan the entire collection of documents.

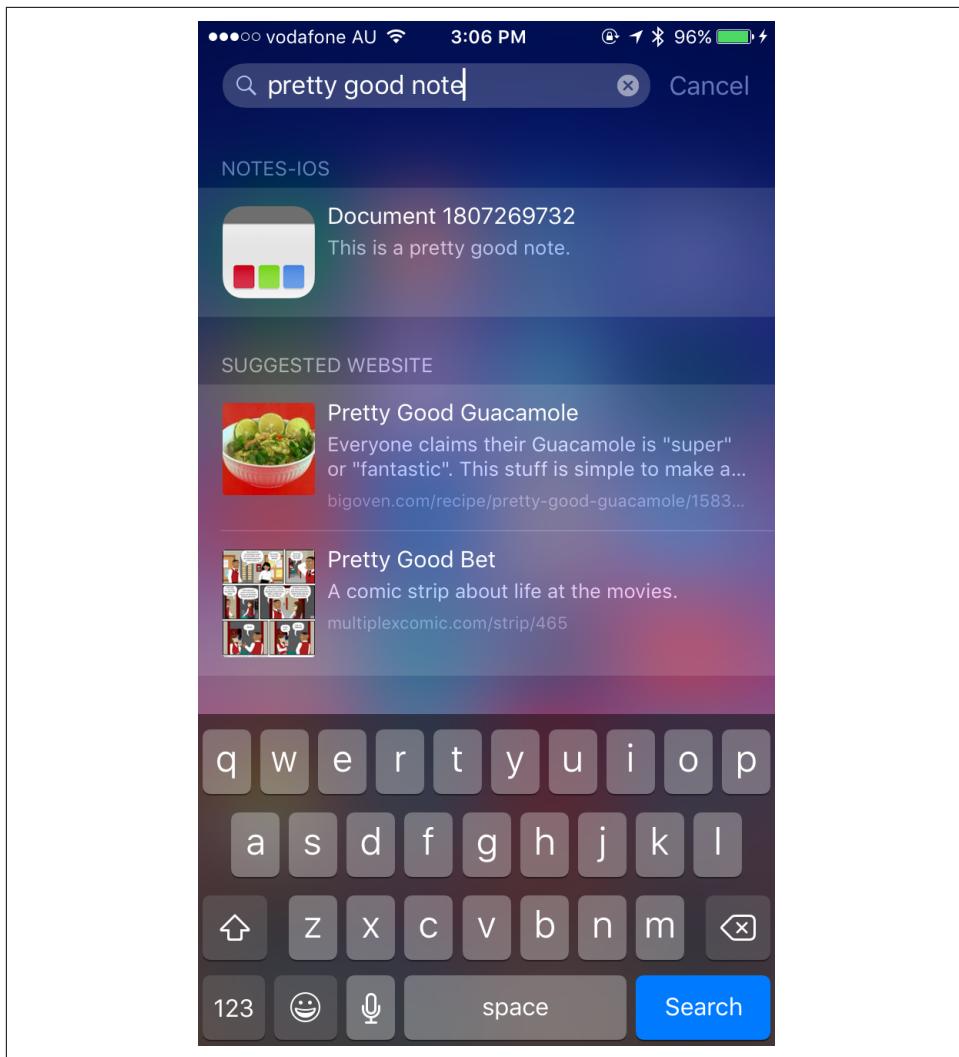


Figure 13-1. Searching with Spotlight on iOS

Let's get started by adding the extension to the project:

1. Open the File menu, and choose New→Target.
 2. Choose iOS→Application Extension→Spotlight Index Extension (see Figure 13-2).

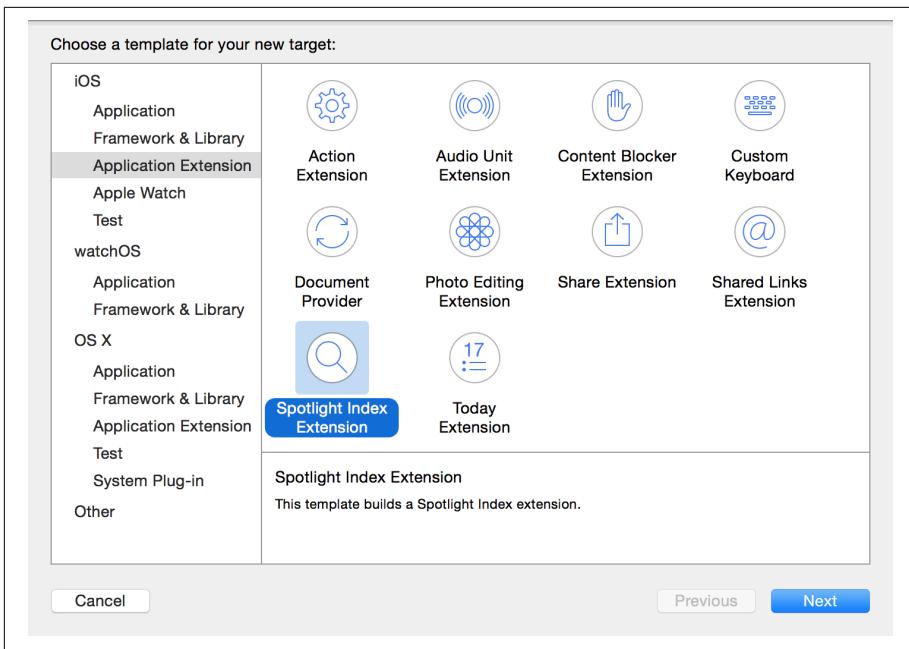


Figure 13-2. Adding the Spotlight Index Extension target

The reason we're adding a new target is because extensions are technically entirely separate programs, which means they're compiled and linked separately from their container application.

3. Name the new target **Notes-SpotlightIndexer**.

Once you click Finish, Xcode will pop up a little window asking if you want to activate the new scheme created. When you created the Spotlight extension Xcode also made a new scheme for us to use to build the extension.

4. Click Activate to move to the new scheme.

We now need to give the extension access to the iCloud container, because in order to access the user's documents, we need access to the container in which they're located.

1. Go to the target's properties and go to the Capabilities tab.
2. Turn on iCloud and wait for it to finish spinning.
3. Turn on iCloud Documents.
4. Select the iCloud container used by the Mac and iOS apps, and ensure that no other container is selected. To do this, change "Use default container" to "Specify custom container."

The extension now has permission to access the container.

Next, we need to ensure that the Notes-SpotlightIndexer target is able to use the enumeration that defines the names of important files.

1. Open the *DocumentCommon.swift* file, and open the File Inspector by choosing View→Utilities→Show File Inspector.
2. Ensure that the checkbox next to “Notes-SpotlightIndexer” is selected (Figure 13-3).

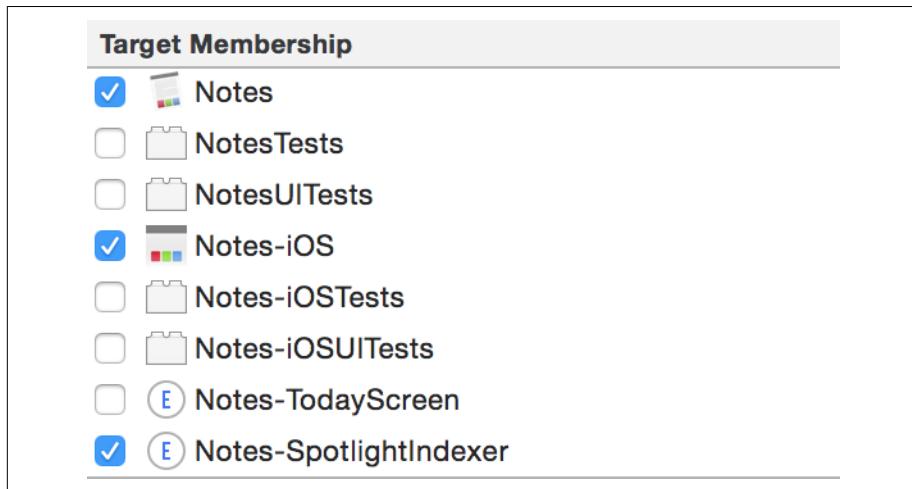


Figure 13-3. Adding the *DocumentCommon.swift* file to the Notes-SpotlightIndexer target



The order of the list of targets in your project might look slightly different. This is OK, as long as the file is added to the right targets.

Next, we'll implement the Spotlight indexer itself.

1. Open *IndexRequestHandler.swift*, which was created when you added the target—it's provided as part of the template code that Xcode generates. This file implements the core functionality of the indexer by implementing the `IndexRequestHandler` class.
2. Add the following line of code to the top of the file:

```
import UIKit
```

There are two main methods in the index request handler:

- `searchableIndex(_:_reindexAllSearchableItemsWithAcknowledgementHandler:)`
- `searchableIndex(_:_reindexSearchableItemsWithIdentifiers: acknowledgementHandler:)`

The first method is called to let the index updater know that it should rescan the entire collection of data and add it to Spotlight. The second is called to let the updater know that it should rescan certain specific files.

To allow the extension to function, we first need to be able to get the collection of all documents known to the app. To do this, we'll implement a computed property that looks for all documents, in both the local *Documents* folder and in the iCloud container.

3. Add the following computed property to the `IndexRequestHandler` class:

```
var availableFiles : [NSURL] {

    let fileManager = FileManager.defaultManager()

    var allFiles : [NSURL] = []

    // Get the list of all local files
    if let localDocumentsFolder
        = fileManager.urlsForDirectory(.DocumentDirectory,
                                       inDomains: .UserDomainMask).first {
        do {

            let localFiles = try fileManager
                .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(localDocumentsFolder.path!)
                .map({
                    localDocumentsFolder.URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,
                                                               isDirectory: false)
                })

            allFiles.appendContentsOf(localFiles)
        } catch {
            NSLog("Failed to get list of local files!")
        }
    }

    // Get the list of documents in iCloud
    if let documentsFolder = fileManager
        .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)?
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent("Documents", isDirectory: true) {
        do {
```

```

    // Get the list of files
    let iCloudFiles = try fileManager
        .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(documentsFolder.path!)
        .map({
            documentsFolder.URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,
                isDirectory: false)
        })
    allFiles.appendContentsOf(iCloudFiles)

} catch {
    // Log an error and return the empty array
    NSLog("Failed to get contents of iCloud container")
    return []
}

}

// Filter these to only those that end in ".note",
// and return URLs of these

return allFiles
    .filter({ $0.lastPathComponent?.hasSuffix(".note") ?? false})
}

```

This method builds an array of NSURL objects, first by looking in the local *Documents* folder, and second by accessing the iCloud folder if it's able to. It then filters this array to include only files ending in *.note*.

Each document that we want to add to the index needs to be represented by a CSSearchableItem object. This object contains the actual information that will be added to the Spotlight index and contains three critical pieces of information: the title of the document, its contents, and its URL.

4. Add the following method to IndexRequestHandler:

```

func itemForURL(url: NSURL) -> CSSearchableItem? {

    // If this URL doesn't exist, return nil
    if url.checkResourceIsReachableAndReturnError(nil) == false {
        return nil
    }

    // Replace this with your own type identifier
    let attributeSet = CSSearchableItemAttributeSet(
        itemContentType: "au.com.secretlab.Note")

    attributeSet.title = url.lastPathComponent

    // Get the text in this file

```

```

let textFileURL = url.URLByAppendingPathComponent(
    NoteDocumentFileNames.TextFile.rawValue)

if let textData = NSData(contentsOfURL: textFileURL),
    let text = try? NSAttributedString(data: textData,
        options: [NSDocumentTypeDocumentAttribute: NSRTFTextDocumentType],
        documentAttributes: nil) {

    attributeSet.contentDescription = text.string

} else {
    attributeSet.contentDescription = ""
}

let item =
    CSSearchableItem(uniqueIdentifier: url.absoluteString,
        domainIdentifier: "au.com.secretlab.Notes",
        attributeSet: attributeSet)

return item
}

```



You'll need to change the `domainIdentifier` from `au.com.secretlab.Notes` to your own app's bundle identifier.

This method generates a `CSSearchableItem` for a given `NSURL`. It does this by attempting to reach into the document and extract the text content from the `Text.rtf` file it contains. It then combines this with the document's name and its URL, which it uses as the searchable item's unique identifier, and returns the item. If the file that the URL points to doesn't exist, it returns `nil`.

Next, we need to implement the method that updates the entire index. This method is passed an `acknowledgementHandler` parameter, which is a closure that the method needs to call when the work of updating the index is complete.



This method, and the `reindexSearchableItemsWithIdentifiers` method, *must* call the `acknowledgementHandler`. If it doesn't, then iOS will assume that the attempt to update the index has failed.

1. Delete the `searchableIndex(_:, reindexAllSearchableItemsWithAcknowledgementHandler:)` method, and replace it with the following code:

```

override func searchableIndex(searchableIndex: CSSearchableIndex,
    reindexAllSearchableItemsWithAcknowledgementHandler
        acknowledgementHandler: () -> Void) {

    // Reindex all data with the provided index

    let files = availableFiles

    var allItems : [CSSearchableItem] = []

    for file in files {
        if let item = itemForURL(file) {
            allItems.append(item)
        }
    }

    searchableIndex.indexSearchableItems(allItems) { (error) -> Void in
        acknowledgementHandler()
    }
}

```

This method simply gets the list of all available files and creates a CSSearchableItem for them. It then provides this list of searchable items to the index; when this is complete, a closure is run that calls the acknowledgementHandler.

Finally, we need to implement the method that takes a specific set of CSSearchableItems and refreshes the index with their contents.

2. Delete the searchableIndex(_:, reindexSearchableItemsWithIdentifiers:, acknowledgementHandler:) method, and replace it with the following code:

```

override func searchableIndex(searchableIndex: CSSearchableIndex,
    reindexSearchableItemsWithIdentifiers identifiers: [String],
        acknowledgementHandler: () -> Void) {

    // Reindex any items with the given identifiers and the provided index

    var itemsToIndex : [CSSearchableItem] = []
    var itemsToRemove : [String] = []

    for identifier in identifiers {

        if let url = NSURL(string: identifier), let item = itemForURL(url)
        {
            itemsToIndex.append(item)
        } else {
            itemsToRemove.append(identifier)
        }
    }
}

```

```

searchableIndex.indexSearchableItems(itemsToIndex) { (error) ->
Void in searchableIndex
    .deleteSearchableItemsWithIdentifiers(itemsToRemove) {
        (error) -> Void in
            acknowledgementHandler()
    }
}

}

```

When this method is called, it receives a list of identifiers for `CSSearchableItem`s. Because the identifiers are `NSURL`s, we can use them to access the specific documents that need re-indexing. To re-index a document, we just generate a new `CSSearchableItem` with the same identifier; when it's submitted to the indexer, it will replace the older one.

We also need to use this opportunity to remove items from the index. If the user has deleted a document, we need to remove its corresponding entry from the index. We do this by detecting when we fail to create a `CSSearchableItem`; if we do, then the document is missing, and we add the document's identifier to a list of items to remove.

Finally, we'll make the app capable of opening documents after the user has selected them.

1. Open `DocumentListViewController.swift`.
2. Import the Core Spotlight framework at the top of the file.

```
import CoreSpotlight
```

3. Add the following code to the `restoreUserActivityState` method:

```

override func restoreUserActivityState(activity: NSUserActivity) {
    // We're being told to open a document

    if let url = activity.userInfo?[NSUserActivityDocumentURLKey]
    as? NSURL {

        // Open the document
        self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)
    }

>    // We're coming from a search result
>    if let searchableItemIdentifier = activity
>        .userInfo?[CSSearchableItemActivityIdentifier] as? String,
>        let url = NSURL(string: searchableItemIdentifier) {
>            // Open the document
>            self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)

```

```
> }
```

```
}
```

When the user taps on a search result in Spotlight, the app is launched just as if the user used Handoff (see [Figure 13-4](#)): an `NSUserActivity` is given to the app delegate's `continueUserActivity` method, which summons the document list. The document list, in its `restoreUserActivityState` method, can then check to see if the activity is actually a search result. If it is, we get the result's identifier, using the `CSSearchableItemActivityIdentifier` key. Remember that this is an `NSURL`, so we can immediately load it.

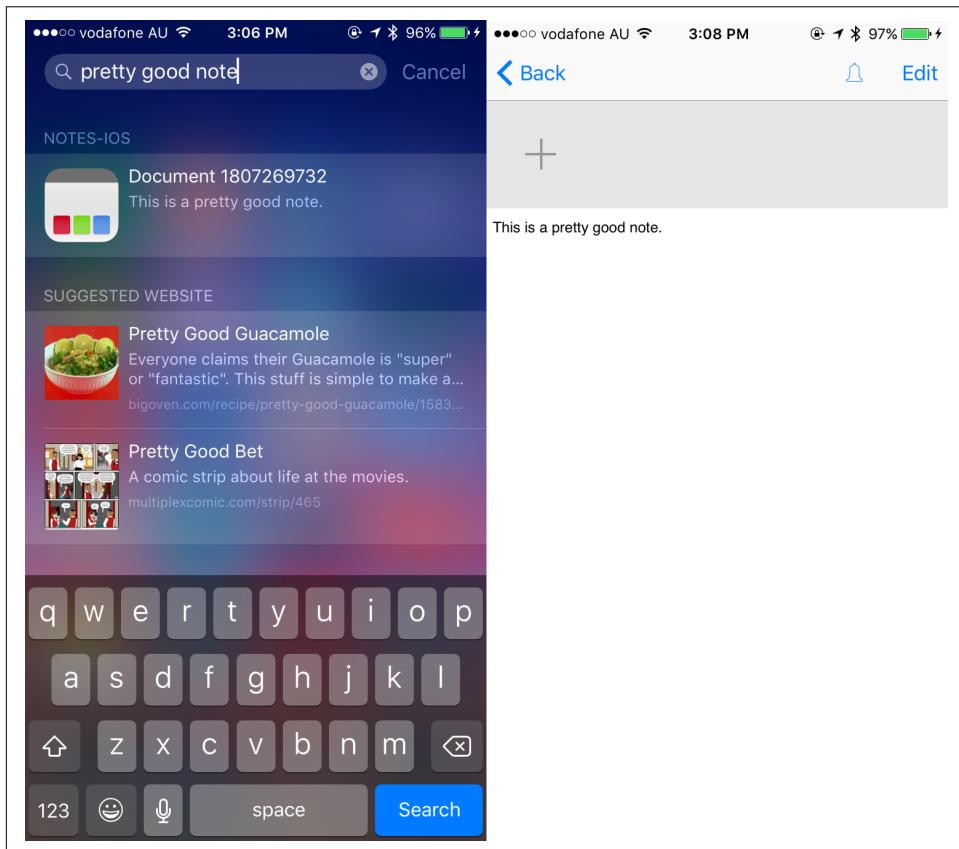


Figure 13-4. Search results and a corresponding note open in the app

You're done! The app will now periodically index all of its documents, making them appear in the search results.

Low Power Mode

The indexing extension will run in the background, even when the phone is locked. This means that the app is consuming power, which can be a problem when the battery is low.

Low power mode is a feature of iOS, introduced in iOS 9, that helps to extend the available battery power of the device by disabling as many features as it can, while still preserving basic device operation. When enabled, low power mode disables:

- Background apps
- Background mail fetch
- Certain animated UI elements and visual effects

iOS devices will automatically offer to enter low power mode when they hit 20% battery, but users can choose to activate it at any time in Settings.

Your application should respect a user's low power mode settings and postpone any CPU- or network-intensive operations until low power mode is turned off. In order to do this, listen for `NSProcessInfoPowerStateDidChangeNotification` notifications, in this case by adding a new observer to our app's `NSNotificationCenter`.

When our selector method is called, we can then check if `NSProcessInfo.processInfo().lowPowerModeEnabled` is `true`, and take steps to reduce our power consumption if it is.

In the case of background-running extensions like the Spotlight indexing extension, you don't generally need to respond to low power mode, because iOS will simply not run the background extension while low power mode is active. However, it's useful to know about low power mode when your app is in the foreground.

Today Widgets

The Today view on iOS is accessible when the user swipes down from the top of the screen; it lives in the same area as notifications. Today widgets are great for showing users quick snippets of content or allowing them to perform small, convenient user interactions.



Today widgets also exist on OS X, where the Today view also lives with the notifications; but on OS X that's on the right side of the screen.

We'll now add an extension that lists your recently edited notes on the Today screen and lets you jump straight to them.

1. Open the File menu, and choose New→Target.
2. Select Application Extension under the iOS section, and select Today extension, as shown in [Figure 13-5](#). Click Next.



Remember, extensions are separate programs, so they need to be new targets.

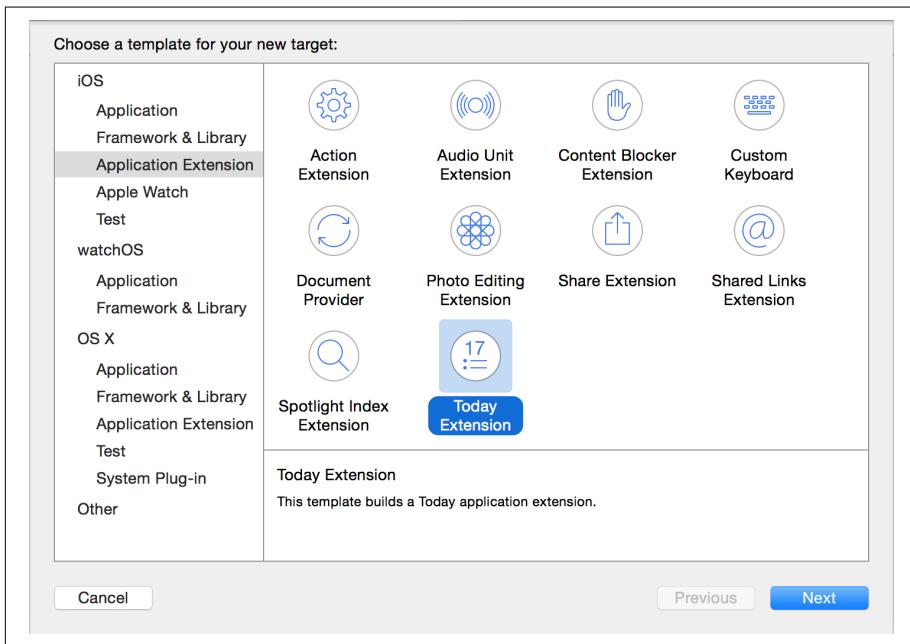


Figure 13-5. Creating a Today extension

3. Name the new target **Notes-TodayScreen**, and ensure that “Embed in Application” is set to Notes-iOS ([Figure 13-6](#)).

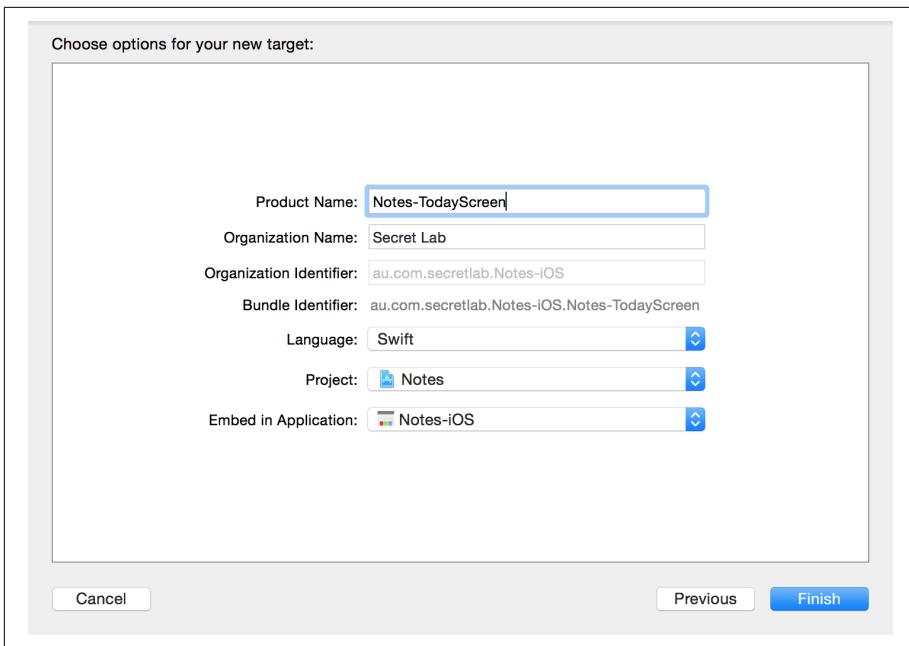


Figure 13-6. Configuring the Today extension

4. Click Finish and choose to activate the scheme when Xcode prompts you.

Next, let's learn how to run extensions:

1. Run the target by pressing ⌘-R.

Xcode will provide a list of applications that it should try to use to get to the extension. Because this is a Today extension, it will suggest launching the Today app (that's the built-in app that appears when you swipe down from the top of the screen).

2. Click Run, and the extension will launch.

Let's now set up the interface for the extension.

1. Open the `MainInterface.storyboard`, which was added when the extension was created.
2. Delete the Hello World label.
3. Add a table view to the view controller, and add the following constraints:
 - Bottom to bottom layout guide, constant = 0
 - Top to top layout guide, constant = 0

- Leading to leading margin, constant = 0
 - Trailing to trailing margin, constant = 0
4. Set the priority of all these constraints to 750. This fixes an issue with constraints in the default template.
 5. Select the table view, open the Resolve Auto Layout issues menu (it's the triangle-shaped icon at the bottom right of the canvas), and choose Update Frames.
 6. In the Attributes Inspector, set the table view's Content to "dynamic prototypes" and set the number of prototypes to 1.

Because of the size limitations in the widget view controller, it is awfully tricky to select the elements inside, so for this part you may find it easier to use the outline than the interface directly.

1. Select the prototype table view cell.
2. In the Attributes Inspector, set its Style to Basic.
3. Set its Identifier to Cell.
4. Select the text label that appears in the cell, and set its color to Light Text Color. Set the font to System Light 16.0.
5. Open *TodayViewController.swift* in the Assistant.
6. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the table view into *TodayViewController*. Create a new outlet connection called `tableView`.
7. Hold down the Control key again, and drag from the table view to the *TodayViewController* in the outline. In the menu that appears, select `delegate`. Then, repeat the process, this time choosing `dataSource`.

Now we need the extension to be able to view the documents that are in the iCloud container.

1. Go to Notes-TodayScreen target's settings, and go to Capabilities.
2. Turn on iCloud, and then iCloud Documents.
3. Change the containers option to Specify Custom Containers, and turn on the same container as the iOS app (and no others).

The extension can now access the iOS app's container!

1. Open *TodayViewController.swift*.
2. Implement *TodayViewController*'s `fileList` property, which keeps track of the list of files that the extension knows about:

```
var fileList : [NSURL] = []
```

3. Implement `loadAvailableFiles` to search for and return the list of documents:

```
func loadAvailableFiles() -> [NSURL] {  
  
    let fileManager = NSFileManager.defaultManager()  
  
    var allFiles : [NSURL] = []  
  
    // Get the list of all local files  
    if let localDocumentsFolder  
        = fileManager.URLsForDirectory(.DocumentDirectory,  
                                       inDomains: .UserDomainMask).first {  
        do {  
  
            let localFiles = try fileManager  
                .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(  
                    localDocumentsFolder.path!)  
            .map({  
                localDocumentsFolder  
                    .URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,  
                                              isDirectory: false)  
            })  
  
            allFiles.appendContentsOf(localFiles)  
        } catch {  
            NSLog("Failed to get list of local files!")  
        }  
    }  
  
    // Get the list of documents in iCloud  
    if let documentsFolder = fileManager  
        .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)?  
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent("Documents", isDirectory: true) {  
        do {  
  
            // Get the list of files  
            let iCloudFiles = try fileManager  
                .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(documentsFolder.path!)  
            .map({  
                documentsFolder.URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,  
                                              isDirectory: false)  
            })  
  
            allFiles.appendContentsOf(iCloudFiles)  
        } catch {  
            // Log an error and return the empty array  
            NSLog("Failed to get contents of iCloud container")  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```

        return []
    }

}

// Filter these to only those that end in ".note",
// and return NSURLs of these

return allFiles
    .filter({ $0.lastPathComponent?.hasSuffix(".note") ?? false})
}

```

This method collects the list of available files, both locally and in iCloud.



This code is identical to the method used in the Spotlight index extension.

4. Implement `viewDidLoad` to call `loadAvailableFiles` and also establish access to the container:

```

override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()

    fileList = loadAvailableFiles()

    // We have nothing to show until we attempt to list the files,
    // so default to a very small size
    self.preferredContentSize = CGSize(width: 0, height: 1)

    let containerURL = FileManager.defaultManager()
        .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)

    NSLog("Extension's container: \(containerURL)")
}

```

When the Today Screen widget's view loads, we query the list of files and store them. Next, we set the size of the view to be extremely small; we do this because the view will be increased in size later, after iOS asks the widget to refresh its contents.

5. Make `TodayViewController` conform to the `UITableViewDelegate` and `UITableViewDataSource` protocols:

```

class TodayViewController: UIViewController, NCWidgetProviding,
    UITableViewDelegate, UITableViewDataSource

```



Doing this means that the class is providing data to the table view and capable of responding to the user tapping on a cell.

6. Implement the table view data source methods to return the list:

```
func tableView(tableView: UITableView,
    numberOfRowsInSection section: Int) -> Int {

    return fileList.count
}

func tableView(tableView: UITableView,
    cellForRowAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) -> UITableViewCell {

    let cell = tableView
        .dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier("Cell", forIndexPath: indexPath)

    let url = fileList[indexPath.row]

    var fileName : AnyObject?
    _ = try? url.getResourceValue(&fileName, forKey: NSURLNameKey)
    let name = fileName as? String ?? "Note"

    cell.textLabel?.text = name

    return cell
}
```

These methods provide the table view with its contents. They're very similar to the methods used for providing content to a UICollectionView—in the `numberOfRowsInSection` method, we provide the number of cells, and in `cellForRowAtIndexPath`, we prepare a table view cell by providing it with the file's name.

7. Add code to the `widgetPerformUpdateWithCompletionHandler` method to re-run the check and to indicate whether the file list has changed:

```
func widgetPerformUpdateWithCompletionHandler(completionHandler:
    ((NCUpdateResult) -> Void)) {
    // Perform any setup necessary in order to update the view.

    // If an error is encountered, use NCUpdateResult.Failed
    // If there's no update required, use NCUpdateResult.NoData
    // If there's an update, use NCUpdateResult.NewData

    let newList = loadAvailableFiles()

    self.preferredContentSize = self.tableView.contentSize
```

```

        if newList == fileList {
            completionHandler(.NoData)
        } else {
            fileList = newList

            completionHandler(.NewData)
        }
    }
}

```

This is the most important method in the Today screen extension. This method is called by iOS when the user opens the Notification Center and enables the extension to tell iOS whether the content in the widget has changed. If you let the system know that no changes are necessary, then it can save energy by not asking the widget to redraw itself.

8. Run the extension—a list of documents appears!

Now we need to make the app open when a document is selected.

1. Go to Notes-iOS's target, go to the Info tab, and scroll down to URL Type.
2. Click the + button to add a new entry.
3. Set the URL Schemes to “notes.”

A URL scheme registers your app as capable of opening certain types of URLs. For example, the Safari web browser is able to open URLs that begin with http and https; registering the app as capable of opening URLs that begin with notes means that any URL that begins with this text will cause the app to open.

We'll now make the extension prepare and open one of these URLs.

1. Open *AppDelegate.swift* and implement the `openURL` method, which receives the URL and tells the document list controller to open the indicated file:

```

func application(app: UIApplication, openURL url: NSURL,
options: [String : AnyObject]) -> Bool {

    if url.scheme == "notes", let path = url.path {

        // Return to the list of documents
        if let navigationController =
            self.window?.rootViewController as? UINavigationController {

            navigationController.popToRootViewControllerAnimated(false)

            (navigationController.topViewController
                as? DocumentListViewController)?.openDocumentWithPath(path)
        }

        return true
    }
}

```

```
    }

    return false
}
```

When a URL that begins with *notes* is opened, the application will be launched and this method will be called. It checks to see if the scheme is “notes,” and if it is, gets the path from the URL. With this in hand, the code gets the navigation controller and instructs it to return to the top-level screen, which is the document list. The document list is then told to open the file at the specified path. Finally, the code returns **true**, indicating that the application handled the URL; if the URL’s scheme was *not* “notes,” then the code returns **false**, indicating that the URL was not handled.

2. Open *TodayViewController.swift* and implement the `tableView(_:, didSelectRowAtIndexPath:)` method to open the URL:

```
func tableView(tableView: UITableView,
              didSelectRowAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    tableView.deselectRowAtIndexPath(indexPath, animated: true)

    let url = fileList[indexPath.row]

    guard let path = url.path else {
        return
    }

    let appURLComponents = NSURLComponents()
    appURLComponents.scheme = "notes"
    appURLComponents.host = nil
    appURLComponents.path = path

    if let appURL = appURLComponents.URL {
        self.extensionContext?.openURL(appURL, completionHandler: nil)
    }
}
```

3. Run the extension again tap a document; it opens!

Conclusion

In this chapter, we added two app extensions to iOS: one to update the Spotlight index, and one to display the most recent notes in a Today screen widget. You can use extensions to further integrate your app into the wider iOS ecosystem: by reaching

into more places in the iPhone, you can make more features available to the user that only your app can provide.

In the next chapter, we'll add support for more kinds of attachments to the iOS app.

Multimedia, Contacts, Location, and Notifications

In this chapter, we'll improve the iOS app by adding more capabilities to the attachment system, as well as notifications. We'll add support for location, audio, video, and address book contacts, as well as the ability to set local notifications that can remind users of their notes.

In Notes, each attachment is represented by a file that's added to the document's *Attachments* directory, and is managed by a view controller. Because of the architecture of the application, all we need to do to add support for different attachment types is to create a new view controller for it and add code to a couple of existing methods in `DocumentListViewController` to make them open the necessary view controller for each attachment type.

Let's get started by building support for adding attachments containing a geographic location!

Location Attachments

iOS devices have a whole bunch of useful sensors on them, and one of the most useful is the GPS. When it comes time to determine the location of the device, though, iOS doesn't rely solely on the GPS! It has a whole collection of tricks up its sleeve that allow it to more accurately and rapidly pinpoint a location.



The Core Location framework provides a whole suite of location-based features for you to use—everything from a quick and efficient way to get the current location, to monitoring entry and exit from specific regions, looking for Bluetooth beacons, to significant-change location alerts.

We're only going to be using a tiny portion of the features of Core Location here. If you'd like to know more, check out Apple's [Location and Maps Programming Guide](#).

There are three ways that an iOS device can figure out its location on the planet:

- Using the positioning radios, by receiving either a GPS or GLONASS signal from orbiting satellites
- Using WiFi location, in which the iOS device uses a crowd-sourced database of certain WiFi hotspot physical locations; depending on the hotspots that the device can see, the device can estimate where it is in the world
- Using cell tower locations, which work essentially the same way as WiFi locations, but with the towers that provide phone coverage

The Core Location system is designed such that you don't need to actually know about the details of *how* the device is figuring out its location. Instead, you simply ask the iOS device to start tracking the user's location, and it will provide it to you. It will use whatever hardware it thinks is necessary, based on how precise a measurement you've asked for.



The user's location is private. Your app won't have access to it without user permission, and the user isn't required to give it to you. This means that any app that works with user location has to be prepared for the user saying no.

We'll now add the ability to attach locations to documents. Location attachments will be JSON files that contain lat/long pairs, and they'll be shown on a map using MapKit. The JSON files are not a specific standard or format. We're just doing it like this for convenience. A standard location file format doesn't really exist, and we figure that this is a good opportunity to work with a small amount of JSON.

MapKit provides fully featured maps, created by Apple, for you to use in your apps. Maps can include pretty much everything the Maps app that ships with iOS and OS X can do, from street-level map information to satellite view to 3D buildings. MapKit also supports custom annotations, as well as automatic support for easy zooming and panning of the map.

Custom annotations can be defined by a single point (a lat/long pair) or as an overlay that is defined by a number of points that form a shape. Annotations and overlays behave as you'd expect, and are not just unintelligent subviews: they move and resize appropriately when the user pans, zooms, or otherwise manipulates the map.



MapKit remains very performant, even when you have hundreds of annotations or overlays on your map.

First, we'll set up the application to use location services.

1. Open the application's *Info.plist* file.
2. Add a new string key to the dictionary: `NSLocationWhenInUseUsageDescription`. Set its value to the string "We'll use your position to show where you are on the map". This string will be shown to the user in a pop up when the app first tries to determine location.



Don't ever ask to access a user's location when you don't really need it. Apple frowns upon this, and users will come to distrust you. Treat access to a user's location with care.

3. Open the *Assets.xcassets* file.
4. Drag the *Location.pdf* and *Current Location.pdf* images into the list of images.
5. Open *Document.swift*.
6. Add the following code to the `thumbnailImage` method to return the Location image if it's a JSON attachment:

```
func thumbnailImage() -> UIImage? {  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {  
        // If it's an image, return it as a UIImage  
  
        // Ensure that we can get the contents of the file  
        guard let attachmentContent = self.regularFileContents else {  
            return nil  
        }  
  
        // Attempt to convert the file's contents to text  
        return UIImage(data: attachmentContent)  
    }  
}
```

```

>     if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {
>         // JSON files used to store locations
>         return UIImage(named: "Location")
>     }
>
// We don't know what type it is, so return nil
return nil
}

```

This additional code makes `NSFileWrappers` return the `Location.pdf` image that you just added to the asset catalog.

Next, we'll make the view controller that we'll use for both adding and viewing locations. First, we'll set up the code, and then we'll start building the interface.

1. Open the File menu and choose File→New.
2. Select Cocoa Touch Class and click Next.
3. Name the new class `LocationAttachmentViewController` and make it a subclass of `UIViewController`.
4. Open `LocationAttachmentViewController.swift`.
5. Import the MapKit and CoreLocation frameworks at the top of the file:

```

import MapKit
import CoreLocation

```

6. Add the following line of code underneath the `import` statements:

```

let defaultCoordinate =
    CLLocationCoordinate2D(latitude: -42.882743, longitude: 147.330234)

```

This coordinate will be used if the user's location cannot be determined.

7. Make the `LocationAttachmentViewController` conform to the `AttachmentViewer` and `MKMapViewDelegate` protocols:

```

class LocationAttachmentViewController: UIViewController,
    AttachmentViewer, MKMapViewDelegate {

```

8. Add a new outlet for an `MKMapView` to the class, named `mapView`:
9. Add the `attachmentFile` and `document` properties, which are required to conform with the `AttachmentViewer` protocol:

```

var attachmentFile : NSFileWrapper?

```

```

var document : Document?

```

10. Open `Main.storyboard` and drag in a new `UIViewController`.

11. Go to the Identity Inspector, and change the class of the view controller to `LocationAttachmentViewController`.
12. Drag an `MKMapView` into the view controller's interface.
13. Add constraints that make it fill the entire interface, with a 20-point gap at the top of the screen for the status bar.
14. Go to the Attributes Inspector and select the Shows User Location checkbox.
15. Hold down the Control key and drag from the map view to the view controller. Choose "delegate" from the menu that appears.
16. Hold down the Control key again and drag from the view controller to the map view. Choose "mapView" from the menu that appears.

Now that the map view has been added, we'll add a toolbar with a button that zooms the map into the user's current position, but only if it's available. If it's not, the button will be dimmed out.



The location tracking system can never be relied upon to get the user's location. In addition to the user not granting permission—which we'll deal with in this section—it's also possible for the location hardware to fail to get a lock on the user's location entirely. Apps that deal with location need to gracefully handle these kinds of failures.

1. Drag a `UIToolbar` into the interface and place it at the bottom of the screen. Make it fill the entire width of the screen, and add constraints that pin it to the bottom and to the left and right.
2. Select the button at the left of the toolbar and go to the Attributes Inspector.
3. Set the button's Image to Current Location.

The toolbar should now look like [Figure 14-1](#).

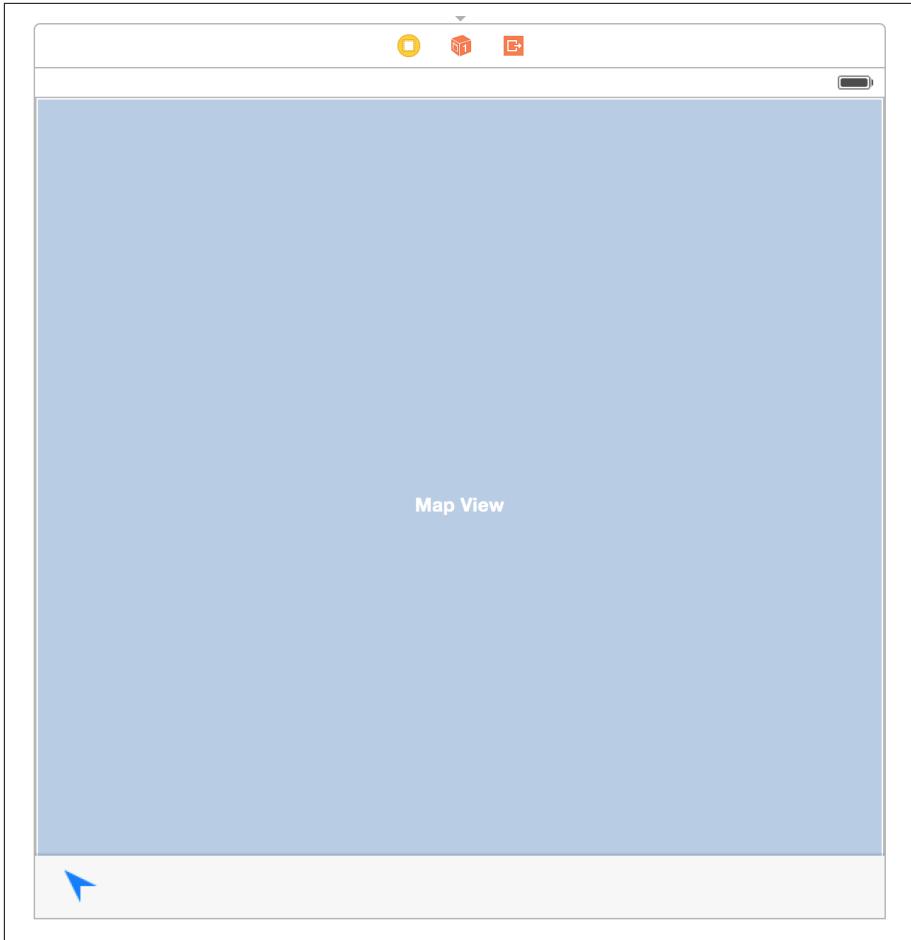


Figure 14-1. The updated toolbar

4. Open `LocationAttachmentViewController.swift` in the Assistant.
5. Connect the toolbar's button to a new outlet in `LocationAttachmentViewController` called `showCurrentLocationButton`.
6. Connect the toolbar's button to a new action called `showCurrentLocation`.
7. Add the following code to the `showCurrentLocation` method to make it zoom in to the user's location:

```
@IBAction func showCurrentLocation(sender: AnyObject) {  
    // This will zoom to the current location  
    self.mapView?.setUserTrackingMode(.Follow, animated: true)
```

```
}
```

Next, we'll add the ability to show the attachment as a pin.

1. Add the `locationManager` and `locationPinAnnotation` properties:

```
let locationManager = CLLocationManager()  
  
let locationPinAnnotation = MKPointAnnotation()
```

2. Implement the `viewDidLoad` method, which requests permission to access the location hardware:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {  
    super.viewDidLoad()  
  
    locationManager.requestWhenInUseAuthorization()  
}
```

3. Implement the `didUpdateUserLocation` method, which is called when Core Location determines the user's location and uses it to place a pin on the map:

```
func mapView(mapView: MKMapView,  
            didUpdateUserLocation userLocation: MKUserLocation) {  
  
    // If we know the user's location, we can zoom to it  
    self.showCurrentLocationButton?.enabled = true  
  
    // We know the user's location - add the pin!  
  
    if self.pinisVisible == false {  
        let coordinate = userLocation.coordinate  
  
        locationPinAnnotation.coordinate = coordinate  
        self.mapView?.addAnnotation(locationPinAnnotation)  
  
        self.mapView?.selectAnnotation(locationPinAnnotation,  
                                       animated: true)  
    }  
}
```

When the map view has determined the user's location, it calls `didUpdateUserLocation`, passing in an `MKUserLocation` object representing the user's location on the planet. When this happens, we enable the current location button, allowing the user to tap on it to zoom to their location. In addition, if we don't already have a location (that is, we're creating a new location attachment), we record it and add it to the map.

4. Implement the `didFailToLocateUserWithError` method, which is called if the location system cannot locate the user:

```

func mapView(mapView: MKMapView,
            didFailToLocateUserWithError error: NSError) {

    NSLog("Failed to get user location: \(error)")

    // We can't show the current location
    self.showCurrentLocationButton?.enabled = false

    // Add the pin, but fall back to the default location
    if self.pinIsVisible == false {
        locationPinAnnotation.coordinate = defaultCoordinate
        self.mapView?.addAnnotation(locationPinAnnotation)
    }
}

```

If the map is *unable* to get the user's location, we disable the button that shows the current location. Additionally, we add a pin at the *default* coordinates.

Either way, when the user's location has been found, or if the view controller is displaying an existing location, *or* if the user's location *can't* be found, an annotation is added to the map to show the position.

An *annotation* is a visual marker that appears on the map. If you've ever seen a marker pin in the built-in Maps application, you've seen an annotation in action.

Annotations are composed of two objects: the annotation itself and an *annotation view*. The reason for this split is that the map can have thousands of annotations added to it at once, but not all of them will necessarily be visible at once. It's inefficient to keep an object that you can't see around, especially if it's a view, because each view consumes quite a bit of memory.

To address this issue, the map view tries to keep as few annotation views as possible on screen. When the user scrolls the map and brings an annotation onto the screen, the map view calls its delegate's `viewForAnnotation` method, which prepares and returns an annotation view.

5. Implement the `viewForAnnotation` method, which is called by the map when it needs a view to show for an annotation:

```

func mapView(mapView: MKMapView,
            viewForAnnotation annotation: MKAnnotation) -> MKAnnotationView? {

    let reuseIdentifier = "Location"

    if let pointAnnotation = annotation as? MKPointAnnotation {

        if let existingAnnotation = self.mapView?
            .dequeueReusableAnnotationView(withIdentifier: reuseIdentifier) {

            existingAnnotation.annotation = annotation
            return existingAnnotation
    }
}

```

```

    } else {

        let annotationView =
            MKPinAnnotationView(annotation: pointAnnotation,
                                reuseIdentifier: reuseID)

        annotationView.draggable = true
        annotationView.canShowCallout = true

        return annotationView
    }

} else {
    return nil
}
}

```

Annotation views, like table view cells and collection view cells, are reused. When an annotation view is scrolled off-screen, it's removed from the map, but not from memory. When you call `dequeueReusableAnnotationViewWithIdentifier`, you get back an annotation view that's either brand new or recycled from an earlier one.

6. Implement the `pinIsVisible` property, which is `true` if the map view contains at least one `MKPointAnnotation`—that is, the user's location pin:

```

var pinIsVisible : Bool {
    return self.mapView!.annotations.contains({ (annotation) -> Bool in
        return annotation is MKPointAnnotation
    })
}

```

To determine when the user's location pin has been added, we simply get the list of annotations that exist on the map and ask if it contains any annotations that are instances of the `MKPointAnnotation` class.

7. Implement `viewWillAppear` to prepare the map view and to add the stored location if it's available:

```

override func viewWillAppear(animated: Bool) {

    locationPinAnnotation.title = "Drag to place"

    // Start by assuming that we can't show the location
    self.showCurrentLocationButton?.enabled = false

    if let data = attachmentFile?.regularFileContents {

        do {

```

```

guard let loadedData =
    try NSJSONSerialization.JSONObjectWithData(data,
        options: NSJSONReadingOptions())
        as? [String:CLLocationDegrees] else {
    return
}

if let latitude = loadedData["lat"],
    let longitude = loadedData["long"] {

    let coordinate = CLLocationCoordinate2D(latitude: latitude,
                                              longitude: longitude)

    locationPinAnnotation.coordinate = coordinate

    self.mapView?.addAnnotation(locationPinAnnotation)
}

} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Failed to load location: \(error)")
}

// Make the Done button save the attachment
let doneButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Done,
    target: self, action: "addAttachmentAndClose")
self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = doneButton

} else {
    // Set up for editing: create a cancel button that
    // dismisses the view

    let cancelButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Cancel,
        target: self, action: "closeAttachmentWithoutSaving")
    self.navigationItem.leftBarButtonItem = cancelButton

    // Now add the Done button that adds the attachment
    let doneButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Done,
        target: self, action: "addAttachmentAndClose")
    self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = doneButton

    // Get notified about the user's location; we'll use
    // this to add the pin when
    self.mapView?.delegate = self
}

}

```

When the view controller's view appears, we need to check to see if we have been provided with a location. If we can successfully parse the data format, and extract the latitude and longitude from it, we create an annotation and add it to the map.

If we don't have an annotation, then the reason the view controller has appeared is to create one. As a result, we need more than just the Done button, which closes the view controller, that the `DocumentListViewController` provides for us. We need our Done button to actually create and save the annotation in the `Document` object, and we also need a Cancel button that closes the view controller without creating the annotation.

To address that, we create two new `UIBarButtonItem`s: a Done button that calls the `addAttachmentAndClose` method (which we'll add in a moment), and a Cancel button that calls `closeAttachmentWithoutSaving` (again, we'll add that soon).

8. Add the `addAttachmentAndClose` method, which adds the user's location as an attachment file to the `Document` and dismisses the view controller:

```
func addAttachmentAndClose() {  
  
    if self.pinisVisible {  
  
        let location = self.locationPinAnnotation.coordinate  
  
        // Convert the location into a dictionary  
        let locationDict : [String:CLLocationDegrees] =  
        [  
            "lat":location.latitude,  
            "long":location.longitude  
        ]  
  
        do {  
            let locationData = try NSJSONSerialization  
                .dataWithJSONObject(locationDict,  
                    options: NSJSONWritingOptions())  
  
            let locationName : String  
  
            let newFileName = "\u{1f4da}random().json"  
  
            if attachmentFile != nil {  
  
                locationName  
                    = attachmentFile!.preferredFilename ?? newFileName  
  
                try self.document?.deleteAttachment(self.attachmentFile!)  
            } else {  
                locationName = newFileName  
            }  
  
            try self.document?.addAttachmentWithData(locationData,  
                name: locationName)  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```

        } catch let error as NSError {
            NSLog("Failed to save location: \(error)")
        }
    }

    self.presentingViewController?.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true,
        completion: nil)
}

```

This code creates a dictionary that stores the current location of the pin and converts it to JSON. It then gives it to the Document, which adds it as an attachment. Finally, it dismisses the view controller.

9. Add the `closeAttachmentWithoutSaving` method, which dismisses the view controller without making changes to the Document:

```

func closeAttachmentWithoutSaving() {
    self.presentingViewController?.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true,
        completion: nil)
}

```

The simpler cousin of `addAttachmentAndClose`, `closeAttachmentWithoutSaving` simply closes the view controller.

Next, we'll connect the document view controller to the location attachment view controller with a popover segue.

1. Open `Main.storyboard`.
2. Hold down the Control key, and drag from the document view controller to the location attachment view controller. Choose “popover” from the list that appears.
3. Select the new segue and drag from the well next to Anchor to the document view controller's view.
4. Give the segue an identifier by opening the Attributes Inspector and setting the segue's identifier to `ShowLocationAttachment`.

Next, we'll add the ability to add new location attachments. First, we'll add an entry to the list of attachment types in `addAttachment`, and then we'll add a method that shows the `LocationAttachmentViewController` if the user chooses to add a location attachment.

1. Add the following code to `addAttachment`:

```

func addAttachment(sourceView : UIView) {
    let actionSheet
        = UIAlertController(title: "Add attachment",
            message: nil,
            preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle
                .ActionSheet)

```

```

// If a camera is available to use...
if UIImagePickerController
    .isSourceTypeAvailable(UIImagePickerControllerSourceType.Camera) {
    // This variable contains a closure that shows the image picker,
    // or asks the user to grant permission.
    var handler : (action:UIAlertAction) -> Void

    switch AVCaptureDevice
        .authorizationStatusForMediaType(AMediaTypeVideo) {
    case .Authorized:
        fallthrough
    case .NotDetermined:
        // If we have permission, or we don't know if
        // it's been denied, then the closure
        // shows the image picker.
        handler = { (action) in
            self.addPhoto()
        }
    default:

        // Otherwise, when the button is tapped,
        // ask for permission.
        handler = { (action) in

            let title = "Camera access required"
            let message = "Go to Settings to grant permission to" +
                "access the camera."
            let cancelButtonTitle = "Cancel"
            let settingsButton = "Settings"

            let alert = UIAlertController(title: title,
                message: message,
                preferredStyle: .Alert)

            // The Cancel button just closes the alert.
            alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: cancelButtonTitle,
                style: .Cancel, handler: nil))

            // The Settings button opens this app's settings page,
            // allowing the user to grant us permission.
            alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: settingsButton,
                style: .Default, handler: { (action) in

                    if let settingsURL = NSURL(
                        string: UIApplicationOpenSettingsURLString) {

                        UIApplication.sharedApplication()
                            .openURL(settingsURL)
                    }
                }
            )
        }
    }
}

```

```

        }))

        self.presentViewController(alert,
            animated: true,
            completion: nil)
    }
}

// Either way, show the Camera item; when it's selected, the
// appropriate code will run.
actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Camera",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: handler))
}

> actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Location",
>     style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
>         self.addLocation()
>     }))
}

actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Cancel",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel, handler: nil))

// If this is on an iPad, present it in a popover connected
// to the source view
if UI_USER_INTERFACE_IDIOM() == UIUserInterfaceIdiom.Pad {

    actionSheet.modalPresentationStyle
        = .Popover
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceView
        = sourceView
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceRect
        = sourceView.bounds
}

self.presentViewController(actionSheet, animated: true,
completion: nil)
}

```

This adds a new entry to the list of possible attachment types that's presented when the user taps on the “add new attachment” cell. When selected, the `addLocation` method (up next) is run.

2. Next, add the following method to `DocumentViewController`:

```

func addLocation() {
    self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowLocationAttachment", sender: nil)
}

```

Because we passed in `nil` as the sender to `performSegueWithIdentifier`, the `prepareForSegue` method will not provide an `NSFileWrapper` to the `LocationAttachmentViewController`, which means that its `viewWillAppear` method will set the view controller up for creating a new attachment.

- Finally, update the code in `collectionView(_:, didSelectItemAtIndexPath)` to trigger the `ShowLocationAttachment` segue if we selected a location attachment:

```
func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
    didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Do nothing if we are editing
    if self.isEditingAttachments {
        return
    }

    // Get the cell that the user interacted with;
    // bail if we can't get it
    guard let selectedCell = collectionView
        .cellForItemAtIndexPath(indexPath) else {
        return
    }

    // Work out how many cells we have
    let totalNumberOfCells = collectionView
        .numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

    // If we have selected the last cell, show the Add screen
    if indexPath.row == totalNumberOfCells-1 {
        addAttachment(selectedCell)
    }
    else {
        // Otherwise, show a different view controller based on the type
        // of the attachment
        guard let attachment = self.document?
            .attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] else {

            NSLog("No attachment for this cell!")
            return
        }

        let segueName : String?

        if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {
            segueName = "ShowImageAttachment"
        }
        >     } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {
        >         segueName = "ShowLocationAttachment"
        } else {
    }
}
```

```

        segueName = nil
    }

    // If we have a segue, run it now
    if let theSegue = segueName {
        self.performSegue(withIdentifier:theSegue,
                          sender: selectedCell)
    }

}
}

```

All this code does is ensure that, if the attachment was a JSON file, the `ShowLocationAttachment` segue is run.

- Run the app. You can now add new locations to your documents and view them.



Location attachments can't be edited once they're added. If you want to change a location attachment, delete it and add a new one.

Audio Attachments

The next attachment we'll add gives us the ability to record audio and play it back. We'll do this by using the AVFoundation framework, which includes two classes: `AVAudioRecorder` will be used to record the audio, and `AVAudioPlayer` will be used to play it back.



We're just scratching the surface of the iOS audio capabilities. You can learn more about the audio frameworks on iOS in [Apple's documentation](#).

First, we'll add some icons that will be needed for this additional screen.

- Open `Assets.xcassets`.
- Add the Audio, Record, Play, and Stop icons to the asset catalog.

Next, we'll add an entry to the list of attachment types for audio.

- Add the following code to the `addAttachment` method:

```

func addAttachment(sourceView : UIView) {
    let actionSheet

```

```

= UIAlertController(title: "Add attachment",
                   message: nil,
                   preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle
                     .ActionSheet)

// If a camera is available to use...
if UIImagePickerController
    .isSourceTypeAvailable(UIImagePickerControllerSourceType.Camera) {
// This variable contains a closure that shows the
// image picker, or asks the user to grant permission.
var handler : (action:UIAlertAction) -> Void

switch AVCaptureDevice
    .authorizationStatusForMediaType(AMMediaTypeVideo) {
case .Authorized:
    fallthrough
case .NotDetermined:
    // If we have permission, or we don't know if
// it's been denied, then the closure
// shows the image picker.
    handler = { (action) in
        self.addPhoto()
    }
default:

// Otherwise, when the button is tapped,
// ask for permission.
handler = { (action) in

    let title = "Camera access required"
    let message = "Go to Settings to grant permission to" +
        "access the camera."
    let cancelButtonTitle = "Cancel"
    let settingsButton = "Settings"

    let alert = UIAlertController(title: title,
                                 message: message,
                                 preferredStyle: .Alert)

// The Cancel button just closes the alert.
alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: cancelButtonTitle,
                           style: .Cancel, handler: nil))

// The Settings button opens this app's settings page,
// allowing the user to grant us permission.
alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: settingsButton,
                           style: .Default, handler: { (action) in

        if let settingsURL = NSURL(
            string: UIApplicationOpenSettingsURLString) {

```

```

        UIApplication.sharedApplication()
            .openURL(settingsURL)
    }

}))  

    self.presentViewController(alert,
        animated: true,
        completion: nil)
}
}  

// Either way, show the Camera item; when it's selected, the  

// appropriate code will run.
actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Camera",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: handler))
}  

actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Location",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
    self.addLocation()
}))  

> actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Audio",
>     style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
>     self.addAudio()
> }))  

actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Cancel",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Cancel, handler: nil))  

// If this is on an iPad, present it in a popover connected  

// to the source view
if UI_USER_INTERFACE_IDIOM() == UIUserInterfaceIdiom.Pad {
  

    actionSheet.modalPresentationStyle
        = .Popover
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceView
        = sourceView
    actionSheet.popoverPresentationController?.sourceRect
        = sourceView.bounds
}
  

self.presentViewController(actionSheet, animated: true,
completion: nil)
}

```

Just like when we added support for location attachments, we also need to add a new entry for audio attachments.

2. Add the `addAudio` to `DocumentViewController`:

```
func addAudio() {  
    self.performSegue(withIdentifier: "ShowAudioAttachment", sender: nil)  
}
```

Additionally, we need to trigger the right segue when the user decides to add an audio attachment.

3. Open the File menu and choose New→File.
4. Create a new `UIViewController` subclass named `AudioAttachmentViewController`.
5. Open `AudioAttachmentViewController.swift`.
6. Import the `AVFoundation` framework into view controller; this framework includes everything we could possibly need for loading, playing, and pausing audio and video content.
7. Make `AudioAttachmentViewController` conform to the `AttachmentViewer` and `AVAudioPlayerDelegate` protocols:

```
class AudioAttachmentViewController: UIViewController, AttachmentViewer,  
    AVAudioPlayerDelegate
```

8. Add the `attachmentFile` and `document` properties, which are required by the `AttachmentViewer` protocol:

```
var attachmentFile : NSFileWrapper?  
var document : Document?
```

9. Add outlet properties for the record, play, and stop buttons that we're about to add:

```
@IBOutlet weak var stopButton: UIButton!  
@IBOutlet weak var playButton: UIButton!  
@IBOutlet weak var recordButton: UIButton!
```

10. Finally, add an audio player and audio recorder:

```
var audioPlayer : AVAudioPlayer?  
var audioRecorder : AVAudioRecorder?
```

Time to create the user interface!

11. Open `Main.storyboard`.
12. Drag in a new view controller, and set its class to `AudioAttachmentViewController` in the Identity Inspector.
13. Hold down the Control key and drag from the document view controller to this new view controller. Choose “popover” from the list of segue types.

- Set the newly created segue's Anchor View to the document view controller's view.
- Set the identifier for this segue to ShowAudioAttachment.

We'll use a stack view to manage the three different buttons. Only one of them will appear at a time, and we want the currently visible button to appear in the center of the screen. Rather than overlay the buttons, we'll put them all in a centered stack view.

14. Search for `UIStackView` in the Object library and drag a vertical stack view into the audio attachment view controller's interface (Figure 14-2).

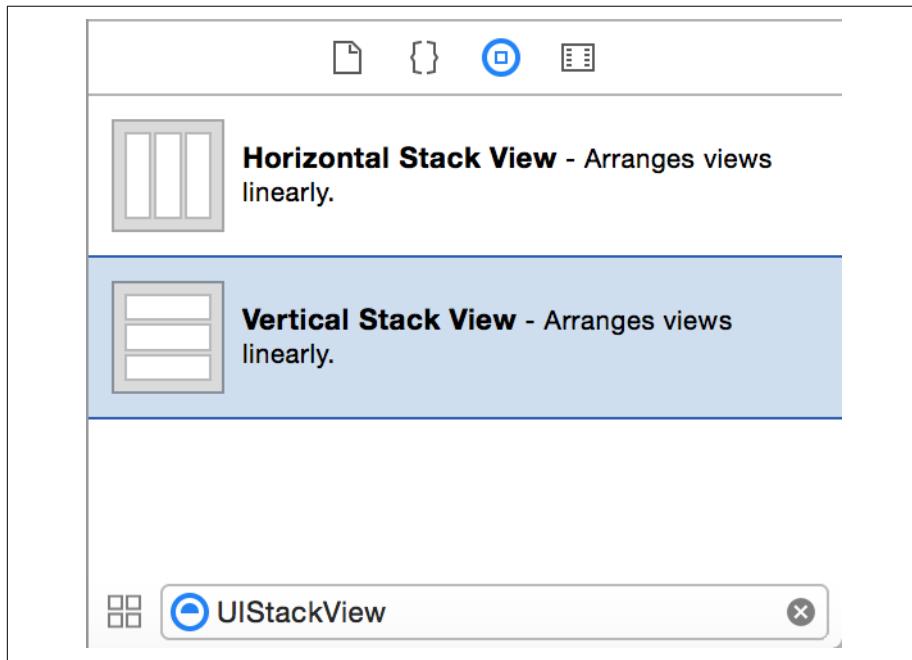


Figure 14-2. A vertical stack view

15. Center the stack view in the screen. Next, click the Align button at the lower-right corner, and turn on both “Horizontally in container” and “Vertically in container.” Click Add 2 Constraints. This will add centering constraints to the stack view.
16. Drag a new `UIButton` into the stack view. In the Attributes Inspector, set type to Custom, delete the label text, and set image to Record.



The stack view will resize to match the size of the button when you add the button. This is expected!

17. Repeat this process, adding two more buttons, with play and stop icons.

When you're done, the stack view should look like [Figure 14-3](#).



Figure 14-3. The view controller's interface



The order of the buttons doesn't matter, so if you added the buttons in different positions and you like that, stick with it.

18. Next, connect each button to its corresponding outlet; the record button should be connected to `recordButton`, and so on for the rest.

19. Connect each button to new actions in `AudioAttachmentViewController`, called `recordTapped`, `playTapped`, and `stopTapped`:

```
@IBAction func recordTapped(sender: AnyObject) {
    beginRecording()
}
@IBAction func playTapped(sender: AnyObject) {
    beginPlaying()
}
@IBAction func stopTapped(sender: AnyObject) {
    stopRecording()
    stopPlaying()
}
```

These methods simply respond to the buttons being tapped. The stop button serves a dual purpose—when tapped, it stops both the recorder and the player.

20. Implement the `updateButtonState` method:

```
func updateButtonState() {
    if self.audioRecorder?.recording == true ||
        self.audioPlayer?.playing == true {

        // We are either recording or playing, so
        // show the stop button
        self.recordButton.hidden = true
        self.playButton.hidden = true

        self.stopButton.hidden = false
    } else if self.audioPlayer != nil {

        // We have a recording ready to go
        self.recordButton.hidden = true
        self.stopButton.hidden = true

        self.playButton.hidden = false
    } else {

        // We have no recording.

        self.playButton.hidden = true
        self.stopButton.hidden = true

        self.recordButton.hidden = false
    }
}
```

The `updateButtonState` method is called from multiple places in this class. All it does is ensure that the right button is visible, based on whether the audio player is playing, or whether the audio recorder is recording.

21. Implement the `beginRecording` and `stopRecording` methods:

```
func beginRecording () {  
  
    // Ensure that we have permission. If we don't,  
    // we can't record, but should display a dialog that prompts  
    // the user to change the settings.  
  
    AVAudioSession.sharedInstance().requestRecordPermission {  
        (hasPermission) -> Void in  
  
        guard hasPermission else {  
  
            // We don't have permission. Let the user know.  
            let title = "Microphone access required"  
            let message = "We need the microphone to record audio."  
            let cancelButtonTitle = "Cancel"  
            let settingsButton = "Settings"  
  
            let alert = UIAlertController(title: title, message: message,  
                preferredStyle: .Alert)  
  
            // The Cancel button just closes the alert.  
            alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: cancelButtonTitle,  
                style: .Cancel, handler: nil))  
  
            // The Settings button opens this app's settings page,  
            // allowing the user to grant us permission.  
            alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: settingsButton,  
                style: .Default, handler: { (action) in  
  
                    if let settingsURL  
                        = NSURL(  
                            string: UIApplicationOpenSettingsURLString) {  
                        UIApplication.sharedApplication()  
                            .openURL(settingsURL)  
                    }  
  
                }))  
  
                self.presentViewController(alert,  
                    animated: true,  
                    completion: nil)  
            return  
        }  
  
        // We have permission!  
  
        // Try to use the same filename as before, if possible  
    }
```

```

let fileName = self.attachmentFile?.preferredFilename ??
"Recording \((Int(arc4random()))).wav"

let temporaryURL = NSURL(fileURLWithPath: NSTemporaryDirectory())
    .URLByAppendingPathComponent(fileName)

do {
    self.audioRecorder = try AVAudioRecorder(URL: temporaryURL,
        settings: [:])

    self.audioRecorder?.record()
} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Failed to start recording: \(error)")
}

self.updateButtonState()
}

}

func stopRecording () {
    guard let recorder = self.audioRecorder else {
        return
    }
    recorder.stop()

    self.audioPlayer = try? AVAudioPlayer(contentsOfURL: recorder.url)

    updateButtonState()
}

```

The `beginRecording` method first determines if the user has granted permission to access the microphone. If permission is *not* granted, we create and display an alert box letting the user know that it's not possible to record. If it is, we create a URL that points to a temporary location, and ask the audio recorder to begin recording.



You can't assume that the user has given permission to access the microphone. As a result, if you want to record audio, you need to first check to see if the app has permission by calling the `AVSession` method `requestRecordPermission`. This method takes a closure as a parameter, which receives as *its* parameter a `Bool` value indicating whether the app has permission to record.

This closure may not be called immediately. If it's the first time the app has ever asked for permission, then iOS will ask if the user wants to grant your app permission. After the user answers, the closure will be called.

If you *really* need the user to grant permission, and it's been previously withheld, you can send the user to the app's Settings page, which contains the controls for granting permission. Be careful about annoying the user about this, though!

1. Implement the `beginPlaying` and `stopPlaying` methods:

```
func beginPlaying() {
    self.audioPlayer?.delegate = self
    self.audioPlayer?.play()

    updateButtonState()
}

func stopPlaying() {
    audioPlayer?.stop()

    updateButtonState()
}
```

The `beginPlaying` and `stopPlaying` methods are quite straightforward: they start and stop the audio player, and then call `updateButtonState` to ensure that the correct button is appearing. Importantly, `beginPlaying` also sets the `delegate` of the audio player so that the `AudioAttachmentViewController` receives a method call when the audio finishes playing.

2. Implement the `prepareAudioPlayer` method, which works out the location of the file to play from and prepares the audio player:

```
func prepareAudioPlayer() {
    guard let data = self.attachmentFile?.regularFileContents else {
        return
    }

    do {
        self.audioPlayer = try AVAudioPlayer(data: data)
    } catch let error as NSError {
```

```

        NSLog("Failed to prepare audio player: \(error)")
    }

    self.updateButtonState()

}

```

The `prepareAudioPlayer` method checks to see if the `AudioAttachmentViewController` has an attachment to work with; if it does, it attempts to create the audio player, using the data stored inside the attachment.

3. Implement the `audioPlayerDidFinishPlaying` method, which is part of the `AVAudioPlayerDelegate` protocol:

```

func audioPlayerDidFinishPlaying(player: AVAudioPlayer,
                                successfully flag: Bool) {
    updateButtonState()
}

```

When the audio finishes playing, we have a very simple task to complete: we update the state of the button. Because the audio player is no longer playing, it will change from the “stop” symbol to the “play” symbol.

4. Finally, implement the `viewDidLoad` and `viewWillDisappear` methods:

```

override func viewDidLoad() {

    if attachmentFile != nil {
        prepareAudioPlayer()
    }

    // Indicate to the system that we will be both recording audio
    // and also playing it back
    do {
        try AVAudioSession.sharedInstance()
            .setCategory(AVAudioSessionCategoryPlayAndRecord)
    } catch let error as NSError {
        print("Error preparing for recording! \(error)")
    }

    updateButtonState()
}

override func viewWillDisappear(animated: Bool) {
    if let recorder = self.audioRecorder {

        // We have a recorder, which means we have a recording
        // to attach
        do {
            attachmentFile =
                try self.document?.addAttachmentAtURL(recorder.url)
        }
    }
}

```

```
    prepareAudioPlayer()

} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Failed to attach recording: \(error)")
}

}
```

The `viewDidLoad` method first gets the audio player prepared, if an audio attachment is present. It then signals to the system that the application will be both playing back and recording audio; this enables the microphone, and permits simultaneous use of the microphone and the speaker. Finally, it updates the button to whatever state is appropriate, depending on whether we have audio to play.

The `viewWillDisappear` method is responsible for saving any recorded audio. Because the AVAudioRecorder saves directly to a temporary URL, we simply need to copy it into the Document by calling `addAttachmentAtURL`.

Now we'll add support for working with audio attachments in the document view controller. First, we'll make the `Document` class return a suitable image for audio attachments, and then we'll make the `DocumentViewController` present the `AudioAttachmentViewController` when an audio attachment is tapped.

1. Open `Document.swift`, and add the following code to `NSFileWrapper`'s `thumbnailImage` method:

```
func thumbnailImage() -> UIImage? {  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {  
        // If it's an image, return it as a UIImage  
  
        // Ensure that we can get the contents of the file  
        guard let attachmentContent = self.regularFileContents else {  
            return nil  
        }  
  
        // Attempt to convert the file's contents to text  
        return UIImage(data: attachmentContent)  
    }  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {  
        // JSON files used to store locations  
        return UIImage(named: "Location")  
    }  
  
    if (self.conformsToType(kUTTypeAudio)) {  
        return UIImage(named: "Audio")  
    }  
}
```

```

    // We don't know what type it is, so return nil
    return nil
}

```

All we're doing here is making the `NSFileWrapper` return the `Audio.pdf` image if it represents an audio file of any kind.

2. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`, and add the following code to `DocumentViewController`'s `collectionView(_:, didSelectItemAtIndexPath:)` method:

```

func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
                    didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Do nothing if we are editing
    if self.isEditingAttachments {
        return
    }

    // Get the cell that the user interacted with;
    // bail if we can't get it
    guard let selectedCell = collectionView
        .cellForItemAtIndexPath(indexPath) else {
        return
    }

    // Work out how many cells we have
    let totalNumberOfCells = collectionView
        .numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

    // If we have selected the last cell, show the Add screen
    if indexPath.row == totalNumberOfCells-1 {
        addAttachment(selectedCell)
    }
    else {
        // Otherwise, show a different view controller based
        // on the type of the attachment
        guard let attachment = self.document?
            .attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] else {
            NSLog("No attachment for this cell!")
            return
        }

        let segueName : String?

        if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {
            segueName = "ShowImageAttachment"
        } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {
            segueName = "ShowLocationAttachment"
        } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeAudio) {
            segueName = "ShowAudioAttachment"
        }
    }
}

```

```

>         segueName = "ShowAudioAttachment"
} else {

    // We have no view controller for this.
    // Instead, show a UIDocumentInteractionController

    self.document?.URLForAttachment(attachment,
        completion: { (url) -> Void in

        if let attachmentURL = url {
            let documentInteraction
                = UIDocumentInteractionController(URL: attachmentURL)

            documentInteraction
                .presentOptionsMenuFromRect(selectedCell.bounds,
                    inView: selectedCell, animated: true)
        }

    })

    segueName = nil
}

// If we have a segue, run it now
if let theSegue = segueName {
    self.performSegueWithIdentifier(theSegue,
        sender: selectedCell)
}

}

```

Again, there's not a huge amount of stuff we need to add here; we simply need to run the `ShowAudioAttachment` segue when the user selects an audio attachment.



Unfortunately, the simulator doesn't allow you to record audio, as it doesn't have any actual recording hardware. It will, however, allow you to play back any audio you recorded on other devices.

You can now add and play back audio attachments!

Video Attachments

iOS has extensive video capture abilities, so we're now going to add support for recording video to our app. Unlike the first two types of attachment that we imple-

mented in this chapter, we don't need to implement our own view controller; instead, we'll make use of iOS-provided view controllers. We'll make the `UIImagePickerController`—which we first mentioned back in “[Adding Image Attachments](#)” on page 283—record video, and we'll make use of a new view controller, `AVPlayerViewController`, to actually play the video back.

1. First, we'll add an icon to represent this type of attachment. Open `Assets.xcassets` and add the Video icon to it.
2. Next, we'll add support to the `Document` class to make it return an image for videos. Open `Document.swift`, and add the following code to `NSFileWrapper`'s `thumbnailImage` method:

```
func thumbnailImage() -> UIImage? {  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {  
        // If it's an image, return it as a UIImage  
  
        // Ensure that we can get the contents of the file  
        guard let attachmentContent = self.regularFileContents else {  
            return nil  
        }  
  
        // Attempt to convert the file's contents to text  
        return UIImage(data: attachmentContent)  
    }  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {  
        // JSON files used to store locations  
        return UIImage(named: "Location")  
    }  
  
    if (self.conformsToType(kUTTypeAudio)) {  
        return UIImage(named: "Audio")  
    }  
  
>    if (self.conformsToType(kUTTypeMovie)) {  
>        return UIImage(named: "Video")  
>    }  
  
    // We don't know what type it is, so return nil  
    return nil  
}
```

As you might have guessed, this detects whether the file wrapper is any type of movie, and returns the `Video.pdf` image you just added.

3. We'll now make changes to the `addPhoto` method that allow the user to record video in addition to taking photos. Open `DocumentViewController.swift` and add the following code to the `addPhoto` method:

```
func addPhoto() {
    let picker = UIImagePickerController()

    picker.sourceType = .Camera
    >    picker.mediaTypes = UIImagePickerController
    >        .availableMediaTypesForSourceType(
    >            UIImagePickerControllerSourceType.Camera)!

    picker.delegate = self

    self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false

    self.presentViewController(picker, animated: true, completion: nil)
}
```

By default, a `UIImagePickerController` will only support taking photos—in the overwhelming majority of all use cases, that's all you need. However, you can control what types of media the image picker will accept by modifying the `mediaTypes` property. In this case, we're asking the image picker class for *all* types of media that the camera can produce, and then telling the image picker that we'll take them all.

4. Next, we'll make the document picker capable of detecting when the user recorded a video. If the user did, we get a URL that points at the recorded video, which means that we can add it as an attachment. Update the `imagePickerController(_, didFinishPickingMediaWithInfo:)` method with the following code:

```
func imagePickerController(picker: UIImagePickerController,
    didFinishPickingMediaWithInfo info: [String : AnyObject]) {
    do {

        if let image = (info[UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage]
            ?? info[UIImagePickerControllerOriginalImage]) as? UIImage,
            let imageData = UIImageJPEGRepresentation(image, 0.8) {

            try self.document?.addAttachmentWithData(imageData,
                name: "Image \(arc4random()).jpg")

            self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

        } else if let mediaURL
            = (info[UIImagePickerControllerMediaURL]) as? NSURL {

            try self.document?.addAttachmentAtURL(mediaURL)

        } else {

    }
```

```

        throw err(.CannotSaveAttachment)
    }
} catch let error as NSError {
    NSLog("Error adding attachment: \(error)")
}

self.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true, completion: nil)
}

```

When we first implemented the ability to take photos, we used the `UIImagePickerControllerOriginalImage` and `UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage` to retrieve the photo from the `info` dictionary. However, we now need to be able to get videos as well. We can detect if the user took a video by checking to see if there's any value in the `info` dictionary for the `UIImagePickerControllerMediaURL` key. This URL points to the location on disk of the video the user took; this makes it extremely convenient, since we can then use it with the `addAttachmentAtURL` method to add the attachment.

5. Run the app—you can now capture video!

Next, we'll make it possible to view the recorded video. We'll do this by preparing a built-in view controller type, called `AVPlayerViewController`, and using that to show the video. This will also enable us to show the video in Picture in Picture mode, which lets users opt to view a video playing in their apps in a movable and resizeable window that sits on top of other content, allowing them to use other apps while they watch videos.

The `AVPlayerViewController` is the view controller used in the built-in Videos application. It's capable of playing any video format that iOS can natively play.

In order to work, `AVPlayerViewController` requires an `NSURL` that points to the video file the user wants to play. Up until now, we've been able to work directly with the data inside the attachment `NSFileWrappers`, but that won't work for video. Part of the reason for this is that video files can be *huge*—we don't want to have to load them into memory in the form of an `NSData` in order to work with them.

We therefore need to be able to ask the `Document` class to provide us with an `NSURL` for a given attachment. This has a complication, however: if we ask for the URL for an attachment that has just been added, *before* the document is saved, then the attachment may not yet have been written to disk, which means it has no URL.

To solve this, we'll force the `Document` to save itself to disk before we attempt to get the URL. However, this has its *own* complication: saving the document is an asynchronous task, meaning that it might take some time to complete. Therefore, any method that asks for the `NSURL` of an attachment must *itself* be asynchronous: it needs

to take a closure as a parameter that, after the document finishes saving, is called. This closure will receive as *its* parameter the URL for the attachment.

1. Open *Document.swift* and add the following method to the Document class:

```
// Given an attachment, eventually returns its URL, if possible.  
// It might be nil if this isn't one of our attachments or  
// we failed to save, in which case the attachment may not exist  
// on disk  
func URLForAttachment(attachment: NSFileWrapper,  
                      completion: NSURL? -> Void) {  
  
    // Ensure that this is an attachment we have  
    guard let attachments = self.attachedFiles  
        where attachments.contains(attachment) else {  
        completion(nil)  
        return  
    }  
  
    // Ensure that this attachment has a filename  
    guard let fileName = attachment.preferredFilename else {  
        completion(nil)  
        return  
    }  
  
    self.autosaveWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in  
        if success {  
  
            // We're now certain that attachments actually  
            // exist on disk, so we can get their URL  
            let attachmentURL = self.fileURL  
                .URLByAppendingPathComponent(  
                    NoteDocumentFileNames.AttachmentsDirectory.rawValue,  
                    isDirectory: true)  
                .URLByAppendingPathComponent(fileName)  
  
            completion(attachmentURL)  
        } else {  
            NSLog("Failed to autosave!")  
            completion(nil)  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Now that we can get the URL for an attachment, we can work with the AVPlayerViewController.

2. Import the AVKit framework at the top of *DocumentViewController.swift*:

```

import AVKit

3. Update DocumentViewController's collectionView(_:, didSelectItemAtIndexPath:) method to show an AVPlayerViewController when a video attachment is tapped:

func collectionView(collectionView: UICollectionView,
                    didSelectItemAtIndexPath indexPath: NSIndexPath) {

    // Do nothing if we are editing
    if self.isEditingAttachments {
        return
    }

    // Get the cell that the user interacted with;
    // bail if we can't get it
    guard let selectedCell = collectionView
        .cellForItemAtIndexPath(indexPath) else {
        return
    }

    // Work out how many cells we have
    let totalNumberOfCells = collectionView
        .numberOfItemsInSection(indexPath.section)

    // If we have selected the last cell, show the Add screen
    if indexPath.row == totalNumberOfCells-1 {
        addAttachment(selectedCell)
    }
    else {
        // Otherwise, show a different view controller based
        // on the type of the attachment
        guard let attachment = self.document?
            .attachedFiles?[indexPath.row] else {

            NSLog("No attachment for this cell!")
            return
        }

        let segueName : String?

        if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {
            segueName = "ShowImageAttachment"
        } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {
            segueName = "ShowLocationAttachment"
        } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeAudio) {
            segueName = "ShowAudioAttachment"
        } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeMovie) {
        }
    }
}

```

```

>         self.document?.URLForAttachment(attachment,
>                                         completion: { (url) -> Void in
>
>             if let attachmentURL = url {
>                 let media = AVPlayerViewController()
>                 media.player = AVPlayer(URL: attachmentURL)
>
>                 self.presentViewController(media, animated: true,
>                                         completion: nil)
>             }
>         })
>
>         segueName = nil
>     } else {
>
>         // We have no view controller for this.
>         // Instead, show a UIDocumentInteractionController
>
>         self.document?.URLForAttachment(attachment,
>                                         completion: { (url) -> Void in
>
>             if let attachmentURL = url {
>                 let documentInteraction
>                     = UIDocumentInteractionController(URL: attachmentURL)
>
>                 documentInteraction
>                     .presentOptionsMenuFromRect(selectedCell.bounds,
>                                         inView: selectedCell, animated: true)
>             }
>
>         })
>
>         segueName = nil
>     }
>
>     // If we have a segue, run it now
>     if let theSegue = segueName {
>         self.performSegueWithIdentifier(theSegue,
>                                         sender: selectedCell)
>     }
>
> }

```

When the user selects a video, we don't actually want to use a segue to move to a view controller that we've made. Instead, we create a new `AVPlayerViewController` and give it the URL of the attachment. We then manually present it, using

`presentViewController`, and set `segueName` to `nil`, indicating that we don't want to actually run a segue. You can now tap on videos and play them back.

Finally, we'll now enable support for Picture in Picture mode.

1. Go to the Notes-iOS target's Capabilities, and scroll down to the Background Modes section.
2. Turn on "Audio, Airplay and Picture in Picture" (see [Figure 14-4](#)).

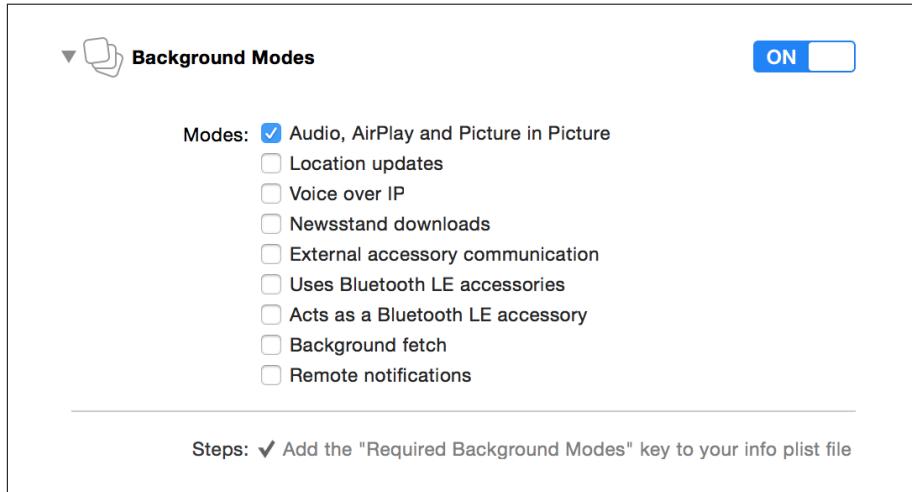


Figure 14-4. Enabling the “Audio, AirPlay and Picture in Picture” background mode

3. Finally, add the following line of code to the code you just added in `didSelectItemAtIndexPath`:

```
    } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeMovie) {  
  
        self.document?.URLForAttachment(attachment,  
            completion: { (url) -> Void in  
  
                if let attachmentURL = url {  
                    let media = AVPlayerViewController()  
                    media.player = AVPlayer(URL: attachmentURL)  
  
                    let _ = try? AVAudioSession.sharedInstance()  
                        .setCategory(AVAudioSessionCategoryPlayback)  
  
                    self.presentViewController(media, animated: true,  
                        completion: nil)  
                }  
            })  
    }
```

```
segueName = nil
```

By setting the application's audio session category to `AVAudioSessionCategory Playback`, you're indicating to the system that the application is simply playing back content. This will enable Picture in Picture mode for the player.

Users can now tap the Picture in Picture button while watching a video, and it will scale down into the corner. This view will stick around, even if they leave the app.

Contact Attachments

We'll now add the ability to add contacts to your documents as attachments. Contacts will be represented by vCard files, using the `Contacts` and `ContactsUI` framework. We'll add new contacts using a `CNContactPickerController`, and view the attachments using a `CNContactViewController`. To load and save contact files, we'll use `CNContactVCardSerialization`.

As should hopefully be pretty obvious, the user's contacts are private and sensitive. As a result, if you want unfettered access to them, you have to ask for permission, in the same way as the camera, microphone, and location services. However, if you use `CNContactPickerController`, you don't have to. This view controller is entirely under the control of the system, and mediates your app's access to the contacts list. You can't even take a screenshot of it while it's presented. This means that the user can securely select a contact and return it to your app for you to work with.

When we've got a contact to work with, we'll present it using the `CNContactViewController`. This view controller provides the same UI as you can find in the `Contacts` application and presents the details of the person in question.

Lastly, to read and write the contact to disk, we need some way to convert the `CNContact` object that we're working with to some data format. To do that, we'll use `CNContactVCardSerialization`, which can read and write contact data using the vCard format.

First, let's add the basic support for the new type of attachment.

1. Open `Assets.xcasset` and add the Contact image to the asset catalog.
2. Open `Document.swift` and add the following code to `NSFileWrapper`'s `thumbnailImage` method:

```
func thumbnailImage() -> UIImage? {  
  
    if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage) {  
        // If it's an image, return it as a UIImage
```

```

// Ensure that we can get the contents of the file
guard let attachmentContent = self.regularFileContents else {
    return nil
}

// Attempt to convert the file's contents to text
return UIImage(data: attachmentContent)
}

if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeJSON) {
    // JSON files used to store locations
    return UIImage(named: "Location")
}

if (self.conformsToType(kUTTypeAudio)) {
    return UIImage(named: "Audio")
}

if (self.conformsToType(kUTTypeMovie)) {
    return UIImage(named: "Video")
}

> if self.conformsToType(kUTTypeContact) {
>     return UIImage(named: "Contact")
> }

// We don't know what type it is, so return nil
return nil
}

```

We're repeating the same pattern: if the file is a contact file of any kind, we return the *Contact.pdf* image.

3. Open *DocumentViewController.swift*.
4. Import the Contacts and ContactsUI frameworks at the top of the file:

```
import Contacts
import ContactsUI
```

The Contacts framework contains objects that are useful working with contacts themselves, while ContactsUI contains the view controllers for presenting and working with contacts.

5. Add a Contact item to the action sheet in the *addAttachment* method:

```
actionSheet.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Contact",
    style: UIAlertActionStyle.Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
        self.addContact()
}))
```

6. Add an extension that makes `DocumentViewController` conform to `CNContactPickerDelegate`. This extension also includes the method that creates and shows the contacts picker:

```
extension DocumentViewController : CNContactPickerDelegate {  
  
    func addContact() {  
        let contactPicker = CNContactPickerViewController()  
        contactPicker.delegate = self  
        self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = false  
        self.presentViewController(contactPicker,  
                                  animated: true,  
                                  completion: nil)  
    }  
  
    func contactPicker(picker: CNContactPickerViewController,  
                      didSelectContact contact: CNContact) {  
  
        do {  
            if let data = try? CNContactVCardSerialization  
                .dataWithContacts([contact]) {  
  
                let name = "\u{2028}(contact.identifier)-" +  
                          "\u{2028}(contact.givenName)\u{2028}(contact.familyName).vcf"  
  
                try self.document?.addAttachmentWithData(data, name: name)  
                self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()  
            }  
        } catch let error as NSError {  
            NSLog("Failed to save contact: \(error)")  
        }  
    }  
}
```

The `addContact` method creates a `CNContactPickerViewController` and sets it to use the `DocumentViewController` as its delegate. As part of the same extension, we're making the `DocumentViewController` capable of acting as the delegate, and implementing `contactPicker(_:, didSelectContact:)`—a critical method.

This method is called when the user selects a contact in the contact picker. First, we attempt to convert the contact that the user selected into vCard format by using the `CNContactVCardSerialization` class. If this succeeds, we create a filename for this contact by using information from the card—the unique identifier string, the user's first name, and the user's last name—and then give this to the `Document` to save.

- Finally, add support for viewing contacts by adding the following code to `collectionView(_:, didSelectItemAtIndexPath:)`:

```
    } else if attachment.conformsToType(kUTTypeContact) {  
  
        do {  
            if let data = attachment.regularFileContents,  
                let contact = try CNContactVCardSerialization  
                    .contactsWithData(data).first as? CNContact {  
  
                let contactViewController =  
                    CNContactViewController(forContact: contact)  
  
                let navigationController =  
                    UINavigationController(rootViewController:  
                        contactViewController)  
  
                contactViewController.navigationItem  
                    .rightBarButtonItem = UIBarButtonItem(  
                        barButtonSystemItem: .Done,  
                        target: self,  
                        action: "dismissModalView")  
  
                self.presentViewController(navigationController,  
                    animated: true, completion: nil)  
            }  
        } catch let error as NSError {  
            NSLog("Error displaying contact: \(error)")  
        }  
  
        segueName = nil  
    }  
}
```

Here, we're getting the data from the attachment and attempting to use the `CNContactVCardSerialization` to convert it from vCard format into a usable `CNContact`. We can then use this contact to prepare a `CNContactViewController` to actually present the contact. However, on its own, a `CNContactViewController` doesn't actually have a way to dismiss itself. We therefore need to create a `UINavigationController`, so that it has a navigation bar, as well as add a Done button to the contact view controller's navigation item. This button, when tapped, will call the `dismissModalView` method, which we added way back in [“Viewing Attachments” on page 289](#).

- Run the app and tap a contact attachment. You'll be able to view it.

Notifications

One of the most important things a mobile device can do is alert you when it needs your attention. This can come from a variety of sources: text messages from people who want to talk to you, phone calls, alarm clocks going off, and so on. These are all forms of *notifications*.

There are two ways you can get a notification to the user: *local* notifications and *remote* notifications.

- Local notifications are created by the app, and appear at a time and date that the app wants.
- Remote notifications, also called *push* notifications, are delivered by a server, via Apple's push notification server.



We aren't covering remote notifications in this book, because it's a huge topic that requires server-side infrastructure. If you really want to do it yourself, Mattt Thompson's excellent [Houston](#) project provides you with as simple a method as possible for sending test push notifications.

A local notification works like this: you create an instance of the `UILocalNotification` class and provide it with the text you want the user to see. You also either provide a *fire date* (that is, the time and date the notification should appear) and schedule it with the system or instruct the system to display it immediately.



If the user has an Apple Watch, you can also customize the way that your app's notifications are presented by providing a custom notification UI.

Notifications can also have *actions* associated with them. When a notification arrives, the user can choose to swipe left on the notification (on the home screen), or swipe down on it (if it arrives while using the phone) to reveal buttons that can be tapped; if the user taps on these buttons, your app is launched and informed about the user's choice.



Notifications can be intrusive and annoying. As a result, iOS requires that your app get permission to display notifications before you're allowed to schedule them. We'll be dealing with this later in the section; as with other issues of user permissions, you always need to take into account the fact that the user may decline to receive notifications, and your app needs to deal with this gracefully.

In this app, we'll add the ability to set an alarm clock on notes, using local notifications. Additionally, when the alarm goes off, the user can choose to "snooze" the alarm, which reschedules it for later in the future.



Because it's not actually an attachment, the notification won't be stored as a file. Instead, the UI for accessing the notification "attachment" will be a button in the navigation bar.

1. Open *Assets.xcassets* and add the Notification icon to the asset catalog.
2. Open *Document.swift*.
3. Add the `localNotification` property to the `Document` class:

```
var localNotification: UILocalNotification? {  
  
    get {  
        if let allNotifications = UIApplication.sharedApplication()  
            .scheduledLocalNotifications {  
  
            return allNotifications.filter({  
                (item:UILocalNotification) -> Bool in  
  
                // If it has an "owner", and will appear  
                // in the future...  
                if let owner = item.userInfo?["owner"] as? String where  
                    item.fireDate?.timeIntervalSinceNow > 0  
                {  
                    // Then it is ours if the owner equals  
                    // our own URL  
                    return owner == self.fileURL.absoluteString  
                } else {  
                    return false  
                }  
  
            }).first  
        }  
        else {  
            return nil  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```

        }
    }

    set {
        if let currentNotification = self.localNotification {
            UIApplication.sharedApplication()
                .cancelLocalNotification(currentNotification)
        }

        if let theNotification = newValue {
            var userInfo = theNotification.userInfo ?? [:]
            userInfo["owner"] = self.fileURL.absoluteString
            theNotification.userInfo = userInfo

            UIApplication.sharedApplication()
                .scheduleLocalNotification(theNotification)
        }
    }
}

```

This is a computed property, because the act of getting the document's notification involves looking through *all* of the application's local notifications and returning the one that belongs to this document. Setting works in a similar way: we mark the notification object as belonging to this document and then submit it to the system.



This means that, in this app, documents can have only one notification. It also means that notifications aren't synced via iCloud. The reason for this limitation is simplicity; syncing and supporting multiple notifications doesn't help improve your understanding of how notifications are handled.

Each Document has the ability store a single notification. Notifications are never stored as files on disk, but rather are scheduled with the system; when you get the `localNotification` property, we query the app's entire collection of `UILocalNotifications`, and check each one to see if its `owner` is equal to the document's URL. If it is, we return it. Setting the property works the same way in reverse: we receive a `UILocalNotification`, ensure that its `owner` is set to the Document's URL, and schedule it with the system.

4. Add the `alertCategory` and `alertSnoozeAction` properties to the Document class:

```

static let alertSnoozeAction = "snooze"
static let alertCategory = "notes-alert"

```

We need to be notified when the user approves or denies access to notifications. The only place that the app is told about this is in the app delegate's `didRegisterUserNotificationSettings` method; however, we want the view controller that will manage notifications to be informed about this fact, too.

To deal with this, we'll create and post a custom `NSNotification`. We've worked with `NSNotification` and `NSNotificationCenter` before, where we've registered to have code run when the application broadcasts a message. To let the rest of the app know about the user either agreeing or declining to let the app post notifications, we'll broadcast our own custom `NSNotifications`.



The word *notification* is a little overloaded. An `NSNotification` is a message that is sent internally between objects in your app, while a `UILocalNotification` is a message that's sent to the user.

1. Open `AppDelegate.swift`.
2. Add the following property outside of the class definition:

```
let NotesApplicationDidRegisterUserNotificationSettings  
    = "NotesApplicationDidRegisterUserNotificationSettings"
```

3. Implement the following method in `AppDelegate`:

```
func application(application: UIApplication,  
                 didRegisterUserNotificationSettings notificationSettings:  
                     UIUserNotificationSettings) {  
  
    NSNotificationCenter.defaultCenter().postNotificationName(  
        NotesApplicationDidRegisterUserNotificationSettings,  
        object: self)  
}
```

When the application delegate receives the `didRegisterUserNotificationSettings` message, we use the `NSNotificationCenter`'s `postNotificationName` method to broadcast a notification. We'll later add the ability to receive and deal with this message to the view controller that manages the notifications.

We need a way to access the notifications view controller, which we'll be adding shortly. We won't add it to the attachment list, because that list's contents are controlled by the files in the `Attachments` directory. Instead, we add a `UIBarButtonItem` at the right hand side of the navigation bar, next to the `Edit` button; the actual image to use will depend on whether this document has a notification.

We'll be working with the navigation bar quite a bit, so we'll put everything to do with the bar in its own method.

1. Add the `updateBarItems` method to the `DocumentViewController` class:

```
func updateBarItems() {
    var rightButtonItems : [UIBarButtonItem] = []
    rightButtonItems.append(self.editButtonItem())

    let notificationButtonImage : UIImage?
    if self.document?.localNotification == nil {
        notificationButtonImage = UIImage(named:"Notification-Off")
    } else {
        notificationButtonImage = UIImage(named:"Notification")
    }

    let notificationButton =
        UIBarButtonItem(image: notificationButtonImage,
                        style: UIBarButtonItemStyle.Plain,
                        target: self,
                        action: "showNotification")

    rightButtonItems.append(notificationButton)

    self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = rightButtonItems
}
```

2. Next, call `updateBarItems` in `viewWillAppear` by adding the following code:

```
override func viewWillAppear(animated: Bool) {
    // Ensure that we actually have a document
    guard let document = self.document else {
        NSLog("No document to display!")
        self.navigationController?.popViewControllerAnimated(true)
        return
    }

    // If this document is not already open, open it
    if document.documentState.contains(UIDocumentState.Closed) {
        document.openWithCompletionHandler { (success) -> Void in
            if success == true {
                self.textView?.attributedText = document.text

                self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

                // Add support for searching for this document
                document.userActivity?.title = document.localizedDescription

                let contentAttributeSet
                    = CSSearchableItemAttributeSet(
                        itemContentType: document.fileType!)
                contentAttributeSet.title = document.localizedDescription
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
contentAttributeSet.contentDescription =
document.text.string

document.userActivity?.contentAttributeSet
= contentAttributeSet

document.userActivity?.eligibleForSearch = true

// We are now engaged in this activity
document.userActivity?.becomeCurrent()

// Register for state change notifications
self.stateChangedObserver = NSNotificationCenter
    .defaultCenter().addObserverForName(
        UIDocumentStateChangedNotification,
        object: document,
        queue: nil,
        usingBlock: { (notification) -> Void in
            self.documentStateChanged()
        })
}

self.documentStateChanged()

self.updateBarItems()

}

else
{
    // We can't open it! Show an alert!
let alertTitle = "Error"
let alertMessage = "Failed to open document"
let alert = UIAlertController(title: alertTitle,
    message: alertMessage,
    preferredStyle: UIAlertControllerStyle.Alert)

// Add a button that returns to the previous screen
alert.addAction(UIAlertAction(title: "Close",
    style: .Default, handler: { (action) -> Void in
        self.navigationController?
            .popViewControllerAnimated(true)
    }))
}

// Show the alert
self.presentViewController(alert,
    animated: true,
    completion: nil)
}

}
```

```

    // We may be reappearing after having presented an attachment,
    // which means that our 'shouldCloseOnDisappear' flag has been set.
    // Regardless, clear that flag.
    self.shouldCloseOnDisappear = true

    // And reload our list of attachments, in case it changed
    // while we were away
    self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

>     // Also, refresh the contents of the navigation bar
>     updateBarItems()

}

```

3. Implement the `showNotification` method to show the view controller:

```

func showNotification() {
    self.performSegue(withIdentifier: "ShowNotificationAttachment",
                      sender: nil)
}

```

We'll now create the view controller for the notifications (see [Figure 14-5](#)).

1. Open the File menu and choose New→File. Create a new Cocoa class; make it a subclass of `UIViewController` and name it `NotificationAttachmentViewController`.
2. Open `NotificationAttachmentViewController.swift`.
3. Make `NotificationAttachmentViewController` conform to the `AttachmentViewer` protocol, and add the two properties required by the protocol:

```

class NotificationAttachmentViewController: UIViewController,
    AttachmentViewer {

    var document : Document?
    var attachmentFile : NSFileWrapper?
}

```

4. Open `Main.storyboard` and drag in a new view controller.
5. Go to the Identity Inspector and set the class of the new view controller to `NotificationAttachmentViewController`.
6. Hold down the Control key and drag from the document view controller to the notification attachment view controller. Choose “popover” from the list that appears.
7. Select the new segue and drag from the well next to Anchor to the document view controller's view.
8. Open the Attributes Inspector and set the name of the segue to `ShowNotificationAttachment`.

9. Search for `UIDatePicker` in the Object library and drag in a date picker. Center it in the interface.



Figure 14-5. Configuring the Notification attachment's interface

10. Open `NotificationAttachmentViewController.swift` in the Assistant.
11. Connect the date picker to a new outlet called `datePicker`.
12. Open `NotificationAttachmentViewController.swift` and add the following property to the `NotificationAttachmentViewController` class:

```
var notificationSettingsWereRegisteredObserver : AnyObject?
```

13. Next, implement the `viewWillAppear` method:

```
override func viewWillAppear(animated:Bool) {  
  
    if let notification = self.document?.localNotification {  
        let cancelButtonTitle = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Trash,  
                                              target: self, action: "clearNotificationAndClose")  
    }  
}
```

```

        self.navigationItem.leftBarButtonItem = cancelButton

        self.datePicker.date = notification.fireDate ?? NSDate()

    } else {
        let cancelButtonTitle = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Cancel,
                                             target: self, action: "clearNotificationAndClose")
        self.navigationItem.leftBarButtonItem = cancelButtonTitle

        self.datePicker.date = NSDate()
    }

    // Now add the Done button that adds the attachment
    let doneButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Done,
                                     target: self, action: "setNotificationAndClose")
    self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = doneButton

    // Register for changes to user notification settings
    notificationSettingsWereRegisteredObserver = NSNotificationCenter
        .defaultCenter().addObserverForName(
            NotesApplicationDidRegisterUserNotificationSettings,
            object: nil, queue: nil,
            usingBlock: { (notification) -> Void in

                if let settings = UIApplication.sharedApplication()
                    .currentUserNotificationSettings() where
                    settings.types.contains(.Alert) == true {
                    self.datePicker.enabled = true
                    self.datePicker.userInteractionEnabled = true
                    doneButton.enabled = true
                }
            })
}

// If the app doesn't already have access, register for access
if let settings = UIApplication.sharedApplication()
    .currentUserNotificationSettings()
    where settings.types.contains(.Alert) != true {

    let action = UIMutableUserNotificationAction()
    action.identifier = Document.alertSnoozeAction
    action.activationMode = .Background
    action.title = "Snooze"

    let category = UIMutableUserNotificationCategory()
    category.identifier = Document.alertCategory

    category.setActions(
        [action],
        forContext: UIUserNotificationActionContext.Default)
}

```

```

        category.setActions(
            [action],
            forContext: UIUserNotificationActionContext.Minimal)

    let settings = UIUserNotificationSettings(forTypes: .Alert,
                                              categories: [category])

    UIApplication.sharedApplication()
        .registerUserNotificationSettings(settings)

    self.datePicker.enabled = false
    self.datePicker.userInteractionEnabled = false
    doneButton.enabled = false
}
}

```

The `viewWillAppear` method does quite a few things. First, it determines if the user has already set a notification; if so, it creates a button with the “delete” icon (which looks like a trashcan) that, when tapped, calls the `clearNotificationAndClose` method to remove the notification. This button is added to the left side of the navigation bar. It then updates the date shown in the date picker to be equal to the fire date of the notification.

If the user doesn’t have a notification, the button is labeled Cancel. It still has the same behavior, in that it calls `clearNotificationAndClose`; but that’s fine, since it works the same regardless (if the user taps Cancel, there will be no local notification scheduled, just the same as when he or she entered the screen).

Next, it replaces the Done button with one that calls `setNotificationAndClose`, which will actually register the notification with the document.

The rest of the method prepares the application to deal with notifications. First, it registers to receive the `NotesApplicationDidRegisterUserNotificationSettings` notification, which the app delegate’s `didReceiveLocalNotification` method posts. When this arrives, we check to see if the application now has permission to present notifications. If it does, then it enables the UI for this screen, allowing the user to configure the notification.

Finally, the app checks to see if it *currently* has permission to present notifications. If it does not, then the user has either explicitly declined permission, or else this is the first time the app has run and so it just doesn’t know. Either way, it sets up the objects that describe to iOS how the notifications will work. It then calls `registerUserNotificationSettings`; the first time the app ever calls this, it presents with the dialog box asking if the user wants to allow notifications.

After this, the UI for configuring the notifications is disabled. It will be re-enabled if the user chooses to grant permission.

14. Next, add the `setNotificationAndClose` method to the class:

```

func setNotificationAndClose() {

    // Prepare and add the notification if the date picker
    // isn't set in the future
    let date : NSDate

    if self.datePicker.date.timeIntervalSinceNow < 5 {
        date = NSDate(timeIntervalSinceNow: 5)
    } else {
        date = self.datePicker.date
    }

    let notification = UILocalNotification()
    notification.fireDate = date

    notification.alertTitle = "Notes Alert"
    notification.alertBody = "Check out your document!"

    notification.category = Document.alertCategory

    self.document?.localNotification = notification

    self.presentingViewController?.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true,
        completion: nil)
}

```

This method reads the date from the date picker and uses it to create a `UILocalNotification`, which it stores in the `Document`. It then dismisses the view controller.

- Finally, add the `clearNotificationAndClose` method to the class:

```

func clearNotificationAndClose() {
    self.document?.localNotification = nil
    self.presentingViewController?.dismissViewControllerAnimated(true,
        completion: nil)
}

```

This method removes any notification currently scheduled by the `Document`, and then dismisses the view controller.

We'll now add the ability to respond to the actions associated with the notification. When a notification comes in, and the user taps on that notification, we'll open the document associated with it. In addition, if the user taps on the “snooze” action, we'll create a new notification that fires five seconds later.



In a real shipping app, you'd probably want the snooze delay to be longer, but five seconds is useful for testing.

1. Open `AppDelegate.swift`.
2. Add the following code to the `AppDelegate` class:

```
func application(application: UIApplication,
    didReceiveLocalNotification notification: UILocalNotification) {

    // Extract the document and open it
    if notification.category == Document.alertCategory,
        let url = notification.userInfo?["owner"] as? String,
        let navigationController =
            self.window?.rootViewController as? UINavigationController
    {
        if let path = NSURL(string: url)?.path {
            navigationController.popToRootViewControllerAnimated(false)

            (navigationController.topViewController as?
                DocumentListViewController)?.openDocumentWithPath(path)
        }
    }
}

func application(application: UIApplication,
    handleActionWithIdentifier identifier: String?,
    forLocalNotification notification: UILocalNotification,
    completionHandler: () -> Void) {

    if identifier == Document.alertSnoozeAction {
        // Reschedule the notification
        notification.fireDate = NSDate(timeIntervalSinceNow: 5)
        application.scheduleLocalNotification(notification)
    }

    completionHandler()
}
```

Notifications can be either time-based or location-based. In this app, notifications are time-based, but it's straightforward to make them location-based instead. To do so, you set a `CLRegion` object to the notification's `region` property. The notification appears when the user enters or exits the region.

You create a `CLRegion` like this:

```
let region = CLCircularRegion(center: myCoordinate, radius: 100.0,  
                               identifier: "Home")
```

It's up to you to determine the appropriate coordinate and radius for your region.

Note that a notification can't be both time-based *and* location-based at the same time. If you try to schedule a notification that has both a `fireDate` and a `region` set, the system will throw an exception.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we've improved the iOS app by adding a lot of useful capabilities to the attachments system: location, audio, video, and address book contacts can all now be attached. To do this, we've added new view controllers for the different attachment types, and connected our new views and view controllers to our existing views. We've also added the capability for users of the app to set local notifications that can remind them of their notes.

Polishing the iOS App

Our iOS notes application is now largely feature-complete. It's fully operational, but could do with a few more finishing touches to add some polish. In this chapter, we'll add a text-to-speech option to the menu that appears when text is selected, support for opening links in the provided web browser view controller, overall app settings, as well as undo support and image filters.

Speaking Text

Apple's platforms have traditionally had great support for text-to-speech. In our app, we want to add the ability to select text and speak it by tapping on a Speak button that appears in the editing menu next to the Cut, Copy, and Paste buttons. We'll do this using the `UIViewControllerAnimated` class.

To include speech synthesis, we use the `AVSpeechSynthesizer` object, which is part of the `AVFoundation` framework. `AVSpeechSynthesizer` provides the ability to produce synthesized speech from any text, with a controller for speed and pitch, as well as a selection of voices (depending on iOS version).

1. First, we'll add the actual speech synthesis object. Add the `speechSynthesizer` property to `DocumentViewController`:

```
let speechSynthesizer = AVSpeechSynthesizer()
```

2. Next, we need to add the method to the menu controller. Menu controllers are provided by `UIViewControllerAnimated` and are responsible for displaying the editing menu that can be made to appear on a selected object or piece of text in iOS. The editing menu displays the Cut, Copy, and Paste commands, among other things (see [Figure 15-1](#)). We can add items by adding our own `UIMenuItem` to the menu,

which is what we're doing here. Update the `viewDidLoad` method in the `DocumentViewController` class:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {  
  
    super.viewDidLoad()  
  
    let menuController = UIMenuController.sharedMenuController()  
  
    let speakItem = UIMenuItem(title: "Speak", action: "speakSelection:")  
  
    menuController.menuItems = [speakItem]  
  
}
```

3. Finally, we'll add the `speakSelection` method, which speaks the selected text:

```
func speakSelection(sender:AnyObject) {  
  
    if let range = self.textView.selectedTextRange,  
        let selectedText = self.textView.textInRange(range) {  
  
        let utterance = AVSpeechUtterance(string: selectedText)  
        speechSynthesizer.speakUtterance(utterance)  
    }  
}
```

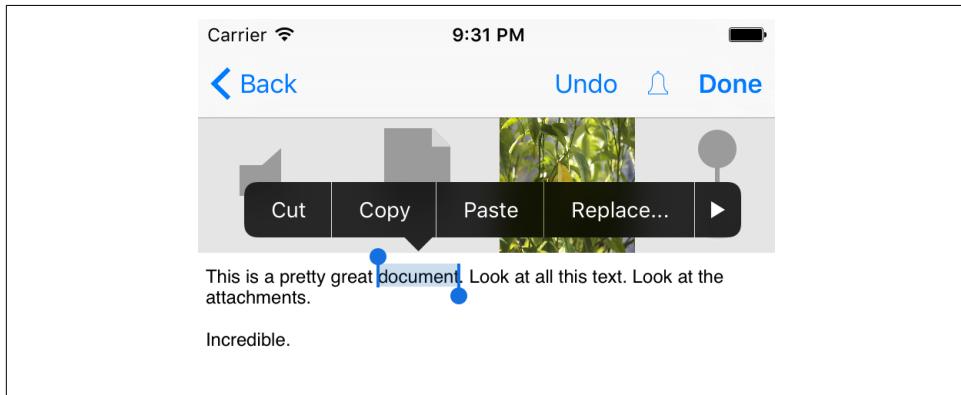


Figure 15-1. The editing menu, without any additional items

You can now select text and tap Speak to hear it! (See Figure 15-2.)

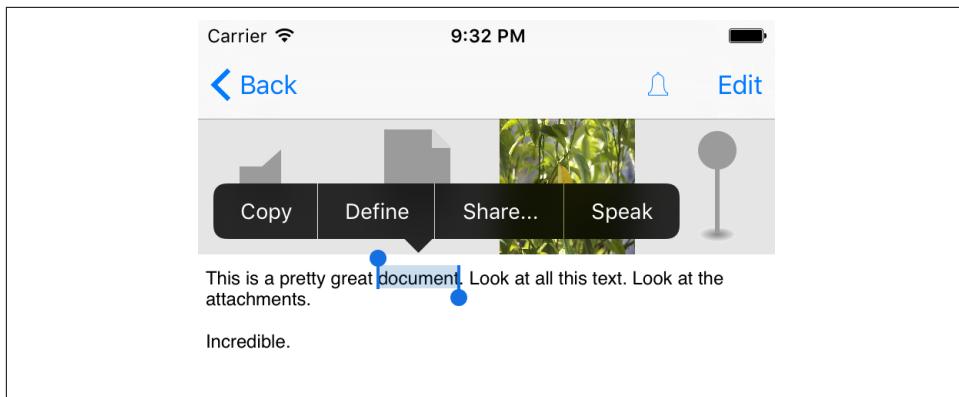


Figure 15-2. The editing menu, with the new Speak item added

Opening Links in SFSafariViewController

Currently, links in the text are tappable. However, this functionality is not ideal, for two reasons:

- It's available only when the text view is not editable.
- Tapping links launches Safari, taking users out of the app. This is probably something they don't want.

To fix the first problem, we'll add support for moving between an "editing" mode and a "viewing" mode for the `DocumentViewController`. To fix the second, we'll override the existing behavior for opening links, and instead open them in the `SFSafariViewController`.

There are three ways in which an app can display web content: creating a custom mini-browser by using `WKWebView` or `UIWebView`, pushing the user out of the app by opening Safari using `openURL`, or using `SFSafariViewController` to display a compact version of Safari within the app.

`WKWebView` or `UIWebView` are out of the scope of this book, as these days they're only necessary if you're doing something complex with web views, or you're making your own web browser for iOS (like Chrome, Firefox, Mercury Browser, or similar). In the past, most apps implemented their own custom mini-browser using either `UIWebView` or the newer `WKWebView` to display web content. This wasn't ideal for a number of reasons, chief among them the fact that each in-app mini-browser ended up with its own unique UI and didn't have access to iCloud Keychain, among other Safari features.

We cover `SFSafariViewController` here because it's the best way for apps to allow users to open web content: it behaves like Safari, it looks like Safari, it's easy to use,

and it has access to all of Safari's features, such as content blockers and iCloud Keychain. It also easily allows users to open the web page you send them to in full Safari if they wish (see [Figure 15-3](#)).

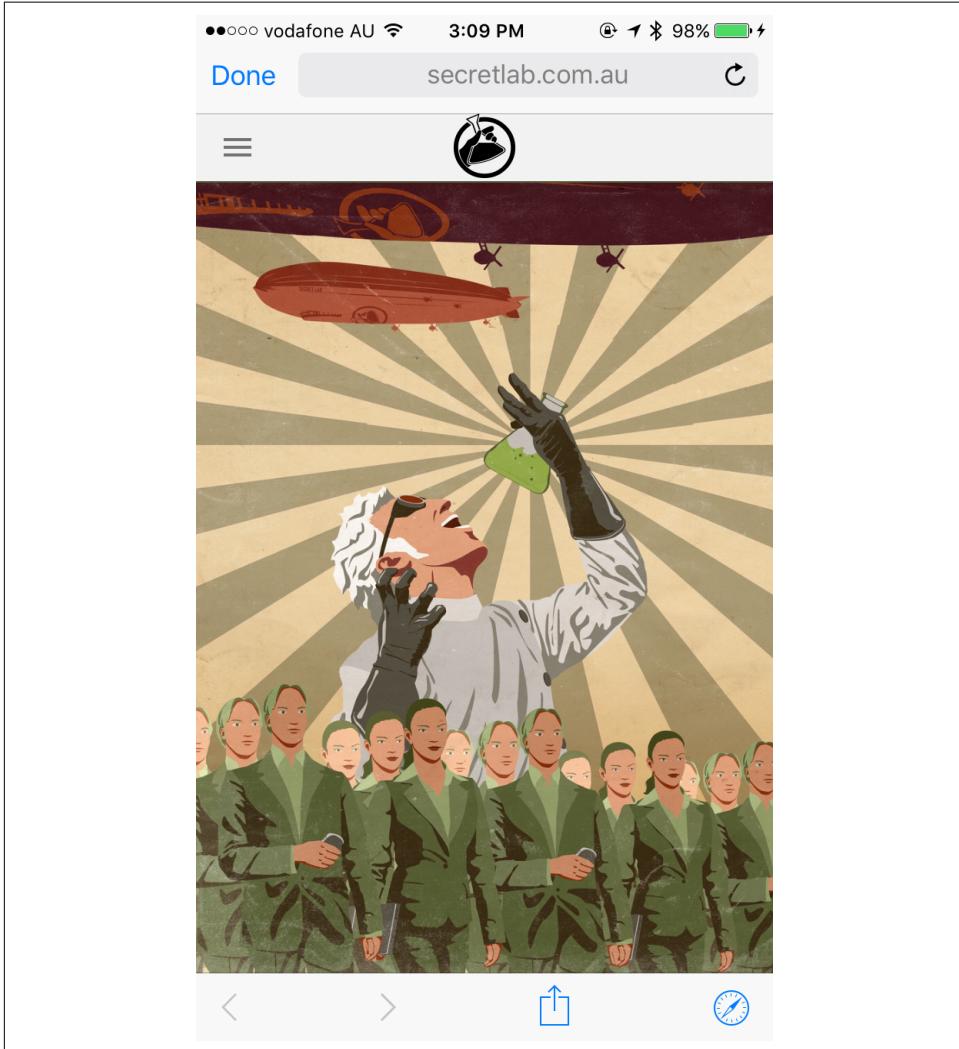


Figure 15-3. SFSafariViewController showing the authors' website

This ensures that the contents of the navigation bar are appropriately set up, both when the document is opened and when the view controller reappears after returning from another view controller.

When the document opens, we want to begin in the “viewing” state.

1. Add the following code to `viewDidLoad`:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {  
  
    super.viewDidLoad()  
  
    let menuController = UIMenuController.sharedMenuController()  
  
    let speakItem = UIMenuItem(title: "Speak", action: "speakSelection:")  
  
    menuController.menuItems = [speakItem]  
  
    > self.editing = false  
  
}
```

2. Next, override the `setEditing` method to make the text view editable or not:

```
override func setEditing(editing: Bool, animated: Bool) {  
    super.setEditing(editing, animated: animated)  
  
    self.textView.setEditable = editing  
  
    if editing {  
        // If we are now editing, make the text view take  
        // focus and display the keyboard  
        self.textView.becomeFirstResponder()  
    }  
  
    updateBarItems()  
}
```

When you run the app, you can now tap the Edit button, which will change to Done. At that point, you can make changes to the document.

We'll now make the text view detect links.

1. Open `Main.storyboard`, and go to the document view controller.
2. Select the text view and go to the Attributes Inspector.
3. Turn on Links in the Detection section (see [Figure 15-4](#)).

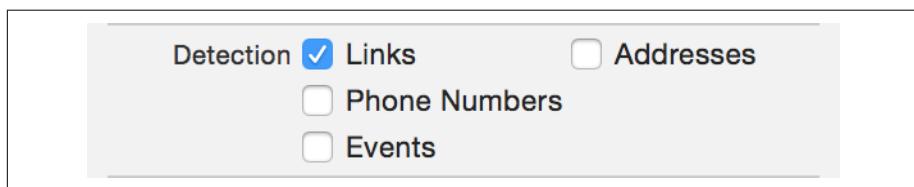


Figure 15-4. Turning on link detection for the text field

Now, any links in the text view will become tappable when you leave Edit mode.

Finally, we'll intercept the link taps and open them in an `SFSafariViewController`.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift`.

2. Import the `SafariServices` framework at the top of the file:

```
import SafariServices
```

3. Implement `textView(_:, shouldInteractWithURL:, inRange:)` to present an `SFSafariViewController` (see [Figure 15-5](#)):

```
func textView(textView: UITextView, shouldInteractWithURL URL: NSURL,  
inRange characterRange: NSRange) -> Bool {  
  
    let safari = SFSafariViewController(URL: URL)  
    self presentViewController(safari, animated: true, completion: nil)  
  
    // Return false to not launch in Safari  
    return false  
}
```



This method is called because we've already set the text view's delegate—we set that up earlier in [“Editing and Saving Documents” on page 252](#).

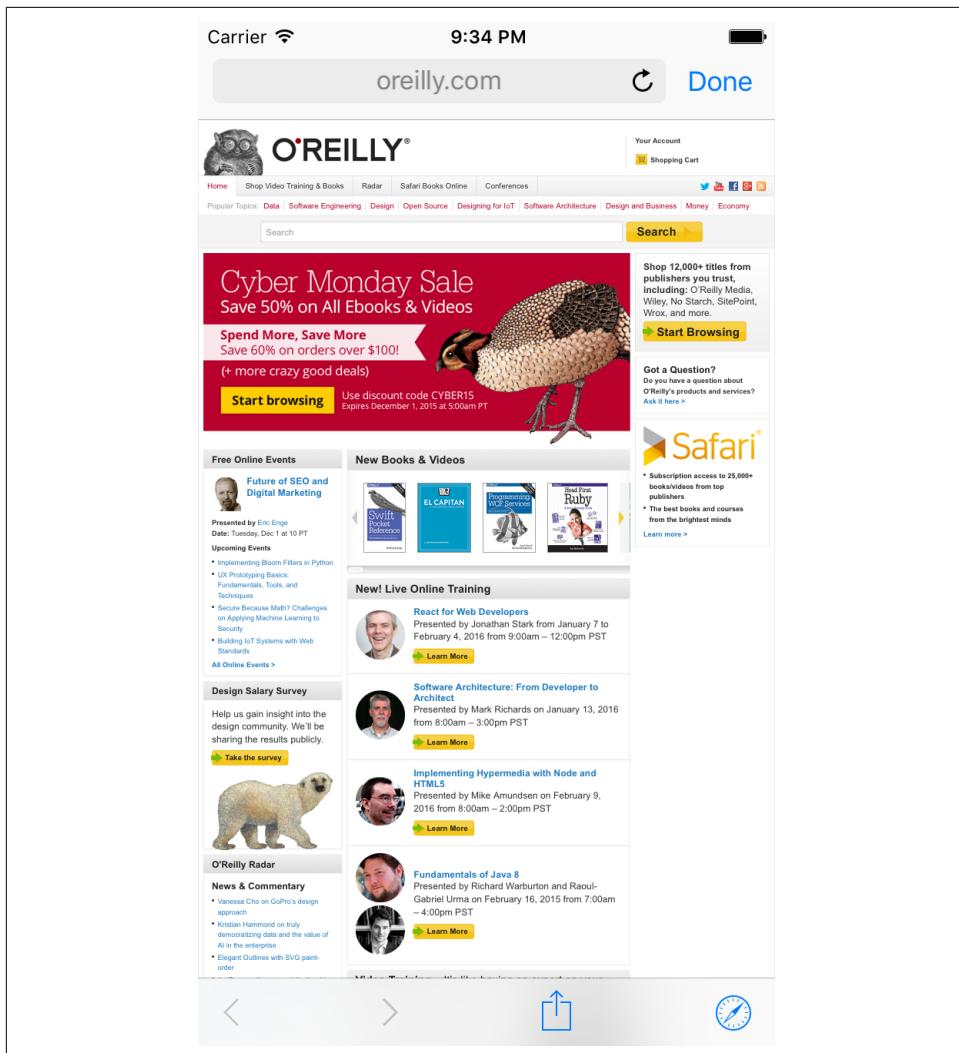


Figure 15-5. SFSafariViewController showing the O'Reilly website

3D Touch

If you're using an iPhone 6S or iPhone 6S Plus, you can use 3D Touch to get a quick preview of any link inside the SFSafariViewController by pressing firmly on a link.

Certain iOS devices are able to detect and make use of the pressure applied to the screen when a user touches it, in order to provide quick access to application functionality. There are a couple of ways you can use this: home screen quick actions and Peek and Pop.

Home Screen Quick Actions

A home screen quick action is a menu item that appears when the user presses firmly on your app's icon. Quick actions make your app quickly perform an action in the background, or jump straight to a common target in the app.

There are two kinds of home screen quick actions: *static* and *dynamic*. Static actions never change, while dynamic actions can be added at runtime.

To add a static action, you add an array to your app's *Info.plist* called `UIApplicationShortcutItems`; this is an array of dictionaries, which each contain the following items:

`UIApplicationShortcutItemType`: *Required*

The app will receive this string.

`UIApplicationShortcutItemTitle`: *Required*

The user will see this label.

`UIApplicationShortcutItemSubtitle`: *Optional*

The user will see this label under the title.

`UIApplicationShortcutItemIconFile`: *Optional*

Provide your own file.

`UIApplicationShortcutIconType`: *Optional*

Use a system-provided icon.

`UIApplicationShortcutItemUserInfo`: *Optional*

Dictionary that will be passed to the app.

A dynamic action is an instance of the `UIApplicationShortcutItem` object; the app's shared `UIApplication` object has an array called `shortcutItems`, which you can control. When you add a shortcut action object to this array, a new menu item will appear when the app's icon is firmly pressed.

Peek and Pop

Peek and Pop is a feature that allows the user to get a quick preview of content by pressing firmly on an element on the screen; if the user pushes harder, the content opens. For example, in the Mail app, if you press firmly on an email, you get a quick preview; if you press harder, the preview “pops” up and fills the screen, as though you'd tapped the email in the list.

To participate in Peek and Pop, you provide an object that conforms to `UIViewControllerPreviewingDelegate` (or make your view controller conform to it) and use `registerForPreviewingWithDelegate(_:, sourceView:)` to register it as your view

controller's previewing delegate. This method also receives a view that, when pressed deeply, triggers the Peek preview.



In addition to the higher-level interactions provided by the system, you can also directly access force information from `UITouch` objects as they're received by the system. To access this, use the `force` property on the `UITouch` object.

This delegate receives calls to the methods `previewingContext(_:, commitViewController:)` and `previewingContext(_:, viewControllerForLocation:)`. The first method is called when the user starts pressing firmly on the view, and returns a view controller to display; the second is called when the user presses even harder, to let you prepare to transition to the preview view controller.



For more information on how to use 3D Touch in your apps, check out the [Adopting 3D Touch on iPhone](#) guide.

Settings

We'll now add a setting to our app: one that controls whether documents are in the Edit state that we just set up when they're opened.

Settings are stored in the `NSUserDefaults` class, which works like a giant dictionary that sticks around, even when the application quits. This is one of myriad ways that an app can store data—it's probably the simplest, least powerful, least flexible way, but it gets the job done when it comes to storing very small pieces of information, such as settings.

`NSUserDefaults` can only store certain kinds of objects, which happen to be the same kinds that a property list can store. These objects are called *property list values*, and consist of the types `NSString`, `NSNumber`, `NSDate`, `NSArray`, `NSData`, and `NSDictionary`. `NSUserDefaults` should only be used for storing very small pieces of information.

1. Open the File menu and choose New→File.
2. Add a new iOS→Resource→Settings Bundle. Name it **Settings** and add it to the Notes-iOS target.
3. Open the *Settings.bundle* that was just added, and open the *Root.plist* file inside it.
4. Remove all items from the Preference Items list.

5. Select the Preferences Items and press Enter to create a new one.
6. Set the Type of the new item to Toggle Switch.
7. Set the Title to “Documents are editable when opened.”
8. Set the Identifier to “document_edit_on_open.”

We'll now make the app actually use the preference.

1. Open *DocumentViewController.swift*.
2. Remove this line of code from *viewDidLoad*:

```
self.editing = false
```

3. Replace it with this:

```
self.editing = UserDefaults  
    .standardUserDefaults().boolForKey("document_edit_on_open")
```

Install the app on your device (or in the simulator) and then go to the Settings app. Change the settings and then go back into the app. Note the difference in behavior! (See [Figure 15-6](#).)

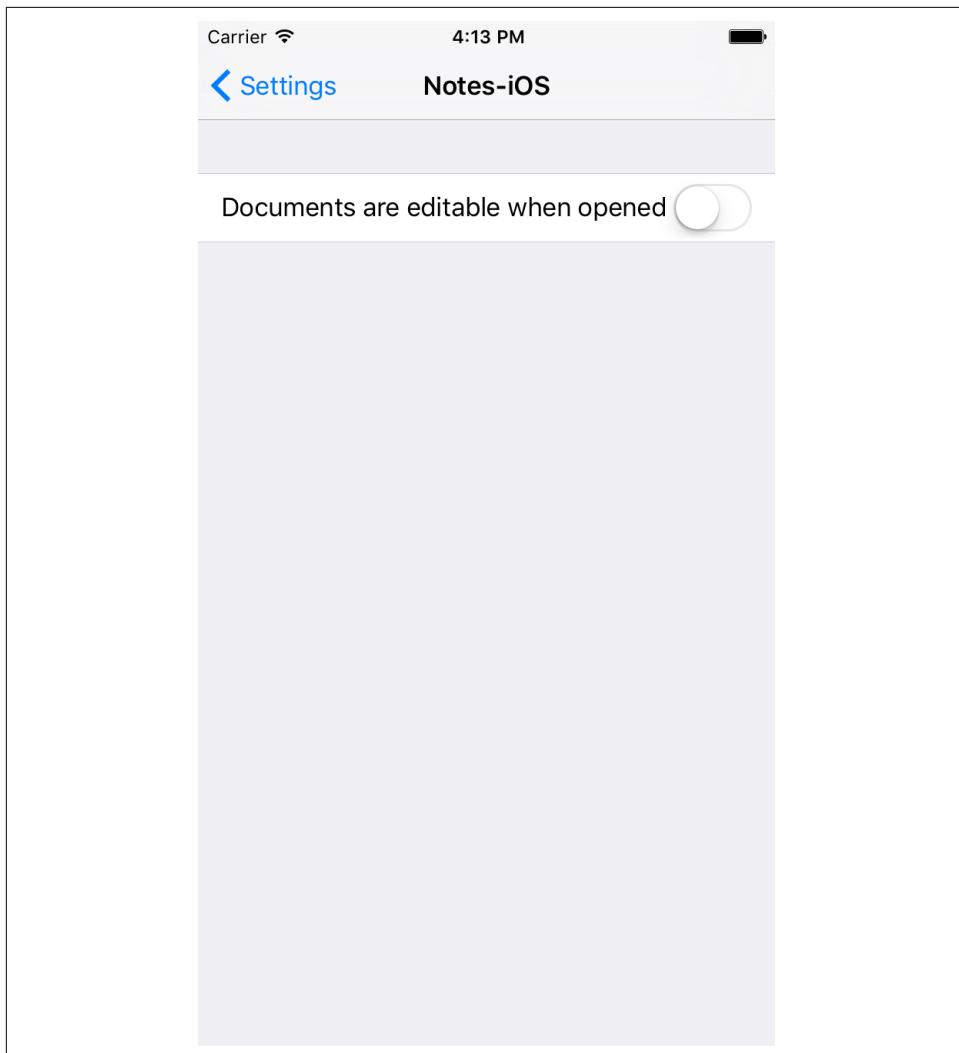


Figure 15-6. The app settings

Undo Support

Next we'll add support for undoing changes to the text view via the built-in undo manager. This means that we'll ask the undo system to notify us about changes in the ability to undo; we'll also add a button that can trigger undo actions. Undo on iOS is provided by `NSUndoManager`, which allows you to register things that the user might want to undo, and how to undo them. It also takes care of redoing anything that is undone, if needed.

`UITextView` provides its own `NSUndoManager`, so we'll make use of that.

1. Add the following properties to `DocumentViewController`:

```
var undoButton : UIBarButtonItem?  
var didUndoObserver : AnyObject?  
var didRedoObserver : AnyObject?
```

2. Add the following code to `viewDidLoad` to register changes to the ability to undo or redo a change:

```
let respondToUndoOrRedo = { (notification:NSNotification) -> Void in  
    self.undoButton?.enabled = self.textView.undoManager?.canUndo == true  
}  
  
didUndoObserver = NSNotificationCenter.defaultCenter()  
.addObserverForName(NSUndoManagerDidUndoChangeNotification,  
object: nil,  
queue: nil,  
usingBlock: respondToUndoOrRedo)  
  
didRedoObserver = NSNotificationCenter.defaultCenter()  
.addObserverForName(NSUndoManagerDidRedoChangeNotification,  
object: nil,  
queue: nil,  
usingBlock: respondToUndoOrRedo)
```

We want to run the same code when the user performs either an undo or a redo. Because the `addObserverForName` method takes a closure as its parameter, we can just write the code once, and use it twice.

3. Add the following code to `updateBarItems` to change the Undo button's enabled state:

```
func updateBarItems() {  
    var rightButtonItems : [UIBarButtonItem] = []  
    rightButtonItems.append(self.editButtonItem())  
  
    let notificationButtonImage : UIImage?  
    if self.document?.localNotification == nil {  
        notificationButtonImage = UIImage(named:"Notification-Off")  
    } else {  
        notificationButtonImage = UIImage(named:"Notification")  
    }  
  
    let notificationButton =  
        UIBarButtonItem(image: notificationButtonImage,  
                        style: UIBarButtonItemStyle.Plain,  
                        target: self,  
                        action: "showNotification")
```

```

        rightButtonItems.append(notificationButton)

>    if editing {
>        undoButton = UIBarButtonItem(barButtonSystemItem: .Undo,
>                                     target: self.textView?.undoManager,
>                                     action: "undo")
>
>        undoButton?.enabled = self.textView?.undoManager?.canUndo == true
>        rightButtonItems.append(undoButton!)
>
}

self.navigationItem.rightBarButtonItem = rightButtonItems
}

```

When the bar items are updated, we need to add an Undo button to the right hand side of the navigation bar if the document is in editing mode. In addition, we need to ensure that the Undo button is disabled if it's not possible to perform an undo. We check this by asking the text view's undo manager if it's currently possible.

4. Add the following code to `textDidChange`:

```

func textViewDidChange(textView: UITextView) {

>    self.undoButton?.enabled = self.textView.undoManager?.canUndo == true

    document?.text = textView.attributedText
    document?.updateChangeCount(.Done)
}

```

Every time the text view changes, we need to check to see if it's possible for the text view to undo a change. We can then use this to update whether or not the Undo button should be available.

5. Update the code in the `documentStateChanged` method with the following code to update the Undo button:

```

document.revertToContentsOfURL(document.fileURL,
    completionHandler: { (success) -> Void in

        self.textView.attributedText = document.text
        self.attachmentsCollectionView?.reloadData()

>    self.updateBarItems()
})

for version in conflictedVersions{
    version.resolved = true
}

```

This gets called when a conflict is detected between the local copy and the iCloud copy. All this code is doing is ensuring that, when the text view has changed due to the document's contents being updated, the Undo button is or is not available.

6. Run the app. When you enter Edit mode, an Undo button will appear; it will be disabled if you can't undo, and if you make changes, you can tap it to undo those changes.

Images with Filters

Everyone loves filters! We're going to add the ability for users to apply filters to their images. When the user is viewing an image, we'll also show three different, filtered versions of the image as buttons along the bottom of the screen. When the user taps on these buttons, the main image view will change to show the filtered version of the image.



The filters available to you are very similar to the filters available in Instagram: they make the photo look like it was shot on film or through cheaper lenses.

We're going to use Core Image to apply the filters. Core Image is a framework provided by Apple that provides image filtering, enhancement, editing, and other useful nondestructive or pipeline-based image editing capabilities. Core Image underpins the photo editing provided by Apple's Photos app on both iOS and OS X. You can learn more about Core Image in Apple's [Core Image Programming Guide](#).

1. Open *Main.storyboard*, and go to the image attachment view controller.
2. Add a `UIView` to the interface.
3. Make it fill the width of the screen and make it 80 points tall.
4. Pin it to the bottom and sides.
5. Set its background color to black, with 0.5 alpha.
6. Add three buttons to it and place them at the left, center, and right. Make them all the same height as the view they're contained in, and make them square.
7. Set their content mode to "aspect fit."



If you are having trouble seeing the buttons on the black background, feel free to use a different background color. We chose black because we think it looks the best for this, but it's your app, so go wild!

8. Open `ImageAttachmentViewController.swift` in the Assistant.

Because there are multiple buttons, it doesn't make much sense to create separate outlets for each of them. Instead, we'll use an *outlet collection*.



An outlet collection is an outlet that lets you point to a bunch of different things, rather than just a single thing. This is useful here because all the buttons that change the filter are essentially doing the same thing, but are each applying a different filter. Instead of creating a single outlet for each button, it's easier to deal with them as an array rather than as separate properties.

9. Add the following `filterButtons` property to `ImageAttachmentViewController`:

```
@IBOutlet var filterButtons: [UIButton]!
```



Note the square brackets for the creation of the array of `UIButton` objects! This is an array of buttons, not a single button.

10. Drag from the well at the left of the `filterButtons` property to each of the three buttons. This will add them to the array.

11. Connect them all to a new action called `showFilteredImage`. (Only create a single action—after creating the method, Control-drag from the second and third buttons onto the method.)

12. Add the following code to the `showFilteredImage` method:

```
@IBAction func showFilteredImage(sender: UIButton) {  
  
    self.imageView?.image = sender.imageForState(UIControlState.Normal)  
    self.imageView?.contentMode = .ScaleAspectFit  
  
}
```

13. Add the `prepareFilterPreviews` method to `ImageAttachmentViewController`:

```

func prepareFilterPreviews() {

    let filters : [CIFilter?] = [
        CIFilter(name: "CIPhotoEffectChrome"),
        CIFilter(name: "CIPhotoEffectNoir"),
        CIFilter(name: "CIPhotoEffectInstant"),
    ]

    guard let image = self.imageView?.image else {
        return
    }

    let context = CIContext(options: nil)

    for (number, filter) in filters.enumerate() {

        let button = filterButtons[number]

        let unprocessedImage = CIImage(image: image)

        filter?.setValue(unprocessedImage, forKey: kCIInputImageKey)

        if let processedCIImage =
            filter?.value(forKey:kCIOoutputImageKey) as? CIImage{

            // Render the result into a CGImage
            let image = context.createCGImage(processedCIImage,
                fromRect: CGRect(origin: CGPoint.zero, size: image.size))

            button.setImage(UIImage(CGImage: image),
                            forState: UIControlState.Normal)
        }
    }
}

```

In this method, we’re updating the images in the three `filterButtons` by running the source image through three filters. These filters are `CIFilter` objects, which we create by naming them.



You can find the full list of available filters in the [Core Image Filter Reference](#), available in the Xcode documentation.

To generate them, we create a Core Image context and then iterate through the three filters. We do this using the `enumerate` function, which, for each item in the list, returns a tuple (see “[Tuples](#)” on page 44) containing the index number of the

item, and the item itself. For example, the first time the loop runs, you’ll get the number 0 and the `CIPhotoEffectChrome` filter. We’ll be using this to work with the `filterButtons` array.

For each filter, we grab the corresponding button. We then create a new `CIImage` using the original image and pass it into the filter. Once it’s in the filter, we can extract the processed image; once we have that, we need to convert it first into a `CGImage`, and then convert *that* into a `UIImage` for the button to use.



It’s possible to go straight from a `CIImage` to a `UIImage`, bypassing the `CGImage` step. However, if you do this, you’ll end up with an image that just behaves oddly—for example, the image will *always* be stretched to fill the contents of whatever image view you place it in.

14. Add the following code to the `viewDidLoad` method:

```
override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()

    // If we have data, and can make an image out of it...
    if let data = attachmentFile?.regularFileContents,
        let image = UIImage(data: data) {
        // Set the image
        self.imageView?.image = image

    >        prepareFilterPreviews()
    }
}
```

All we’re adding here is the call to `prepareFilterPreviews`, which updates the filter buttons.

15. Run the application. When you view an Image attachment, you’ll see three different versions underneath it (see [Figure 15-7](#)). Tap them to view a larger version of that filtered image.

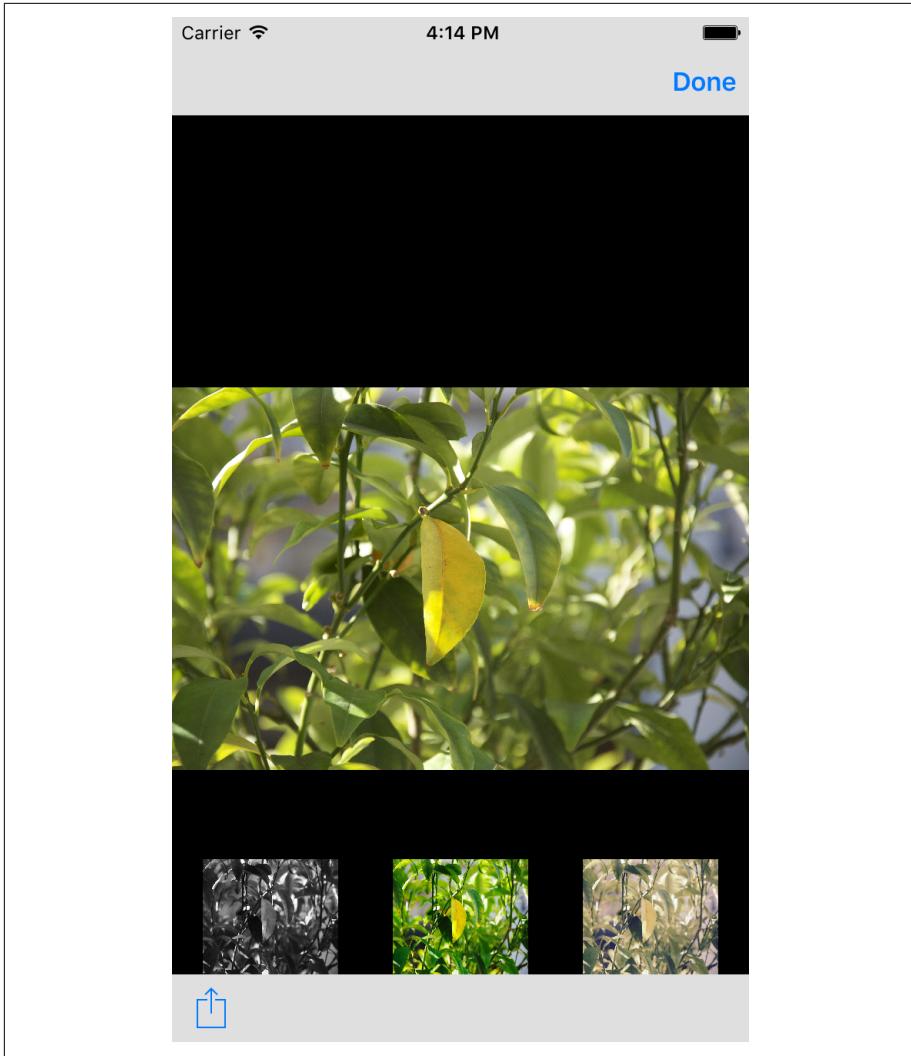


Figure 15-7. The image filters

Worldwide Apps

Not all of your users are going to speak your language. There's an unfortunate tendency among software developers in the English-speaking world to assume that all users speak their language. This significantly reduces the number of people who can use their software.

However, making an app support multiple languages is easier than you think. There are two parts to making an app multilingual: internationalization and localization.

Internationalization

Internationalization is the process of preparing an app for localization. You do this by separating the text used in your app from the app itself, making it load any user-facing language resources at runtime based on the user's language preferences, and adjusting your user interface to support different lengths of text. In addition, your app should take into account whether the user's language displays text in a left-to-right direction (such as English and French), or in a right-to-left direction (such as Hebrew and Arabic).



The possibility of your app running in a different language direction than your own is the reason why the horizontal constraints applied to views refer to “leading” and “trailing” space rather than “left” or “right” space. In a left-to-right language, leading space is on the left and trailing on the right, while in a right-to-left language, leading space is on the right and trailing on the left. Both iOS and OS X will automatically use the appropriate direction for the user's language.

There are two major tasks involved in internationalizing your app: replacing all text in your code with calls to methods that load localized text at runtime, and testing and adjusting your interface to support the text in your app being a different width than your development language.

To make your app load the text that the user will read at runtime, use the `NSLocalizedString` function. This function allows you to leave the text in the code for you to read (and therefore understand what the text is *for*), while also ensuring that the app isn't actually hardcoding a specific language.

Let's take a look at how to do this by internationalizing a string in the Notes app.

1. Open `DocumentViewController.swift` and find the following line of code:

```
let speakItem = UIBarButtonItem(title: "Speak", action: "speakSelection:")
```

2. Change this line to the following code:

```
let speakItem = UIBarButtonItem(  
    title: NSLocalizedString("Speak", comment: "speak action"),  
    action: "speakSelection:")
```

The `NSLocalizedString` function takes two parameters. The first is the key, which indicates to the system which string you want; the second is the `comment`, a piece of text that explains what the string is for to people who do the translating.

`NSLocalizedString` works by searching the application for any *strings tables* that are targeted at the user's current language. If it finds an entry for `key` in the strings tables, the function returns the string it found. If it can't find any strings tables for the user's current language, or if it can't find the `key` in the strings tables it did find, then the function returns the `key` string.

If you run the app and access the string (by selecting some text and looking at the menu that appears), you won't see any difference. However, in the next section, we'll begin localizing the app into French, and this call to `NSLocalizedString` will change its behavior.

Until you receive translated text from whomever's doing your translating, it's usually not possible to accurately determine how your application's interface will need to change in order to suit the new language. For example, German text tends to be significantly longer than Chinese.

However, there's a useful rule of thumb: generally, text in different languages will never be more than twice as long as your native development language. Xcode is aware of this, and lets you test your application in a fake "language" that simply repeats every piece of text twice. For example, the string "New Document" would appear as "New Document New Document". If every piece of text in your app is doubled, you can see how your interface might need to adjust to account for wider-than-expected text.

To use this double-length localization, you'll need to ask Xcode to launch your app using a new language as follows:

1. Open the Product menu and choose Scheme→Edit Scheme.
2. Go to the Run section and go to the Options tab.
3. Open the Application Language menu, shown in [Figure 15-8](#).

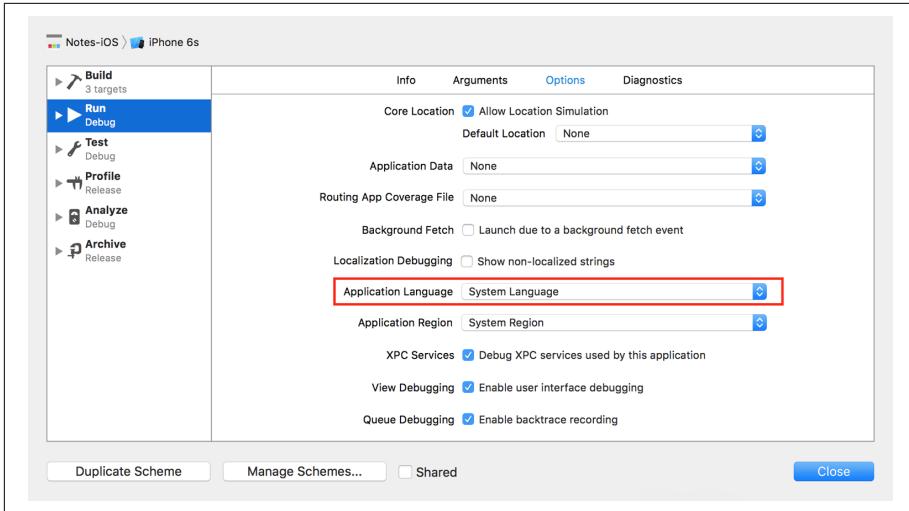


Figure 15-8. Changing the scheme language

4. Choose Double Length Pseudolanguage (Figure 15-9).

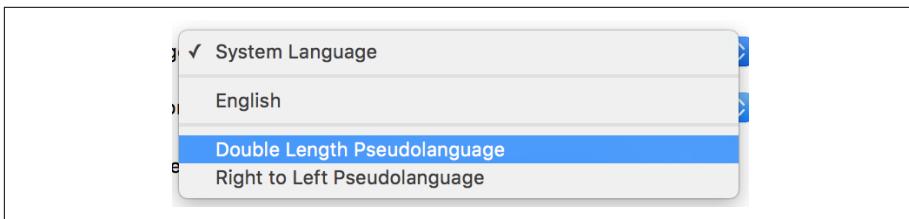


Figure 15-9. Using the double length localization

5. Click Close and then run your app. All text will be double-length (Figure 15-10).

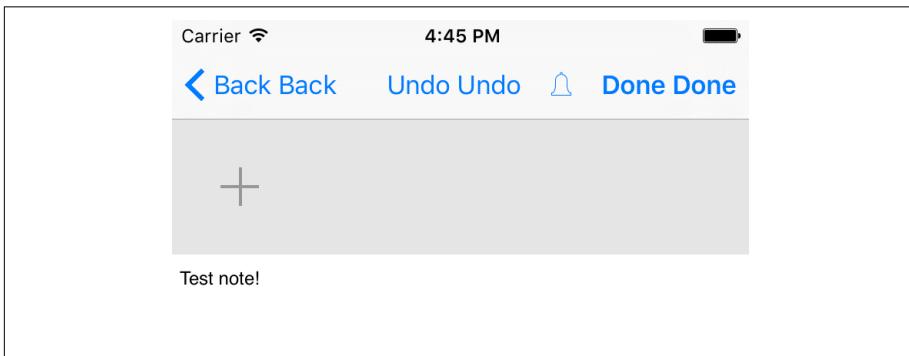


Figure 15-10. The application running in the double-length pseudolanguage



You can also use the Right to Left Pseudolanguage option, which reverses the writing order of your text, allowing you to test the layout and behavior of your app in right-to-left languages.

Localization

Once you've internationalized your application, you can *localize* it into a specific language. The majority of this work involves providing new text for your internationalized strings. In the previous section, we internationalized the Speak menu item; next, we'll localize this into French.

1. Add a new Strings file to the app by opening the New File window and choosing iOS→Resources→Strings File (Figure 15-11).

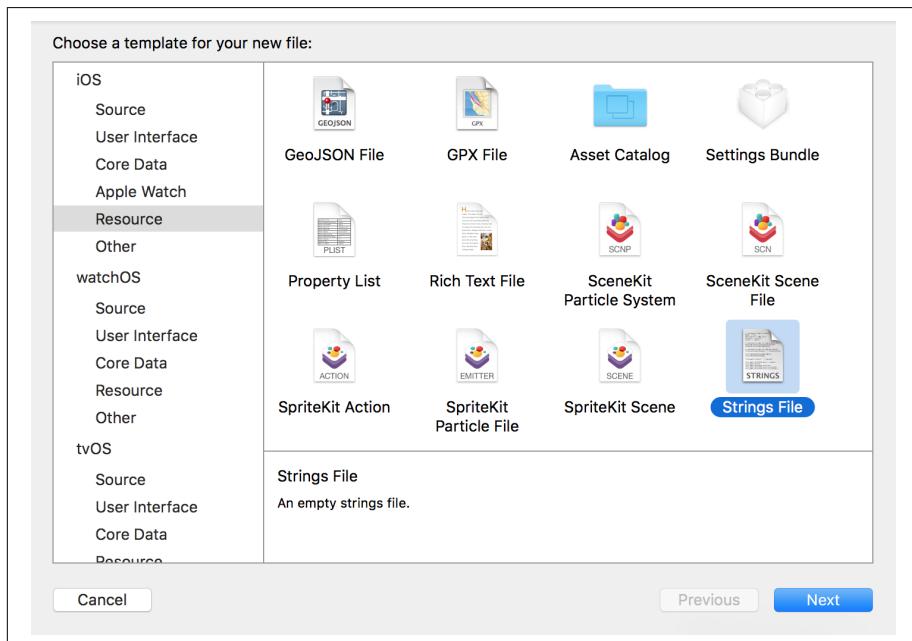


Figure 15-11. Adding a Strings file

2. Name the new file *Localizable.strings*.

Xcode allows you to localize resource files, which means instructing Xcode to create a new copy of the file; the new copy is used only when the app is being run in a specific language. Resource files can have as many localizations as you like.

First, we'll localize the *Localizable.strings* file for your current development language; next, we'll add a new localization to this file for French.

1. Select the *Localizable.strings* file in the Project Navigator, and then go to the File Inspector.
2. Click the Localize... button (Figure 15-12).

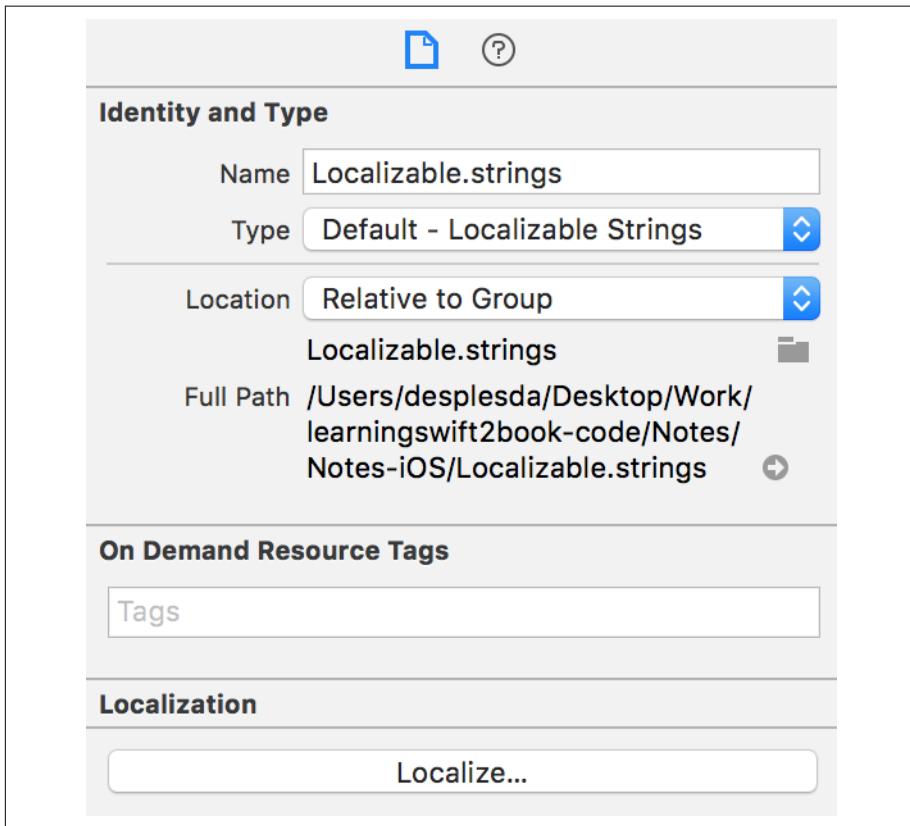


Figure 15-12. Localizing the Localizable.strings file

Xcode will ask you what you want to do with this file. You can either make the current version of the file the “Base” version, or you can make this file the localized version for your current language. Choose Base, and click Localize (Figure 15-13).



The Base localization is the version of the file that the app will fall back to if it can't find a string in the user's current language. If it can't find a string in the Base localization *either*, then the call to `NSLocalizedString` will return the key that was passed to it.

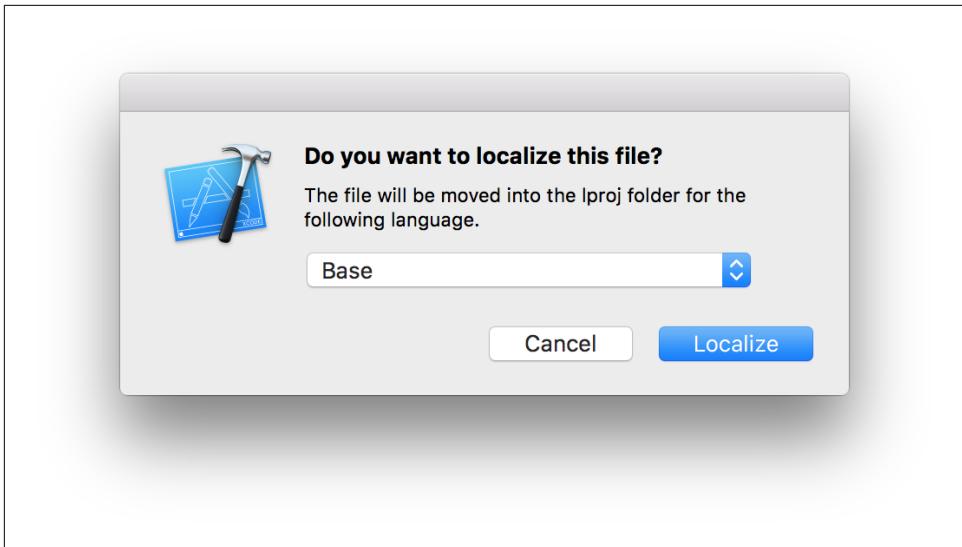


Figure 15-13. Choosing to make this version the Base localization

When you click Localize, the Localization section of the File Inspector will change to show the list of possible languages to which this file can be localized. This list will include the Base localization, as well as any other current localizations. At the moment, the app will support only one localization: your current language. (In our case, that's English, which is why it appears in [Figure 15-14](#).)



Figure 15-14. The Localization list, showing the Base localization and the available localizations

To add support for another language, you must first mark the project as capable of using it.

1. Go to the Project info page. Scroll down to the Localizations list. You'll find one entry in there: the Development language. Click the + button at the bottom of the list, and choose "French (fr)" from the menu that appears ([Figure 15-15](#)).

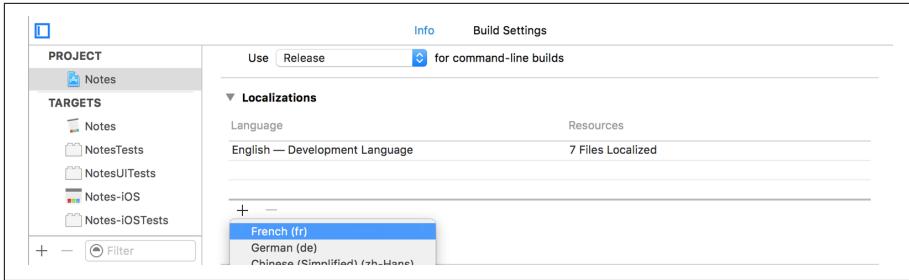


Figure 15-15. Adding the French language

A window will appear, asking you which files should be localized (Figure 15-16). The files available will include all storyboards and .xib files, as well as any files that you've manually localized (which includes the *Localizable.strings* file).

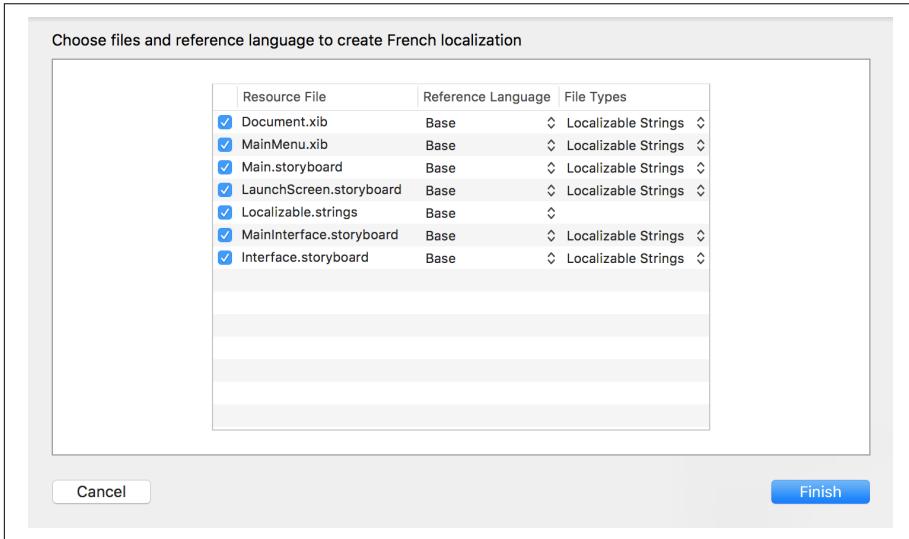


Figure 15-16. Selecting file to localize

2. Click Finish.

This registers French as a language into which the app can be localized.

If you look at the Project Navigator, you'll notice that these files have a disclosure indicator next to them. If you click on this, you'll see that they now exist as multiple files; the original Base language version, and a French .strings file (Figure 15-17).



Figure 15-17. The list of different localizations for the file

3. Open the *Localizable.strings (Base)* file. It's inside the *Localizable.strings* file. Add the following text to it:

```
"Speak" = "Speak";
```

4. Next, open the *Localizable.strings (French)* file. Add the following text to it:

```
"Speak" = "Parler";
```

The Speak menu item is now localized! We can test this by asking Xcode to launch the app in the French language.

5. Return to the Edit Scheme window by opening the Product menu and choosing Scheme→Edit Scheme.
6. Go to the Run section and go to the Options tab.
7. Change the Application Language to French.



“French” now appears in this menu because you’ve added it as a language that your app supports.

8. Close the window, and run the app.
9. Test the localization by selecting the text and confirming that Parler appears in the menu ([Figure 15-18](#)).

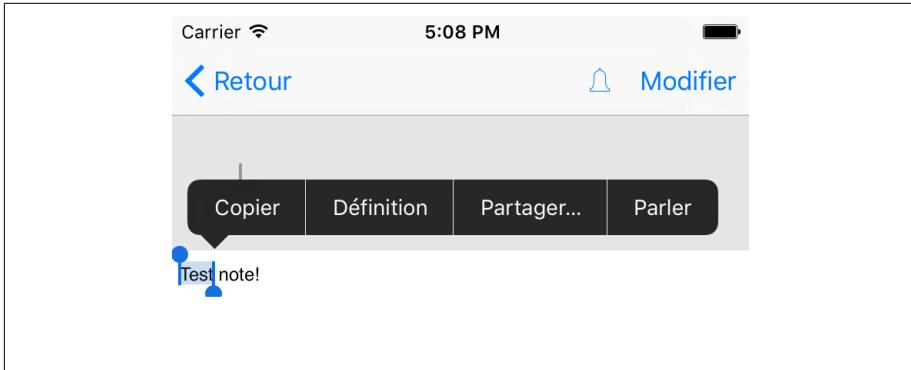


Figure 15-18. The app, localized into French

You've now localized one piece of the app! The next step is to localize *all* strings into French. This is left, as they say, as an exercise for the reader.



Luckily for us, a lot of the work of localizing an app is handled for us by the system. Because the app uses standard controls provided by the system, such as the Edit and Back buttons, they'll be displayed in French as well.

Accessibility

Not everyone is able to see your app. The ability to read the contents of the screen varies from person to person; some users may have no trouble at all, while some are totally blind, and some are partially sighted. On top of this, there are users who have good vision but have trouble reading text, such as people with dyslexia.

Both iOS and OS X have support for *VoiceOver*, a built-in screen reader. VoiceOver is able to read text that appears on the screen, as well as describe nontextual elements, like the layout of a screen.

The good news is that your app doesn't need to do much to support VoiceOver. The components from which your app is made—buttons, labels, text fields, and so on—are already set up to work with VoiceOver. However, it's very important to test how your app would be used by a person who can't see your app.

To start testing an application with VoiceOver, you'll first need to set up your phone to make it easy to turn VoiceOver on or off. VoiceOver changes the way that iOS responds to touches; for example, when using VoiceOver, tapping on a button *selects* that button rather than triggering the action.

1. Launch the Settings app on your iOS device.
2. Go to General→Accessibility→Accessibility Shortcut.

The Accessibility Shortcut is triggered when you triple-click the home button.



There are several accessibility features that can be triggered by the home button, including inverting all colors on the screen and turning on a screen zoom feature. While these are useful, they're not something that you as a developer have much control over, so we'll focus on VoiceOver.

3. Turn on VoiceOver and turn everything else off.
4. Launch the app on your iPhone and triple-click the home button. VoiceOver will turn on ([Figure 15-19](#)).

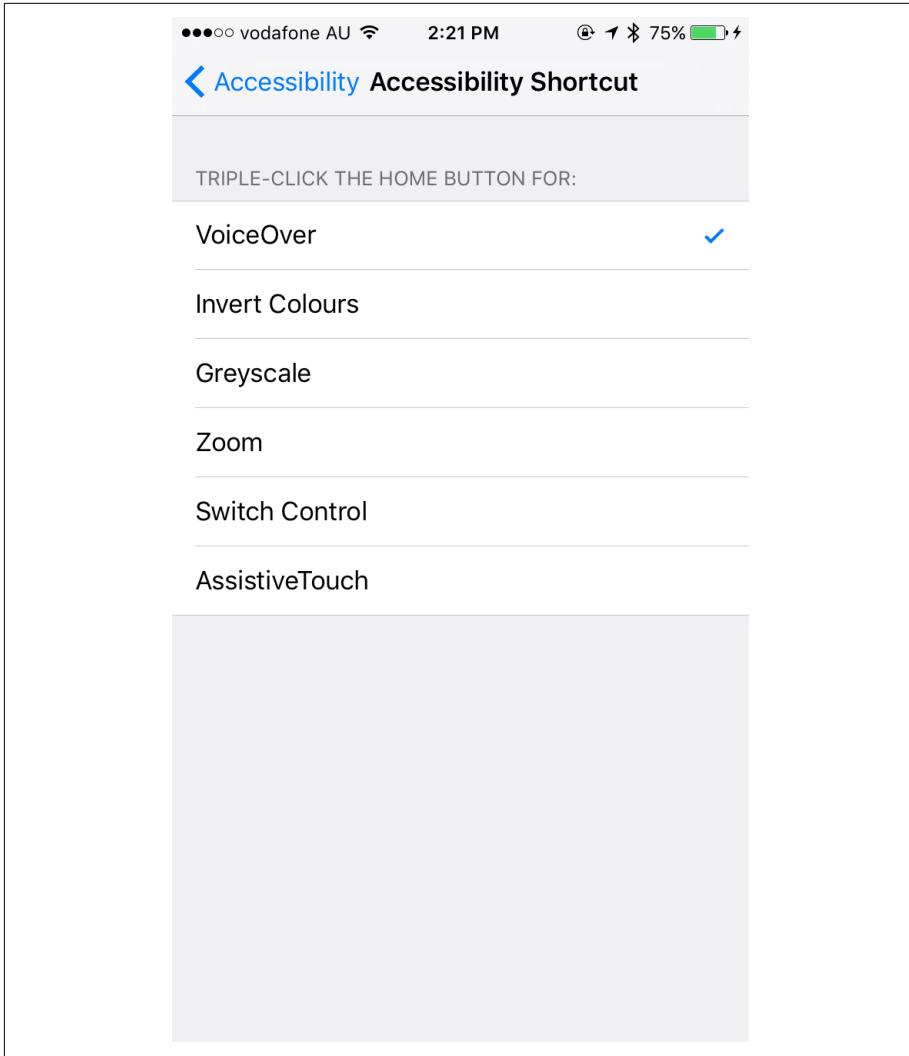


Figure 15-19. Configuring the Accessibility shortcut

When you tap on the screen, iOS selects whatever's under your finger and describes it to you. You can swipe left and right to select the previous or next item, and double-tap to “open” the currently selected item.

5. Tap once on the + button. iOS will select the button.
6. Double-tap anywhere on the screen. A new document will be created (Figure 15-20).

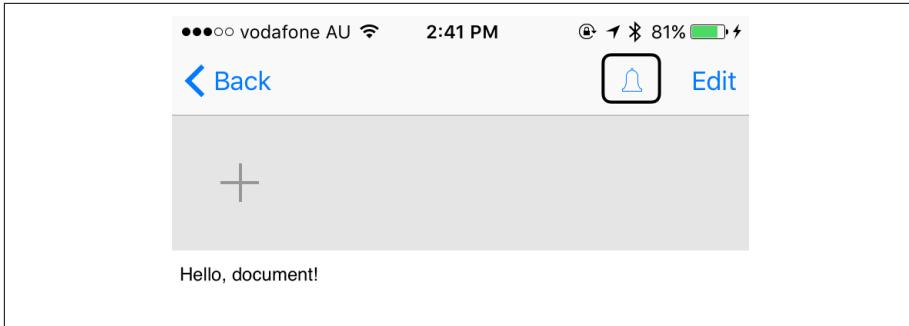


Figure 15-20. VoiceOver in the Notes app

7. Exit the new document by tapping once on the Back button, and then double-tapping the screen to exit the document.



If your vision is fine, it's difficult to accurately gauge what it's like to use the phone while not being able to see the screen, because it's extremely hard to keep your eyes closed or not sneak a peek at the screen. To disable the screen entirely while using VoiceOver, tap the screen three times with three fingers.

8. Try to open a document. You'll notice that, while you can select the document's name, you can't actually tap the cell to open the document. The reason for this is that VoiceOver doesn't know that the cell works in the same way as a button. To fix this, we need to provide some accessibility information.
9. Open `Main.storyboard`, and go to the document list view controller.
10. Find the `FileCell` in the document collection view.
11. Select the view that contains the image view. When users tap the cell, they'll generally be tapping this view. We need to tell VoiceOver that this view is interactive.
12. Go to the Identity Inspector and scroll down to the Accessibility section.
13. Select the Accessibility Enabled checkbox, as well as the User Interaction Enabled and Button checkboxes (Figure 15-21).

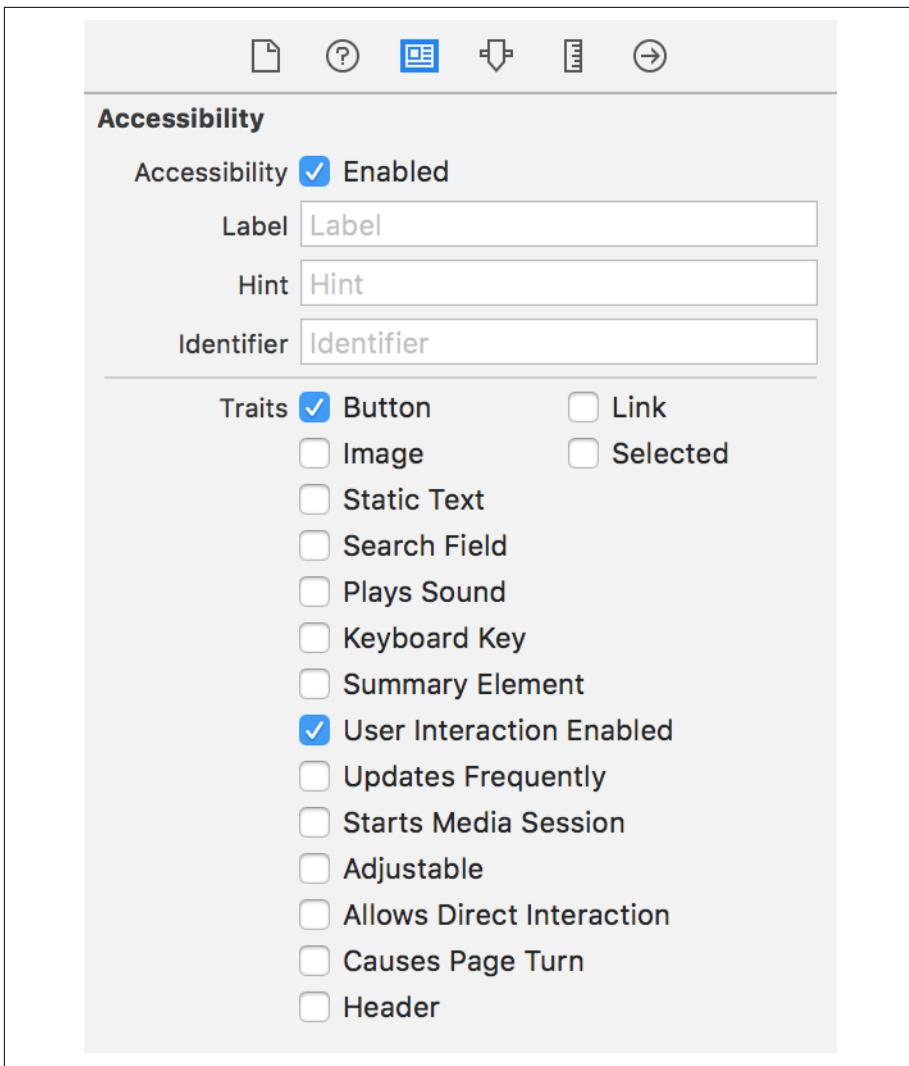


Figure 15-21. Enabling accessibility for the document cell

14. Re-run the application on your phone. You can now select and open documents.



While VoiceOver isn't supported in the iOS simulator, you can test your application in a similar way by turning on the Accessibility Inspector. You can find it in the simulator's Settings app, in General→Accessibility→Accessibility Inspector. While the Accessibility Inspector is enabled, touches on the *screen* will behave in the same way as iOS; additionally, the simulator will display the information that would be provided to the user about the currently selected item.

Splitscreen Multitasking

On certain hardware, it's possible to run two apps at the same time, side by side on the screen. This feature, shown in [Figure 15-22](#), is known as splitscreen multitasking. To activate it, swipe in from the righthand side of the screen and pick an app. This works on the simulator, too.

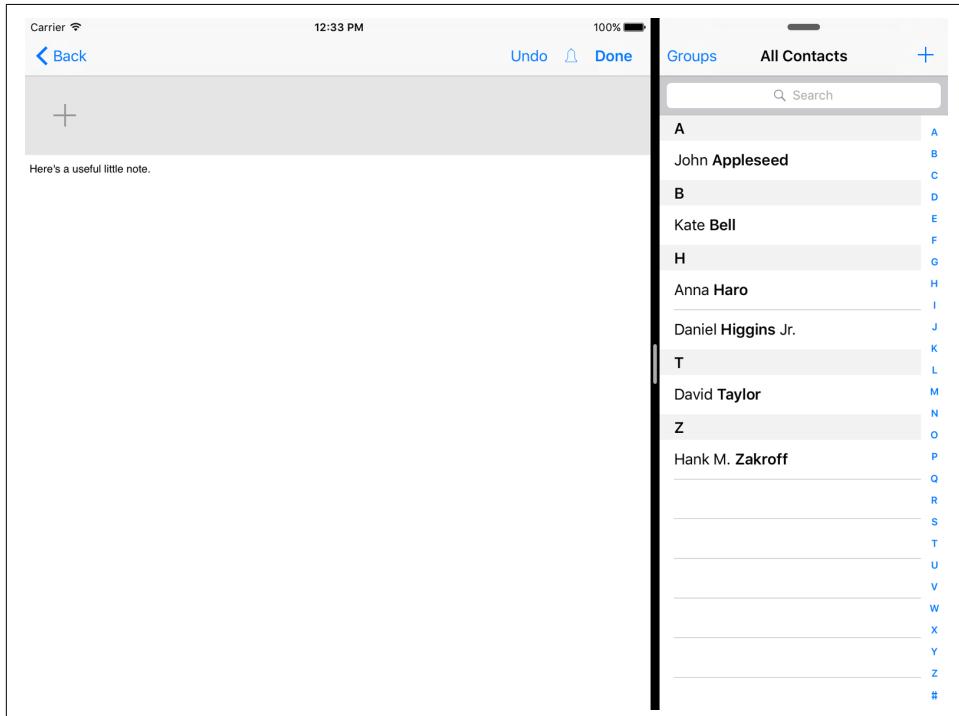


Figure 15-22. Splitscreen multitasking



Splitscreen multitasking is fully available only on iPad Air 2, iPad Mini 4, and the iPad Pro; it's available in a limited mode on earlier devices.

You don't actually need to do anything to support it; because this app is using constraints, the interface will lay itself out appropriately.

This view can be resized, so your constraints will handle it (and also change size classes when needed).

Conclusion

In this chapter, we added the following collection of finishing touches to our iOS app:

- We added text-to-speech support, and along the way learned how to add things to the menu that appears when text is selected.
- We detected links inside the text content of notes, and added the ability for users to tap links and open them in the provided web browser view controller, `SFSafariViewController`.
- We added app settings, available via the iOS Settings application.
- We added undo support, using `NSUndoManager`.
- We added image filters, using Core Image.
- Finally, we looked at how you can add localization and accessibility support into your apps.

In [Part IV](#), we'll add Apple Watch support to the iOS app, explore a selection of more advanced iOS features, and touch on debugging and problem tracing with your Swift code.

PART IV

Extending Your Apps

CHAPTER 16

Building a watchOS App

In [Part I](#) of this book we explored the Apple developer ecosystem and the developer tools, as well as the basics of programming with Swift and how to structure apps for Apple’s platforms. In [Parts II](#) and [III](#), we learned the fundamentals of Swift by creating an app for both OS X and iOS, respectively; our app shares data through iCloud, lets us make notes with a variety of attachment types, and generally behaves as a good, modern application for Mac, iPhone, or iPad. But Apple’s platforms don’t just stop at conventional computers and handheld computers—they also extend to wearable computers: Apple Watch.



It’s important to remember that you can’t build a watchOS app without also building and distributing an iOS app. watchOS apps are supplied to a tethered Apple Watch via an application users install on their iPhone.

Apple Watch runs watchOS. watchOS is quite similar to iOS in many ways, and has many of the same frameworks and basic building blocks that you’ve come to expect. In this chapter, we’ll extend our Notes app to also support the Apple Watch.



Of course, Apple also ships the Apple TV, which runs another variant of iOS called tvOS. tvOS is beyond the scope of this book, since it’s mostly targeted at entertainment apps and games, and we’re here to learn Swift through app development. Everything you’ve learned in this book about Swift, and much of the Cocoa and Cocoa Touch frameworks, applies to tvOS, too; it just has its own set of frameworks, as well as variants on the ones we’ve used here. The best place for learning more about tvOS is [Apple’s documentation](#).

We'll begin working with watchOS by first discussing how to design for it—from both a visual and a software standpoint. We'll then build out a very simple app, making use of the various features of watchOS, including glances and communicating with iOS.



If you want to learn more about building apps for the Apple Watch, we recommend the book *Swift Development for the Apple Watch* (O'Reilly), by some of the same authors who wrote this book (hello!). [Apple's documentation](#) is also a good reference.

Designing for the Watch

Before we start looking at building the Notes application for the Apple Watch, let's take a closer look at the Apple Watch itself (see [Figure 16-1](#)).

Just by looking at the device, we can immediately see a number of constraints that are placed upon all software:

- The screen is extremely small. This limits both the amount of content that can be displayed at once, and also the area in which the user can interact with that content.
- Because the screen is small, touching the screen means covering up a large percentage of the visible content. The Digital Crown, on the side of the device, is therefore used to scroll the screen up and down while still keeping everything visible.
- The device is strapped to the wrist. Because we can't move our lower arms with the same precision as our fingers, the device will be moving around underneath the user's fingers. At the same time, the user might be doing some other activity, or holding something, further complicating how the device is moving. Compare this to the phone or tablet, in which users have a *lot* of control in the off-hand that holds the device.



Figure 16-1. The Apple Watch

In addition to these physical constraints, there are a number of technical constraints imposed on your apps. The watch is a very low-powered device and relies on commu-

nication with an iPhone to access a number of resources. This means that the architecture of the watchOS app is distinct to the Apple Watch.

There are three components at play when working with a watchOS app: the container iOS app, the WatchKit app, and the WatchKit extension:

- The *WatchKit app* contains the resources (interface, UI, etc.) used by the watchOS application.
- The *WatchKit extension* contains the code; both are installed on the watch.
- Both the WatchKit app and the WatchKit extension are embedded in an iOS application, which is distributed through the App Store. When the user downloads the app from the App Store, the app and extension are transferred to the user's Apple Watch.

Designing Our watchOS App

The watchOS app for Notes needs to be very careful in terms of how it's designed. We can't replicate the entire feature set of the iOS app, and nor should we: users are not going to want to access every single thing that they can do on their phone. Instead, we need to focus on the *most important* and *most frequently accessed* features.

In our opinion, there are precisely two things that the user will want to do:

- Look at a note
- Make a new note

We'll therefore gear the entire design around these two features. Just as with the Mac and iOS apps, we created wireframes as part of our thinking about how the watchOS app should work.

In order to access notes, the user needs a way to see the list of available notes. To enable this, we need a screen that presents a list of buttons that, when tapped, displays the note (see [Figure 16-2](#)).

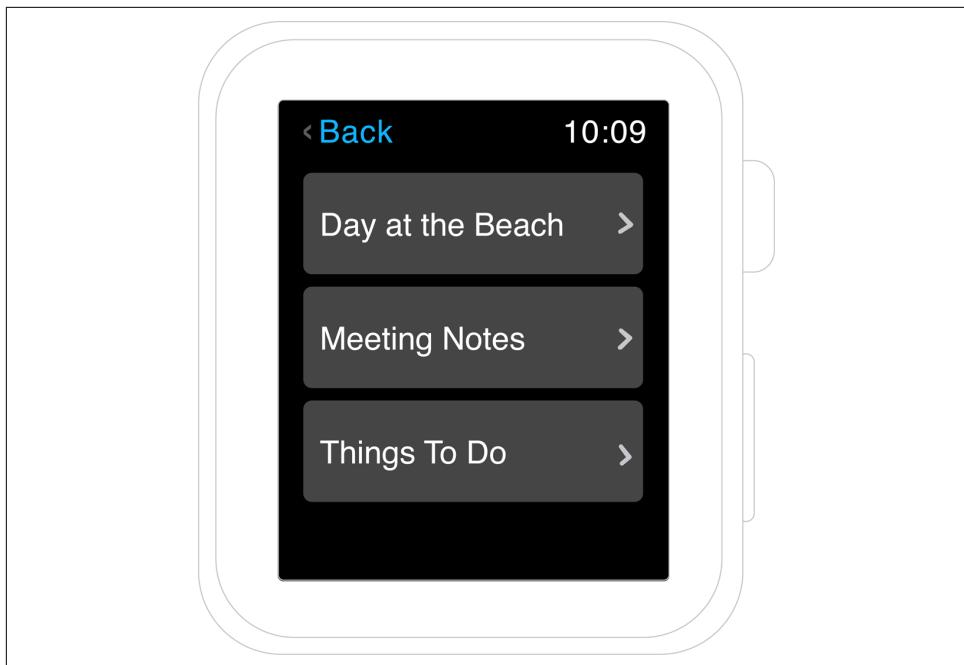


Figure 16-2. The note list on the watch

Displaying the note itself is easy; we just need to display a bunch of text (see [Figure 16-3](#)). We're specifically excluding attachments from the Apple Watch application, because it's our opinion that the user will care more about the note's text rather than the things attached to it.

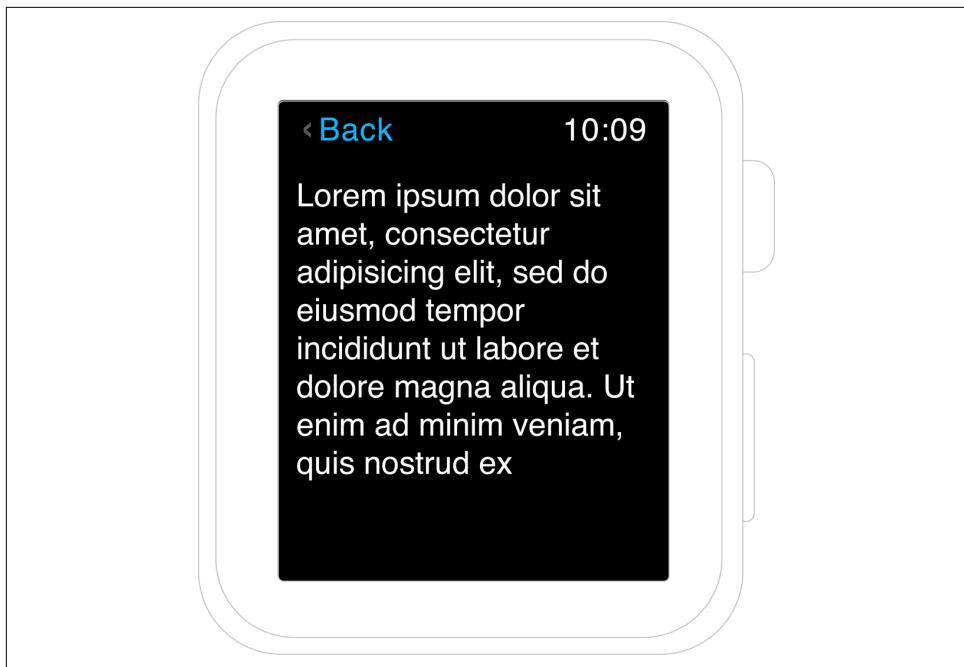


Figure 16-3. The note content on the watch

Creating the watchOS Extension

The first thing we need to do to create an app for the watch is add a WatchKit app extension to our project. We do this by adding yet another new target. Let's get started.

1. Open the File menu and choose New→Target.
2. In the watchOS section, choose WatchKit App and click Next (Figure 16-4).

You'll notice that there's also a template called "WatchKit App for watchOS 1"; watchOS 1 did not allow apps to actually run on the watch, and instead everything was done via network to the phone, with the watch handling display only. watchOS 2 and beyond, which is what we're using here, actually allows apps to run on the watch. You shouldn't ever use the watchOS 1 template at this point.

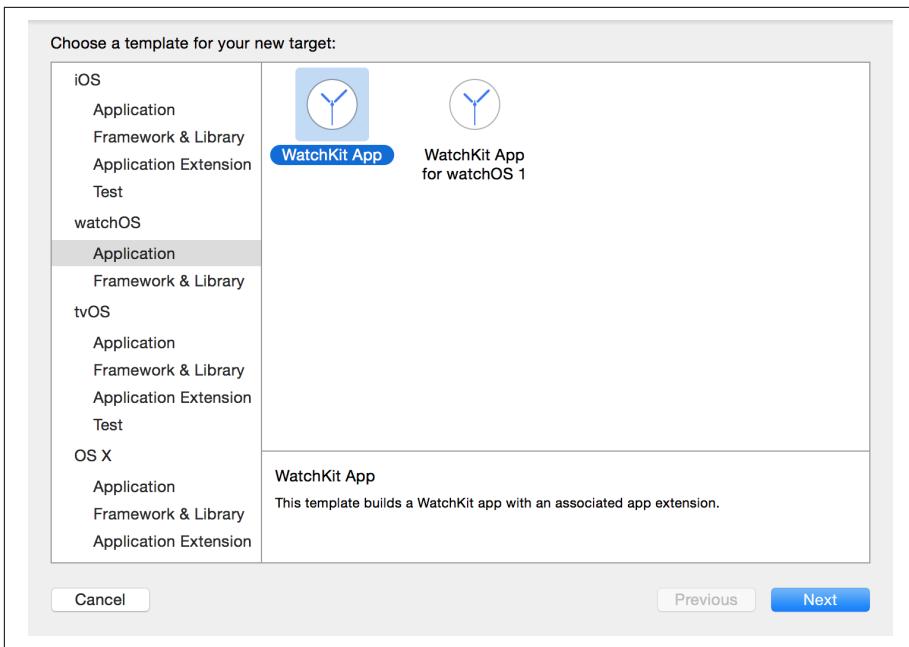


Figure 16-4. Creating the watchOS app

3. Name the application **Watch1**.



The name “Watch” is only for our internal use. On the Apple Watch, it will take the name of the container iOS app. Xcode will make the bundle identifier the same as iOS apps, with *.Watch* appended. This is because Watch apps are embedded inside iOS app.

4. Ensure that Include Glance Scene is turned on ([Figure 16-5](#)). We’ll be adding a *glance*, which is a single-screen view of your app that users can access from their watch face, in [“Glances” on page 471](#).

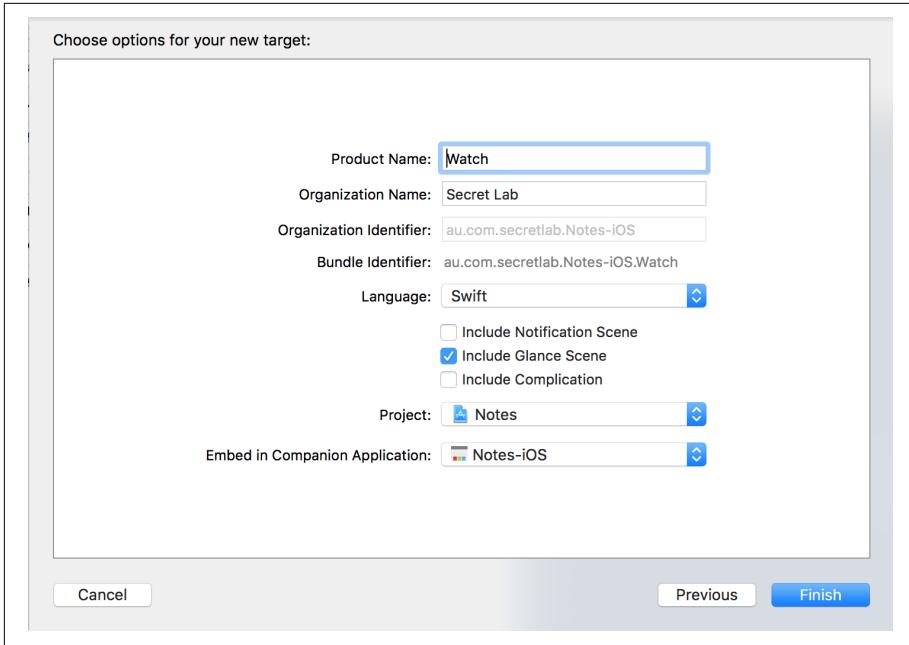


Figure 16-5. Configuring the watchOS app target

- When you click Finish, Xcode will create the target and then ask you if you want to activate the new scheme. We want to start working on the watchOS app right away, so click Activate (Figure 16-6).

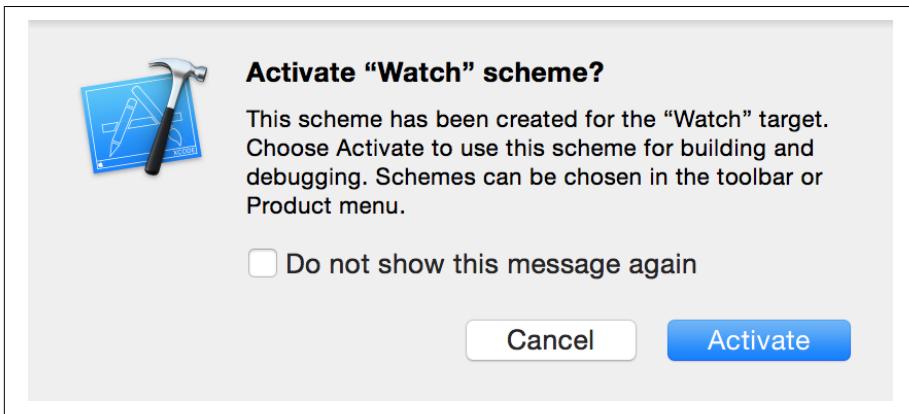


Figure 16-6. Activating the scheme

Now that the application has been set up, we'll add the watchOS app's icons to its asset catalog. Adding icons to an asset catalog should be very familiar at this point!

1. Open the *Assets.xcassets* file inside the Watch group (not the one in the Watch Extension group).



The images to use for the icons are provided in the resources that accompany this book. If you don't have them already, follow the instructions in “[Resources Used in This Book](#)” on page ix to get them.

2. Select the AppIcon image set, and drag and drop the images into the slots, as shown in [Figure 16-7](#). Remember to use the filenames to determine the correct slot for each image—for example, the slot “Apple Watch Companion Settings 29pt 2x” should use the image *Icon-AppleWatch-Companion-Settings@2x.png*.



Figure 16-7. Adding the icons for the project



When you’re building a watchOS application, you need to use the same developer identity for both the iOS app and the watchOS app. If you only have a single developer account, you’re fine. If you use more than one, then double-check the Team setting in the General tab of the Watch and Notes-iOS project info.

3. In the Scheme Selector at the top left of the Xcode window, set the active scheme to a simulator plus a watch. Any combination of iPhone and Watch will do.



If you have an iPhone and an Apple Watch (that is, the real devices, not just the simulator), you can build and run straight onto your watch; watches don't have to leave your wrist for you to install stuff. Note that testing on the simulator is a *lot* easier. If you're testing on an Apple Watch, you may have to go to the home screen and tap on the icon to launch it.

4. Press ⌘-R to build and run the app.



Because you're about to install the app onto a new simulator, the simulated iPhone on which you're going to install won't be signed in to iCloud. To fix this, once the iPhone appears, sign it into iCloud by opening the Settings application, selecting iCloud, and tapping Sign In.

Communicating with the iPhone

By default, the app is blank. Let's fix that and let the app retrieve the notes from the phone.

To get access to any data stored on its paired iPhone, you use the WatchConnectivity framework, which allows you to communicate with the phone by sending messages. These messages are simply dictionaries containing very small chunks of information, like strings and numbers.

First, we'll define the different messages that can be sent back and forth between the Apple Watch and the iPhone. There are three different types of messages that will be sent:

List all notes

The watch wants to receive the list of notes. The iPhone should send back an array of dictionaries; each dictionary will contain the name of the note and its URL.

Open note

The watch wants to display the content of a note. It will pass the URL of a note; the iPhone should open it, retrieve its text, and send it back.

Create note

The watch wants to create a note. It will pass the text that the note should contain; the iPhone will create the note and return the updated list of all notes (that is, it will have the same reply as "list all notes").

The actual data that's transferred between the watch and the phone is simply a dictionary; the contents of this dictionary will depend on what type of message it is, which is indicated by the value of the "name" entry in the dictionary.

We now need to define the actual messages that will be sent back and forth. Because a message is just a dictionary, in order to distinguish between the three different types of messages, the dictionary will need to contain an entry that describes the "name" of the message. Additionally, each value that can be sent in either direction needs a name as well so that it can be retrieved from the dictionaries that are sent back and forth.

The best place to define these is in *DocumentCommon.swift*, which is the Swift file that's currently shared among all of the different targets. We'll add it to the Watch extension target, too.

1. Select *DocumentCommon.swift* and open the File Inspector. Set its Target Membership to include the Watch Extension.

Doing this includes the *DocumentCommon.swift* file in the watchOS application.

2. Next, add the following code to the end of *DocumentCommon.swift*:

```
let WatchMessageTypeKey = "msg"
let WatchMessageTypeListAllNotesKey = "list"
let WatchMessageTypeLoadNoteKey = "load"
let WatchMessageTypeCreateNoteKey = "create"

let WatchMessageContentNameKey = "name"
let WatchMessageContentURLKey = "url"
let WatchMessageContentTextKey = "text"
let WatchMessageContentListKey = "list"
```

These strings will be used in the messages that are sent back and forth between the iPhone and the watch.

In this application, multiple different screens will need to access the iPhone via WatchConnectivity. Rather than spreading this work over all of the app, it's better to centralize it into a single object. To that end, we'll create a class that handles all iPhone/watch communication.

1. Open *ExtensionDelegate.swift*.
2. Import the WatchConnectivity framework by adding it to the list of imports:

```
import WatchConnectivity
```

This framework enables the Apple Watch and the iPhone to which it's tethered to talk to each other over the network. The practicalities of how this happens are handled for you: sometimes it might be over Bluetooth, sometimes it might be over WiFi, and sometimes it'll be a combination of both. The iPhone to which

the watch is tethered doesn't even need to be on the same network for this to work.

3. Add the following class to the end of the file. Note that it conforms to `WCSessionDelegate`:

```
class SessionManager : NSObject, WCSessionDelegate {  
}
```

The `WCSessionDelegate` protocol defines methods that are called when the device receives a message. Both the watchOS app and the iOS app will have a class that implements `WCSessionDelegate`, since they'll both need to respond to messages.

We want this class to be a *singleton*—that is, a class of which there's only ever one instance, and everyone accesses the same instance. We've seen this pattern before—or example, the `NSFileManager` class's `defaultManager` property provides access to a single, shared instance of the class.

To make a shared instance of this class available, we'll define a *static* constant property that, when the application loads, is initialized to an instance of the class.

4. Add the following property to `SessionManager`:

```
static let sharedSession = SessionManager()
```

Additionally, when the instance is created, we'll get in touch with the shared `WCSession` and tell it to use this instance as its delegate. Doing this means that we'll receive messages from the session.

This won't happen on the watch, but it will happen on the iPhone, so now's a good time to introduce it.

5. Add the following code to `SessionManager`:

```
var session : WCSession { return WCSession.defaultSession() }  
  
override init() {  
    super.init()  
    session.delegate = self  
    session.activateSession()  
}
```

When the `SessionManager` class is created—which happens when the `sharedSession` variable is created—then the shared `WCSession` class is told to use the `SessionManager` as its delegate. This means that the `SessionManager` will be notified when a message arrives. We then activate the session, enabling communication between the watch and the iPhone.

We now need to have some way for the watch to keep track of the notes that it knows about. We don't need to have a complete representation of the entire note—we just need to know about the names and URLs of notes that exist on the phone.

To that end, we'll create a struct that just stores the name as a `String`, and the URL as a `NSURL`. Because the iPhone will be passing information about the notes as dictionaries, we'll also add an initializer to this struct that allows it to use a dictionary to set itself up.

Finally, it's worth pointing out that this struct will be *inside* the `SessionManager` class. This decision is entirely a stylistic one; it's slightly nicer to keep related stuff together.

1. Add the following code to `SessionManager`:

```
struct NoteInfo {
    var name : String
    var URL : NSURL?

    init(dictionary:[String:AnyObject]) {

        let name
        = dictionary[WatchMessageContentNameKey] as? String
        ?? "(no name)"

        self.name = name

        if let urlString = dictionary[WatchMessageContentURLKey]
        as? String {
            self.URL = NSURL(string: urlString)
        }
    }
}
```

The `NoteInfo` struct is used on the watch to represent a single note. It's a very simple, pared-back version of the `Document` class, which stores two critical things: the name of the document, which is shown to the user, and the URL of the document as it exists on the iPhone. We also provide an initializer that lets it use a dictionary to get its initial values.

2. Next, we'll add an array to store this collection of notes. Add the following property to `SessionManager`:

```
var notes : [NoteInfo] = []
```

Then, because there are two different messages that can result in us receiving a list of notes, we'll break out the code that updates the `notes` array into its own method. This will help to keep the code tidy, since we can then just call this

method and pass in the information we got from the phone to it as a parameter, rather than having to write the same code twice.

3. Add the following method to SessionManager:

```
func updateLocalNoteListWithReply(reply:[String:AnyObject]) {  
  
    if let noteList = reply[WatchMessageContentListKey]  
        as? [[String:AnyObject]] {  
  
        // Convert all dictionaries to notes  
        self.notes = noteList.map({ (dict) -> NoteInfo in  
            return NoteInfo(dictionary: dict)  
        })  
  
    }  
    print("Loaded \(self.notes.count) notes")  
}
```

This method simply takes the dictionary that we've received and turns it into an array of notes, which is stored in the `notes` property.

We can now add the methods that send messages to the iPhone and receive the results. The users of these methods will need to provide a closure, which will be called when the information has been loaded, and serves as the means for the information to be passed back.

We'll start with the method that asks for the list of notes.

4. Add the following method to SessionManager:

```
func updateList(completionHandler: ([NoteInfo], NSError?)>Void) {  
  
    let message = [  
        WatchMessageTypeKey : WatchMessageTypeListAllNotesKey  
    ]  
  
    session.sendMessage(message, replyHandler: {  
        reply in  
  
        self.updateLocalNoteListWithReply(reply)  
  
        completionHandler(self.notes, nil)  
  
, errorHandler: { error in  
        print("Error!")  
        completionHandler([], error)  
  
    })  
}
```

When the `updateList` method is called, we prepare a message by creating a dictionary. We then ask the `WCSession` to send the message to the iPhone and provide a closure that's called when the iPhone's reply arrives. When it does, we simply call `updateLocalNoteListWithReply`. Additionally, this method has its own completion handler, allowing our UI to be notified about when it's time to update what the user can see.

5. Next, we'll implement the method that asks for a specific note by its URL and receives its text:

```
func loadNote(noteURL: NSURL,  
completionHandler: (String?, NSError?) -> Void) {  
  
    let message = [  
        WatchMessageTypeKey: WatchMessageTypeLoadNoteKey,  
        WatchMessageContentURLKey: noteURL.absoluteString  
    ]  
  
    session.sendMessage(message, replyHandler: {  
        reply in  
  
        let text = reply[WatchMessageContentTextKey] as? String  
  
        completionHandler(text, nil)  
    },  
    errorHandler: { error in  
        completionHandler(nil, error)  
    })  
}
```

This method is extremely similar to the `updateList` method, except that it requests a specific note from the iPhone. The iPhone will return the text of the note, which is then given to `updateList`'s completion handler.

6. Finally, we'll implement the method that asks the iPhone to create a new note with provided text (which will eventually come from the Apple Watch's built-in dictation system) and that receives an updated list of notes:

```
func createNote(text:String,  
completionHandler: ([NoteInfo], NSError?) -> Void) {  
  
    let message = [  
        WatchMessageTypeKey : WatchMessageTypeCreateNoteKey,  
        WatchMessageContentTextKey : text  
    ]  
  
    session.sendMessage(message, replyHandler: {  
        reply in
```

```

        self.updateLocalNoteListWithReply(reply)

        completionHandler(self.notes, nil)

    }, errorHandler: {
        error in

        completionHandler([], error)
    })
}

```

The `createNote` method simply takes the text to be used in a new note and fires it off to the iPhone. The iPhone will create the document and then return the updated list of documents available, allowing us to refresh the list immediately after creating a new note.

We're done with the watch side of things. The messages are sent, and the reply is interpreted and used. Next, we need to add support for these messages to the iPhone. We'll do this by extending the `AppDelegate` class to act as the delegate for the `WCSession`, which will allow it to receive messages from the watch. We'll then implement code, in the iOS app, that allows it to reply to the messages that it's received.

1. Open the iOS app's `AppDelegate.swift` file.
2. Add the `WatchConnectivity` framework to the list of imports:

```
import WatchConnectivity
```

3. Next, add the extension that makes `AppDelegate` conform to `WCSessionDelegate`. We're doing this to keep the `WCSessionDelegate` methods separate from the rest of the methods, for ease of reading:

```

extension AppDelegate : WCSessionDelegate {

}

```

We need to receive messages from the Apple Watch and determine what to do with them. To do this, we need to implement the method `session(_, didReceiveMessage:, replyHandler:)` in the extension. This method will receive the message that was sent from the watch and determine what to do about it.

To keep things tidy, we'll implement a handler method for each of the three different types of messages that can be received.

One of the parameters that the `didReceiveMessage` method receives is a closure, which must be called in order to reply to the message; therefore, this closure will be passed to the handler methods.

Let's get started by implementing `didReceiveMessage`.

1. Add the following method to the AppDelegate's WCSessionDelegate extension:

```
func session(session: WCSession,
             didReceiveMessage message: [String : AnyObject],
             replyHandler: ([String : AnyObject]) -> Void) {

    if let messageName = message[WatchMessageTypeKey] as? String {

        switch messageName {
        case WatchMessageTypeListAllNotesKey:
            handleListAllNotes(replyHandler)
        case WatchMessageTypeLoadNoteKey:
            if let urlString = message[WatchMessageContentURLKey]
                as? String,
                let url = NSURL(string: urlString) {
                    handleLoadNote(url, replyHandler: replyHandler)
            } else {
                // If there's no URL, then fall through to
                // the default case
                fallthrough
            }
        case WatchMessageTypeCreateNoteKey:
            if let textForNote = message[WatchMessageContentTextKey]
                as? String {

                handleCreateNote(textForNote, replyHandler: replyHandler)
            } else {
                // No text provided? Fall through to the default case
                fallthrough
            }
        default:
            // Don't know what this is, so reply with the
            // empty dictionary
            replyHandler([:])
        }
    }
}
```

When we receive a message from the watch, we check the value of the message's WatchMessageTypeKey. Based on the value, we call either the handleListAllNotes, handleLoadNote, or handleCreateNote method. In each case, we pass the replyHandler closure to these methods, allowing the method to send a reply.

2. Next, implement the handleListAllNotes method, which uses an NSFileManager to list the current contents of the iCloud container, builds an array of dictionaries that represents the contents, and passes this dictionary as a reply to the message:

```

func handleListAllNotes(replyHandler: ([String:AnyObject]) -> Void) {

    let fileManager = NSFileManager.defaultManager()

    var allFiles : [NSURL] = []

    do {

        // Add the list of cloud documents
        if let documentsFolder = fileManager
            .URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)?
            .URLByAppendingPathComponent("Documents", isDirectory: true) {
            let cloudFiles = try fileManager
                .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(documentsFolder.path!)
                .map({
                    documentsFolder.URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,
                        isDirectory: false)
                })
            allFiles.appendContentsOf(cloudFiles)
        }

        // Add the list of all local documents

        if let localDocumentsFolder
            = fileManager.URLsForDirectory(.DocumentDirectory,
                inDomains: .UserDomainMask).first {

            let localFiles =
                try fileManager
                .contentsOfDirectoryAtPath(localDocumentsFolder.path!)
                .map({
                    localDocumentsFolder.URLByAppendingPathComponent($0,
                        isDirectory: false)
                })
            allFiles.appendContentsOf(localFiles)
        }

        // Filter these to only those that end in ".note",

        let noteFiles = allFiles
            .filter({
                $0.lastPathComponent?.hasSuffix(".note") ?? false
            })

        // Convert this list into an array of dictionaries, each
        // containing the note's name and URL
        let results = noteFiles.map({ url in

            [
                WatchMessageContentNameKey: url.lastPathComponent

```

```

        ?? "Note",
        WatchMessageContentURLKey: url.absoluteString
    ]
}

// Bundle up this into our reply dictionary
let reply = [
    WatchMessageContentListKey: results
]

replyHandler(reply)

} catch let error as NSError {
    // Log an error and return the empty array
    NSLog("Failed to get contents of Documents folder: \(error)")
    replyHandler([:])
}
}

```

In this method, we're querying for the list of all documents and filtering that list down to only those whose filenames end in `.note`. We then use this list to create a reply dictionary, which we pass to the `replyHandler`. As a result, the watch will receive the list of available notes.

3. Next, implement the `handleLoadNote` method, which receives the URL of a note to load, opens that document, and retrieves its text, which it passes back as the reply:

```

func handleLoadNote(url: NSURL,
    replyHandler: ([String:AnyObject]) -> Void) {
    let document = Document(fileURL:url)
    document.openWithCompletionHandler { success in

        // Ensure that we successfully opened the document
        guard success == true else {
            // If we didn't, reply with an empty dictionary
            // and bail out
            replyHandler([:])
            return
        }

        let reply = [
            WatchMessageContentTextKey: document.text.string
        ]

        // Close; don't provide a completion handler, because
        // we've not making changes and therefore don't care
        // if a save succeeds or not
    }
}

```

```

        document.closeWithCompletionHandler(nil)

    replyHandler(reply)
}

}

```

To return the text of a note, we first need to open the Document and ask it for its text. Before we return it, we close the document; note that we don't provide a closure to `closeWithCompletionHandler`, since we're not making any changes to the document, and therefore don't need to worry about whether saving the document when it was closed succeeded.

- Finally, implement the `handleCreateNote` method, which receives some text to save in a new note; it creates the new document, gives it the text, and saves it; it then calls `handleListAllNotes`, passing the reply handler, so that the watch receives the updated list of documents:

```

func handleCreateNote(text: String,
    replyHandler: ([String:AnyObject]) -> Void) {

    let documentName = "Document \(arc4random()) from Watch.note"

    // Determine where the file should be saved locally
    // (before moving to iCloud)
    guard let documentsFolder = FileManager.defaultManager()
        .URLsForDirectory(.DocumentDirectory,
                           inDomains: .UserDomainMask).first else {
        self.handleListAllNotes(replyHandler)
        return
    }

    let documentDestinationURL = documentsFolder
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName)

    guard let ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL = FileManager
        .defaultManager().URLForUbiquityContainerIdentifier(nil)?
        .URLByAppendingPathComponent("Documents") else {
        self.handleListAllNotes(replyHandler)
        return
    }

    // Prepare the document and try to save it locally
    let newDocument = Document(fileURL:documentDestinationURL)
    newDocument.text = NSAttributedString(string: text)

    // Try to save it locally
    newDocument.saveToURL(documentDestinationURL,
                           forSaveOperation: .ForCreating) { (success) -> Void in

```

```

// Did the save succeed? If not, just reply with the
// list of notes.
guard success == true else {
    self.handleListAllNotes(replyHandler)
    return
}

// OK, it succeeded!

// Move it to iCloud
let ubiquitousDestinationURL = ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL
    .URLByAppendingPathComponent(documentName)

// Perform the move to iCloud in the background
NSOperationQueue().addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in
    do {
        try FileManager.defaultManager()
            .setUbiquitous(true,
                itemAtURL: documentDestinationURL,
                destinationURL: ubiquitousDestinationURL)

    } catch let error as NSError {
        NSLog("Error storing document in iCloud! " +
            "\n(error.localizedDescription)")
    }

    NSOperationQueue.mainQueue()
        .addOperationWithBlock { () -> Void in
            // Pass back the list of everything currently
            // in iCloud
            self.handleListAllNotes(replyHandler)
        }
    }
}

}

```

The last method to implement involves creating a new note. This is very similar to the `createDocument` method we implemented back in “[Creating Documents](#)” [on page 224](#), but with one change: when we successfully finish creating the document, we call `handleListAllNotes`, which results in the Apple Watch receiving the updated list of documents.

Finally, we need to make the `WCSession` use the app delegate, which is now capable of receiving and replying to messages from the watch, as its delegate.

5. Add the following code to `AppDelegate`’s `didFinishLaunchingWithOptions` method to set up and activate the session:

```
WCSession.defaultSession().delegate = self  
WCSession.defaultSession().activateSession()
```

Just as on the Apple Watch, we need to configure the `WCSession` to let us know about when we receive a message. We also call `activateSession` to turn on the two-way communication between the two devices.

Congratulations! The iPhone and Apple Watch are now able to talk to each other. We don't have a user interface on the watch yet, so it's not very useful!

Let's put this new functionality to use, by building the Watch app's interface.

User Interfaces for the Apple Watch

We'll now start making the interface that the user works with on the watch. The watch app will be composed of two `WKInterfaceController` subclasses: one that displays the list of notes, and one that displays the content of a single note.

By default, the Xcode template contains a single `WKInterfaceController`, called `InterfaceController`. This name isn't the greatest, since it doesn't describe what the interface controller is *for*, so we'll start by renaming it.

1. Rename the file `InterfaceController.swift` to `NoteListInterfaceController.swift`.
2. Open this file and rename the `InterfaceController` class to `NoteListInterfaceController`.

Because the Apple Watch app is configured to look for an interface controller class called `InterfaceController` at startup, we need to change this setting.

1. Open the Watch extension's `Info.plist` file and find the `RemoteInterfacePrincipalClass` entry.
2. Change this entry from `$(PRODUCT_MODULE_NAME).InterfaceController` to `$(PRODUCT_MODULE_NAME).NoteListInterfaceController`.

Next, we'll create the class that controls the second screen (the one that shows the contents of a note). Each separate interface controller should be a separate class so that each screen can operate independently.

1. Open the File menu and choose New→File.
2. Choose the Source category in the watchOS section, and select “WatchKit class.” Click Next.



Remember, creating a new class really means creating a Swift file; the advantage of using this method is that some of the setup will be taken care of for you.

3. Name the new class **NoteInterfaceController**, and make it a subclass of `WKInterfaceController` (see Figure 16-8).

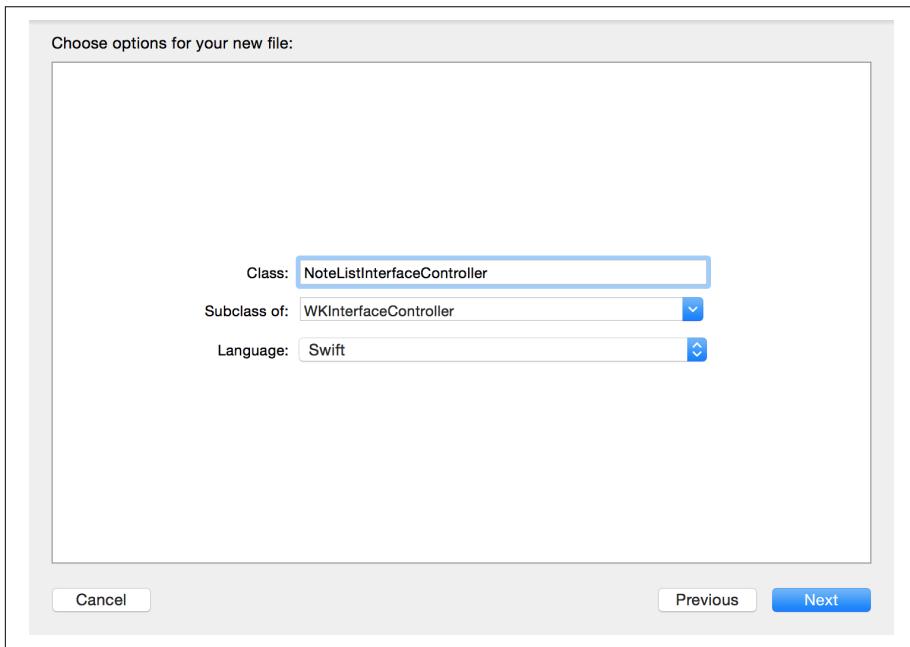


Figure 16-8. Configuring the new class

We'll now set up the storyboard that the watchOS application uses. We used storyboards for the iOS app, back in [Part III](#), and we'll be using them again here for the watchOS app.

1. Open the *Interface.storyboard* file and find the interface controller. Select it.
2. Open the Identity Inspector and change its class from `InterfaceController` to `NoteListInterfaceController`.

This will make the new interface controller use the `NoteListInterfaceController` class that we just created.

3. Open the Attributes Inspector and change its title to **Notes**.

This updates the label at the top of the screen to Notes.

We're now finally ready to build the interface. The note list will show, as its name suggests, a list of notes. In watchOS, you use a *table* to show lists of content; each row in the table can have its interface customized to your requirements.

The contents of each row are controlled by a *row controller*, which is a custom object that you create. Each type of row requires a new row controller class.

Unlike UICollectionViews and UITableViews, there's no special class for the row controllers that you should subclass. You just subclass the generic NSObject class.

1. Go to the Object library, and search for a **table** (Figure 16-9).

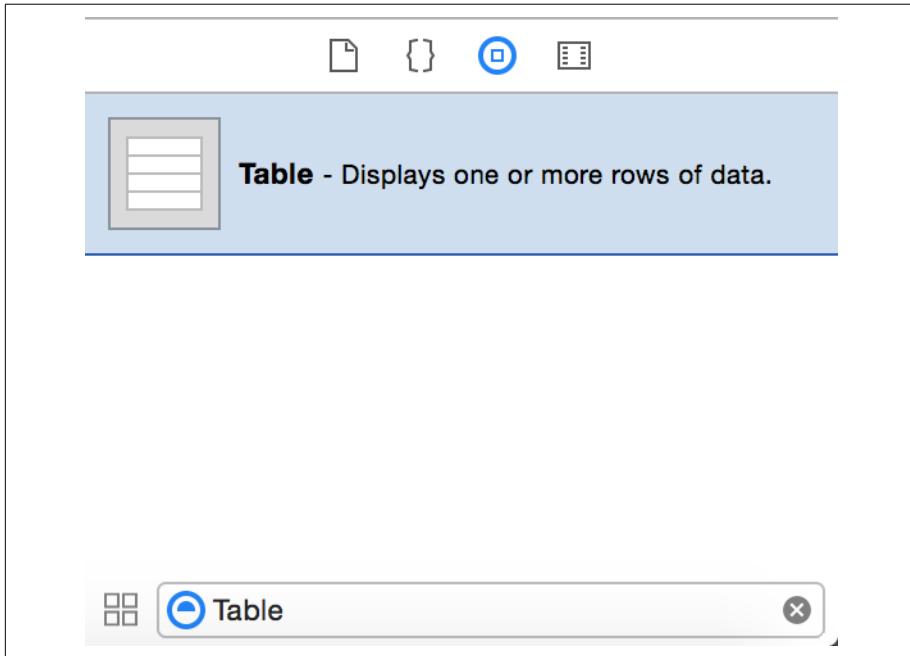


Figure 16-9. A Table in the Object library

2. Drag a table into the interface controller. It will fill the width of the screen (Figure 16-10).

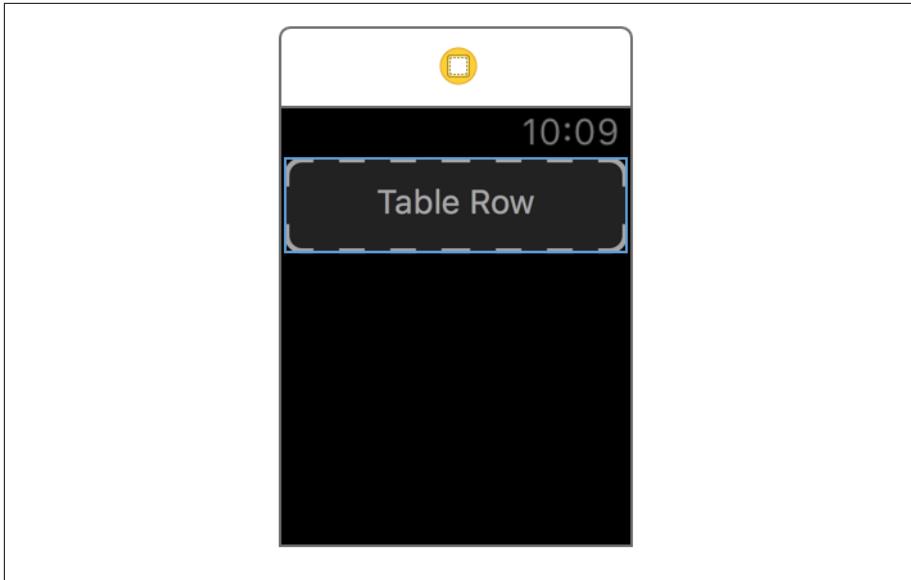


Figure 16-10. A Table object, filling the width of the screen

Next, we'll create the row controller class for the rows. Remember, each row will represent a note that the watch knows about.

1. Open `NoteListInterfaceController.swift` in the Assistant Editor.
2. Add the following `NoteRow` class to the bottom of the file:

```
class NoteRow : NSObject {  
}
```

3. Select the row controller in the outline and go to the Identity Inspector. Set its class to `NoteRow`.
4. Go to the Attributes Inspector and set its identifier to `NoteRow` as well. We'll use this to populate the table's contents.
5. Search for `Label` in the Object library and drag it into the table's row.
6. Select the new label and set its text to `Note Name`.

The interface for the note list is now fully designed, and should look like [Figure 16-11](#).

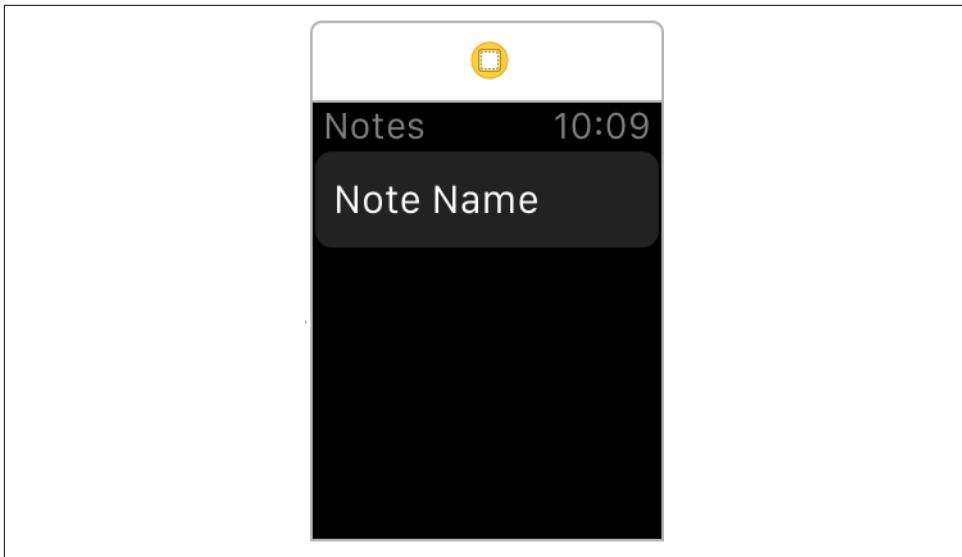


Figure 16-11. The interface for the note list

We'll now connect the interface to the code. First, we need to connect the label in the table's row to an outlet in the `NoteRow` class; next, we need to connect the table itself to the interface controller.

1. Hold down the Control key and drag from the label into the `NoteRow` class. Create a new outlet called `nameLabel`.
2. Hold down the Control key a second time and drag from the table into the `NoteListInterfaceController` class. Create a new outlet, `noteListTable`, by dragging from the table entry in the outline.



Drag from the outline, not from the table in the canvas. If the drag starts from the canvas, you'll end up creating an outlet for the wrong type of object.

We can now set up the `NoteInterfaceController` to request a list of notes from the watch, via the `SessionManager`, and populate the table.

Because there will eventually be *two* reasons for updating the table (both when the app starts up, and when the user has added a new note), we'll break out the code that updates the table into its own function, `updateListWithNotes`.

1. Add the following method to `NoteListInterfaceController`:

```

func updateListWithNotes(notes: [SessionManager.NoteInfo]) {
    self.noteListTable.setNumberOfRows(notes.count, withRowType: "NoteRow")

    for (i, note) in notes.enumerate() {
        if let row = self.noteListTable.rowControllerAtIndex(i)
        as? NoteRow {
            row.nameLabel.setText(note.name)
        }
    }
}

```

This method will be called by the `awakeWithContext` method, which we'll add to shortly. It receives a list of `NoteInfo` objects, which it uses to populate the contents of the table view.

When the interface controller first appears, we need to query the iPhone for the list of notes and then call `updateListWithNotes`.

2. Update the `awakeWithContext` method to have the following code:

```

override func awakeWithContext(context: AnyObject?) {
    super.awakeWithContext(context)

    // Configure interface objects here.

    SessionManager.sharedSession.updateList() { notes, error in
        self.updateListWithNotes(notes)
    }
}

```

When the interface controller appears on screen, it needs to get the list of notes to display. To get this, we ask the `SessionManager` to request the list of notes from the iPhone; when we receive the reply, we call `updateListWithNotes` to make it appear.

We can now test the app.

3. Run the application. The list of notes will appear (see [Figure 16-12](#)).

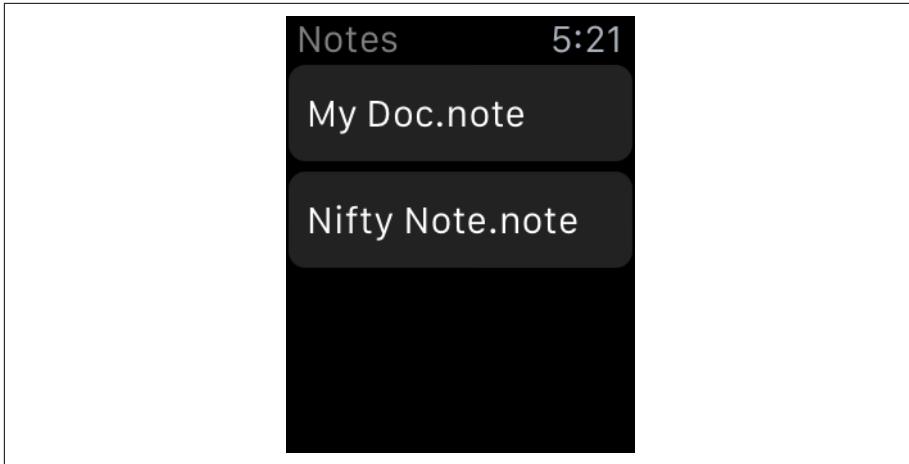


Figure 16-12. The list of notes

Showing Note Contents

Next, we'll create a new interface controller that shows the contents of a single note. When the user taps on a note in the `NoteListInterfaceController`, we'll use a segue to transition to this new interface controller, which will then request the text of a note from the iPhone. Once it receives the text, it will display it in a label.

Let's start by creating the interface for the new interface controller.

1. Go to the Object library, and search for Interface Controller. A few different options will appear; the one you want is the base Interface Controller, which should appear at the top of the list (see [Figure 16-13](#)).

The other options are the Glance Interface Controller, which allows you to create a custom UI for glances (screens that appear when the user swipes up from the bottom of the watch screen), and the Notification Interface Controller, which allows you to create a custom UI for notifications that your app receives. We want a generic, simple interface controller to add to the app.

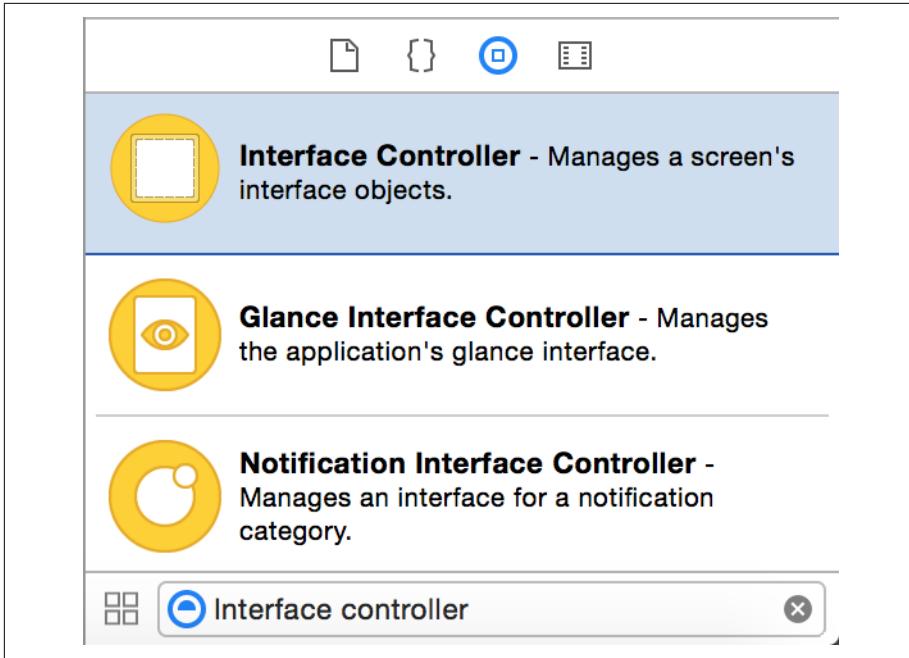


Figure 16-13. Searching for *Interface Controller* in the Object library—the base *Interface Controller*, which is the one we want, is selected

2. Drag in a new interface controller.
3. Select it and go to the Identity Inspector. Change its class from `WKInterfaceController` to `NoteInterfaceController` to make it use that class's code.
4. Go to the Attributes Inspector and change its title to **Note**.

Next, we'll create the segue that connects the note list interface controller to the note interface controller.

1. Hold down the Control key and drag from the Note Row—that is, the single row in the table view—to the note interface controller. When you release the mouse button, a menu will appear with the available types of segue (Figure 16-14). Choose Push.

The alternative is to create a modal segue, which slides an interface controller up from the bottom of the screen. It's designed for alerts and other modal content.

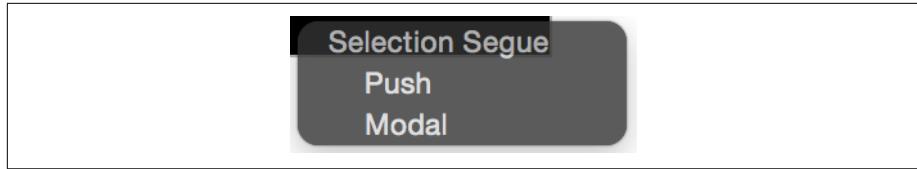


Figure 16-14. Creating the segue

2. Select this new segue and go to the Attributes Inspector. Change its identifier to **ShowNote**.

We can now create the interface for the interface controller:

1. Drag in a label into the interface controller.
2. Go to the Attributes Inspector and set the Lines value to **0**. This will make the label resize to fit all of the text; if the lines value is **0**, then the label resizes itself to fit *all* lines of text, rather than truncating after a fixed number of allowed lines.
3. Set the Text value to **Note Content**. This text will be replaced with the actual content of the note at runtime.

The entire interface, for both interface controllers, should now look like [Figure 16-15](#).

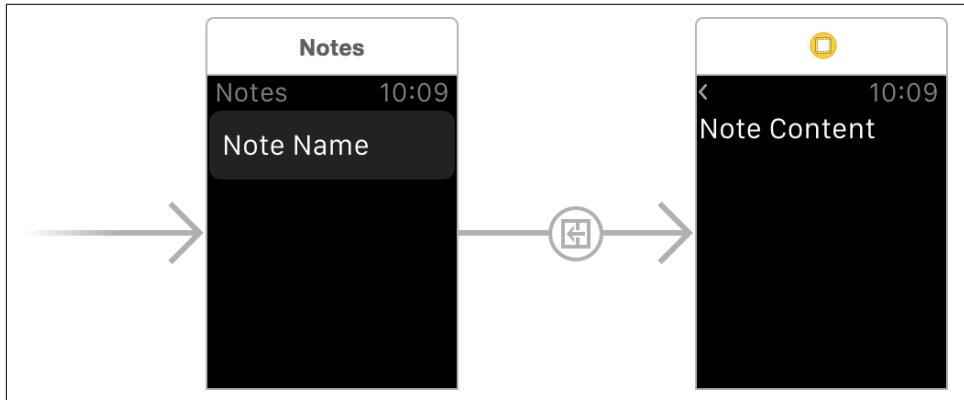


Figure 16-15. The completed interface

Finally, we can connect the label in the note interface controller to the code:

1. Open **NoteInterfaceController** in the Assistant. Hold down the Control key and drag from the Note Content label into the **NoteInterfaceController** class. Create a new outlet called **noteContentLabel**.

- Run the application, and tap one of the notes. You'll be taken to the new interface controller!

Next, we'll make the `NoteListInterfaceController` respond to the user tapping the cell, and make it pass along the selected note's URL to the `NoteInterfaceController`. This will allow the `NoteInterfaceController` to request the contents of the document.

To do this, we'll implement the `contextForSegueWithIdentifier` method, which watchOS calls when a table row is tapped on. This method is expected to return a *context object*, which can be of any type; this object is passed to the next interface controller's `awakeWithContext` method as a parameter.

- Open `NoteListInterfaceController.swift` and add the following method to it:

```
override func contextForSegueWithIdentifier(segueIdentifier: String,
    inTable table: WKInterfaceTable, rowIndex: Int) -> AnyObject? {

    // Was this the ShowNote segue?
    if segueIdentifier == "ShowNote" {
        // Pass the URL for the selected note to the
        // interface controller
        return SessionManager.sharedSession.notes[rowIndex].URL
    }

    return nil
}
```

This code works in the same way as the `prepareForSegue` method that `UIViewController`s implement. It checks to make sure that we're running the `ShowNote` segue, and if we are, we pass the URL of the note that the user has selected.

- Next, we'll implement `awakeWithContext` in the `NoteInterfaceController` to make it use this `NSURL` to request the note text. The `NoteInterfaceController` will give this `NSURL` to the `SessionManager`, which will give it to the iPhone to retrieve the content of the document.
- Open `NoteInterfaceController.swift` and update `awakeWithContext` to look like the following code:

```
override func awakeWithContext(context: AnyObject?) {

    // We've hopefully received an NSURL that points at a
    // note on the iPhone we want to display!

    if let url = context as? NSURL {

        // First, clear the label - it might take a moment for
        // the text to appear.
    }
}
```

```

        self.noteContentLabel.setText(nil)

    SessionManager.sharedSession.loadNote(url,
        completionHandler: { text, error -> Void in

            if let theText = text {
                // We have the text! Display it.
                self.noteContentLabel.setText(theText)
            }
        })
    }
}

```

In the `NoteInterfaceController`'s `awakeWithContext` method, the context is whatever object was returned by the `contextForSegueWithIdentifier` method. If this is an `NSURL`, then we use it to request the text of the note. If we receive the text, we display it in the `noteContentLabel`.

- Run the app. When you tap on a note, its contents will now appear! (See [Figure 16-16](#).)

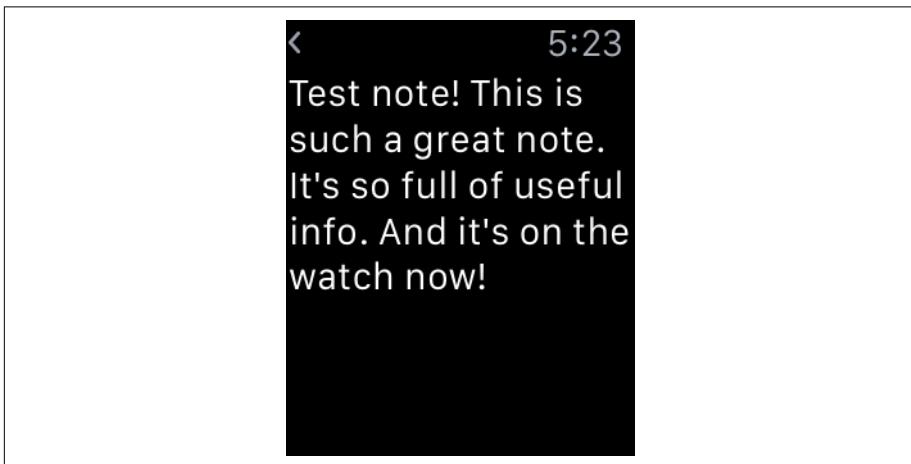


Figure 16-16. A note being tapped in the list, and then displayed

There's one last thing to do. It's possible that the transfer of the text might fail; if this happens, we should show an alert to the user to indicate that something's gone wrong.

- Add the following code to `awakeWithContext`:

```

override func awakeWithContext(context: AnyObject?) {

    // We've hopefully received an NSURL that points at a
    // note on the iPhone we want to display!
}

```

```

if let url = context as? NSURL {

    // First, clear the label - it might take a moment for
    // the text to appear.
    self.noteContentLabel.setText(nil)

    SessionManager.sharedSession.loadNote(url,
        completionHandler: { text, error -> Void in

        if let theError = error {
            // We have an error! Present it, and add a button
            // that closes this screen when tapped.

            let closeAction = WKAlertAction(title: "Close",
            style: WKAlertActionStyle.Default,
            handler: { () -> Void in
                self.popController()
            }

            self.presentAlertControllerWithTitle("Error loading note",
            message: theError.localizedDescription,
            preferredStyle: WKAlertControllerStyle.Alert,
            actions: [closeAction])
        }

        return
    }

    if let theText = text {
        // We have the text! Display it.
        self.noteContentLabel.setText(theText)
    }
}
}
}

```

The completion handler passed to `loadNote` receives either the text content or an `NSError` object. If we have an error, then we show an alert interface controller by calling `presentAlertControllerWithTitle`.



We aren't using do-catch here because the error comes from outside this method, rather than being created by calling a method that throws.

When you run the application again, if there's ever an error in displaying the contents of the note, an alert will appear (see [Figure 16-17](#)).

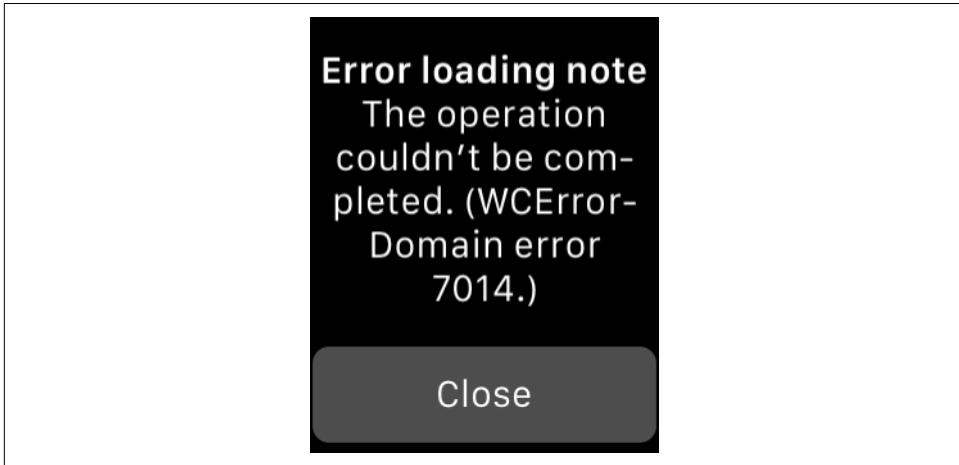


Figure 16-17. The alert that appears when there's an error displaying the contents of the note

Creating New Notes

Next, we'll add the ability to create new notes on the Apple Watch. We'll do this through a *menu item*: when the user force-touches the note list screen (that is, presses hard on the watch's surface), a button will appear that allows him or her to write a new note. If this button is tapped, the watch will allow the user to dictate some text; once this is done, the `NoteListInterfaceController` will send this text to the iPhone to create the note.



The only meaningful way to do text input on the Apple Watch is with voice recognition.

First, we'll create the menu item:

1. Go to the `Interface.storyboard` file.
2. Search for **Menu** in the Object library and drag it onto the `NoteListInterfaceController`.
3. Select the menu item that comes by default, and go to the Attributes Inspector.
4. Set its image to **Add**, and its title to **Create Note**.

5. Hold down the Control key and drag from the Menu item into `NoteListInterfaceController`. Create a new action called `createNote`.
6. Add the following code to the `createNote` method:

```
@IBAction func createNote() {  
  
    let suggestions = [  
        "Awesome note!",  
        "What a great test note!",  
        "I love purchasing and reading books from O'Reilly Media!"  
    ]  
  
    self.presentTextInputControllerWithSuggestions(suggestions,  
        allowedInputMode: WKTextInputMode.Plain) {  
        (results) -> Void in  
  
            if let text = results?.first as? String {  
                SessionManager  
                    .sharedSession  
                    .createNote(text, completionHandler: { notes, error in  
                        self.updateListWithNotes(notes)  
                    })  
            }  
        }  
    }  
}
```

This method displays a text input view controller, which permits the user to either select from an array of options that you provide or dictate a response.



If you pass in `nil` for the list of suggestions, the text input controller will go straight to dictation, instead of letting the user pick from a list of options. Dictation doesn't work on the simulator, so if you want to test it without a device, always pass in some suggestions.

7. Run the application and force-touch the note list to start dictating. When you're done, new notes will be created (see [Figure 16-18](#)).

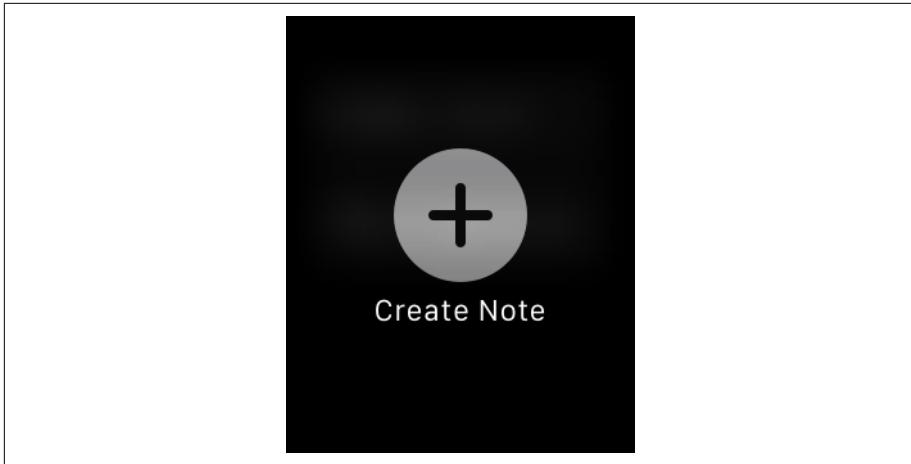


Figure 16-18. The force-touch menu

Adding Handoff Between the Watch and the iPhone

We'll now add the ability to hand off from the Apple Watch to the iPhone. If a user is viewing a note on the watch and then turns on the iPhone, a Handoff icon will appear in the bottom left of the screen; if the user swipes up from this icon, the document will open in the iOS app.

This functionality is provided through the same system that makes Handoff work between the iPhone and the Mac: a *user activity* is broadcast by the watch, and when the user decides to continue the activity on the phone, they exchange information.

There's only one snag when it comes to the Apple Watch/iPhone handoff: unlike the Mac/iPhone handoff, we aren't able to take advantage of the fact that `NSDocument`/`UIDocument` deal with passing the URL for the document for us. We'll need to pass it along ourselves. This means adding a little bit of extra information into the user activity on the watch, and looking for that information on the iPhone.

Handoff works only on a physical device. You'll need to build and run the app on your actual Apple Watch and iPhone to test this.

1. Open `DocumentCommon.swift`.
2. Add the following line of code to the file:

```
let WatchHandoffDocumentURL = "watch_document_url_key"
```

We'll use this key to find the URL of the document when handing off from the watch to another device.

3. Next, open `DocumentListViewController.swift` and add the following code to the `restoreUserActivityState` method:

```
override func restoreUserActivityState(activity: NSUserActivity) {
    // We're being told to open a document

    if let url = activity.userInfo?[NSUserActivityDocumentURLKey]
        as? NSURL {

        // Open the document
        self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)
    }

    > // This is coming from the watch
    > if let urlString = activity
    >     .userInfo?[WatchHandoffDocumentURL] as? String,
    >     let url = NSURL(string: urlString) {
    >         // Open the document
    >         self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)
    >

    // We're coming from a search result
    if let searchableItemIdentifier = activity
        .userInfo?[CSSearchableItemActivityIdentifier] as? String,
        let url = NSURL(string: searchableItemIdentifier) {
        // Open the document
        self.performSegueWithIdentifier("ShowDocument", sender: url)
    }

}
```

If the handoff dictionary contains a value for the key `WatchHandoffDocumentURL`, we extract the URL from it and use it to open the document.

Finally, we'll make the `NoteInterfaceController` let other devices know that the user is looking at a document. This will cause the user's other devices to show the app's icon either on the lock screen (for iOS devices) or in the Dock (on Macs).

1. Open `NoteInterfaceController.swift` and add the following code to the `awakeWithContext` method:

```
override func awakeWithContext(context: AnyObject?) {

    // We've hopefully received an NSURL that points at a
    // note on the iPhone we want to display!

    if let url = context as? NSURL {

        // First, clear the label—it might take a moment for
        // the text to appear.
```

```

        self.noteContentLabel.setText(nil)

>     let activityInfo = [WatchHandoffDocumentURL: url.absoluteString]
>
>     // Note that this string needs to be the same as
>     // the activity type you defined in the Info.plist for the iOS
>     // and Mac apps
>     updateUserActivity("au.com.secretlab.Notes.editing",
>                         userInfo: activityInfo, webpageURL: nil)

SessionManager.sharedSession.loadNote(url,
                                      completionHandler: { text, error -> Void in

    if let theError = error {
        // We have an error! Present it, and add a button
        // that closes this screen when tapped.

        let closeAction = WKAlertAction(title: "Close",
                                         style: WKAlertActionStyle.Default,
                                         handler: { () -> Void in
                                             self.popController()
                                         })

        self.presentAlertControllerWithTitle("Error loading note",
                                             message: theError.localizedDescription,
                                             preferredStyle: WKAlertControllerStyle.Alert,
                                             actions: [closeAction])

        return
    }

    if let theText = text {
        // We have the text! Display it.
        self.noteContentLabel.setText(theText)
    }
}
}
}

```

First, we create a dictionary that contains the note's URL. We then call `updateUserActivity`, which broadcasts the fact that the user is looking at this particular document to the user's other devices.

2. Run the app on your Apple Watch and open a Note. Turn your iPhone on, and see the iOS app's icon in the lower-left corner. Swipe up, and the document you're viewing on your watch will be opened in the iOS app! (See [Figure 16-19](#).)



You'll also see the Mac app's icon appear in the Dock, with an Apple Watch icon. This means that you can hand off from your watch to your Mac as well as to your iPhone.

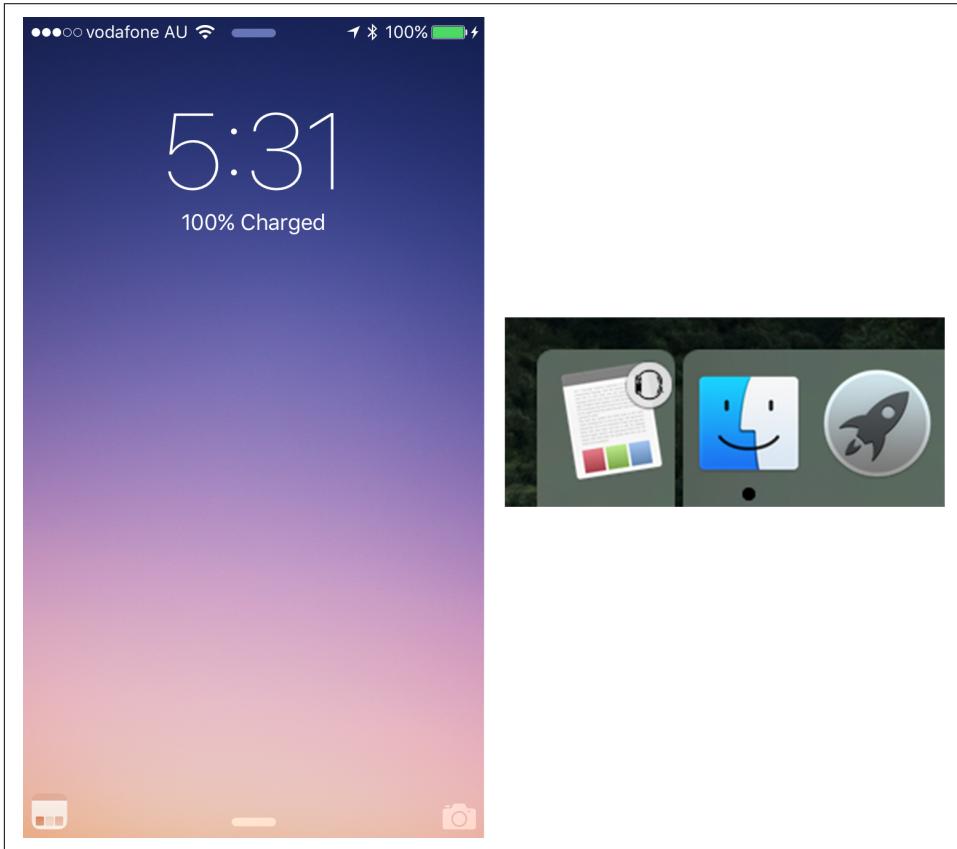


Figure 16-19. The Handoff icon on an iPhone's home screen, and in the Mac's Dock

Glances

Glances allow users to quickly view information while they're using their watch, without having to launch the watchOS app. Glances can display custom content, but cannot be interactive and are limited to one screen. Tapping a glance can launch the watchOS app, though.



Glances are simple but powerful. Learn more about them in [Apple's WatchKit documentation](#).

We're going to add a glance to our watchOS app that allows users to very quickly jump into the watchOS app and begin dictating a new note.

When you tap on a glance, its corresponding app is launched on the watch. There's no direct way to communicate between a glance and its app; instead, your glance's interface controller creates a user activity—in exactly the same way as how you do for Handoff—when it appears. If the user taps on the glance, the app is opened; it should then check to see what the current user activity is, and respond accordingly.

The design of the glance is a single, large Add image, to make it unambiguous that tapping on the glance will make a new note ([Figure 16-20](#)). The image is available in the book's resources (see “[Resources Used in This Book](#)” on page ix).

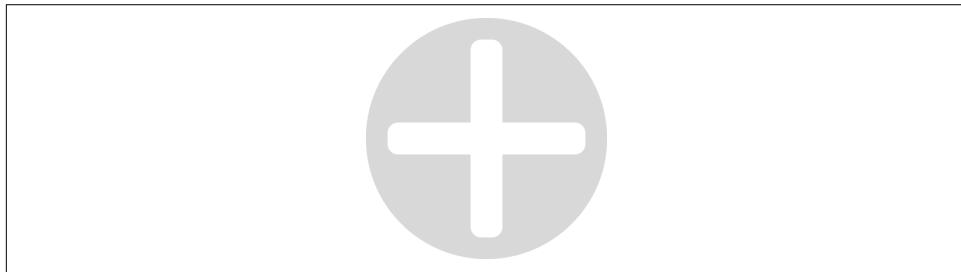


Figure 16-20. The image we'll be using for the watchOS glance

First, we'll add this image:

1. Open the `Assets.xcasset` file in the Watch group (not the one in the Watch extension group).
2. Drag the Watch Glance Add image from the resources that accompany this book into the list of image sets.

We'll now add the code to the `GlanceController` class to make it set the current user activity to one that will make the `NoteListInterfaceController` start creating a new note when it appears.

1. Open `GlanceController.swift`, which is a file that Xcode created for you when you created the app.
2. Update the `willActivate` method to look like the following code:

```

override func willActivate() {
    // This method is called when watch view controller is
    // about to be visible to user
    updateUserActivity("au.com.secretlab.Notes.creating",
                       userInfo: ["editing":true], webpageURL: nil)
    super.willActivate()
}

```

By calling `updateUserActivity`, we're indicating to the larger watchOS system that the user is about to create a document if the glance is tapped.

Next, we'll make the `NoteListInterfaceController` detect this user activity and begin creating a note. If the glance is tapped, the watchOS app is launched, and the first interface controller that appears will have the `handleUserActivity` method called on it. At this point, we can grab information from that activity and figure out if the user wants to begin creating a note.

1. Open `NoteListInterfaceController.swift`.
2. Add the following method to the `NoteListInterfaceController` class:

```

override func handleUserActivity(userInfo: [NSObject : AnyObject]?) {
    if userInfo?["editing"] as? Bool == true {
        // Start creating a note
        createNote()

        // Clear the user activity
        invalidateUserActivity()
    }
}

```

If the user activity contains the `editing` flag, which we set in the `GlanceController`'s `willActivate` method, then we call `createNote` to begin creating a new note. We then call `invalidateUserActivity` to clear the user's current activity, tidying up after ourselves.

Finally, we'll implement the user interface for the glance.

Glances have a very specific layout pattern. There's a smaller top section and a larger lower section. You don't have a huge amount of flexibility in this, primarily for efficiency reasons: by constraining what your layout looks like, the watch is able to save quite a bit of power.

1. Open `Interface.storyboard` and go to the glance interface controller.
2. Select the interface controller. Set the Upper section's interface to the option that contains a single small label. Set the Lower section's interface to the option that contains a single image.

3. Select the label in the upper section. In the Attributes Inspector, set its text to **Notes**.
4. Select the image object that now appears in the lower section of the glance's interface. In the Attributes Inspector, set its image to Watch Glance Add, and set its mode to Center.

The interface is now ready; see [Figure 16-21](#).

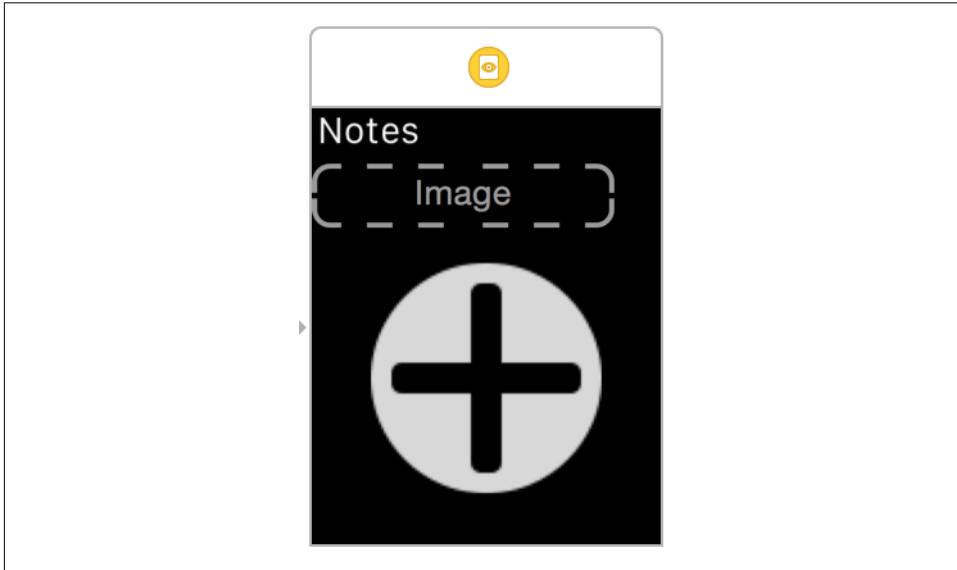


Figure 16-21. The glance interface

You can now test the glance by running it on your Apple Watch; when you tap the glance, the app will launch, and immediately enter dictation mode to let you create the note.



You may need to manually add the glance to your watch through the Watch app on your iPhone.

To test the glance in the simulator, use the scheme selector to select the “Glance - Watch” scheme. If the target is a simulator, the simulated watch will show the glance.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we extended the iOS app to add support for the Apple Watch. We built a simple watchOS app that allows users to look at their notes and create new notes on the Apple Watch. To do this, we worked with the WatchKit, the framework for building watchOS apps, and the communication system between the watch and the phone. We also added support for handoffs to the watchOS app, so users can work with the same information when moving between the devices.

Code Quality and Distribution

In this chapter, we'll talk about some tools and techniques you can use to ensure that your code is as good as it can be. Specifically, we'll be talking about how to monitor your app and find ways to improve its performance, how to track down and fix bugs, and how to set up your application to run automatic tests on itself, which will help you make changes to the code without accidentally breaking its features.

After that, we'll talk about how to use automated tools for ensuring that every piece of the app works every step of the way as you continue to build your project. Finally, we'll talk about how to deal with the App Store, including code signing requirements and delivering your product to Apple for distribution, as well as how to ensure that only the assets that the user's device actually needs are downloaded.

Debugging

Sometimes, your code just doesn't work the way you want it to: either you have a crash, or you have a more subtle behavioral difference. To track down these problems, you can use Xcode's built-in *debugger*. A debugger is a program that can interrupt the execution of an app, gather data from its variables, and help you figure out what the app's doing.

To use the debugger, you add *breakpoints*. A breakpoint is a point in the program at which the debugger should stop, allowing the developer (that's you!) to inspect the program's current state.

When a program is stopped at a breakpoint, you can step through its execution, line by line, observing the data stored in both the local variables and in the properties of the classes change. By carefully observing the behavior of your app, you can track down the causes of problems and fix them.

In addition, you can make the debugger automatically jump in the moment the application crashes, allowing you to figure out the cause of the crash.

To add a breakpoint to your application, simply click inside the gray area at the left of the code. When you do, a small blue arrow will appear, representing the point at which the program will stop ([Figure 17-1](#)).

```
469             options: [],
470             error: nil,
471             byAccessor: { (origin, destination) => Void in
472
473             do {
474                 // Perform the actual move
475                 try NSFileManager.defaultManager()
476                     .moveItemAtURL(origin,
477                         toURL: destination)
478
479                 // Remove the original URL from the file
480                 // list by filtering it out
481                 self.availableFiles =
482                     self.availableFiles.filter { $0 != url }
483
484                 // Add the new URL to the file list
485                 self.availableFiles.append(destination)
```

Figure 17-1. A breakpoint

If you run the application and trigger the code that has the breakpoint, your program will pause and Xcode will appear, showing the debug view ([Figure 17-2](#)).

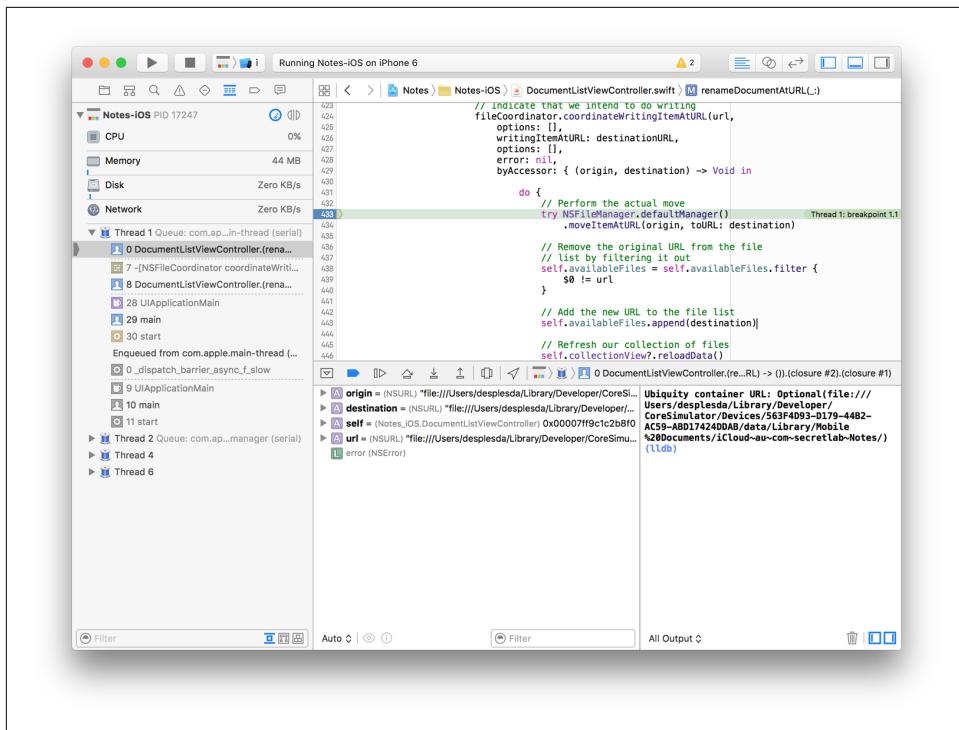


Figure 17-2. The program, stopped in the debugger

When the debugger is active, a number of things appear:

- The Debug Inspector, at the left of the Xcode window, shows a *stack trace*, indicating where in the program the execution has stopped, and which methods were called to reach this point.
- The debug view appears, and is split into two sections:
 - On the left, the list of all local variables is displayed. From here, you can see the current value of all local variables, as well as access the current object's properties in the `self` variable.
 - On the right, the LLDB console appears. From here, you can type commands for the debugger to interpret. The most useful command is `po`, which causes the debugger to print the value of the specified expression.

At the top of the debug view, you can find buttons that control the execution of the debugger (see [Figure 17-3](#)). The most important are the first six:

- The first button closes the debug view.
- The second button enables or disables breakpoints.

- The third button resumes execution of the program.
- The fourth button moves to the next line of code.
- The fifth button steps into the next method call.
- The sixth button continues until the current method returns, and then stops.



Figure 17-3. The debug view’s controls

The debugger is an essential tool for diagnosing problems in your app. Don’t hesitate to stick a breakpoint in to figure out what your code is actually doing!

Instruments

The *Instruments* tool tracks the activity of an application. You can monitor just about every single aspect of an application, from high-level metrics like how much data it’s transferring over the network down to low-level information about the OpenGL commands that the app executed in a single frame.

If your app is running slowly, Instruments lets you figure out which part of your application is responsible for taking up the majority of the time; if your app is consuming too much memory, you can work out what’s responsible for allocating it.

There are two ways to use Instruments. First, you can get a high-level summary of the behavior of your app in Xcode (see [Figure 17-4](#)); if you need more information, you can launch the separate Instruments app.

To access the high-level summary of how your app is performing, simply run it and go to the debug navigator. Underneath the app’s name, you’ll find four entries—CPU, Memory, Disk, and Network—showing the current performance status of the app: how much of the system’s CPU capacity it’s using, how much total memory, how much data is being read and written to disk, as well as how much network traffic the app is getting. When you select these, you’ll be shown a more detailed picture of the selected aspect.



If you’re testing on a Mac, or on an iOS device—that is, not the simulator—then you’ll also see energy consumption data. If you’re on a Mac, you’ll also see iCloud usage data.

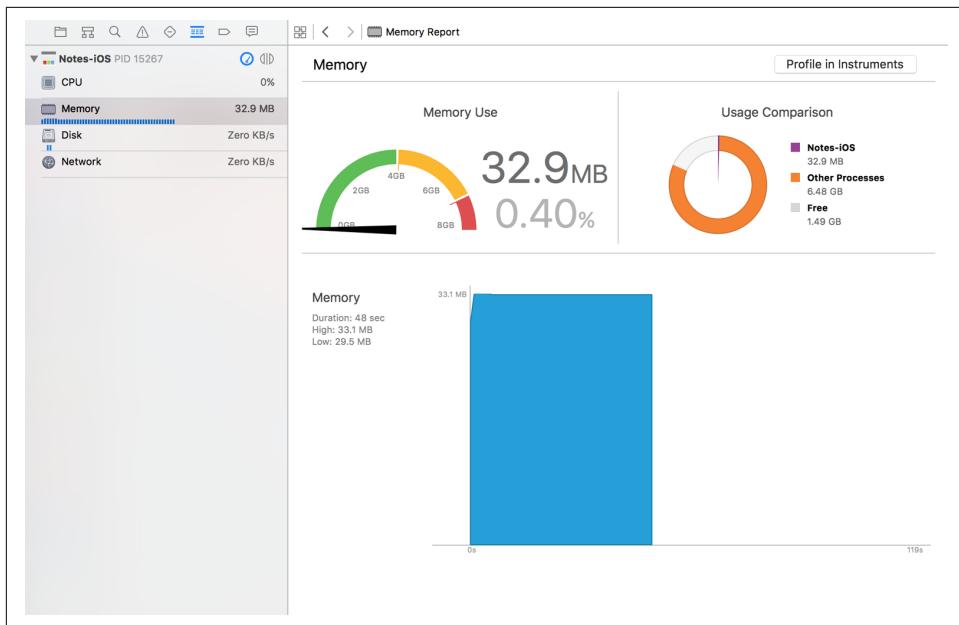


Figure 17-4. Performance data in Xcode

You'll notice a button labeled "Profile in Instruments" at the top-right corner of the view. If you click this, Xcode will offer to transfer control of the application to Instruments, allowing you to gather a more detailed view of the application.



You can use Instruments to profile both the simulator and a real device. However, the simulator has different performance characteristics than real devices, and real users don't use the simulator. Always test the performance of your app on an actual device before shipping to the App Store.

To demonstrate, let's profile the Notes application to identify performance hotspots when viewing image attachments.

1. Launch the Notes application and select the CPU element in the debug inspector.
2. Click the "Profile in Instruments" button.
3. Xcode will ask if you want to transfer the current session to Instruments, or stop the current session and launch a new one in Instruments ([Figure 17-5](#)). Either option is useful for our purposes.

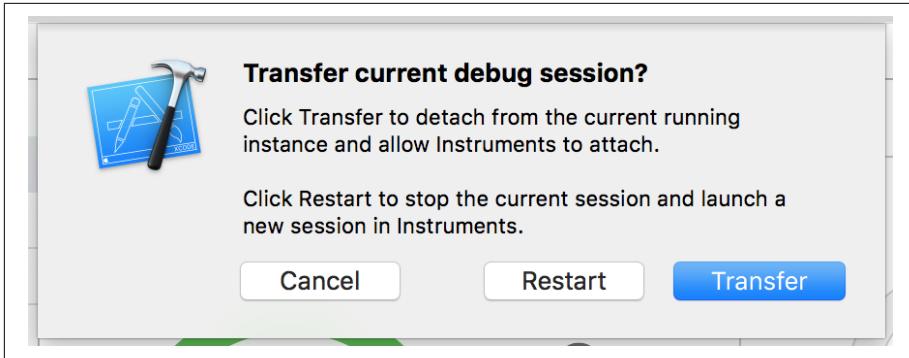


Figure 17-5. Transferring the application

4. Instruments will launch, showing the CPU Usage tool ([Figure 17-6](#)).

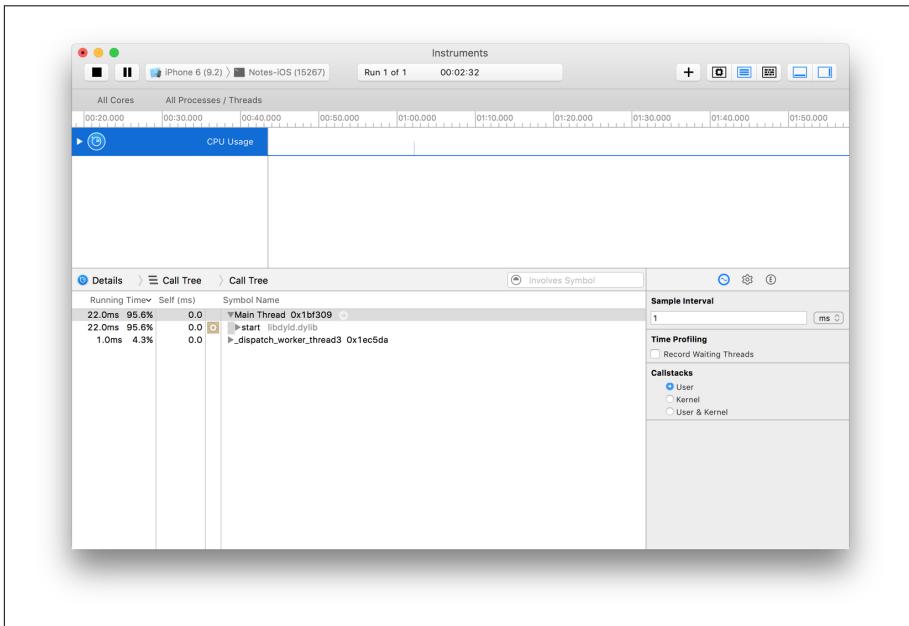


Figure 17-6. Instruments, using the CPU Usage tool

As you use the application, the CPU usage will be logged. We'll now perform some tests to determine which methods are taking up most of the time.

1. Open a document. Once the document is open, go to Instruments and press the Pause button.
2. Look at the Call Tree pane, which takes up the majority of the bottom section of the window. This window shows the amount of CPU time taken up by each

thread; additionally, you can dive into each thread to find out which *methods* took up the most CPU time.



The less time spent on the CPU, the better your performance.

When you're tuning the performance of your application, there's not much sense in wading through the huge collection of methods that you didn't write. To that end, we can filter this view to show only the code that you have control over.

1. Find the Display Settings button, at the top of the panel in the bottom right of the screen. Click it, and you'll see a collection of options to control how the data is displayed.
2. Turn off everything except Hide System Libraries. When you do this, the Call List will be reduced to just your methods. Additionally, they'll be ordered based on how much each time each method took (see [Figure 17-7](#)).



Figure 17-7. Instruments, after the display has been filtered

The content of the detail area, which is the lower half of the screen, depends on which instrument you're working with. For the CPU Usage instrument, the columns in the Detail Area's Call Tree view are:

Running Time

The total amount of time taken by the current row, including any of the methods that it calls.

Self (ms)

The total amount of time taken by the current row, *not* including any of the methods it calls.

Symbol Name

The name of the method in question.

You'll notice that `main` is taking up the majority of the time. This makes sense, because `main` is the function that kicks off the entirety of the application. If you open up the list of methods, you'll see the methods that `main` calls; each one can in turn be opened.

Given that our goal is to improve the performance of opening a document, we want to find the most time-consuming method, and optimize that.

3. Expand the topmost method in the list. Continue doing this until there's nothing else left to expand.



Hold the Option key and click on the arrow, and *all* rows will be expanded.

You'll notice that the method that takes the majority of the time when opening the document is labeled “type metadata accessor for `AVSpeechSynthesizer`” (see [Figure 17-8](#)). This sounds kind of arcane, so let's back up one level and see if we can figure out what's going on.

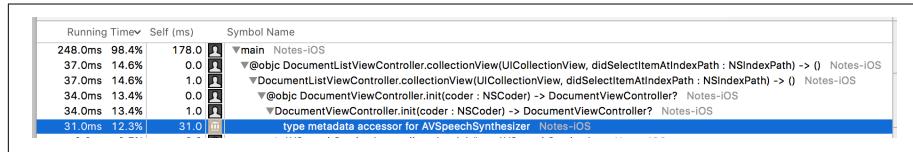


Figure 17-8. The performance bottleneck in the code

4. Double-click on the method above “type metadata accessor for `AVSpeechSynthesizer`”: `DocumentViewController.init`. You'll be taken to a view of the source code, highlighting the line that took the most time to execute: the line that creates the `AVSpeechSynthesizer` ([Figure 17-9](#)).

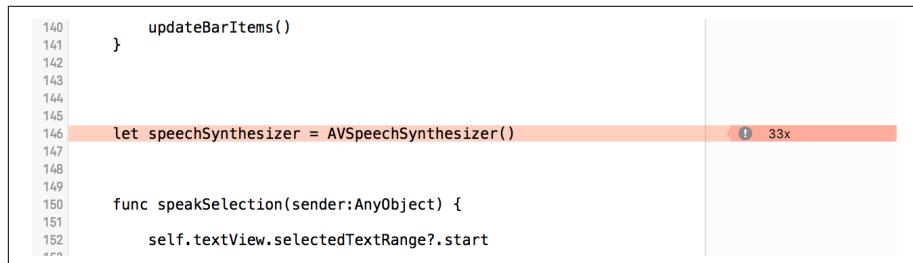


Figure 17-9. The offending line of code

What's happening here is that `AVSpeechSynthesizer` does quite a bit of loading in order to prepare itself for use. It needs to access several hundred megabytes of speech samples and prepare the language model used for converting text to spoken audio.

When the `DocumentViewController` is created, it immediately creates the `AVSpeechSynthesizer`. However, it doesn't technically need to do it right away. We could instead create the `AVSpeechSynthesizer` the moment the user asks for text to be spoken.

The best way to do this is to use a *lazy* stored property for the `AVSpeechSynthesizer`. A lazy property works just like any other property, except it doesn't actually initialize its value until the very first time it's accessed. If we change the `speechSynthesizer` property to be a lazy property, we'll reduce the amount of time needed to load the `DocumentViewController`.

5. Open `DocumentViewController.swift` and replace the following line of code:

```
let speechSynthesizer = AVSpeechSynthesizer()
```

with the following code:

```
lazy var speechSynthesizer = AVSpeechSynthesizer()
```

You're done. Repeat the steps you took earlier: relaunch the app, transfer it to Instruments, and open a document. The time taken to load a document should be reduced!

This process of measuring the work done by the app, determining the point that needs changing, and optimizing it can be applied many times, and in different ways. In this section, we've only looked at reducing the time spent on the CPU; however, you can use the same principles to reduce the amount of memory consumed, data written to and read from disk, and data transferred over the network.

Testing

While simple apps are easy to test, complex apps get very difficult to properly test. It's simple enough to add some code and then check that it works; but the more code you add, the more you increase the chance that a change in one part of the code will break something elsewhere. In order to make sure that all of the app works, you need to test all of the app. However, this has many problems:

- It's tedious and boring, which means you'll be less likely to do it thoroughly.
- Because it's repetitious, you'll end up testing a feature in the same way every time, and you may not be paying close attention.
- Some problems appear only if you use the app in a certain way. The more specific the use case, the less you'll test it.

To address these problems, modern software development heavily relies on automated testing. Automated testing solves these problems immediately, by running the same tests in the same way every time, and by checking every step of the way; additionally, automated testing frees up your mental workload a lot.

There are two types of automated tests in Xcode: *unit tests* and *user interface tests*.

Unit Testing

Unit tests are small, isolated, independent tests that run to verify the behavior of a specific part of your code. Unit tests are perfect for ensuring that the output of a method you've written is what you expect. For example, the code that we wrote all the way back in “[JSON Attachments](#)” on page 155 to load a location from JSON is very straightforward to test: given some valid JSON containing values for `lat` and `lon`, we expect to be able to create a `CLLocationCoordinate`; additionally, and just as importantly, if we give it invalid JSON or JSON that *doesn't* contain those values, we should expect to *fail* to get a coordinate.

Unit tests are placed inside a unit test *bundle*. You can choose to either include unit tests when you create the project, or you can add one to an existing project by opening the File menu and choosing New→Target, then opening the Tests section and choosing Unit Tests (see [Figure 17-10](#)).

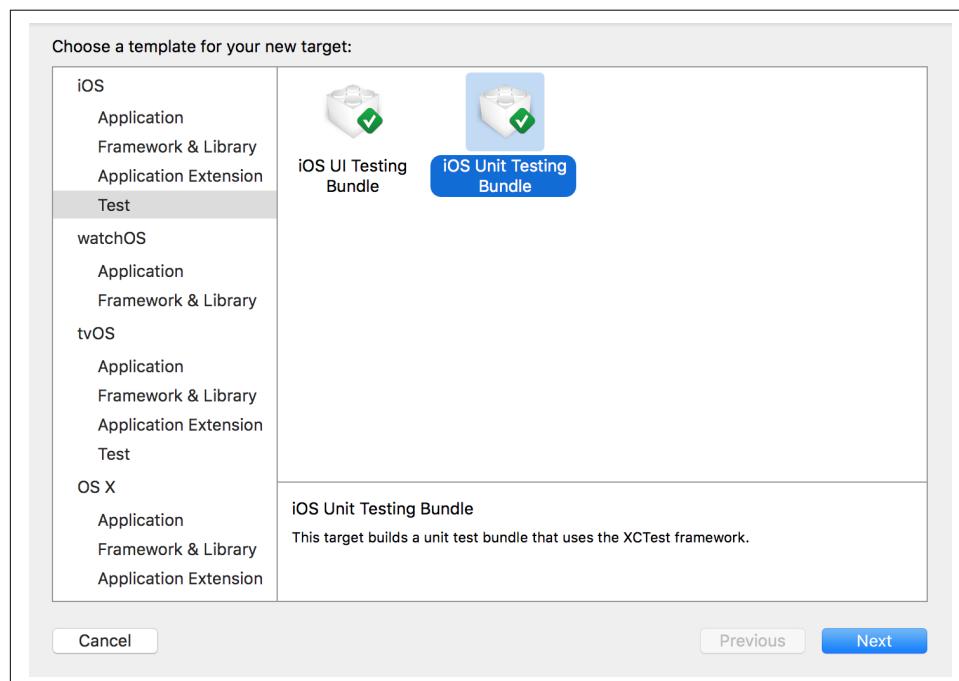


Figure 17-10. Adding a Unit Test bundle to a project

Test bundles contain one or more *test cases*; each test case is actually a subclass of `XCTestCase`, which itself contains the individual unit tests. A test case looks like this:

```
func testDocumentTypeDetection() {  
  
    // Create an NSFileWrapper using some empty data  
    let data = NSData()  
    let document = NSFileWrapper(regularFileWithContents: data)  
  
    // Give it a name  
    document.preferredFilename = "Hello.jpg"  
  
    // It should now think that it's an image  
    XCTAssertTrue(document.conformsToType(kUTTypeImage))  
  
}
```

The tests inside `XCTestCase` class are its methods. When Xcode runs the tests, which we'll show in a moment, it first locates all subclasses of `XCTestCase`, and then finds all methods of each subclass that begin with the word `test`. Each test is then run: first, the test case's `setUp` method is run, then the test itself, followed by the test case's `tearDown` method.

You'll notice the use of the `XCTAssertTrue` functions. This method is one of many `XCTAssert` functions, all of which test a certain condition; if it fails, the entire test fails, and Xcode moves on to the next test. You can find the entire list of `XCTAssert` functions in the [Xcode testing documentation](#).

To run the unit test for your current target, press ⌘U, or click the icon at the left of the top line of a specific test, as shown in [Figure 17-11](#).

27

```
func testDocumentTypeDetection() {
```

Figure 17-11. Running a specific test

Xcode will launch your app, perform the test(s), and report back on which tests, if any, failed.

UI Testing

To get a complete picture of how your app works, unit tests on their own aren't enough. Testing a single isolated chunk of your code, while extremely useful, isn't enough to give you confidence that the app itself, with all of its interacting components, is being tested. For example, it's simply not feasible to write a concise unit test for "create a document, edit it, and save it."

Instead, you can use UI tests to verify that the app is behaving the way you want it to as it's used. A UI test is a recording of how the user interacts with the user interface;

however, these recordings are done in a very clever way. While a UI test is being recorded, Xcode notes every interaction that you perform, and adds a line of code that reproduces that step.

The result is code that looks like this (we've added comments to describe what's going on):

```
func testCreatingSavingAndClosingDocument() {  
  
    // Get the app  
    let app = XCUIApplication()  
  
    // Choose File->New  
    let menuBarsQuery = XCUIApplication().menuBars  
    menuBarsQuery.menuBarItems["File"].click()  
    menuBarsQuery.menuItems["New"].click()  
  
    // Get the new 'Untitled' window  
    let untitledWindow = app.windows["Untitled"]  
  
    // Get the main text view  
    let textView = untitledWindow.childrenMatchingType(.ScrollView)  
        .elementBoundByIndex(0).childrenMatchingType(.TextView).element  
  
    // Type some text  
    textView.typeText("This is a useful document that I'm testing.")  
  
    // Save it by pressing Command-S  
    textView.typeKey("s", modifierFlags:.Command)  
  
    // The save sheet has appeared; type "Test" in it and press Return  
    untitledWindow.sheets["save"].childrenMatchingType(.TextField)  
        .elementBoundByIndex(0).typeText("Test\r")  
  
    // Close the document  
    app.windows["Test"].typeKey("w", modifierFlags:.Command)  
}
```

UI tests are run the same way as your unit tests. When they're run, the system will take control over your computer and perform the exact steps as laid down in the test. This ensures that your app is tested in the exact same way, every time.



You can also record your interactions with an app directly into a UI test. This is extremely useful, since it means that you don't have to learn the API involved—you can just use the app as you would normally, and Xcode will note what you did. For more information, see [Writing Tests](#) in the Xcode documentation.

Build Bots

A build bot is a program that runs on a server that watches for changes in your source code, and automatically builds, tests and packages your software. Build bots are great for reducing the load on your main development computer, and for ensuring that your tests are always run.

To create a build bot, you'll first need to have a Mac running the Apple-provided OS X Server application, which you can purchase from the App Store. You can find more information on how to set up build bots in the [Xcode Server and Continuous Integration Guide](#).

Using Objective-C and Swift in the Same Project

If you're making a new project from scratch, you'll likely have the opportunity to write all of your code in Swift. However, if you have an existing project written in Objective-C, and want to write code in Swift, you need a way to bridge the two. The same thing applies in reverse, for when you have a project written in Swift and need to add some Objective-C code.

Using Swift Objects in Objective-C

To make objects written in Swift available in Objective-C, you need to add the `@objc` tag in front of them. For example, if you have a class written in Swift called `Cat`, you write the class as normal and prepend `@objc` to its name:

```
@objc class Cat : NSObject {
    var name : String = ""

    func speak() -> String {
        return "Meow"
    }
}
```



Classes that are defined in Swift are available to Objective-C only if they're a subclass of `NSObject` (or any of `NSObject`'s subclasses).

In your Objective-C code, you import an Xcode-generated header file that makes all of your `@objc`-tagged Swift code available to Objective-C:

```
#import "MyAppName-Swift.h"
```

Once it's imported, you can use the class as if it had originally been written in Objective-C:

```
Cat* myCat = [[Cat alloc] init];
myCat.name = "Fluffy";
[myCat speak];
```

Using Objective-C Objects in Swift

To use classes and other code written in Objective-C in your Swift code, you fill out a *bridging header*. When you add an Objective-C file to a project containing Swift files, or vice versa, Xcode will offer to create and add a bridging header to your project.

Inside this header, you add `#import` statements for all of the Objective-C files you want to export to Swift. Then, inside your Swift code, you can use the Objective-C classes as if they had been originally written in Swift.



This method is actually how your code accesses the majority of the Cocoa and Cocoa Touch APIs, which are mostly written in Objective-C.

For example, consider a class written in Objective-C, like so:

```
@interface Elevator

- (void) moveUp;
- (void) moveDown;

@property NSString* modelName;

@end
```

All you need to do is `import` the class's header file into the bridging header that Xcode generates for you:

```
#import "Elevator.h"
```

Once that's done, you can use the class in Swift as if it were originally written in Swift:

```
let theElevator = Elevator()

theElevator.moveUp()
theElevator.moveDown()
```

```
theElevator.modelName = "The Great Glass Elevator"
```



Interoperation between Swift and Objective-C is a large and complex topic, and there's much more that you should know if you plan on making the two work together. Apple has written an entire book on the topic, *Using Swift with Cocoa and Objective-C*, which is available for free both online and on the iBooks Store.

The App Store

Once you've written your app, it's time to get it out to the world. To do this, you need to submit it to the App Store.

The App Store is the only way that Apple permits third-party iOS apps to be distributed to the public. To submit to the App Store, you need the following things:

- An app, ready to go out to the public
- A distribution certificate, signed by Apple
- The text and images for the app's page on the App Store

iOS devices run only signed code. This means that, in order to run your app on an actual device, and to submit to the App Store, you need to get a certificate from Apple. Getting a certificate is free if you just want to make apps that run on your own devices; if you want to submit to the App Store, you need to join the [Apple Developer Program](#), which is \$99 USD per year.



Because the App Store submission process mostly takes place on websites, it's difficult to write a book that stays up to date with it. We therefore *strongly* encourage you to read Apple's [App Distribution Guide](#), which discusses both the technical requirements as well as the information you need to provide for the App Store.

When you submit an application to the App Store, it is first checked by automated systems and then by a human. The automated systems perform checks that are easily computer-run, such as making sure that the app has all of the necessary icons for the platform that it runs on. Once the automated checks have passed, the app goes into a queue while it waits for a human being to look at it. This is what Apple refers to as *app review*. App review isn't a scary process, and they're not there to judge you on the quality of your app; instead, the review checks to see if your app violates any of the [App Store Review Guidelines](#). These reviews are generally common sense and exist to help Apple maintain the overall quality of the App Store.

After Apple has approved your application, you'll receive an automated email indicating whether the app has passed review or has been rejected. If your app is rejected, don't worry! Almost all app rejections are due to a simple thing that's easily changed; the most common one that we've heard has been forgetting to test an app with flight mode turned on, which cuts off access to all Internet services, including iCloud. Simply fix the issue and resubmit your app.

If your app has been approved, you just need to press the button in iTunes Connect to release it. A few hours later, your app will be in the App Store!

App Thinning

While it's important to design your app to work on as many devices as possible, the fact remains that when an app is downloaded onto a specific type of device, it will never make use of the resources that are necessary for it to work on *other* devices. For example, an app that runs on both the iPad and the iPhone needs an icon for both, and you need to include it in your app when you deliver it to the App Store. However, when you download it onto your iPhone, there's no point in downloading the iPad version of the icon.

To deal with this issue, Xcode has support for *app thinning*. App thinning involves marking certain files with information about what kinds of devices will use the different resources included in the app. For example, if you select an image set in an asset catalog, you can specify which types of devices the image will appear in (such as iPhone only, iPad only, and so on); however, you can also be extremely specific with the conditions in which the asset will be included (see [Figure 17-12](#)). These include specifying the minimum amount of memory that must be available for the image to be downloaded, or the minimum graphics hardware capability.

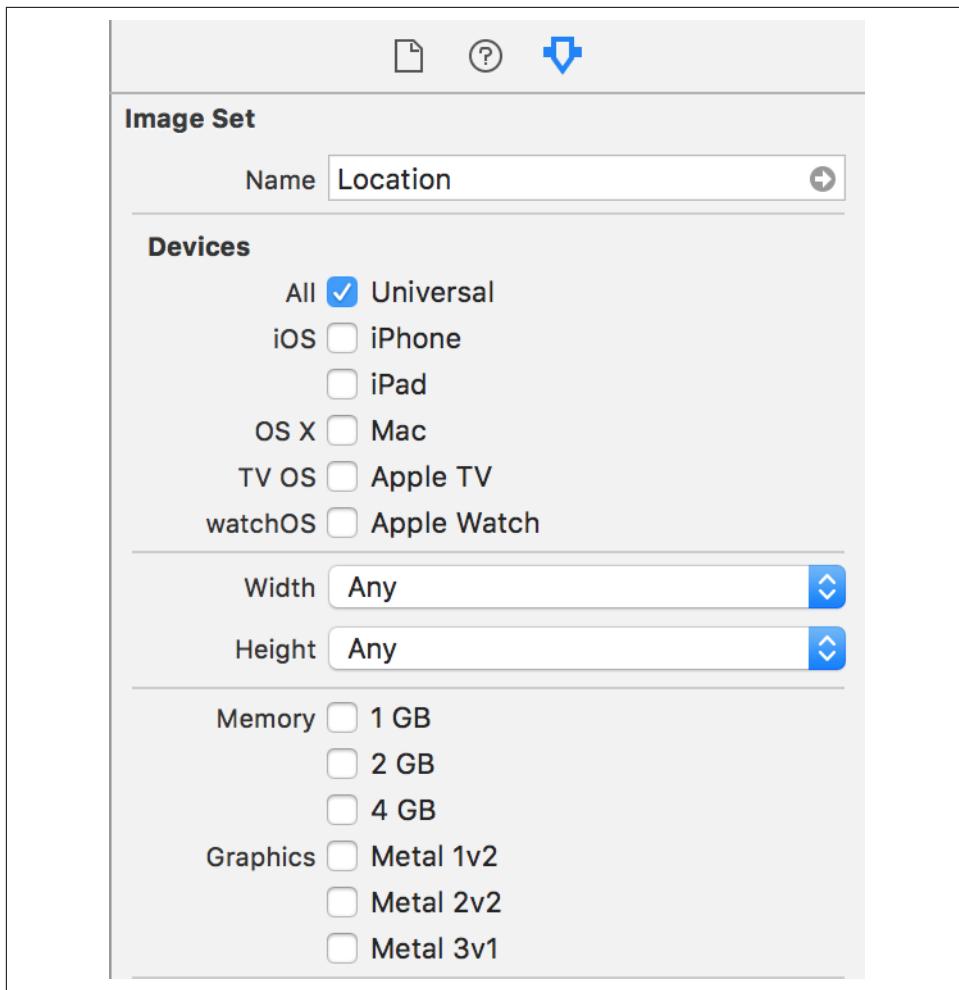


Figure 17-12. App thinning options for an image set in an asset catalog

Testing iOS Apps with TestFlight

TestFlight is a service operated by Apple that allows you to send copies of your app to people for testing. TestFlight allows you to submit testing builds to up to 25 people who are members of your Developer Program account. You can also send the app to up to 1,000 additional people for testing, once the app is given a preliminary review by Apple.

To use TestFlight, you configure the application in iTunes Connect by providing information like the app's name, icon, and description. You also create a list of users who should receive the application. You then upload a build of the app through Xcode, and Apple emails them a link to download and test it.



We're not covering TestFlight in detail in this book, as the user interface and steps for distributing via TestFlight change frequently.

For more information on how to use TestFlight, see the [iTunes Connect documentation](#).

Conclusion

If you've read this far, congratulations. You've built three complete, complex apps from start to finish for a variety of platforms, and you're ready to build even bigger.

We hope that you've enjoyed your journey through this book. If you've made something, we'd love to hear about it! Send us an email at learningswift@secretlab.com.au.

Index

Symbols

! character, unwrapping an optional variable, 42
!= (inequality) operator, 38
& (ampersand), prefacing variables passed as input parameters, 53, 228
(...) closed range operator, 34
* (multiplication) operator, 38
+ (plus sign), addition operator, 38
 overloading, 70
- (minus sign), subtraction operator, 38
-> (arrow) operator, 51
. operator, accessing methods and properties, 38, 62
. < (range) operator, 33
/ (division) operator, 38
/* */, delimiting multiline comments, 32
//, in single-line comments, 32
/// (triple slash) for comments, 111
0 (zero), 41
3D Touch, 403
 using in apps, information on, 405
; (semicolon), ending lines of code and between statements, 38
== (equality) operator, 38
 comparing strings, 40
==== (identity) operator, 41
? (question mark), after init keyword, 62
?? (nil coalescing) operator, 150
[] (square brackets)
 creating arrays with, 45
 subscripting classes and objects, 72
 subscripting dictionary contents, 47
\(), indicating string interpolation, 60
_ (underscore) in Swift, 52

{ } (curly braces)
 enclosing enumeration cases, 48
 enclosing function body, 51
 enclosing if statements in Swift, 33
 in computed property declarations, 64
 using to add property observers, 64
... (half-range) operator, 34
... indicating variadic parameters, 52

A

access control, 68
accessibility, 423-428
acknowledgementHandler closure, 328
action extensions, 321
Action mode, setting button to, 311
action sheets, 272
 adding Contact item to, 380
 presented in a popover, 282
actions, 23
 associated with notifications, 383
 responding to, 393
createNote, 467
creating, 23
deleteTapped, for Delete button, 232
dismissModalView, 300
for conflicting file versions, 274
home screen quick actions, 404
recordTapped, playTapped, and stopTapped, 364
shareImage action, 311
showFilteredImage, 411
activities
 handoffs, 312-317
 between Watch and iPhone, 468-471

searchability, 317-319
sharing with UIActivityController, 309-312
updateUserActivity method, 473
addAttachment method, 354
 adding audio type attachments, 358
 for contact attachment, 380
addAttachmentAndClose method, 353
addAttachmentAtURL method, 261
AddAttachmentDelegate protocol, 144, 148
addContact method, 381
addLocation method, 356
addPhoto method, 284
 support for recording videos, 373
Airplay (Picture mode), 378
AlamoFire library, 76
alertCategory property, 385
alertSnoozeAction property, 385
alpha property, collection view cells, 230
Analyze action, 14
animating a UIView property, 233
annotation views, 350
 reusing, 351
annotations, 350
AnyObject, 41
app delegate, 85
App Distribution Guide, 7
app extensions, 321-341
 searching with Spotlight indexing on iOS, 322-332
 Today widgets on iOS, 332-340
 types of, 321
app ID, 95
app review, 491
app sandbox, 193
 Documents folder, 217
App Store, 5, 491-494
 App Distribution Guide, 491
 App Store category, 10
 Apple Developer Program and, 5
 bundle IDs for apps, 10
 getting XCode from, 7
 Review Guidelines, 491
 testing iOS apps with TestFlight, 493
app thinning, 492
append function, 45
AppKit framework, 106
Apple Developer Program, 5-8
Apple development tools, 5
Apple ID, 6
Apple platforms, OS X, iOS, and watchOS, 3
Apple TV, 433
Apple Watch, 433
 (see also watchOS)
 communication with iPhone, 442-454
 inspecting, 434
 user interfaces for, 454-459
 watchOS framework for apps, x
application categories in Xcode, 8
application interface, in nibs and storyboard files, 86
application name, 9
applicationDidEnterBackground method, 83
apps
 polishing, 397
 (see also finishing touches for iOS apps)
 running your app on the device, 289
 watchOS and iOS, 433
arithmetic operators, 38
array literals, 46
Array type, 73
arrays, 45
 appending objects to, 45
 counting items in, 46
 inserting objects in, 45
 iterating over, with for-in loops, 33
 removing items from, 46
 reversing contents of, 46
 sorting using a closure, 55
arrow symbol (->), 51
as! operator, 44, 151
as? operator, 43
asset catalogs, 102
 adding iOS app icon to, 184
 adding watchOS app icons to, 440
 app thinning options for image set in, 492
 iOS Notes app, dragging Delete icon into, 231
Assets.xcassets file, 103
associated values (enumerations), 48
 String type, 110
attachedFiles property, 260
AttachmentCellDelegate protocol, 301, 306
attachments, 127-165
 adding more capabilities in iOS, 343-395
 audio attachments, 358-371
 contact attachments, 379-382
 location attachments, 343-358
 notifications, 383-395

video attachments, 371-379
adding via drag-and-drop, 158-165
attachments list for iOS Notes, 177
designing document-filetype-extension UI for, 131-151
adding attachments, 137-145
displaying data in collection view, 149-151
getting icon for collection view cells, 136
storing and managing attachments, 145-149
for iOS Notes app, 281-307
adding image attachments, 283-289
creating and adding, 281-283
deleting attachments, 300-307
viewing attachments, 289-300
updating UI for, 127-131
watchOS Notes app and, 437
working with, in iOS app, 255-270
determining types of attachments, 261-264
displaying attachment cells, 264-270
listing attachments, 259-261
setting up attachments interface, 255-259
attachmentsDirectoryWrapper property, 259
AttachmentViewer protocol, 290-300, 346, 361
attributed strings, 107
Attributed Strings section, Bindings Inspector, 125
text view displaying, 245
attributes, 107
Attributes Inspector, 22
disabling scrolling on text view, 258
Smart Links, 124
stack view's Alignment and Distribution, 258
audio attachments (iOS), 358-371
adding audio player and audio recorder, 361
adding record, play, and stop buttons, 362
beginPlaying and stopPlaying methods, 367
beginRecording and stopRecording methods, 364
DocumentViewController support for, 370
prepareAudioPlayer method, 367
viewDidLoad and viewWillAppear methods, 368
audio unit extensions, 321
Audio, AirPlay, and Picture (Picture mode), 378
audioPlayerDidFinishPlaying method, 368
automated testing, 486
availableFiles computed property, 326
AVAudioPlayer class, 358
AVAudioPlayerDelegate protocol, 83, 361
audioPlayerDidFinishPlaying method, 368
AVAudioRecorder class, 358
AVAudioSessionCategoryPlayback, 379
AVFoundation framework, 286, 358, 397
AVKit framework, 375
AVPlayerViewController, 374
AVSession, requestRecordPermission method, 367
AVSpeechSynthesizer, 397
lazy initialization of, 484
awakeWithContext method, 459, 469
error handling, adding, 464
implementing in NoteInterfaceController, 463

B

background queue, 188
background-running extensions, Low Power mode and, 332
beginEditMode method, 303
beginPlaying and stopPlaying methods, 367
beginRecording and stopRecording methods, 364
bindings
advantages of, 125
binding text field in document app on OS X, 124
Bindings Inspector
Attributed Strings section, 125
opening, 124
bitmap formats (images), 163
Bool type, 39
switch statements using, 36
Bordered Scroll View, 123
break keyword, switches in Swift and, 36
breakpoint navigator (Xcode), 18
breakpoints, 477
bridging header, 490
build bots, 489
bundle IDs, 10, 95
bundles, 76
buttons
adding to application interface, 21
adding to UINavigationItem, 226

attributes, inspecting, 22
Delete button, adding to iOS Notes app, 231
Edit button, adding to iOS Notes app, 233
image filter buttons, adding, 410
notification button, adding to navigation bar, 386
record, play, and stop on audio player/recorder
connecting to outlets and actions, 363
in stack view, 362
outlet properties, 361

C

C language, 137
UTType methods, 263
camera
adding Camera entry to attachment popup in iOS, 287
images and videos captured by, 181
cancelAndClose closure, 274
case keyword, using in enumerations, 48
cases (switch statements), 34-37
catch clause (do-catch), 79
cellForItemAtIndex method, 222, 266
Delete button, opacity property, 235
editMode property of AttachmentCell, 301
setting AttachmentCell delegate to self, 307
cellForRowAtIndex method, 338
cells (in collection views), 202
displaying attachment cells in iOS app, 264-270
identifier, 202
making unavailable documents transparent, 229
reusing, 223
CFBundleTypOSTypes, 314
CGImage object, 413
Character objects, 40
.characters property, 30
child view controllers, 86
CIFilter object, 412
CIImage object, 413
CIPhotoEffectChrome filter, 413
class properties, 215
classes, 59
access control, 68
creating an instance of, 60
extending, 67
generic, 71
inheritance, 62
model, view and controller classes, 82
properties, 62
properties and methods, 59
protocols, 66
singleton, 444
structures versus, 73
subscripts, 72
clearNotificationAndClose method, 392
Clip View, 123
CLLocationCoordinates, 486
closeAttachmentWithoutSaving method, 354
closed-range operator (...), 34
closeWithCompletionHandler method, 452
closures, 55
as parameter in function call, 56
cancelAndClose, for alert controller, 274
deletion closure, for user taps on Delete button, 232
in keyword, 56
parameters, 56
storing in variables, 56
with anonymous parameters and no return keyword, 56
cloud-storage services, 6
CloudKit, 167
CLRegion object, 394
CNContact, 382
CNContactPickerDelegate protocol, 381
CNContactPickerController, 379
CNContactVCardserialization, 379, 382
CNContactViewController, 379
dismissing, 382
Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, x, 4, 74
accessing APIs written in Objective-C, 490
adding a Cocoa Touch class, 208
Cocoa Bindings Programming Topics, 125
design patterns, 81-84
designing a simple application interface, 21
NSData objects in Cocoa, 75
reusing UI elements, 223
selecting Cocoa app in Xcode, 93
selecting Cocoa Class file type, 139
code distribution, 491-494
submitting code to App Store, 491
testing iOS apps with TestFlight, 493
code quality, 477-491
debugging, 477-480
Instruments tool, 480-485

testing, 485-489
using Objective-C and Swift in a project, 489-491
code signing, 7
collection view controllers, 200
collection views, 202-204
 adding to display attachments, 128
 choosing layout and resolving constraints, 130
 creating view for each cell, 128
 displaying attachment cells in iOS app, 264-270
 displaying data in, 149-151
 FileCell, 426
 getting cell users interacted with, 282
 getting icon for cells, 136
 in DocumentListViewController, 200
 in stack view for document view controller interface, 258
 sections and rows, 248
 using UICollectionView, 197
 critical methods providing data to, 222
com.apple.package type, 100
comments, 32, 111
compression factor, 286
computed properties, 63
 accessing, 64
 adding in extensions, 68
 attachmentsDirectoryWrapper, 145
 defining, 64
 iCloudAvailable, 216
conflict resolution in files, 270-276
 Undo actions and, 410
conformsToType method, 263
constants, 29, 37
 assigning value to, 37
constraints, 122
 adding to scroll view, 256
 adding to stack view, 257
 controlling view size and position on iOS, 204
 imposed by touchscreen and iOS, 174
 physical and technical for Apple Watch apps, 434
contact attachments (iOS), 379-382
Contacts framework, 380
ContactsUI framework, 380
content blocker extensions, 321
contentsForType method, 208, 214
adding Quick Look files to document package, 277
context objects, 463-464
contextForSegueWithIdentifier method, 463
continueUserActivity method, 315, 331
control flow, 33-37
 if statements, 33
 loops, 33
 switches, 34
controllers, 81
 controller classes, 82
 window and view controllers, 85
controls, binding to data, 125
convenience initializers, 61
coordinateWritingItemAtURL method, 237
Core Data framework, 183
 selecting in Xcode, 96
Core Image framework, 410
 Filter Reference, 412
Core Location framework, 344
Core Spotlight framework, 317
count function, 40
count property
 arrays, 46
 sets, 50
CPU Usage tool, 482
 Detail Area Call Tree contents, 483
createDocument function, 250
createIncrementor function, 54
createNote method, 467, 473
CSSearchableItem object, 327
CSSearchableItemAttributeSet, 319
custom keyboard extensions, 321

D

data
 converting objects to and from, 76
 loading from files and URLs, 75
 represented in Cocoa as NSData objects, 75
 serialization and deserialization, 76
data source (collection view), 202
dataOfType method, 117
dates and time
 date picker in NotificationAttachmentView-Controller, 390
 time-based notifications, 394
debug navigator (Xcode), 18
debug view, controls, 20, 479
debuggers, 477

commands for Xcode built-in debugger, 479
debugging, 477-480
default case, 36
default values for function parameters, 52
defer keyword, 30, 57
 with UIGraphicsEndImageContext, 277
deinit method, 61
deinitializers, 61
delegation, 83
 AddAttachmentDelegate protocol, 148
 AttachmentCellDelegate protocol, 301, 306
 for event handling, 85
 MKMapViewDelegate, 346
 notifications for iOS Notes app, 386, 394
 UICollectionViewDelegate, 265, 282
 UITextViewDelegate protocol, conforming to, 252
 UIViewControllerPreviewingDelegate, 405
 WCSessionDelegate protocol, 444, 448
Delete button, adding to AttachmentCell, 304
deleteAttachment method, 306
deleteDocumentAtURL method, 236
design patterns in Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, 81-84
 delegation, 83
 model-view-controller, 81
designated initializers, 61
Developer Program, 5-8
 downloading Xcode, 7
 registering for, 6
developing a simple Swift application, 20-24
 connecting the code and interface, 22
 designing the interface, 21
development tools, 5
devices
 changing device for iOS simulator, 26
 iOS, figuring out location of, 344
 running your code on, 289
Devices drop-down list (Xcode), 10
dictionaries, 47
Dictionary type, 73
didFailToLocateUserWithError method, 349
didFinishLaunchingWithOptions method, 453
didFinishPickingMediaWithInfo method, 373
didReceiveMessage method, 448
didRegisterUserNotificationSettings method, 386
didSelectItemAtIndexPath method, 248
adding code to detect attachment type and trigger segue, 294
do nothing when editing, code for, 304
LocationAttachmentViewController, 357
updating for AVPlayerViewController, 375
 audio session category, 378
updating for contact attachment, 382
didSet block (property observers), 64
didUpdateUserLocation method, 349
distributing your code (see code distribution)
do-catch block, 30
 wrapping functions, initializers, and methods in, 79
Document class, 96, 101, 105
 adding collection view, 130
 adding text property, NSAttributedString, 108
connecting UI to, 124
creating for iOS Notes app, 208-214
 addAttachmentAtURL property, 261
 addAttachmentWithData method, 284
 adding user location as attachment, 353
 alertCategory and alertSnoozeAction properties, 385
 attachmentsDirectoryWrapper property, 259
 localNotification property, adding, 384
 NSFileWrapper extension, 262
 NSFileWrapper returning Contact thumbnail, 379
 Quick Look thumbnail generation, 276
 thumbnail images for audio attachment, 369
 thumbnail images for video attachment, 372
 URLforAttachment function, 375
err function, implementing, 111
file wrappers, 109
fileWrapperOfType method, implementing, 113
NSFileWrapper property, representing file on disk, 113
readFromFileWrapper method, implementing, 116
 with method stubs, 106
document providers, 321
document-based applications
 defining a document type, 98-102, 189-191
 document file extension, setting, 96

handoffs, 312-317
selecting in Xcode, 96
document-filetype-extension UI, 131-151
adding attachments, 137-145
displaying data in collection view, 149-151
getting icon for collection view cells, 136
storing and managing attachments, 145-149
documentFileWrapper, 116
DocumentListViewController (iOS Notes), 196-208
collection views, 202-204
connecting outlets to views, 207
createDocument function, implementing, 224
didSelectItemAtIndexPath method, 248
FileCollectionViewCall, adding Delete button, 232
iCloudAvailable property, adding, 215
itemIsOpenable method, implementing, 227
navigation controller, 198
renameDocumentAtURL function, 239
setEditing method, implementing, 235
updateBarItems method, 386
using constraints to control size and position, 204
using UICollectionView, 197
view controllers and storyboards, 198
documents
enabling accessibility, 426
iCloud document storage, 167
testing creating, saving, and closing of, 488
working with on iOS, 243-254
editing and saving documents, 252-253
view to display notes, 243-251
working with on OS X, 105-126
basic UI, 117-126
NSDocument class, 105
storing data in the document, 106
storing text, 107-117
working with, in iCloud on iOS, 193-242
creating document list view controller, 196-208
creating documents, 224-227
deleting documents, 231-238
downloading from iCloud, 227-231
listing documents, 214-224
renaming documents, 238-242
documentStateChanged method, 409
DocumentViewController (iOS Notes), 243-251
addAttachment method, 281
addAudio method, 361
adding AttachmentCell class, 264
adding AttachmentViewer protocol, 290
addLocation method, 356
addPhoto method, 284
support for videos, 373
AttachmentCellDelegate protocol, 301, 306
connecting to LocationAttachmentView-Controller, 354
documentStateChanged function, 272
extending to conform to CNContactPicker-Delegate, 381
extension conforming to AttachmentCell-Delegate, 306
extension conforming to UICollectionView-DataSource and UICollectionViewDele-gate, 265
isEditingAttachments property, 301
link detection, turning on for text view, 401
method presenting UIImagePickerController, 284
NSLocalizedString function, 415
prepareForSegue method, 248, 295
showNotification method, 389
speech synthesis support, 397
support for AudioAttachmentViewControl-ler, 370
support for AVPlayerViewController, 375
support for UIImagePickerController, 285
textView, document, and documentURL properties, 245
UITextViewDelegate, adding, 252
Undo support, 408
viewDidLoad method
updating for speech synthesis, 398
updating self.editing line, 406
viewWillAppear method, 246, 269, 271
calling updateBarItems, 387
domain names, 10
Double type, 39
double-length localization (Xcode), 416
downloading status for files, 228
drag-and-drop, adding attachments via, 158-165
Quick Look, 161-165
drawing methods, iOS, 276
dynamic actions, 404
dynamic keyword, 147

E

early returns, 112
Edit button, adding to iOS Notes app, 233
Edit state for documents on opening, 405
editing capabilities (images), 410
editing menu (iOS), 397
 adding an item to, 397
 with Speak item added, 398
editing property, 235
editor (Xcode), 12
 main editor and assistant editor, 13
editor selector on Xcode toolbar, 16
empty sets, 49
empty strings, 40
endEditMode method, 303
enum keyword, 48
enumerate function, 413
enumerations, 47
 associated values, 48
 conforming to ErrorType protocol, 77
error code enum for documents, 110
Note document file names and attachments,
 109
equality operator (==), 38
 comparing strings, 40
error codes, 212
 for documents on OS X, 110
error handling, 30, 77
 enumeration throwing an error, 77
 for documents on OS X
 err function in Document class, 111
 ErrorCode enum, 110
 functions throwing an error, 78
 in Swift 2.0, 77
location system failure to locate user, 349
try! statement, 79
try? statement, 79
watchOS Notes, awakeWithContext
 method, 464
wrapping functions, initializers, and meth-
ods in do-catch block, 79
ErrorType protocol, 77
event handling, use of delegation pattern, 85
event-driven programming, 85
events, 85
exporting a UTI, 99
extension keyword, 67
extensions, 67, 321
 (see also app extensions)

using to make a type conform to a protocol,
 68

F

failable initializers, 62
fallthrough keyword, 36
file extensions, 99
 displaying for attachments, 136
 getting for attachment files in iOS app, 262
File Inspector
 Localization section, 420
 Notes-SpotlightIndexer checkbox, 325
file types, 99
 determining for attachments in iOS app,
 261-264
file wrappers, 109
 (see also NSFfileWrapper class)
 creating for QuickLook folder, thumbnail,
 and preview files, 279
 reading document from, 116
File.pdf image, 261
files, 106
 (see also documents)
 documents as file or package, 108
 loading data from, 75
 resolving conflicts in, 270-276
 saving for documents on OS X, 113
fileWrapperOfType method, 113
fileWrappers property (NSFileWrapper), 260
filters, applying to images, 410-413
finishing touches for iOS app
finishing touches for iOS apps, 397-429
 accessibility, 423-428
 images with filters, 410-413
internationalization and localization,
 414-423
opening links in SFSafariViewController,
 399-405
settings, 405-406
speaking text, 397-398
splitscreen multitasking, 428
Undo support, 407-410
fire date, 383
flat files
 document-based app storing data in, 117
 NSDocument and, 108
Flow layout, 130
for-in loops, 33
 iterating over sets, 50

looping over characters in a string, 40
Foundation library, 74
 NSAttributedString class, 107
Full Screen mode (windows), 119
functions, 50
 capturing a value and using it multiple types, 54
 closure as last parameter in call, 56
 guard statements and, 57
 overriding, 63
 passing parameters by reference, 53
 passing parameters to, 51
 receiving other functions as parameters, 53
 return values, 51
 returning multiple values or tuples, 51
 returning other functions, 54
 running at a later time, using defer, 57
 superclass functions, accessing, 63
 throwing errors, 78
 using as variables, 53
 variable number of parameters, 52

G

generators, functions acting as, 55
generics, 71
 creating generic types, 71
 using to create specific, nongeneric types, 72
gesture recognizers, 238
 long-press gesture recognizer, 300, 305, 307
 types of, 300
getters and setters for computed properties, 64
Git, 16, 270
 Xcode support for, 97
GlanceController class, 472
glances, 439, 471-474
 user interface, implementing, 473
Google Maps SDK for iOS, 6
GPS in iOS devices, 343
groups in Xcode, 209
guard keyword, 30, 57
 benefits of, 112
 use with readFromFileWrapper method, 117

H

half-range operator (...), 34
handleCreateNotes method, 452
handleListAllNotes method, 449
handleLoadNote method, 451
handleUserActivity method, 473

handoffs, 312-317
 between Apple Watch and iPhone, 468-471
hardware, changing for iOS simulator, 26
hasPrefix method, 41
hasSuffix method, 41
hierarchy of types (UTIs), 99
home button, triple clicks, 423
home screen quick actions, 404
horizontal size class, 312

I

iCloud, 6
 access by Spotlight indexing extension, 324
 access by Today screen extension, 335
 browsing iCloud Drive contents on iOS, 175
 enabling iOS Notes app for, 185-189
 on iOS, working with files, 193-242
 app sandbox, 193
 creating document list view controller, 196-208
 creating documents, 224-227
 deleting documents, 231-238
 downloading from iCloud, 227-231
 iCloud availability, 195
 listing files, 214-224
 renaming documents, 238-242
 OS X document app, integration with, 166-170
 basics of iCloud, 167
iCloudAvailable property, 215
icons
 adding Notes OS X app icon to asset catalog, 102
 for iOS apps, 184
 getting icon for collection view cells, 136
 watchOS app, adding to asset catalog, 440
identifier (collection view cells), 202
identity operator (==), 41
if statements, 33
 checking whether optional variable has a value, 42
 if-pyramids, 112
if-let statements, 43
image sets for app icon, 103
image view, 134
 in DocumentListViewController, 206
 with icon and thumbnail image, 151
ImageAttachmentViewController, 290, 411
 filterButtons property, 411

prepareFilterPreviews method, 411
images
 adding image attachments in iOS, 283-289
 applying filters to, 410-413
 attachment files in iOS, identifying with
 UTIs, 264
 for watchOS app icons, 441
 for watchOS glances, 472
 image set in asset catalog, app thinning
 options for, 492
 QuickLook thumbnail for iOS app files,
 276-279
 thumbnail image for attachment icon, 136
immutable arrays, 46
import keyword, 74
in keyword, 56
incrementor function, 55
IndexRequestHandler class, 325-330
indices
 array, 45
 removing items from an array, 46
 search index, 317-319
 using to get values out of tuples, 44
inequality operator (!=), 38
Info tab (Xcode editor), 98
inheritance, 62
init keyword, ? after, 62
init method, 61
initial view controller, 199
initializers, 61
 memberwise, 73
 returning nil, 61
 structures, 73
 throwing an error, 79
inout keyword, 53
insert function, 45
inspector (Xcode), 20
 Simulated Metrics section, 255
instances (class), 60
Instruments, 480-485
 CPU Usage tool, 482
 detail area content, 483
 filtering the display, 483
 profiling in, 481
 using in Xcode or separately, 480
Int type, 39, 73
 converting to a String, 44
 extending, 67
interface builder (Xcode), 118
InterfaceController, 454, 460
interfaces
 application, nibs and storyboards, 86
 connecting to code, 22-24
 designing simple application interface,
 21-22
internal (access control), 69
internationalization, 415
 using double-length localization, 416
iOS, 3
 App Store, 5
attachment system capabilities, increasing,
 343-395
 audio attachments, 358-371
 contact attachments, 379-382
 location attachments, 343-358
 notifications, 383-395
 video attachments, 371-379
 attachments for Notes app, 281-307
 adding image attachments, 283-289
 deleting attachments, 300-307
 interface for adding attachments, 281
 viewing attachments, 289-300
Cocoa Touch framework for apps, x, 74
container app for watchOS apps, 436
developing simple Swift application for,
 20-24
events, 85
extending apps, 321-341
 searching with Spotlight indexing exten-
 sion, 322-332
 Today widgets, 332-340
polishing the Notes app, 397-429
 accessibility, 423-428
 images with filters, 410-413
 opening links in SFSafariViewControl-
 ler, 399-406
 settings, 405-406
 speaking text, 397-398
 splitscreen multitasking, 428
 Undo support, 407-410
 worldwide apps, 414-423
supporting the ecosystem, 309-319
 handoffs, 312-317
 searchability, 317-319
 sharing with UIActivityController,
 309-312
testing apps with TestFlight, 493
using iOS simulator, 24-26

watchOS and, 433
working with documents on, 243-254
 editing and saving documents, 252-253
 view to display notes, 243-251
working with files and file types in Notes
 app, 255-279
 creating QuickLook thumbnail, 276-279
 file conflicts, resolving, 270-276
 listing attachments, 259-270
 setting up attachments interface, 255-259
working with files in iCloud, 193-242
 app sandbox, 193
 creating document list view controller, 196-208
 creating documents, 224-227
 creating the Document class, 208-214
 downloading from iCloud, 227-231
 iCloud availability, 195
 listing documents, 214-224
 renaming documents, 238-242
iOS applications, 11
iOS Notes app, 173-191
 defining a document type, 189-191
 designing, 174-181
 main features, 180
 download site for resources, 173
 enabling for iCloud, 185-189
iOS simulators
 Accessibility Inspector, 428
 audio capabilities, 371
 signing into iCloud, 188
iPad
 iOS apps, 11
 splitscreen multitasking, 428
 view controller in popover, dismissing, 299
iPhone
 3D Touch to preview links, 403
 Apple Watch communication with, 442-454
 Apple Watch tethered to, 433
 handoff between Apple Watch and, 468-471
 iOS apps on, 11
 wrapping view controller in navigation controller, 297, 299
is operator, 43
isEditingAttachments property, 301
issue navigator (Xcode), 18
itemIsOpenable method, 227
iTunes store, 6

J

JPEG
 encoding an image to, in iOS, 286
 UTIs for, 262
JSON, 74
 .json file extension, 99
 location attachment files, 344
 testing, 486
 public.json UTI, 99
jump bar (Xcode editor), 13

K

key/value pairs in dictionaries, 47
key/value storage (iCloud), 167
keyboard extensions, custom, 321

L

labels for function parameters, 51
languages
 internationalization of apps, 415
 localization in apps, 418-423
lazy keyword, 65
lazy loading, 65, 485
left-to-right languages, 415
let keyword, 29
 defining arrays with, 46
 defining variables with, 37

libraries

 Library folder in app sandbox, 194
 Library in Xcode utilities pane, 20
 main libraries in Swift, 74

links

 opening in SFSafariViewController, 399-405
 3D Touch, 403
 home screen quick actions, 404
 Peek and Pop, 404

 Smart Links in Attributes Inspector, 124

LLDB console, 479

loadFromContents method, 214

loading files, 116

local notifications, 383

local variables

 in Xcode debug area, 20
 values of, inspecting, 479

localDocumentsDirectoryURL property, 216

localization, 418-423

localNotification computed property, 385

location attachments (iOS), 343-358

adding annotation to map to show user location, 350
creating and saving annotation in Document object, 353
LocationAttachmentViewController, 346
closeAttachmentWithoutSaving, 354
connecting to DocumentViewController with segue, 354
possible failures to get location, 347
privacy of user location, 345
showing attachment as a pin, 349
location-based notifications, 394
long-press gesture recognizer, 300, 307
entering Delete mode, 305
loops, 33
Low Power mode (iOS), 332
lowercaseString property, 40

M

Mac App Store
App Store category, 10
getting XCode from, 7
Mac OS Classic, 100
main function, 484
main thread, 188
Main.storyboard file, 21
MapKit, 344
Maps, 6
memberwise initializers, 73
memory management, 80
menu controllers, 397
messages between Apple Watch and iPhone, 442
metadata, 99
adding to document's user activity, 319
metadataQuery property, 216
methods, 60
access control, 68
adding through extensions, 67
app delegate, 85
in structures, 73
inheritance, 62
internal access control, 69
overriding, 63
throwing an error, 79
microphones
enabling in audio player/recorder, 369
user granting access to, 366
MKMapView, 347

MKMapViewDelegate protocol, 346
MKPointAnnotation class, 351
MKUserLocation object, 349
MobileCoreServices framework, 262
model-view-controller design pattern, 81
models, 81
model classes, 82
modules, 74
multiline comments, 32
multiple inheritance, 62

N

navigation bar
adding notification button, 386
adding Undo button, 409
navigation controllers, 198
containing CNContactViewController, 382
embedding content view controller in, 299
view controllers in UINavigationController, UINavigationItem, 226
navigator pane (Xcode), 17
nib files, 86, 118
.xib file extension, 119
nil, 41
initializers returning, 61
optional variables set to, 42
nil coalescing operator (??), 150
NoteInfo struct, 445
NoteInterfaceController, 461
awakeWithContext method, 463, 469
completed interface, 462
noteContentLabel outlet, 462
NoteListInterfaceController, 454
completed interface, 462
contextForSegueWithIdentifier method, 463
handleUserActivity method, 473
menu for creating notes, adding, 466
row controller class, creating, 457
segue connecting to NoteInterfaceController, 461
updateListWithNotes method, 458
NoteRow class, 457
Notes app (iOS), 173-191, 243
(see also documents; iOS)
designing, 174-181
main features, 180
enabling for iCloud, 185-189
files common to OS X Notes, 209
Notes app (OS X), 89-104

adding application icon, 102
defining a document type, 98-102, 189-191
designing, 90-93
 key features, 92
Notes app (watchOS)
 adding WatchKit extension to project, 438
 creating, 438-474
 communicating with iPhone, 442-454
 creating new notes, 466
 glances, 471-474
 handoff between Watch and iPhone, 468-471
 showing note contents, 460-466
 user interfaces for Apple Watch, 454-459
 designing, 436-437
notifications, 74, 383-395
 about Low Power mode, 332
 getting notice of user approval, 386
 getting permission for, 384
local and remote, 383
local notifications, how they work, 383
NotificationAttachmentViewController, creating, 389
 preparing Notes app to handle, 392
 responding to actions associated with, 393
time-based or location-based, 394
 UI for accessing, 384
NSApplicationDelegate, 85
NSAttributedString class, 107, 117
 text property, 214
NSBitmapImageRep object, 163
NSBundle class, 75
NSButton object, 82
NSCoding protocol, 76
NSCollectionView, 128
NSCollectionViewDataSource protocol, 150
NSCollectionViewItem, 128, 150
NSData object, 75, 115, 284
 video files and, 374
NSDocument class, 105
 differences from UIDocument, 208
 fileWrapperOfType method, 113
 working with flat files or packages, 108
NSError object, 77
 error codes for documents on OS X, 110
NSFileCoordinator class, 237
 for renamed file, 241
NSFileExtension class, 263
NSFileManager class, 219, 449
moving renamed file, 242
removeItemAtURL method, 237
NSFileWrapper class, 109, 252, 259
 adding NSFileWrapper property to Document class, 113
constructing for attachment with data, 284
documentFileWrapper property, 214
extension methods to determine file type
 and return image for the type, 261
fileWrappers property, 260
readFromFileWrapper method, 116
returning Audio.pdf image, 370
returning thumbnail image for contact attachment, 379
returning thumbnail image for video attachment, 372
NSImageView, 134
NSIndexPath object, 248
 row property, 248
NSJSONSerialization, 74
NSKeyedArchiver class, 82
NSLocalizedString function, 415
NSMetadataQuery class, 215
NSMetadataQueryDidFinishGatheringNotification, 218
NSMetadataQueryDidUpdateNotification, 218
NSNotification, 386
NSNotificationCenter, 74, 386
 postNotificationName method, 386
NSObject class, 456, 489
NSObject protocol, 76, 111
NSOpenPanel class, 149
NSPopover, 147
NSRange, 115
NSString class, 107
NSTextView, 120
NSUndoManager, 407
NSURL object, 217
 creating array of, 215
 CSearchBarItem for, 328
 downloading status for files, 228
 for renamed file, 241
 for video attachments, 374
 sender for ShowDocument segue, 249
NSUserActivity object, 313, 315
 indexing apps, 317
 marking searchable, 318
 userInfo dictionary, 316
NSUserDefaults, 405

NSWorkspace, 137
numberOfItemsInSection method, 222, 266
numberOfRowsInSection method, 338

0

Object Library, 21
NSTextView, 120
object-oriented app development, 59-86
 classes and objects, 59-73
 design patterns in Cocoa and Cocoa Touch, 81-84
 memory management, 80
 structuring an app, 85-86

Objective-C, 4
 support in Foundation library, 107
 Swift's interoperability with, 28
 using with Swift in a project, 489-491
 Objective-C objects in Swift, 490
 using Swift objects in Objective-C, 489

objects, 59
 delegate objects, 83
 generic, creating, 71
 initialization and deinitialization, 61
 memory management, 80
 properties
 computed, 63
 lazy, 65
 observers, 64
 serialization and deserialization, 76
 subscripts, 72
 using Objective-C objects in Swift, 490
 using Swift objects in Objective-C, 489

observers, 64
 setting up with viewDidLoad, 217

OmniGraffle vector drawing tool, 90

openDocumentWithPath method, 250

openWithCompletionHandler method, 247

operators, 38
 creating custom operators, 70
 overloading, 70

optional chaining, 84

optional variables, 41
 checking and assigning value to with if-let, 43
 checking for value using if statement, 42
 failable initializers returning, 62
 returned from try?, 79
 set to nil value, 42
 unwrapping to get value, 42

organization identifier, 10, 94
organization name, 9, 94
OS X, 3
 App Store, 5
 Cocoa framework for apps, x, 74
 events, 85
 handoffs, 312-317
 handoffs between Watch and, 471
 iCloud support for apps, 166-170
 Server application, 489
 Today widgets, 332
 working with documents, 105-126
 basic UI, 117-126
 NSDocument class, 105
 storing data in the document, 106
 storing text, 107-117

OS X Icon.png file, 103

OS X Notes app, 89-104
 adding application icon, 102
 creating project in Xcode, 93-97
 defining a document type, 98-102
 designing, 90-93
 drawing thumbnail image for attachments, 277

OS X Yosemite, UI tests and, 96

OSTypes, 100

outlet collections, 23, 411

outlets, 23
 adding properties for record, play, and stop buttons on audio player, 361
 creating, 23
 creating connection for Document and collection view, 130

override keyword, 63

overriding methods, 63

P

package file formats, 108
 disadvantage of, 109

packages, 108

parameters
 default value for function parameters, 52
 in closures, 56
 passing by reference, 53
 passing to functions, 51
 variadic, 52

parent class, 62

pathForResource method, 75

PDF files, 163

UTI for, 99
Peek and Pop, 404
performance data, 480
 CPU usage, 482
 identifying the performance bottleneck, 484
performSegueWithIdentifier method, 244, 249, 296
photo editing extensions, 322
Photos app, 410
Picture mode, 374
 Audio, Airplay, and Picture, turning on, 378
Play button, 362
playgrounds, 30
po command (debugger), 479
popovers, 281
 on OS X, 147
 ShowAudioAttachment segue, 361
 ShowImageAttachment segue, 293
 ShowLocationAttachment segue, 354
 view controller shown as, 299
predicates, 216
Preference Items list, 405
preferredFilename property, 263
prepareAudioPlayer method, 367
prepareFilterPreviews method, 411
prepareForSegue method, 249, 295, 463
 setting up view controller to make popover controller its delegate, 297
presentAlertControllerWithTitle method, 465
presentViewController, 378
previewing delegate, 405
previews
 filtered image previews, 411
 link previews with 3D Touch, 403
print function, 29, 30
println function, replacement of, 30
private (access control), 69
 classes declared as, properties and methods, 69
 private setter for properties, 70
 properties and methods declared as, 69
product name, 94
Profile action, 14
Profile in Instruments button (Xcode), 481
programming language, choosing for your app, 10
Project Navigator (Xcode), 18, 97
project settings window (Xcode), 9
project templates in Xcode, 94
projects
 adding Unit Test bundle to, 486
 creating in Xcode, 8
 creating iOS Notes project, 181-184
 creating OS X Notes project in Xcode, 93-97
 targets, 98
properties
 access control, 68
 adding through extensions, 67
 adding to class declarations, 108
 class, 59, 215
 accessing, 62
 computed, 63, 145, 216
 in structures, 73
 inheritance, 62
 internal access control, 69
 lazy, 65, 485
 observers, 64
 private setter, 70
 static constant, 444
 stored, 63
property list values, 405
protocols, 66
 AddAttachmentDelegate, 144
 advantage of using, 67
 creating classes that conform to, 66
 ErrorType, 77
 making types conform to, using extensions, 68
 NSCollectionViewDataSource, 150
 NSObject and NSCoding, 76
 specific messages used by delegates, 83
 UICollectionViewDataSource, 202
public (access control), 69
 methods and properties declared as, 69
push notifications (see remote notifications)

Q

queryDidFinishGatheringObserver property, 216
queryDidUpdateObserver property, 216
queryUpdated method, 221
Quick Look, 161-165
 adding support to iOS app, 276-279

R

range operator (..<), 33
ranges
 iterating over with for-in loop, 33

NSRange, representing chunk of text in document, 114
using in switches, 35
readFromData method, 117
readFromFileWrapper method, Document class, 116
Record button, 362
Redo support, 408
reference counting, 80
refreshLocalFiles method, 218
region property, 394
registerUserNotificationSettings method, 392
regularFileWithContents initializer, 284
remote notifications, 383
RemoteInterfacePrincipalClass (Info.plist), 454
renameDocumentAtURL method, 239
repeat-while, 30
repeat-while loops, 34
report navigator (Xcode), 18
requestRecordPermission method, 367
resources for this book, ix
 code examples, exercises, and errata, xii
restorationHandler closure, 315
restoreUserActivityState method, 315, 330
retain count, 80
retain cycles, 80
reuse identifier, 224
reuse queue (in collection views), 223
reusing UI elements in Cocoa/Cocoa Touch, 223
reverse function, 46
rich text, 108
rich text format (RTF), 109
 file wrapper of type RTF, 114
right-to-left languages, 415
root view controller, 201
row controllers, 456
 creating a row controller class, 457
Run button (Xcode toolbar), 13
run loop, 85

S

Safari, 399
 (see also SFSafariViewController)
SafariServices framework, 402
sandboxed apps, 193
scheme selector (Xcode toolbar), 15, 24
schemes
 in Xcode, 15
selecting for iOS Notes app, 184
selecting for watchOS app, 441
scroll views, 123
 allowing to fill entire screen, 256
 text view in, 258
search
 searchability, 317-319
 using Spotlight indexing extension on iOS, 322-332
search navigator (Xcode), 18
sections and rows (collection views), 248
segues, 86, 198, 244
 creating for DocumentViewController, 245
 destinationViewController property, 249
 ShowAudioAttachment, 361
 ShowDocument, 248
 ShowImageAttachment, 293
 ShowLocationAttachment, 354
 ShowNote, 461
 ShowNotificationAttachment, 389
self keyword, 60
self variable, 479
serialization and deserialization, 76
Server application (OS X), 489
SessionManager class, 444
 createNote method, 447
 loadNote method, 447
 NoteInfo struct, 445
 updateList method, 446
 updateListWithNotes method, 459
 updateLocalNoteListWithReply method, 446
setEditing method, 401
setNotificationAndClose method, 392
sets, 49
Settings app (iOS), Accessibility Shortcut, 423
settings, adding to iOS Notes app, 405-406
SFSafariViewController, 399-405
shared links extensions, 322
sharedSession property, 444
sharing on iOS, 309-312
shortcut items, 404
showAlert method, 23
showCurrentLocation method, 348
showFilteredImage method, 411
showNotification method, 389
simulators, 15
 for watchOS apps, 441
 performance testing and, 481

signing into iCloud on iOS simulator, 188
using iOS simulator, 24-26
 changing the device, 26
Single-View Application template, 182
singletons, 444
size class (windows), 312
sort function, 55
source code control repository for your code, 11
Source Control checkbox (Xcode), 11
speaking text, 397-398
speakSelection method, 398
speechSynthesizer property, 397
split-screen multitasking, 428
Spotlight indexing extensions (iOS), 322-332
stack traces, 479
stack views, 205, 256
 for record, play, and stop buttons on audio player/recorder, 362
statements, separating with semicolon, 38
static actions, 404
statically typed languages, 71
status display (Xcode toolbar), 16
Stop button
 AudioAttachmentViewController, 362
 Xcode toolbar, 14
stopPlaying method, 367
stopRecording method, 364
stored properties, 63
storyboard files, 86, 118
storyboards, 21
 main, for DocumentViewController, 244
 setting up for watchOS Notes app, 455
 Use Storyboards setting in Xcode, 96
 view controllers and, 198
String class, 107
 pathExtension property (deprecated), 263
string interpolation, 60
String type, 39, 73
 String() initiator, 40
strings, 39-50
 arrays, 45
 changing case of, 40
 comparing, 40
 creating, 39
 dictionaries, 47
 enumerations, 47
 in Swift, power of, 107
 including results of expressions in, 34
 including values of variables in, 34
internationalizing in apps, 415
localizing, 418-423
optional types, 41
searching, 41
sets, 49
Swift 1 versus Swift 2, 30
switching on String values, 35
tuples, 44
type casting, 43
strongly typed languages, 43
structures, 73
 differences from classes, 73
subclassing, 83
subscript keyword, 72
subscripting, 47, 72
Subversion, 16
super keyword, 63
superclass
 accessing functions of, 63
 implementation of setEditing, 235
Swift, 4
 code snippet (example), 28
 language basics, 27-58
 comments, 32
 control flow, 33-37
 functions and closures, 50-57
 goals of the language, 28
 operators, 38
 playgrounds, 30
 strings, 39-50
 types, 39
 variables and constants, 37
 version 1 versus version 2, 30
main website, 5
selecting as language in Xcode, 95
using with Objective-C in a project, 489-491
 Objective-C objects in Swift, 490
 Swift objects, using in Objective-C, 489
version 2.2, ix
Swift Standard Library, 74
switch statements, 34
 cases, 36
 differences between C, Objective-C, and Swift, 36
 fallthrough keyword, 36
 requirement to be exhaustive, 36
 switching on String values, 35
 switching on tuples, 35

using ranges, 35
using to match enumeration associated values, 49
 using to match enumeration values, 48
switches, 34
symbol navigator (Xcode), 18

T

table views
 implementing data source methods, 338
 setting up for TodayViewController, 334
tables (in watchOS), 456
takeRetainedValue method, 263
tap gesture recognizer, 238-242
targets (project), 98, 183
 adding file to Notes and Notes-iOS, 210
 app extensions, 333
 watchOS, 438
templates
 template selector in Xcode, 8
 Xcode templates for iOS projects, 182
Test action, 14
test cases, 487
test navigator (Xcode), 18
testing, 485-489
 automated, 486
 including unit tests and UI tests in Xcode, 96
 iOS apps with TestFlight, 493
 UI testing, 487
 unit testing, 486
 Writing Tests (Xcode documentation), 489
text
 drawing and modifying, using NSTextView, 120
 screen reader for, 423
 storing in documents on OS X, 107-117
 guard keyword, advantages of, 112
 loading files, 116
 package file formats, 108
 saving files, 113
 text input on Apple Watch, 466
text editors, 12
 in OS X Notes app, 91
text files, 82
 public.text UTI, 99
text property, 247
 updates to, 253
text views
 adding to OS X document app window, 121
 adding to stack view in document view controller, 258
 delegates for, 252
 detecting links, 401
 DocumentViewController
 connecting text view to textView outlet, 246
 setting up, 245
 making editable or not, 401
 selecting inside parent views, 123
text-to-speech in iOS app, 397-398
TextInputControllerWithSuggestions, 467
textViewDidChange method, 252
 Undo support, 409
threads, 188
 CPU usage time, 483
3D Touch, 403
throws keyword, 78
 fileWrapperOfType method, using with, 115
thumbnails
 Contact.pdf, returned by NSFfileWrapper, 379
 creating Quick Look thumbnail for iOS app, 276-279
 Document returning suitable image for
 audio attachment, 369
 for attachment icon, 137
 for attachments in iOS app, 261
 image for video attachment, 372
 in Quick Look feature of OS X, 162-165
 Location and Current Location images, 345
 thumbnailImage extension method, NSFfile-
 Wrapper, 263
Title attribute (buttons), 22
Today screen extensions, 321, 332-340
 creating, 333
 setting up the interface, 334
toolbar (Xcode), 13
 editor selector, 16
 Run button, 13
 scheme selector, 15
 status display, 16
 Stop button, 14
 view selector, 16
touchscreens, 174
try keyword, 115
try! statements, 79
try? statements, 79

tuples, 44
return values of functions, 51
switching on, 35
tvOS, 433
type casting, 43
 NSCollectionViewItem to AttachmentCell, 151
type granularity, 99
types, 39
 converting between, 44
 extending, 67
 for function parameters, 51
 function return values, 51
 generic, 71
 hashable, 50
 in arrays, 45
 members of an enumeration, 48
 mixing and matching in arrays and dictionaries, 47
 of variables, 37, 39
 operators and, 38
 parameters in closures, 56
 protocols and, 67
 testing for, using is, as!, and as? operators, 43
 value types, 73

U

ubiquitousDocumentsDirectoryURL property, 216
UI tests, 96
UIActionSheet object, 282
UIActivityController, 312
UIActivityViewController, 310-312
UIAlertViewAction object, 274
UIAlertController object, 24, 220, 241, 271
 for failure of opening a document, 247
UIApplication object, 83
UIApplicationDelegation, 85
UIApplicationShortcutItems, 404
UIBarButtonItem, 226, 235, 300
 notification button, adding to navigation bar, 386
UIBezierPath, 277
UIButton object, 362
 (see also buttons)
 creating array of, 411
UIBarButtonItem, 226
UICollectionView, 196, 258

 critical methods providing data to, 222
UICollectionViewCell, 202, 222, 264, 283
UICollectionViewDataSource protocol, 202, 265
UICollectionViewDelegate, 265, 282
UIColor class, 277
UIDatePicker, 390
UIDocument class, 208, 252
 creating an instance of, 224
 differences from NSDocument, 208
 NSUserActivity associated with, 316
UIGraphicsBeginImageContext, 277
UIGraphicsEndImageContext, 277
UIImage object, 413
UIImageJPEGRepresentation, 286
UIImagePickerController, 283-289
 mediaTypes property, modifying, 373
UIImagePickerControllerDelegate, 286
UIImagePickerControllerEditedImage, 286
UIImagePickerControllerOriginalImage, 286
UIImagePickerControllerSourceTypeCamera, 283
UIImageView class, 206, 268
UILocalNotification class, 383
 NSNotification versus, 386
UIMenuController, 397
UIMenuItem, 398
UINavigationBar, 299
UINavigationController, 226
UINavigationItem, 226, 300
UIPopoverPresentationController, 299
UIPopoverPresentationControllerDelegate, 298
UIs (user interfaces)
 basic UI for document app on OS X, 117-126
 connecting UI to Document class, 124
 document-filetype-extension UI, 131-151
 UI testing, 487
 updating for attachments, 127-131
UIScrollView class, 256
UIStackView class, 256
UIStoryboardSegue object, 249
UITableViewDataSource protocol, 337
UITableViewDelegate protocol, 337
UITapGestureRecognizer, 239
UITextField object, 82
UITextView object, 245, 258
 NSUndoManager, 408
UITextViewDelegate protocol, 252

UITouch objects, forcing information from, 405
UIView class, 206
 animating a property, 233
UIViewController, 243, 290
UIViewControllerPreviewingDelegate, 405
UIWebView, 399
Undo support in iOS apps, 407-410
Unicode characters, 40
unit testing, 486
 running a specific test, 487
 unit test bundles, 486
unit tests, 96
universal applications (iOS), 11
unwrapping optional variables, 42
updateBarItems method, 386
 Undo button behavior, 408
updateButtonState method, 364
updateChangeCount method, 252
updateList method, 447
updateListWithNotes method, 458
updateLocalNoteListWithReply method, 446
updateUserActivity method, 470, 473
uppercaseString property, 40
URL Schemes, 339
URLForAttachment method, 375
URLs
 figuring out for items selected by user, 248
 loading data from, 75
 preparation and opening by Today extension, 339
URLsForDirectory method, 217
user activities (see activities)
userActivity object, 315
utilities pane (Xcode), 18
 Bindings Inspector, 124
UTIs (uniform type identifiers), 95, 99
 Apple documentation on, 100
 exporting to the system, 99
 for iOS Notes app document type, 190
 in conformsToType method, 263
 in MobileCoreServices framework, 262
 power of, 264
UTType methods, 263

V

value types, 73
var keyword, 37
variables
 assigning value to, 37
 declared with let keyword, 29
 declaring type explicitly, 37
 defining with let or var keywords, 37
 including values of in strings, 34
 optional, 41
 passing to functions as inout parameters, 53
 storing closures in, 56
 storing functions in, 53
 types, 29, 39
variadic parameters, 52
version control systems, 16
 Git, 97
versions editor, 16
video attachments (iOS), 371-379
 AVPlayerViewController, 374
 thumbnail image for videos, 372
view controllers, 85
 and storyboards, 198
 closing document when leaving, 253
 delegates for, 253
 initial view controller, 199
 inside UINavigationController,
 UINavigationItem, 226
 root view controller, 201
 separate controllers for different types of
 attachments on iOS, 289-300
 setting up DocumentViewController, 243
 showing another view controller, via segue,
 249
UIImagePickerController, 285
view selector (Xcode toolbar), 16
 debug area, bringing up, 20
viewDidLoad method
 asking users if they want to use iCloud, 219
 AudioAttachmentViewController, 368
 implementing to load image from data, 291
 LocationAttachmentViewController, 349
 prepareFilterPreviews call, adding, 413
 self.editing line, updating, 406
 undo and redo support, 408
 updating for speech synthesis, 398
 updating to begin in viewing state, 400
viewForAnnotation method, 350
views, 81
 connecting to outlets, 246
 in nibs and storyboards, 86
 in stack view, 256
 on iOS, 204
 view objects, NSButton and UITextField, 82

windows versus, 86
viewWillAppear method, 269
adding searchable metadata to document
 user activity, 318
calling updateBarItems method, 387
for location attachment, 351
for NotificationAttachmentViewController,
 390
making user activity current, 316
viewWillDisappear method, 253
 AudioAttachmentViewController, 368
 shouldCloseOnDisappear property, 275
voice recognition, text input on Apple Watch,
 466
VoiceOver screen reader, 423-428

W

WatchConnectivity framework, 442
WatchKit app, 436
 choosing for watchOS 2 and beyond, 438
WatchKit extension, 436
 adding to a project, 438
WatchMessageTypeKey, 449
watchOS, 3, 433-475
 App Store, 5
 creating an app, 438-474
 adding WatchKit extension to the
 project, 438
 communicating with iPhone, 442-454
 creating new notes, 466
 glances, 471-474
 handoff between Watch and iPhone,
 468-471
 showing note contents, 460-466
 user interfaces for Apple Watch, 454-459
designing an app, 436-437
designing for the Watch, 434-436
framework for Apple Watch apps, x
WCSession object, 444
 making it use app delegate, 453
WCSessionDelegate protocol, 444
 extending AppDelegate to conform to, 448
 didReceiveMessage method, 448
 handleCreateNotes method, 452
 handleListAllNotes method, 449
 handleLoadNote method, 451
weak keyword, 80
weak references, 80
website for use with this book, ix, 173

while loops, 34
willActivate method, 472
willSet and didSet blocks, 64
window controllers, 85
windowNibName property, 118
windows
 document app on OS X, 91, 119
 adding NSTextView, 121
 Full Screen mode, set to Primary Window,
 119
 in nibs and storyboards, 86
 size class, 312
 splitscreen multitasking, 428
 views versus, 86
wireframes, 90
 for iOS Notes app, 175
 for OS X Notes app, 90
WKInterfaceController, 454, 461
WKWebView, 399
worldwide apps, 414-423
 internationalization, 415-418
 localization, 418-423

X

Xcode
 app thinning support, 492
 asset catalogs, 102
 creating a new project, 8
 choosing application type, 8
 choosing where to save the app, 11
 project settings window, 9
 creating iOS Notes app project, 181-184
 templates for iOS apps, 182
 creating OS X Notes app project, 93-97
 creating playgrounds, 31
 debugger, 477
 Double Length Pseudolanguage option, 416
 downloading, 7
 iCloud support for apps, 167
 interface, 12-20
 debug area, 20
 editor, 12
 navigator, 17
 toolbar, 13
 utilities, 18
 interface builder, 118
 launching iOS simulator, 24
 localizing resource files, 418
 performance data in, 480

Right to Left Pseudolanguage option, [418](#)
Server and Continuous Integration Guide,
[489](#)
testing documentation, [487](#)
UI testing, [488](#)
versions, and Swift 2, [8](#)
watchOS projects, [438](#)

XCTAssertTrue functions, [487](#)
XCTestCase class, [487](#)
.xib file extension, [119](#)

Z

zero (0), [41](#)

About the Authors

Paris Buttfield-Addison is an author, and a designer of games at Secret Lab, which he co-founded with Jon. Paris has a PhD in Computing, and a degree in Medieval History. Paris can be found online at www.paris.id.au and on Twitter as @parisba.

Jon Manning is an iOS software engineer, independent game developer, and author. In addition to writing books like these, he designs and builds games at Secret Lab, which he co-founded with Paris. Jon has a PhD in Computing, in which he studied the manipulation of ranking systems in social media sites. Jon can be found on Twitter as @desplesda.

Tim Nugent pretends to be a mobile app developer, game designer, PhD student, and now he even pretends to be an author. When he isn't busy avoiding being found out as a fraud, he spends most of his time designing and creating little apps and games he won't let anyone see. Tim spent a disproportionately long time writing this tiny little bio, most of which was spent trying to stick a witty sci-fi reference in, before he simply gave up. Tim can be found as @The_McJones on Twitter.

Colophon

The animal on the cover of *Learning Swift* is a fairy martin (*Petrochelidon ariel*), a member of the swallow family that breeds in Australia. This migratory bird winters through most of Australia, though some instead reach New Guinea and Indonesia.

The fairy martin averages 12 centimeters in length and weighs up to 11 grams. It is dumpy with a square tail; adults are iridescent blue on their backs with brown wings and tail, and a whitish behind. Its pale rump distinguishes this species from other Australian swallows. Males and females have similar coloring, but younger birds have duller coloring and paler foreheads and fringes. The fairy martin has a high-pitched twitter and a *chrrrr* call.

During breeding season—from August to January—fairy martins gather in tens of nests; the largest known colony contained 700 nests. They traditionally nest near cliff faces, natural holes in dead trees, riverbanks, or rock crevices, but are increasingly found in manmade sites such as culverts, pipes, bridges, or buildings. Both sexes help build the nests, which consist of up to 1,000 mud pellets and are lined with dried grass and feathers. Fairy martins breed in clutches, which usually consist of up to four or five eggs.

Fairy martins feed in large flocks, catching flying insects in the air or in swarms over water. This is a highly gregarious species that often gathers in large groups that include tree martins.

Many of the animals on O'Reilly covers are endangered; all of them are important to the world. To learn more about how you can help, go to animals.oreilly.com.

The cover image is from *Wood's Illustrated Natural History*. The cover fonts are URW Typewriter and Guardian Sans. The text font is Adobe Minion Pro; the heading font is Adobe Myriad Condensed; and the code font is Dalton Maag's Ubuntu Mono.